

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Whitney, William Dwight,
Practical French grammar with exercises

Stanford University Libraries

3 6105 04925 4340



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

GIFT OF

Frederick L. Brunch

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES



WHITNEY'S MODERN LANGUAGE BOOKS.

FRENCH.

A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR. With Exercises and Illustrative Sentences from French Authors. 12mo, 442 pp.

PRACTICAL FRENCH. Taken from the Author's larger Grammar, and Supplemented by Conversations and Idiomatic Phrases. 12mo, 304 pp.

BRIEF FRENCH GRAMMAR. 16mo, 177 pp.

INTRODUCTORY FRENCH READER. 16mo, 256 pp.

GERMAN.

A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. 12mo, 303 pp.

BRIEF GERMAN GRAMMAR. 16mo, 143 pp.

GERMAN READER. 12mo, 523 pp.

GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. 8vo, 900 pages.

GERMAN TEXTS. Edited by Prof. W. D. WHITNEY.

LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. Annotated by W. D. WHITNEY, Prof. in Yale College. 16mo, 138 pp.

SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL. Annotated by Prof. A. SACHTLEBEN, of Charleston, S. C. 16mo, 199 pp.

GOETHE'S FAUST. Annotated by WM. COOK. 16mo, 229 pp.

GOETHE'S IPHIGENIE AUF TAURIS. Annotated by Prof. FRANKLIN CARTER, Williams College. 16mo, 113 pp.

SCHILLER'S MARIA STUART. Annotated by E. S. JOYNES, Prof. in University of South Carolina. 16mo, 222 pp.

LESSING'S NATHAN DER WEISE. Annotated by H. C. G. BRANDT, Prof. in Hamilton College. 16mo, 158 pp.

WHITNEY-KLEMM GERMAN SERIES.

BY WILLIAM D. WHITNEY and L. R. KLEMM.

GERMAN BY PRACTICE. 12mo, 305 pp.

ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER. 12mo, 237 pp.

HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS, NEW YORK.

A

PRACTICAL

FRENCH GRAMMAR

WITH EXERCISES

AND ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES FROM FRENCH AUTHORS

BY

WILLIAM DWIGHT WHITNEY

Correspondent of the Institute of France; Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Philology and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College.



NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

F. W. CHRISTERN

BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

602571

F. E. Bunsch

COPYRIGHT, 1887,

BY

HENRY HOLT & CO.

PREFACE.

THIS volume is the outcome of the author's experience as a teacher of French during many years in one of the departments of Yale College. The design had in view in it has been to furnish for such classes, and for preparatory schools (where training in French is coming to be more and more demanded), a grammar which should combine the advantages of practice and theory in a higher degree than others now existing. To this end, the most important facts of the language have been grouped and arranged in a series of Lessons, in an order suggested by practical convenience, each Lesson being accompanied by sufficient Exercises. These Lessons constitute the First or Practical Part of the grammar, which it is expected that every learner of the language will work through. Its general plan, while not unlike the method followed in many grammars, is so far accordant especially with that of the widely used and valued "Conversation-Grammar" of Otto, that it may fairly be said to be founded upon the latter—though no more than that, since both text and Exercises are entirely new, and deviations from the older plan not only numerous, but of much importance. As one example among many, a more systematic course is followed in the important item of the learner's introduction to the verbs: all the principal forms are learned and practised, one after another, before any complete paradigm is set forth; and the commonest and most useful of the irregular verbs are worked in by degrees, before they are taken up as a body.

It is believed that the method here adopted of presenting and teaching the irregular verbs has decided practical advantages over any other, and lightens, as much as it is possible to lighten, this heaviest burden in French grammar. In the Exercises, care has been taken not to embarrass the learner with long lists of words of which little use is to be made, but rather to make him practise over and over a more limited and slowly increasing vocabulary.

If, in the case of any class, the Lessons are found too long, the intelligent teacher will easily divide the Exercises, returning to take up what was omitted, in the course of that review and reiteration by which alone the desired degree of mastery of the material can be obtained. Where an early introduction to reading is especially aimed at, the Exercises may be reduced to a minimum, and (so much like English are French words and construction) a Reader or a text can be taken up as soon as the auxiliaries, the regular conjugations, and a few of the commonest irregular verbs are learned. This summary process will be greatly aided by the French Vocabulary, in which are to be found, besides many of the oftenest used words of the language, nearly all the form-words—the auxiliaries, the articles and pronouns, and the prepositions and conjunctions—with full references to the explanations and illustrations of their use that are given in the volume.

The Second Part is to be regarded and used both as a supplement and as a successor to the First. Resting upon the basis of the First Part (while not rejecting the occasional repetition, in more proper connection or in fuller form, of statements there made), it gives a more penetrating view of the usages of the language, especially of its syntactical usages. The framework of Lessons, which could only embarrass such a presentation, is discarded in it. That it should be worked and written through as soon as the First Part is despatched, does not at all lie in the author's plan. No class should be expected to take it up in that way until

after having read considerable French text as well, and thus gained some practical familiarity with the facts of the language which the grammar attempts to systematize. Nothing is worse than to try to make pupils learn more French grammar than they learn French. But the practical knowledge of the language gained in connection with the First Part stands in need of frequent reference to the Second, for the explanation or further elucidation of special points, in order to their proper understanding; and with many students the chief use of this Part will be as a book of reference, to be consulted under the guidance of the teacher. Another way to use it with profit is to read with care the sets of Illustrative Sentences, noting in connection with the reading the grammatical points which those illustrate. One has there a series of selected phrases from French authors of repute, exemplifying most of the usages of which it is the duty of a grammar to take note; after despatching those, with the accompanying explanations of the volume, one will meet with little in French reading that will cause grammatical difficulty. The English Themes of this Part give the means of reaching the same result in a different or an additional way; and the English Vocabulary will, it is believed, be found full enough, in its phrases and references, to make their rendering into French fairly easy. Here, again, the working through of these Themes will be found a sufficient grammatical preparation for rendering into French, or writing in French, in a more general and freer way. A class, finally, that has due preparation, in age and knowledge, may profitably go through the whole Second Part, just as it stands.

An attempt has been made to lead the way toward that comparison of French with Latin which forms a natural and even a necessary part of the more advanced study of the former, by directing attention from point to point to the correspondences between the two languages, by setting forth their general relations in a chapter introductory to

the Second Part, and by giving, in a brief and unsystematic form, the Latin (and other) etymologies of French words in the first Vocabulary. The comparative study of the two languages cannot, of course, be taken up otherwise than by the way, while the pupil has his hands full with learning the modern language itself; but this task may be made both easier and more interesting by the use, under the guidance of an intelligent teacher, of such material as is here put within convenient reach.

The pronunciation of a new language is not a thing that can be learned out of a book and by rule; it must be gotten through the ear of the pupil from the mouth of the teacher. Yet there is sufficient consistency in French orthography to render it possible to hold a pupil, after sufficient introductory practice, to responsibility for not making too blundering work of uttering a word that is normally pronounced, or even of an exceptional one that he has met with before. In order to this, however, distinct statements as to the facts of pronunciation are required. And they are of no small value to the teacher also, unless he have enjoyed very exceptional advantages. It is partly in view of the needs of the great majority of teachers not French by birth or education, that so much fulness has been given in this work to the preliminary chapter on pronunciation, and that all the commoner words that are exceptionally pronounced (whether they do or do not occur in the Exercises and Themes) are entered, marked as such, in the Vocabularies. Different teachers will make different use of the chapter in instruction, according to their various training and habit. It is believed, however, that a class of beginners may to their decided advantage be required to learn at the outset certain points: namely, the division of syllables (**4***a*, *b*); to name correctly the orthographic marks (**5–10**); to tell when **e** is mute (**18**); the value of **y** as double **i** (**37**); the chief rules as to the nasal vowels (**46–7, 52, 53**); those as to final consonants (**56***a*, *b*); as to **ch** (**59**); to **gn** (**63**); to **h**

(64*a*, *e*); to liquid l (68, 68*e*); to r (73, 73*a*); to s pronounced as *z* (74*a*); to ti in endings (77*a*); and as to the linking of final consonants (84*a*, *b*, 85*b*, 86*a*). The rest may well be left to oral teaching, one and another rule being later brought in as found desirable: especially, the pupil will need further on to note the rules as to the occurrence of mute e and é and è (19, 20*a*, 21*a*), which settle so many cases of otherwise doubtful orthography.

The grammars of which most use has been made in the preparation of this one are that of Mätzner (of which there is a re-working in English, under the name of "French Syntax," by Professor J. A. Harrison—a valuable work, especially for teachers) and that of Ploetz. From them have been taken also a few of the Illustrative Sentences.

YALE COLLEGE, NEW HAVEN, *August*, 1886.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

The references are to pages only.

FIRST PART.

PAGE

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION, ... 1–26

Alphabet, 1–2; division of syllables, 2; accents and other orthographic marks, 2–4; accent, 4; pronunciation of the simple vowels, 4–10; of the digraphs or vowel compounds, 11–2; of the nasal vowels, 12–5; of the consonants, 15–25; linking or carrying-on of final consonants, 25–6.

LESSONS, WITH EXERCISES, ... 27–198

I. Gender, articles, etc.; present of **avoir**, . . 27
II. Plural of nouns; present of **être**, . . . 30
III. The prepositions **à** and **de**; imperfect of **avoir** and **être**, ... 33
IV. Partitive and inclusive senses of the noun; preterit of do., ... 36
V. Material and measure; future of do., . . 40
VI. Prepositions; proper names; conditional of do., 43
VII. Adjectives—gender; imperative of do., . . 46
VIII. Adjectives—number, position; present subjunctive of do., ... 50
IX. Adjectives—comparison; imperfect subjunctive of do., ... 54
X. Conjugation—the verb **avoir** *have*, . . . 57
XI. Conjugation of the verb **être** *be*, . . . 62
XII. Negative conjugation, ... 65
XIII. Demonstrative and interrogative adjectives, . 69
XIV. Possessive and indefinite adjectives, . . . 72
XV. Cardinal numerals, ... 76
XVI. Ordinal numerals, ... 79
XVII. Numerals continued—months and week-days, . 82
XVIII. Regular verbs; first conjugation, . . . 85

PAGE

XIX. Second regular conjugation, . . . 90
XX. Third regular conjugation, ... 94
XXI. Irregular verbs: first conjugation, . . 98
XXII. Conjunctive personal pronouns, . . . 102
XXIII. Disjunctive and conjunctive pronouns, . . 107
XXIV. Demonstrative pronouns; irregular verbs, **vouloir**, ... 111
XXV. Interrogative pronouns; the irregular verb **pouvoir**, ... 117
XXVI. Relative pronouns; the irregular verb **devoir**, 121
XXVII. Possessive and indefinite pronouns; the irregular verb **aller**, ... 126
XXVIII. Passive verbs; auxiliaries, ... 131
XXIX. Reflexive verbs, ... 135
XXX. Impersonal verbs, ... 139
XXXI. Adverbs from adjectives; the irregular verb **venir**, ... 143
XXXII. Various adverbs; the irregular verb **faire**, . 148
XXXIII. Prepositions; the irregular verb **dire**, . . 153
XXXIV. Conjunctions; the irregular verb **savoir**, . 157
XXXV. Irregular verbs ending in **ire** (*1–14*), . . 162
XXXVI. Irregular verbs in **aindre** etc. and **aître** etc. (*15–20*), ... 166
XXXVII. Further irregular verbs in **re** (*21–29*), . . 171
XXXVIII. The remaining irregular verbs in **re** (*30–37*), 175
XXXIX. Irregular verbs in **ir** (*38–51*), . . . 180
XL. The remaining irregular verbs in **ir** (*52–64*), 185
XLI. Irregular verbs in **oir** (*65–71*), . . . 190
XLII. The remaining irregular verbs in **oir**, and those in **er** (*72–83*), ... 194
INDEX OF IRREGULAR VERBS, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND, . 199–201
ABBREVIATIONS OF AUTHORS' NAMES; REFERENCES, . . 202

SECOND PART.

PAGE

I. THE RELATION OF FRENCH TO LATIN, . . 203–9

II. NOUNS, ... 209–23

Gender, 209–13; number, 213–15; case-relations, 215–21; noun used absolutely, 215–6; noun with **de**, 217–8; partitive noun, 220; noun with **à**, 221.

III. ARTICLES, ... 223–32

Definite article, 223–8; indefinite, 229–30.

IV. ADJECTIVES, ... 233–41

Adjective forms, 233–4; agreement with noun, 234–6; place, 236–7; noun-adjuncts, 239–40.

V. NUMERALS, ... 241–4

VI. PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES, . . 244–63

Personal pronouns, 244–8; possessives, 251; demonstratives, 253; interrogatives, 254–5; relatives, 255–6; indefinites, 258–60.

VII. VERBS, ... 263–340

Uses of the tenses, 264–8; uses of the indicative mode, 272; uses of the subjunctive, 272–82; subjunctive in independent clauses, 272–3; in substantive clauses, 274–6; in adjective clauses, 278–9; in adverbial clauses, 280–2; uses of the imperative, 283–4; verb and subject, 286–9; and predicate noun and adjective, 292–3; and object, 294–6; and prepositional phrase, with **à**, 298–300; with **de**, 301–2; and adverb, 305; negative expression, 305–11; expletive **ne**, 310–11; the infinitive, 313–32; as subject, as predicate, in apposition, 313–5; as object of, or dependent on, a verb, 316–26; without sign, 316–8; with **de**, 320–1; with **à**, 323–5; with **de** or **à**, 325–6; infinitive as dependent on an adjective, 327–8; on a noun, 328–9; on other prepositions than **de** and **à**, 330–1; the present participle, 332–3; the gerund, 333; the past participle, 334–7.

VIII. ADVERBS, ... 340–1

IX. PREPOSITIONS, ... 341–4

X. CONJUNCTIONS, ... 345–7

PAGE

XI. INTERJECTIONS, ... 347
XII. ARRANGEMENT OF THE SENTENCE, ... 350–3
XIII. FRENCH VERSIFICATION, ... 354–8

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES (IN THE SECOND PART).

I. Noun used absolutely, ... 216
II. Noun with de, qualifying a noun, ... 218
III. Partitive noun, ... 220
IV. Noun with à, qualifying a noun, ... 221
V. Partitive and inclusive article, ... 224
VI. Article with proper names, ... 226
VII. Various uses of the article, ... 229
VIII. Indefinite article, ... 230
IX. Agreement and place of adjectives, . . . 237
X. Noun-adjuncts of adjectives, ... 240
XI. Numerals, ... 243
XII. Personal pronouns, ... 248
XIII. Possessives, ... 252
XIV. Demonstratives, ... 253
XV. Interrogatives, ... 255
XVI. Relatives, ... 256
XVII. Indefinites, ... 261
XVIII. Tenses of the verb, ... 268
XIX. Subjunctive in independent clauses, . . 273
XX. Subjunctive in subject and object clauses, . 276
XXI. Subjunctive in adjective clauses, . . . 279
XXII. Subjunctive in adverbial clauses, . . . 282
XXIII. Imperative, ... 284
XXIV. Verb and subject, ... 290
XXV. Verb and predicate, ... 294
XXVI. Verb and object, ... 296
XXVII. Verb and case-phrase with à, ... 300
XXVIII. Verb and case-phrase with de, ... 302
XXIX. Negative expression, ... 308
XXX. Expletive negative, ... 311
XXXI. Infinitive as subject and as predicate, . . 315
XXXII. Object-infinitive without sign, ... 318
XXXIII. Object-infinitive with de, ... 322
XXXIV. Object-infinitive with à, ... 326
XXXV. Infinitive dependent on an adjective or noun, . 329
XXXVI. Infinitive after other prepositions than de and à, 331
XXXVII. Present participle and gerund, ... 333
XXXVIII. Past participle, ... 337
XXXIX. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, . . . 347
XL. Inverted arrangement of the sentence, . . . 353

THEMES (IN THE SECOND PART).

PAGE

1. Case-relations of nouns, ... 222
2. Articles, ... 231
3. Adjectives, ... 240
4. Numerals, ... 248
5. Personal pronouns, ... 250
6. Possessives, ... 252
7. Demonstratives, ... 254
8. Interrogatives and relatives, ... 257
9. Indefinites, ... 262
10. Tenses of the verb, ... 270
11. Subjunctive in independent and in substantive clauses, . 277
12. Subjunctive in adjective and adverb clauses, and imperative, 285
13. Verb and subject, ... 291
14. Verb with predicate and object, ... 297
15. Verb and case-phrase, with à or de, ... 303
16. Negative expression, ... 312
17. Subject and predicate infinitive, ... 316
18. Object-infinitive without sign, ... 319
19. Object-infinitive with de, ... 322
20. Object-infinitive with à, ... 327
21. Infinitive dependent on an adjective or a noun, . . . 330
22. Infinite after other prepositions than de or à, . . . 331
23. Present participle and gerund, ... 334
24. Past participle, ... 339
25. Prepositions, ... 349

VOCABULARIES, ... 359–433
I. French-English vocabulary, ... 359
II. Vocabulary of French proper names, . . . 410
III. English-French vocabulary, ... 414
GENERAL INDEX, ... 435–42



FIRST PART.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

For suggestions as to the use of this introductory chapter on pronunciation, see the Preface.

ALPHABET.

1. The French alphabet is the same with the English.

a. But the letters **k** and **w** occur only in a few words, borrowed out of other languages.

2. The letters of the alphabet and their names are as follows (the names pronounced as French words):

a a	**h** ache	**o** o	**u** u
b bé	**i** i	**p** pé	**v** vé
c cé	**j** ji	**q** ku	**w** double vé
d dé	**k** ka	**r** erre	**x** iks
e é	**l** elle	**s** esse	**y** i grec
f effe	**m** emme	**t** té	**z** zèd
g gé	**n** enne		

a. In reading and spelling, however, it is now common to name each consonant by its own sound followed by a mute **e** (**18**), which is pronounced only just enough to let the character of the consonant be distinguished: thus, for **b**, **be** instead of **bé**; for **g**, **gue** or **je** (according as the **g** is hard or soft) instead of **gé**; and so on. But when any letter is named by itself, it is always by the name given in the above table.

3. Use of Capitals.—As regards the use of capitals, French agrees in general with English, but with the following important exceptions:

a. An adjective derived from a proper name does not take a capital when used as an adjective, but only when it has the value of a noun.

Thus, **un livre français**, *a French book*, but **un Français**, *a Frenchman*; **des chevaux américains**, *American horses*, but **des Américains**, *Americans*.

b. The names of the days of the week and of the months are not written with capitals in French.

Thus, **lundi**, *Monday*, **juin**, *June*.

c. The word for *I*, namely **je**, is not written with a capital.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

4. The rules as to how a French word is to be divided into syllables are of much practical importance in their bearing on the mute **e** (**18**) and on the nasal vowels (**46**).

a. A single consonant between vowels always belongs to the following vowel.

Thus, **fi-ni, ai-me-rai, dé-cou-ra-ger, gé-né-reu-se-ment, i-ni-mi-ta-bi-li-té.**

b. Also two consonants, if they are such as may begin a French word, belong to the following vowel.

Thus, **a-près, ré-gler, a-bri, é-clos, a-droit, trè-fle, ou-tre, ou-vris.**

Such groups have **r** or **l** as their final member: they are **br, bl; cr, cl; dr; fr, fl; gr, gl; pr, pl; tr; vr.**

c. A consonant digraph, or group of two consonants representing a single sound, is treated as if one consonant only; such are **ch, ph, th, gn**: thus, **a-che-ter, pro-phé-ti-e, pa-thé-ti-que, a-gneau.**

d. Other groups of two consonants are divided, the former consonant going to the preceding vowel, the latter to the following vowel: thus, **al-ler, frap-per, in-su, es-pé-ran-ce, ad-mi-ra-ble.**

e. Groups of three or more consonants follow the same principles of division: thus, **com-bler, per-dre, in-stant.**

f. A few exceptional cases occur: **x** belongs to the preceding vowel, as **ex-em-ple**; **n** and **h** (in words of compound origin) are divided, though the **h** is silent, as **bon-heur**; also divide **in-strui-re, at-mo-sphè-re**, etc.

ACCENTS AND OTHER ORTHOGRAPHIC MARKS.

5. Three accent-marks are used in French, and constitute a part of the necessary written form of French words. They are the ACUTE ACCENT, as in **été, créé**; the

GRAVE ACCENT, as in **dès, là, où**; and the CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT, as in **pâte, fête, île, hôte, fûtes.**

a. These accent-marks do not at all point out the actually accented syllable of a word; but they in part show differences of vowel-sound, in part are means of distinction of words otherwise spelt alike, and in part show something respecting the history of the word.

b. It is just as great a fault in writing French to leave off an accent or to write a wrong accent, as to leave out a letter or to write a wrong letter.

c. In spelling, the accent should always be mentioned along with the vowel to which it belongs: thus, **été** is "**e** acute, **t**, **e** acute"; **à** is "**a** grave"; **île** is "**i** circumflex, **l**, **e**"; and so on.

6. *a.* The acute accent occurs only on the vowel **e.**

b. The grave occurs almost always on **e**; but also on **a** in a very few words (**16**), and on **u** in **où**, *where.*

c. The circumflex occurs on all vowels, usually as a sign of contraction, and in the great majority of cases showing the loss of an **s**, formerly written after the vowel now circumflexed: thus, **hâte** for older **haste** (Eng. *haste*), **fête** for **feste** (Eng. *feast*), **hôte** for **hoste** (Eng. *host*), **île** for **isle** (Eng. *isle*), **fûtes** for **fustes** (Lat. *fuistis*), **maître** for **maistre** (Eng. *master*), **coûter** for **couster** (Eng. *cost*), and so on.

7. The CEDILLA is a mark placed under a **c** (thus, **ç**), to give it its soft or *s*-sound before the vowels **a, o, u** (where it would otherwise be pronounced hard, like *k*: **58***b*): thus, **plaça, façon, reçu, ç'a.**

8. The DIÆRESIS (Fr. **tréma**) is a double dot, set (as sometimes also in English) over a vowel which is to be pronounced separately from a preceding vowel, not forming with it a diphthong: thus, **haïr** (i.e. **ha-ir**), **ouï** (i.e. **ou-i**).

a. It is also used on the vowel that follows a **gu**, if the **u** is to be pronounced (compare **62***f*): thus, **ambiguïté, ambiguë** (where the **e** itself is silent).

9. The APOSTROPHE shows, as in English, the loss of a final vowel which has been cut off before another vowel: thus, **l'ami, s'il.**

a. The vowel thus cut off is almost always **e** (**26***c*); but in a few cases it is **a** (**15**) or **i** (**29***b*).

10. The HYPHEN is used, as in English, but more frequently and strictly, between parts of words, and whole words regarded as having an especially close connection with one another. The cases where it is required will be stated below.

ACCENT.

11. The actual accent, or stress of voice on one of the syllables of a word of two or more syllables, rests in French on the last syllable that is fully pronounced—i.e. that does not have as its vowel a mute **e**.

Thus, **palais'**, **mala'de**, **maladroit'**, **maladroi'te**, **mélancoli'e**, **indubita'ble**, **réconcilier'**, **réconcilièrent'**, **indivisibilité'**.

a. This accented syllable regularly and usually represents the one which had the accent in Latin: see Part Second, § 2*a*.

b. But the stress of voice is very slight. In general, the syllables of a French word (except those containing a mute **e**) are uttered with equal distinctness and nearly even stress.

c. This evenness of utterance, and equal distinctness of vowel sound in all the syllables of a word, is one of the most striking peculiarities of French pronunciation as compared with English, and cannot be too much insisted on and practised.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

12. QUANTITY.—There is no strongly-marked distinction of long and short vowels in French, such as there is in English (and in German). French vowels are in general short, though sometimes a little prolonged—oftenest before a final pronounced **r**, and when circumflexed.

13. A, a.—*a.* When final, or followed at the end of a word only by a silent consonant or by **r**, **a** has very nearly the full open sound of English *a* in *far* or *father*.

Thus, **ira, donna, la, a, cas, bras, plat, drap, car.**

b. Elsewhere, **a** is a little flattened, like English *a* in *flat, cap, jack*, only not quite so much so.

Thus, **ami, animal, cabane, malade, bague, place, passe, âme, pâte, âge, château.**

c. For **an** and **am** nasal, see **48.**

14. The **a** is silent in **août,** *August*, **août̂eron,** *reaper*, **taon,** *horse-fly*, **Caen, Curaçao** (last syllable), **Saône.**

15. The final **a** of **la** (article and object-pronoun) is cut off before a vowel (or a silent **h**): thus, **l'amie, l'histoire, il l'aime.**

a. But not that of **la** as pronoun after the verb, except before another object-pronoun: thus, **trouve-la aimable**; but **envoyez-l'y.**

16. An **a** has the grave accent in the preposition **à,** *to*, and the adverbs **là,** *there* (with most of its compounds, but not **cela,** *that*), and **çà,** *here* (with its compound **deçà,** *on this side*), to distinguish these words from **a** (verb), **la** (article and pronoun), and **ça** (pronoun); also in **déjà,** *already* (and the almost obsolete **jà**). It often has the circumflex; but never the acute.

17. E, e.—This vowel has in French a greater variety of written form and of pronunciation than any other, being written as **e, é, è, ê,** and pronounced with a mute, a closer, and an opener sound.

18. Mute or Silent **e.**—*a.* A simple **e** (that is, one without accent-sign) standing at the end of a syllable (4) has the so-called "mute" or "silent" value (**e muet**): that is, it is pronounced as briefly and lightly as possible, and what sound it has is like that of English *u* in *hut* or *hurt.*

b. The sound is quite precisely that in English *the* before a consonant in real colloquial utterance: thus, "tell us *the* name of *the* man." Examples are **le, me, de, te-nir, re-gard, re-gar-de, re-le-va, ra-me-na, en-ne-mi.** In many situations—especially at the end of a word of more than one syllable, as **table, rare, machine, abortive**—it is in ordinary utterance entirely silent; but still it makes theoretically a syllable (thus, **ra-re, ma-chi-ne, a-bor-ti-ve**), which counts as such in poetry, and in singing must be uttered as much as any other syllable. In learning French pronunciation, the pupil must first be able to give the right sound to the vowel, and then duly to slight or omit it.

c. The same sound belongs also to the **e** of **es** at the end of a word (excepting in the monosyllables **lès, dès, cès, mes, tès, sès**), and to that of **ent** at the end of the 3d pers. plural of a verb: thus, **rares, machines, certes, donnes, donnent, regardent, donnassent.**

d. More exceptional cases are **dessus, dessous, ressource,** and most other words beginning with **ress-**; also **faisant** etc. (**39***c*), and **monsieur** (**54***b*).

e. The **e** of **je,** *I,* when following the verb, is completely silent, in the same manner as at the end of a word of more than one syllable: thus, **ai-je,** *have I?* pronounced as if written **aige**; **suis-je,** *am I?* as if **suige**; **avais-je,** *had I?* as if **avaige**; and so on.

19. The acute and grave accents, as used on **e,** are signs giving it a full pronunciation, where otherwise it would be mute. No **é** or **è** is ever written unless without the accent the **e** would (by the rules of the preceding paragraph) have its mute value.

20. *a.* As between the acute and grave, the general rule is that the grave is written if a next following syllable in the same word is a mute one; otherwise, the acute.

Thus, **pè-re, chè-re, lè-ve, cè-de, mè-ne-rai, pè-le-rin**; but **cé-der, cé-da, cé-dé, cé-lé-bri-té**; and **dé-cè-de, cé-lè-bre, cé-lè-brent, pré-fè-res, té-nè-bres.**

But to this rule there are some exceptions:

b. An **é** remains in the future and conditional of a verb having **é** in the infinitive: thus, **cé-de-rai, cé-de-rais.**

c. An **é,** and not **è,** is usually written before **g** thus, **col-lé-ge, ab-ré-ge.**

But the French Academy has recently ruled that **è** should stand before **g,** just as before other consonants: thus, **collège, abrège.**

d. On the other hand, **è** is written before **s** at the end of a few words: thus, **dès, très, près, après, exprès, progrès, succès.**

e. There are a few other special exceptions: thus, only **é** is initial, as in **é-le-ver**; **é** is used in certain individual words, as **développer, événement, médecin.**

21. *a.* It is to be noted that the occurrence of two successive mute syllables in the same word is generally avoided. Thus, no word is ever composed of, or ends in, two mute syllables; nor do two often come together in the middle of a word; at the beginning they are not quite so rare (especially when **re** or **de** is prefixed to a verb already beginning with a mute syllable, as **venir,**

revenir, devenir, and even **redevenir**). And no word ever begins with a mute **e**.

b. Hence, such words as **leve, mene, jete, chere, complete, appeles, leves, menes, cheres,** or (as 3d pl. of a verb) **levent, menent,** are impossible in French; and wherever they would occur in the regular processes of word-formation or inflection, the concurrence of the two mute syllables is avoided by giving a full pronunciation to the first. This is oftenest done by writing the grave accent over it: thus, **lève, mène, chère, complète, mènes, mènent**—but sometimes by doubling the consonant (if it be **l** or **n** or **t**) instead: thus, **belle (bel-le), appelles, sienne, prennent** (3d pl.), **nette, jette.**

c. Hence also (since **a** following **je** is pronounced as if a part of the same word with a preceding verb: **18***e*) the final **e** of a verb-form before **je** takes an accent, and this accent is the acute: thus, **donné-je.**

22. The **e** with acute accent, or **é**, has the sound of English so-called "long *a*," in *day* and *they*, and the like (yet without the vanishing sound of "long *e*," with which our "long *a*" usually ends). It is called the close **e** (**e fermé**).

23. The **e** with grave accent, or **è**, has an opener sound, nearly like our "short *e*," in *ebb*, *send*, and the like; and it even in some cases, especially before a following **r**, approaches our still opener sound of *e* in *there* and the like. It is called the open **e** (**e ouvert**).

24. The **e** with circumflex accent, or **ê**, has the open sound, like **è**.

a. The **ê** is not, like **é** and **è**, restricted to situations where the **e** would otherwise be mute, but it is found (though not often) before a consonant in the same syllable: thus, **forêt, benêt.**

25. An **e** that is followed by a consonant in the same syllable (whether that consonant be pronounced or silent) is not mute, but has either the closer sound of **é** or the opener of **è**.

a. It has the closer sound in the final syllables (with silent consonants) **er, ez, ed**: thus, **citer, chantier, nez, citez, pied.**

b. It has the opener sound before a pronounced **r** (whether

final or not), and usually before a double consonant; also before (silent) **t** final: thus, **fer, verre, elle, nette, mienne, richesse, valet.**

26. **E** in a few words has an irregular pronunciation:

a. It is pronounced as an **a** would be, before **n** and **m**, in **femme**, *woman*, **solennel**, *solemn*, and its derivatives, and adverbs ending in **-emment**; also in **nenni**, *nay*, **hennir**, *neigh*, **indemnité**, *indemnity*.

b. It is sometimes used after **g** merely as a device for showing that the **g** is to have its soft sound, being itself not pronounced (**62***e*): thus, **mangeai, mangeons.**

c. The final mute **e** of a monosyllable is generally cut off before a vowel, and replaced by an apostrophe.

Such monosyllables are: the article **le**; the pronouns **je, me, te, se, ce, le, que**; the preposition **de**; the conjunction **que**; the negative particle **ne**. But the subject-pronouns **je** and **ce** are not thus abbreviated when they come after the verb; nor the object-pronoun **le** in the same position, except before another object-pronoun, as **envoyez-l'y.**

The same elision takes place also in **jusque**; and in **lorsque, puisque, quoique** before **il, elle, on, un.** Further, in a few compound words, as **quelqu'un, presqu'île, entr'acte, aujourd'hui.**

d. For **en** and **em** nasal, see **48.**

27. **I, i.**—The vowel **i** has in French invariably the sound (as regards quality) of English "long *e*," or of *i* in the words *machine. pique.*

Thus, **il, ri, vite, ici, midi, défini, divisé, visibilité.**

a. The error of pronouncing a French **i** anywhere like the English "short *i*" of *pin, finish*, and the like, must be very carefully avoided.

b. For **i** before a liquid **l**, see **68**; for **in** and **im** nasal, see **50.**

28. *a.* An **i** followed by mute **e** has, of course, its full pronunciation, the **e** being the vowel of a succeeding mute syllable: thus, **vie, amies, rient** (divided **vi-e, a-mi-es, ri-ent**).

b. But an **i** followed in the same syllable by an **e** not mute, or by any other vowel (or diphthong), is uttered very briefly, as a mere *y*-prefix to the following sound: thus, **pied, ciel, métier, étiez, arrière, arriéré, vierge, vienne, vient, vieille, lieu, monsieur, viole, avions, fiacre, diable, bestiaux.** And even if the **i** is (in verse) regarded as forming a separate syllable, it is apt to lose more or less of its full quantity before another vowel: thus, **manier, prière, pieux, mendiant, niais, action.**

29. *a.* An **i** never takes any other accent-mark than the circumflex: thus, **île, plaît, fît, maître.**

b. A final **i** is elided only in the conjunction **si,** *if,* before the pronouns **il, ils,** *he, they:* thus, **s'il, s'ils.**

30. O, o.—*a.* The vowel **o** has in general the sound of the English *o* in *note* (but without the vanishing sound of *oo*, in which the English "long *o*" usually ends).

It is so pronounced especially when it is circumflexed, or is the final sound of a word: thus, **côte, nôtre, rôle, trône, mot, cachot, trop, nos.**

b. But in many words **o** has an opener sound, approaching that of English *o* in *not* (or midway between that and the *o* of *come*); and before a final *r*-sound it comes near to our *o* in *nor*.

Thus, **robe, mode, Rome, dogue, école, dorer, notre, porter, occuper, modeste**; and **or, mort, corps.**

31. *a.* The **o** is silent in **faon,** *fawn;* **paon,** *peacock;* **Laon** (pronounced as **fan**, etc.).

b. An **o** never takes any other accent-mark than the circumflex: thus, **hôte, rôti, hôpital.**

c. For the diphthong **oi**, see **43**; for **on** and **om** nasal, see **49.**

32. U, u.—The French **u** has a sound unlike anything in English (but precisely agreeing with that of the German "modified *u*," or "*u* with *umlaut*," written *ü*). It is produced by a combination of that position of the tongue with which *ee* (as in *meet*) is made, with that position of the lips with which *oo* (as in *moot*) is made. Fix the tongue, then, to say *ee*, and, without moving it, round the lips as if to say *oo*, and the product is the sound desired.

Thus, **vu, dû, nul, pure, sûre, sucre, minute, férule, occuper, multitude, minuscule.**

33. *a.* **U** is generally silent after **q**; for the exceptions, see under **q** (**72***b*).

b. **U** is also regularly silent after **g**, when itself followed by another vowel, usually **e** or **i**, except when the following **e** or **i** has the diæresis (see **8**): thus, **guerre, guide, langue, longueur, fatigue, fatigué, voguer, vogua, voguons.** For the exceptions, see under **g** (**62***f*).

c. The **um** at the end of a Latin word is pronounced nearly as in English: thus, **forum, album.** In **mameluk** and a few other foreign words, it has the sound of English *oo.*

d. For **un** and **um** nasal, see **51.**

34. **U** often has the circumflex accent: thus, **dû, mûr, châte, flût, flûtes.** It never takes the acute; nor the grave except in **où** *where* (for distinction from **ou** *or*).

35. A **u** followed by a mute **e** keeps its own full sound: thus, **vue, vues, saluent** (3d pl.). But before any other vowel—namely, **a, i,** and **e** not mute—in the same syllable, it is abbreviated and slighted, becoming nearly like English *w*, while the following vowel has the principal vowel-sound of the syllable. Thus, in words where it is by exception pronounced after **g** and **q, lingual, linguiste, Guise, loquace, loquèle, équestre**; after other consonants (where it retains more of the peculiar French sound of **u**), **lui, ennui, autrui, fruit, fuite, cuir, nuire, suivre, cuisse, puissant, duel, écuelle.**

36. **Y, y.**—The sound of **y,** when it is the vowel of a syllable, is the same with that of **i**: thus, **y, style, système, syllabe, physique, Yves.**

a. The value of **i** belongs to **y** also when followed in the same syllable by another vowel, as in **yeux,** *eyes,* **Yonne,** and a few other proper names and foreign words.

37. A **y** between two vowels has the value of double **i,** or **i-i,** one of the i's belonging to the vowel of the preceding syllable, the other (as a brief *y*-like prefix: **28***b*) to that of the following syllable.

Thus, **essayer** is pronounced as if written **essai-ier**; **appuyer,** as if **appui-ier**; **envoyer,** as if **envoi-ier**; and so on.

a. The same value belongs to the **y** in **pays** (pronounced as if written **pai-is**), and in its derivatives **paysage, paysan.**

b. A **y** is not allowed as final, nor in general before mute **e**; and, both in derivation and in inflection, the interchange of **i** and **y,** according as final or not, and as a mute **e** or any fully pronounced vowel follows, is very common: thus, **joie, joyeux**; **roi, royal**; **aie, ayons, ayez, aient**; **appuie, appuies, appuyons, appuyez, appuient**; and so on.

c. But **y** is in some verbs allowed to stand after **a** even before mute **e,** as **essaye**; and it is the rule (though rare) after **e,** as **grasseye, asseye.**

DIPHTHONGS OR VOWEL COMPOUNDS.

38. There are a few very common combinations of two vowels (or three), which represent for the most part simple sounds, but which are commonly called diphthongs; they are **ai** and **ei**, **au** (and **eau**), **eu** (and **œu**), **ou**, and **oi**.

a. It is to be noticed that real diphthongal sounds, like those in English *file*, *foul*, *foil*, are altogether wanting in French.

b. As to vowels followed by mute **e**, see **45**; as to the vowel-groups, compound both in form and in pronunciation, which begin with **i** and **u**, see **28***b*, **35**.

39. **Ai** and **ei**. — These compounds have no other sounds than those of **e** when not mute, or of **é** or **è**.

a. **Ai** final is pronounced as **é**: thus, **gai, donnai, donnerai.** Elsewhere, it is usually like **è**, especially in the endings **ais, ait**: thus, **étais, aurait.**

b. **Ei** (which is never final) has usually the sound that **e** (not mute) would have in the same situation: thus, **peine, reine.**

c. In certain forms of the verb **faire**, *do* (XXXII. **8**)—namely, the pres. pple. **faisant** and those following its analogy, also in the compounds of **faisant** and the derivatives **faisance** and **faiseur**—**ai** is pronounced as a silent **e** (but recently also as **ai**).

d. For **ai** and **ei** nasal, with following **n** or **m**, see **50***c*; for their pronunciation before liquid **l**, see **68***b*.

40. **Au** and **eau** are pronounced as **o** would be in the same situation.

Thus, **au, eau, beau, beauté, tombeau, chevaux, aurai, Maure.**

41. **Eu** has a peculiar sound, nearly like that of English *u* in *fur*, *hurt* (or nearly like German *ö*).

It is closer in **feu, lieu, peuple**, etc.; and opener in **leur, jeune, aveugle**, etc.

a. **Œu**, which is much less common, is pronounced in the same manner as **eu**: thus, **vœu, œuf, bœuf, œuvre.**

b. In all parts of the very common verb **avoir**, *have*, **eu** is pronounced as if simple **u** (**32**): thus, **eu, eue, eus, eurent, eusse**, etc. The same is true in a few words after **g**, where the **e** is only written in order to preserve the soft sound of the **g** (**62***e*): thus, **mangeure, gageure.**

c. In a word or two occurs **œ** before liquid **l** (**68**: written **il**); it is pronounced like **eu**: thus, **œil**, *eye*.

d. After **c** and **g**, before liquid **l** (written **il** or **ill**), in a very

few words, **ue** is written instead of **eu**, and is pronounced like **eu**: thus, **cueillir, orgueil.**

e. For **eu** nasal, with following **n**, see **51.**

42. Ou.—The combination **ou** is everywhere pronounced like English *oo*, in *pool*, *boon*, etc.

Thus, **ou, où (34), cou, bout, hiboux, coupe, source, courte, joujou, douloureux.**

a. In a few words, **ou** is followed in the same syllable by a pronounced vowel (not mute **e**). In such a case, the following vowel has the principal vowel-sound of the syllable, and the **ou** is shortened before it to a sound nearly like that of English *w*: thus, **oui, ouais, ouest, bivouac, fouet, fouetter,** etc.

43. Oi.—The combination **oi**, which is extremely common in French, is everywhere pronounced like the English *wa* in *was* (not with the broader sound of *wa* in *water*).

Thus, **moi, soi, foi, oiseau, toile, ploie, cloître, crois, trois, adroite, froideur, proie.**

a. The **i** is silent in **oignon**, *onion.*

44. *a.* As to **oy** as substitute and equivalent of **oi-i**, see **37**; as to **oi** nasal, with following **n** or **m**, see **50***d*.

b. Until recently, many syllables now written with **ai** were written with **oi**, and the latter spelling is still occasionally met with: thus, **étois, Anglois, connoître, foible,** and so on. They should be pronounced as when written with **ai**. It is still in good usage to write **oi** in **roide** and its derivatives, but the usual pronunciation is that of **raide.**

45. As after **i** (**28***a*) and **u** (**35**), so also after **é** and the vowel-compounds, a mute **e** may stand without making (in prose) any difference in their pronunciation: thus, **fée, crée, crées, créent** (3d pl.); **gaie, gaies, aient** (3d pl.); **bleue, bleues; moue, loue, loues, louent** (3d pl.); **oie, croie, croies, croient** (3d pl.); **pluie, appuie, appuies, appuient.** In all such cases, the **e** is the vowel of an additional mute syllable: thus, **fé-e, lou-es, croi-ent.**

NASAL VOWELS.

46. If a vowel, simple or compound, is followed in the same syllable by **n** or **m**, the **n** or **m** loses its separate pronunciation, and the vowel itself is made nasal.

a. A nasal vowel is one that is pronounced partly through the mouth and partly through the nose: that is, while the mouth-

organs are fixed as in the utterance of an ordinary vowel, the passage from the mouth into the nose is also opened, so that a part of the expelled air goes through the nose and resounds there, giving a nasal twang to the vowel-tone. Beginners may help accustom themselves to recognize and produce this nasal twang by shutting the nostrils with the fingers, in which case the nasality becomes especially loud and conspicuous.

b. In learning to pronounce the nasal vowels, the fault especially to be avoided is the shutting of the mouth-organs after the vowel-sound, so as to end it with anything like an *n* or *ng*-sound. A habit of so doing, if once formed, is extremely hard to get rid of. Better than this is to leave the vowel at first unnasalized, hoping to learn by degrees to give it the right quality.

47. There are in French four nasal vowels, or nasalized vowel-sounds. They are very nearly those heard in the English words *wan*, *song*, *sang*, and *sung*, or *on*, *pawn*, *pan*, and *pun*—as these would be if the *n*- and *ng*-sounds in them were not separately uttered, but had their nasal tone as it were absorbed into the vowel itself.

48. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *wan* or *on* belongs in French to **an** and **am**, and to **en** and **em**.

Thus, **an, pan, banc, quand, lance, manger, ébranler, banquet, anse, ayant, vanter; camp, lampe, ample, chambre; en, dent, enfant, pente, prudence, genre; temps, trempe, remplir, membre, emblème.**

a. The same sound is heard, of course, after the prefixed half-vowel sounds of **i, y,** etc., in the same syllable: thus, **viande, croyant** (pronounced as **croi-iant**), **patience, orient, pingouin.** But **en** after **i** or **y** has sometimes a different sound; see **50***e*.

49. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *pawn* or *song* belongs in French to **on** and **om.**

Thus, **on, non, donc, long, plonge, annonce, conter, ronde; nom, plomb, tomber, romps, rompre, combler, comte.** So also **action** and the like.

50. *a.* The nasalized vowel-sound of English *sang* or *pan* belongs in French especially to **in** and **im.**

Thus, **vin, vint, vinrent, vinsse, pincer, Inde, ingrat; imbu, timbre, simple, impur.**

b. The same sound belongs to **ym** and **yn,** in the few words in which they occur: thus, **thym, nymphe, symbole; syntaxe.**

o ~ m n sound before a vowel
i n " " "

c. The same sound belongs to the compound vowels **ai** and **ei** with following **n** or **m**.

Thus, **sain, sainte, craindre**; **faim, essaim**; **sein, serein, peindre, peinture.**

d. The **oi** of **oin** has not its ordinary value, but the **in** of it has the regular nasal sound of **in**, to which the **o** gives a prefix like a *w*. Thus, **loin, moins, ointe, oindre, joindre, accointance.**

e. Final **en** after **i** (or **y**), and **en** everywhere after **i** in the forms of the verbs **tenir** and **venir**, has the sound of **in**: thus, **rien, bien, sien, moyen** (pronounced as **moi-ien**), **tiens, viendra.** Many pronounce in the same way final **en** after **é**: thus, **européen, vendéen. En** and **em** are also pronounced as **in** in a few proper names and foreign words: thus, **Mentor, Memphis, Bengale, Rubens, agenda, appendice, pensum, examen, pentamètre,** etc.

51. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *sung* or *pun* belongs in French to **un, um,** and **eun.**

Thus, **un, brun, tribun, défunt, lundi, emprunter**; **parfum. humble**; **jeun.**

a. In a few foreign proper names, **un** has the sound of **on**: thus, **Dunkerque, Sund.**

b. In reading Latin, and in a few words taken unchanged from the Latin—as **album, pensum, muséum, Te-deum, triumvir,** also in **rhum,** *rum*—**um** is pronounced very nearly as in English, the vowel not being nasal.

52. If the **n** or **m** is followed by a vowel, the preceding vowel is of course not nasal, because (**4***a*) the **n** or **m** is not in the same syllable with it.

Thus, **tenir, semer, honorer, une, inutile** (divided **te-nir, ho-no-rer, i-nu-ti-le,** etc.); also **inhumain, inhabité,** etc. (the **h** being silent, and not counting as a consonant: see **64**).

a. But in **enivrer** and **enorgueillir** and their derivatives the **e** is nasal.

53. Also when the **n** or **m** is doubled, the preceding vowel is not nasal.

Thus, **année, hébamme, tienne, ennemi, femme, lionne, homme, innocent, immoler.**

a. But in **ennui** and its derivatives, in **ennoblir,** also in **emmener,** and most other words beginning with **emm** (from **en-m**), the **e** is nasal.

b. The combination **mn** is also treated as if a double letter, so

far as concerns the nasalization of a preceding vowel: thus, **condamner** (cf. **69***a*), **indemnité** (**26***a*), **hymne, gymnase.**

54. Other cases of vowels which, against the general rule, are not pronounced as nasal are:

a. The **en** of **ent** in the 3d plural of verbs (the **e** being here mute: **18***c*).

b. The **on** of **monsieur,** being pronounced as a mute **e** (**18***d*).

c. Final **am, em, en, im** in many foreign proper names: thus, **Priam, Abraham, Jérusalem, Niémen, Ibrahim, Éphraim.**

d. A few other words of foreign origin and form: thus, **amen, hymen, spécimen, Éden, décemvir, Nemrod, Kremlin.**

55. As to the pronunciation of the **n** or **m** of a final nasal syllable upon a following vowel, see **86***c*.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

56. General Rules.—*a.* Final consonants, either one or more than one, are in general silent at the end of a French word.

Thus, **pied, trop, les, fait, prix, maux, nez; plomb, rand, pieds, draps, romps, faits, doigt, vingt, vents, vends, instincts.**

b. But final **c, f, l,** and **r** are usually pronounced.

Thus, **sec, avec, tic, bloc, suc, turc; fief, vif, neuf; bal, cruel, vol, seul; par, fer, finir, or, sur, martyr.**

For exceptional cases, in which these four finals are silent, or others than these are pronounced, see under the several letters; for the pronunciation of a final usually silent upon a following initial vowel, see **84** etc.

c. Consonants written double are, as in English, pronounced as single.

Thus, **abbé, greffier, pelle, couronné, frappant, arriver, blessé, jettera.**

For certain exceptions, see below, **58***c* (**c**), **62***c* (**g**), **73***d* (**r**).

57. B, b.—The letter **b** is pronounced as in English.

Thus, **beau, bien, robe, barbier, bombe, subtil.**

a. Final **b** is silent after **m**: thus, **plomb**; but after a vowel (in a few cases only, mostly foreign words and proper names) it is pronounced: thus, **club, radoub, Achab, Joab.**

b. **B** is silent also in a few proper names: thus, **Doubs, Lefebvre.**

58. C, c.—This consonant has in French, as in English, two sounds: a soft sound, like *s*; and a hard sound, like *k*.

As to **ch**, see the next paragraph.

a. **C** is soft before **e** and **i** (or **y**), and the compound vowels in which **e** or **i** is first (**ei, eu, ie**).

Thus, **ce, ceci, ici, placé, procès, douce, ceint, ceux, adoucie, ciel, cymbale.**

b. In all other situations—before other vowels, before consonants, and as final—**c** has its hard sound.

Thus, **car, caisse, cause, col, cœur, cour, curé, cuir; croc, clair; lac, sec, tic, roc, duc.**

c. A double **c** is pronounced as single only if the second **c** would be hard according to the above rule; otherwise, **cc** is like **ks** or **x**: thus, **succès, accident**; but **accord, acclamer, accroc.**

d. **C** is soft also before **a, o, u,** if it has the cedilla (7): thus, **plaça, plaçons, français, reçu, ç'a** (from **ce a**).

e. For the exchange of **c** and **qu,** when **c** comes to be followed by a soft vowel, see *72a.*

f. The **c** of **second** and its derivatives is pronounced like **g.**

g. A final **c** is usually pronounced (*56b*). But it is silent after a nasal vowel: thus, **blanc, jonc, vainc**;—also in some words after **r**: thus, **clerc, porc, marc**;—also in **estomac,** *stomach;* **tabac,** *tobacco;* **lacs,** *snare;* **cric,** *jack;* **broc,** *jug;* **croc,** *hook;* **accroc,** *nook;* **caoutchouc,** *india-rubber.*

59. Ch, ch.—This combination has in French regularly and usually the sound of English *sh*, or *ch* in *machine.*

Thus, **chasse, chaise, chaud, chez, cochon, choux, choix, chute, chuinter**; **hâche, recherche, chuchoter, ponche.**

a. But there are many words of foreign origin (chiefly Greek) in which **ch** has the sound of **k.** Thus, always before a consonant, as **Christ, chrétien, chronique, technologie, chloral, fuchsia, yacht**;—but often also before a vowel, as in **archange, archéologie, chaos, chœur, choléra, orchestre, écho,** and other less common words; and in proper names, as **Chaldée, Bacchus, Charybde, Antiochus, Chanaan, Moloch, Munich, Michel-Ange, Achab.**

b. As special irregularities, **ch** is silent in **almanach**; it is usually pronounced as **g** in **drachme. For sch,** see *75c.*

60. D, d.—This consonant is pronounced as in English.

Thus, **de, des, dédire, dindon, droit, guide, mode, poudre, plaindre.**

a. Final **d** (usually silent: 56*a*) is pronounced in **sud,** *south,* and in most proper names, as **Alfred, David, Cid, Nemrod, Joad** (but not in **Madrid, Saint-Cloud**).

61. F, f.—This consonant is pronounced as in English.

Thus, **faux, feu, fou, fleur, froid, fief, sauf, affaire, forfait, serf, neuf.**

a. Final **f** (usually pronounced: 56*b*) is silent in **clef,** *key,* in **cerf** (as usually pronounced), in the **chef** of **chef-d'œuvre,** in the plurals **œufs, bœufs, nerfs** (though pronounced in the singular of these words, except in **nerf** used figuratively), in the combinations **bœuf gras, œuf dur, œuf frais, nerf de bœuf,** and in **Neufchâtel.** Also the **f** of **neuf,** *nine,* is silent before an initial consonant of a word numbered by it: thus, **neuf livres, neuf cents** (not in **le neuf janvier,** *Jan. 9th;* **neuf par an,** *nine a year,* etc.).

62. G, g.—This consonant has in French, as in English, two sounds: a soft sound, like English *z* in *azure* or *s* in *pleasure;* and a hard sound, like English *g* in *gig.*

a. **G** has its soft sound before the vowels **e, i, y.**

Thus, **gelé, gèle, génie, geindre, orageux, gilet, bougie, gymnase.**

b. In other situations—before any other vowel than **e, i, y,** and before a consonant—**g** has its hard sound.

Thus, **gant, gai, gauche, gomme, goître, goût, aigu; gloire, gros, flegme, ogdoade.** For **g** with following **n,** see the next paragraph.

c. Of double **gg** (which very rarely occurs), the second **g** is pronounced soft if followed by **e, i, y:** thus, **suggérer** (but **agglutiner**).

d. A final **g** (generally silent: 56*a*) is pronounced (hard) in **joug** and in a few foreign words and proper names, as **zigzag, grog, Zadig.** By some it is pronounced in **legs.**

e. In order to preserve the soft sound of a **g,** when in the changes of inflection or derivation it would come to stand before **a** or **o** or **u,** an **e** (not itself pronounced) is often written after it: thus, from **manger** come **mangeant, mangeons, mangeure.** The same silent **e** used to soften a **g** is found in a few independent words, as **geai, George, Geoffroi, pigeon.**

f. A **u** after **g**, when the **u** is followed by **e** or **i** or **y**, has usually in like manner the office of giving the **g** its hard sound, and is itself silent. But **u** after **g** is pronounced when the following vowel has the diæresis (8), also in **aiguille, aiguiser, lingual, linguiste, arguer** (and their derivatives), and a few proper names, as **Guise, Guide, Guy, Guyane.**

g. The **u** of a verb like **conjuguer** is retained through the whole inflection: thus, **conjuguant, conjuguons,** etc.

63. The combination **gn** has in general a peculiar liquid sound, nearly like English *ny* in *lanyard* or *ni* in *union.*

Thus, **gagner, régner, règne, ligne, cicogne, répugne, cygne, magnifique, ignorant, rognon, seigneur.**

This is in reality a palatal *n*-sound, made with the flat of the tongue, instead of its tip, against the fore part of the roof of the mouth.

a. But in a considerable number of words, coming from other languages and not yet fully naturalized, the **g** and **n** are pronounced separately, the **g** having its usual hard sound before a consonant. Some of the commonest of these are: **gnome** (and all other words with initial **gn**), **agnat, cognat, magnat, géognosie, cognition, stagnant, expugnable.**

b. In a few words, the **g** is silent before **n**: thus, **signet, Compiègne, Clugny, Regnard, Regnault.**

64. H, h.—This consonant is not pronounced in French; no such sound as the English *h* should ever be heard in any French word.

a. But there is a considerable number of words in which an initial **h**, though now silent, is treated as if it were still pronounced—namely, by the absence before it of the elision (**26***c*), of the carrying-on of a final consonant (**84**), etc. Such an initial **h** is called "aspirate **h**," the other being called, for distinction, "mute or silent **h**."

b. The commonest of the words beginning with aspirate **h** are as follows:

hache	**hanter**	**harnais**	**héros**	**hors**
haie	**harangue**	**harpe**	**heurter**	**houille**
haïr	**harasser**	**hasard**	**hibou**	**huguenot**
halle	**hardes**	**hâte**	**hideux**	**huit**
halte	**hardi**	**haut**	**homard**	**humer**
hameau	**haricot**	**héraut**	**honte**	**hurler**

c. In general, the other words related with these have aspirate **h** also: thus, **haine** and **haïssable** like **haïr, hauteur** and **hausse** like **haut**; but **héroïne, héroïque, héroïsme,** have mute **h,** though **héros** has aspirate. And the **h** of **huit** is silent after **dix.**

d. Initial aspirate **h** is generally marked in the dictionaries with an inverted apostrophe—thus, **'haie, 'héros, 'honte,** etc.; and the same method will be followed in this work in the vocabularies.

e. The silent initial **h** is treated as if it had no existence, or as if the word actually began with the following vowel; the aspirate initial **h** is treated like any other consonant.

Thus, **l'homme** like **l'ombre, cet homme** like **cet ombre, son heure** like **son euphonie,** etc.; but **le hasard, ce héros, sa harpe,** etc.

f. The words **oui** and **onze** (with **onzième**) are treated as if they began with an aspirate **h**: thus, **que oui, le onze.**

g. **H** with preceding **c** forms a compound consonant, pronounced like English *sh;* see **59** above. In a number of words of foreign origin, it follows other consonants, but without changing their usual pronunciation: thus, **thée, athéiste, Rhin, rhum, myrrhe. Ph** is pronounced as **f**: thus, **philosophe.**

65. J, j.—This consonant has in French invariably the sound of English *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure* (the same as soft **g**: **62**).

Thus, **jamais, je, jeu, joie, joujou, juge, juif.**

66. K, k.—This consonant occurs in French only in a few borrowed words; it has the sound of English *k.*

Thus, **kilomètre, képi, kermesse, kiosque.**

a. The *k*-sound is represented in French words by **c** hard (**58***b*), by **ch** (**59***a*), and by **qu** (**72**).

67. L, l.—This consonant, except when liquid, is pronounced in French as in English.

Thus, **le, la, lilie, loi, lui, lucre, lamelle, folle, nul, table, boucle, souffle, ébranle, simple, hurle.**

a. **L** is silent in **soûl,** *surfeited,* **pouls,** *pulse,* **aulx,** pl. of **ail,** *garlic;* and before a consonant after **au, eu, ou** in the endings of a few other words.

68. An **l** following **i** in the same syllable is generally made liquid—that is, it is pronounced as a close *y.*

Thus, **cil, babil, mil,** *millet*, **avril, péril, grésil, fille, cédille, billard, artillerie, guillotine, barbillon.**

a. The sound of French "liquid l" (**l mouillé**) was formerly that of a palatal *l*, one made with the flat of the tongue, instead of its tip, against the roof of the mouth, nearly like English *ly* in *steelyard*, or *lli* in *brilliant;* and this sound it still has in parts of France; but the now prevailing and accepted pronunciation has changed the *ly*-sound into a simple *y*.

b. If the **i** before **l** is preceded by another vowel, simple or compound, that vowel has its own sound, not forming a compound with the **i**, the latter's sole office being to show the liquid sound of the **l**: thus, **travail, travailler, conseil, conseiller, vieil, vieillir, seuil, feuille, feuillage, houille, houilleur.** And **ue** (after **c** or **g**) and **œ** before liquid **il** have the sound of **eu**: thus, **accueil, orgueil, œil.** But in **poil** the **oi** is the usual diphthong, and **l** has its full sound.

c. But final **l** is silent after **i** in a number of words. The commonest of these are: **baril,** *barrel*, **chenil,** *kennel*, **coutil,** *ticking*, **fournil,** *bakehouse*, **fusil,** *gun*, **nombril,** *navel*, **outil,** *tool*, **sourcil,** *eyebrow;* also **l** in **fils,** *son* (**74***d*), and the plural **gentilshommes,** *gentlemen* (in **gentilhomme** it is liquid; also in **gentil,** *nice*, except at the end of a sentence or when followed by a consonant, when it is silent).

d. Final **l** has the proper **l**-sound after **i** in a number of words: thus, **il,** *he*, **fil,** *thread*, **mil,** *thousand*, **Nil,** *Nile*, **vil, civil, exil, profil, subtil, viril, puéril, volatil;** further, according to the more usual pronunciation, in **cil, avril,** and **péril** (pronounced also with liquid or with silent **l**).

In fact, **il** final except after a vowel is liquid only in the few words given at the beginning of this paragraph; in some of the others, usage varies.

e. At the beginning of a word, **ill** is not liquid: thus, **illatif, illégal, illimité, illogique, illustre.**

f. Double **l** after **i** has the full **l**-sound also in the interior and at the end of a number of words: thus, **ville,** *town*, **mille,** *thousand*, **tranquille, pupille,** *ward*, **distiller,** *distil*, **vaciller,** *vacillate*, **pusillanime, axillaire,** *axillary* (with their compounds, and derivatives), and a few others.

69. M, m.—Except where it makes the preceding vowel nasal, and is itself not pronounced (**46** etc.), **m** has the same sound in French as in English.

Thus, **me, ma, même, moi, meurt, mûr, femme, homme, immémoré, hymne.**

a. But **m** is pronounced **as n** in **automne** (not in **automnal**), etc.; also in **damner** and its compounds and derivatives.

70. N, n.—Except where it makes the preceding vowel nasal, and is itself not pronounced (**46** etc.), **n** has the same sound in French as in English.

Thus, **nappe, naine, ne, neuf, nid, non, noir, nouveau, nul, nuire, bonne, brune.**

71. P, p.—This consonant is in general pronounced as in English.

Thus, **pape, père, peuple, pourpre, pur, puits, plaire, pré, frapper, huppe, soupe.**

a. Final **p** is usually silent (**56**), as **drap, trop, coup**; also, a **p** followed by another silent final, as **rompt, temps, corps.** It is also silent in **sept,** *seven*, and **septième,** *seventh* (not in other derivatives of **sept,** as **septembre**); in **baptême,** *baptism*, and **baptiser,** *baptize;* in **compter,** *reckon*, **dompter,** *subdue*, **exempter, prompter, sculpter,** and the words related with these (except **exemption, impromptu**). But final **p** is pronounced in **cap,** *cape*, and in a few proper names, as **Alep.** For **ph,** see **64***g*.

72. Q, q.—This consonant is almost always followed in French, as in English, by **u**; but in French the **u** is generally silent, and the combination **qu** has the sound of *k*.

Thus, **quatre, quai, que, queue, quelque, qui, quint, quotidien, quoique, calquer, marquer, vainquis, vainquons.**

a. A hard *k*-sound before **e** or **i** cannot be written in French except by **qu**; and hence **qu** sometimes takes the place of **c** in inflection and derivation when **e** or **i** is added: thus, **vainquez, vainquent, vainquis,** from **vaincre; turque,** from **turc; caduque,** from **caduc.**

b. But in a number of French words **qu** has the same sound as in English. The commonest of these are **quadrat, quadri-, quadru-, quarto, quaterne, questeur, quiescent, quiet** (according to some authorities), **quinqua-, quinque-, quintette, quintuple, équateur, équation, équestre, équilatéral, requiem.**

c. A final **q** occurs (save in a very few proper names) only in **cinq,** *five*, and **coq,** *cock*, and is usually pronounced as a *k;* but it is silent in **coq d'Inde,** and in **cinq** before an initial consonant of a word numbered by it: thus, **cinq livres,** *five books* (not in **le cinq mai,** *May* 5*th*, etc.).

73. R, r.—This consonant is always more or less rolled

or trilled in French, and so is made much more distinct than in ordinary English pronunciation.

Thus, **rare, frère, rire, aurore, parure, roi, trois, froid, croix, droit, partir, porteur, arbre, meurtre, bruit, grand, près, vrai, arriverai.**

a. A final **r** is regularly pronounced (**56***b*); but it is usually silent after **e** in words of more than one syllable.

Thus, silent in **fier** (verb), **aimer, parler, léger, entier, officier,** etc.; pronounced in **cher, fer, fier** (adj.), **hier, mer,** etc., and, before other silent finals, in **clerc, perd, perds, cerf, tiers, sert,** etc.

b. Final **r** is also pronounced after **e** in the words of more than one syllable, **amer,** *bitter,* **cancer, cuiller,** *spoon,* **enfer,** *hell,* **hiver,** *winter,* and a few foreign words, chiefly proper names, as **magister, Jupiter, Esther, Oder.** It is not silent in such words before another silent final, unless that final be the plural-sign **s**: thus, it is pronounced in **envers, Anvers, univers, acquiers, désert, Robert** (but silent in **entiers, officiers,** etc.).

c. Final **r** is silent in **monsieur, messieurs.**

d. In the future and conditional of the verbs **courir,** *run,* **mourir,** *die,* **quérir,** *ask,* and their compounds, the double **r** is distinctly to be heard as two separate **r**'s: thus, **courrai, mourrais, acquerront.**

74. S, s.—This consonant is in general pronounced with the sound which it ordinarily has in English (in our words *sense, sister,* etc.).

Thus, **sa, se, si, son, sur, espace, estime, poste, prisme, fiasque, disparu, descriptif, transcrire, anse, penser.**

a. But **s** between two vowels has the sound of our *z*.

Thus, **raser, raison, lèse, misère, rose, blouse, ruse**; also **déshonneur** (silent **h**), **déshabiller,** etc.

b. **S** has the sound of *z* also in **trans-** before a vowel: thus, **transaction, transhumer** (**h** silent), **transitif**; also in **Alsace** and **alsacien,** and in **balsamique**; also in a few other words where followed by a sonant consonant, as **presbytère, Desdémone, desmode,** and **disgrâce** (according to some authorities).

c. On the other hand, **s** has its own *s*-sound even between two vowels, when it is the initial of the second part of a compound word, as in **vraisemblable, parasol, polysyllabe, désuétude, resauver, Desèze**; also in the conjugation of **gésir** (XL. 4), except the infinitive **gésir** itself.

d. **S** final is regularly silent (**56**); but it is sounded in **as,** *ace,*

aloès, cens, *census*, **express, fils,** *son*, **hélas,** *alas!* **jadis,** *formerly*, **laps, lis,** *lily* (except in **fleur-de-lis**), **maïs,** *maize*, **mars,** *March*, **mœurs,** *morals*, **ours,** *bear*, **sens,** *sense* (except in **sens commun**), **sus** (in **en sus**), **tous,** *all* (except when followed by a word which it limits adjectively), **vis,** *screw;* also in a number of words of unchanged Latin form, as **atlas, bis,** *twice*, **blocus, gratis, omnibus**; also in most foreign proper names, as **Romulus, Adonis, Memphis, Lesbos, Andalous, Ladislas, Gil Blas,** and a number of French ones, as **Mons, Rheims, Senlis, Fréjus, Sieyès** (usually **si-èze**).

e. **S** in the interior of a word is usually pronounced, even in the compounds **lorsque, presque, puisque, plus-que-parfait**; but it is silent in many proper names (which have kept unchanged an ancient style of spelling), as **Cosme, Cosne, Rosny, Duguesclin, Praslin, Vosges, Pélasges.**

75. There are certain consonant compounds containing **s** and having a simple sound. Thus:

a. A double **s**, or **ss**, is pronounced like a single **s** (as usual: **56***c*), but always with the hissing *s*-sound, never as *z*: thus, **assez, blesser, disse, grossesse, poussasse, prussien, vinsse.**

b. **Sc**, before **e, i, y**, is sounded as **ss**: thus, **scène, scie, science, ascétique, lascif, obscénité, Scythe.**

c. **Sch** occurs only in a few foreign words, and is mostly pronounced as **ch** would be (English *sh*): thus, **schisme, schamane**; but sometimes like **sk**, as in **schème** and its related words, **scholastique.**

76. T, t.—This consonant is generally sounded as in English.

Thus, **ta, taire, taux, tâter, te, tête, titre, ton, toute, tuteur, nette, trottoir, étroite.**

a. Final **t** is regularly silent (**56***a*); but it is pronounced in a number of words: namely, after a vowel in **ut,** *do*, **brut,** *crude*, **chut,** *hush!* **déficit, dot,** *dowry*, **fat,** *fop*, **mat,** *dull*, **net,** *neat*, **subit,** *sudden* (according to many authorities), **transit,** and **huit,** *eight* (except before the initial consonant of a word numbered by it); after a consonant in **est,** *east*, **ouest,** *west*, **lest,** *ballast*, **Christ** (but the **s** and **t** are silent in **antichrist,** and usually in **Jésus-Christ**), **whist, rapt,** *rape*, **sept,** *seven* (except before an initial consonant of a word numbered by it), and **vingt,** *twenty*, in the numbers 21–29. As to words ending in **ct** after a vowel, there is much difference of usage; ordinarily, **c** and **t** are both pronounced in **tact, contact, exact, abject, correct, direct, infect, strict**; only **c** is pronounced in **circonspect, suspect, district**; both **c** and **t** are silent in **aspect, respect.** Final **t** is further pronounced in a few unchanged Latin words, as **exeat,**

and in many foreign proper names, as **Japhet, Achmet**; also, according to some, at the end of a sentence, in **but**, *goal*, and in **fait**, *deed*, and **sot**, *fool*, used as nouns.

77. *a.* **T** followed by **i**, in certain endings where *ti* in English has the *sh*-sound, is sounded as *s* (not as *sh*): thus, **partial, essentiel, égyptien, ambitieux, plénipotentiaire, Actium, patient, patience, portion**; also in **tie** corresponding to *cy* or *tia* in English, as **démocratie, prophétie, minutie, inertie, Béotie**; and in **tier** (of a verb) corresponding to *-tiate* in English, as **initier, balbutier**; and in **satiété.**

b. But where the **ti** is preceded by **s** or **x** (and *ti* has in English the *ch*-sound), **t** retains its proper value: thus, **question, mixtion.** The same is the case in **chrétien** and in **châtier.**

c. Elsewhere, **t** before **i** has its own proper sound: thus, **moitié, portier, contient, portions** and **portiez** (*i.e.*, before the endings **ions** and **iez** of 1st and 2d pl. of verbs), etc.

78. The combination **th** is everywhere pronounced as simple **t**: thus, **théâtre, thé, pathétique, athéiste, sympathie.** It is silent in **asthme** and **isthme.**

79. V, v.—This consonant is sounded as in English. It never occurs as final.

Thus, **valu, venir, veuve, vivant, vienne, vol, voir, vrai, active, vivre.**

80. W, w.—This consonant occurs only in a very small number of foreign words. It is usually pronounced like English *v*: thus, **wagon**; but in a word or two rather as English *w*: thus, **whist, whig** (the **h** silent).

81. X, x.—This consonant is for the most part pronounced like *ks*, as in English.

Thus, **saxe, sexe, fixer, boxeur, luxe, Alexandre, annexation, exciter, excuse, expérience.**

a. In the initial syllable **ex** before a vowel, it is pronounced like *gz*: thus, **exalté, exemple, exister, exil, exode, exhorter, exhumer** (**h** silent); as also, of course, in the compounds of such words, as **inexact.** Initial **x** has in most words the same *gz*-sound: thus, **Xénophon, Xavier, xylographe. Xerxès** is pronounced **gzersesse.**

b. Final **x** is regularly silent (**56***a*) but it is pronounced, like *s*, in the numerals **six**, *six*, and **dix**, *ten* (except before an initial consonant of a word numbered by them), in **dix-sept**, *seventeen*, **Béatrix, Cadix, Aix en Provence**; in **Aix-la-Chapelle** it is pronounced like *ks*, also in a few foreign words, as **Ajax, Styx, larynx, index, préfix.** In the compound numerals **dix-huit**, *eighteen*, and **dix-neuf**, *nineteen*, it is sounded as *z*.

c. Medial **x** is sounded as *s* (not *z*) in **soixante** *sixty*, and in a few proper names, as **Bruxelles, Auxerre**; and as *z* in **deuxième** *second*, **sixième** *sixth*, **dixième** *tenth*, **sixaine** *half a dozen*.

82. Y, y.—This letter has generally the value of a vowel, being pronounced as **i**, or as double **i**, and as such has been treated of above (**36, 37**). In a few foreign words, it has the value of the English consonantal (semi-vowel) *y*: thus, **yacht** (pronounced **yak**), **Yémen, Yucatan**, etc.

83. Z, z.—This consonant has in general the same sound as in English.

Thus, **Zama, zèle, zigzag, zone, zymotique, gazon.**

a. Final **z** is regularly silent (**56***a*): thus, **nez, aimez, riz.**

But it is pronounced, as *z*, in **gaz** *gas*, and in certain proper names, as **Achaz, Berlioz**; and as *s* in a few other proper names, as **Cortez, Vélasquez, Suez.**

LINKING OR CARRYING-ON OF FINAL CONSONANTS.

84. A final consonant usually silent is liable to be pronounced when followed by another word beginning with a vowel (or mute **h**). This is called the linking or carrying-on of the final (in French, **liaison**).

a. The final consonant thus carried on is pronounced directly upon the following vowel, as if a part of the same syllable with it; any relaxation or pause is to be made before the consonant, not between it and the vowel.

b. The carrying-on of the final in any case depends upon the closeness of connection between the two words, and also in part upon the general style of utterance.

c. Thus, close grammatical connection between the two words, dependence of the one on the other, favors the linking. This, then, generally or invariably takes place between an article or possessive or other adjective and the following qualified noun; between a verb and its preceding or following pronoun, subject or object, or a verb and its preceding subject noun; between an auxiliary and following participle; between an adverb and the following qualified adjective or adverb; between a preposition and its governed noun; and so on. In cases of less close connection, the linking depends in part on euphony as determined by the general habits of the language, in part on the style of delivery:

in reading aloud, namely, and in formal or solemn discourse, a great deal more linking is done than in the freedom of conversation. This class of differences, of course, is only to be learned by much experience. And linking is to be avoided where there is a natural pause, whether marked by a sign of punctuation or not.

85. *a.* Some final consonants have their own proper sound when carried on to the following initial vowel.

Thus, **de broc‿en bouche, il est donc‿arrivé, un‿homme, rien‿à faire, trop‿avant, beaucoup‿occupé, cinq‿enfants, aimer‿à boire, le premier‿homme, cet‿habit, est-‿il, mot-‿à-mot, avez‿été, allez-‿y.**

b. But final **s** and **x**, when linked, take the sound of **z**; **d** takes that of **t**; and **g** (rare) takes that of **k**.

Thus, **les‿hommes, nos‿amis‿ont, nous‿aurons‿eu, pas‿encore, sans‿elle; deux‿hommes, de beaux‿yeux, des chapeaux‿énormes, tu peux‿y aller; un grand‿homme, vend‿il, quand‿il vient, pied-‿à-terre; un rang‿élevé, ce long‿hiver, le joug‿insupportable.** But the **d** of **nord** keeps its **d**-sound.

c. A final consonant that is not silent has in general the same sound before a vowel as before a consonant: thus, **sud-ouest, David était, Ajax eut.** But **six** and **dix** are linked with a following numbered noun after the manner of words ending in silent **x** (*i.e.*, with **z**); and the **f** of **neuf** in a like situation has the sound of **v**: thus, **six‿enfants, dix‿hommes, neuf‿ans.** Also, according to most authorities, the **s** of **fils, jadis, sens,** is linked as **z**.

86. Special exceptional cases are to be noted as follows:

a. The **t** of **et** *and* is never carried on.

b. A final consonant after **r** (unless it be the plural sign **s**) is averse to linking: thus, **vers une heure, hors un seul, il ne sert à rien** (but **sert-‿il**).

c. The final **n** of a nasal syllable is carried on only in cases of close grammatical connection; and when the carrying-on takes place, the preceding vowel loses more or less (sometimes all) of its nasal tone, while retaining the same vowel-quality as in its nasal utterance: thus, **un‿enfant, mon‿ami, ce bon‿homme, en‿Italie, bien‿aimable, rien‿à dire, en plein‿air, enivrer, enorgueillir.**

☞ All words having an exceptional pronunciation will be marked in the vocabularies below by a prefixed asterisk: thus, ***fils.** Then the general vocabulary at the end of the volume will give the necessary references.

LESSON I.

GENDER, ARTICLES, ETC.

1. All nouns in French are either masculine or feminine.

For the distinction of masculine and feminine nouns as shown by their meaning or by their ending, see Second Part, § **13** etc. In general, names of male beings are masculine, and those of female beings are feminine; the names of things having no sex are masculine or feminine, for the most part according as they were so in Latin; but, the old neuter having been lost, nouns of that gender in Latin have become masculine in French.

2. Hence, words qualifying or relating to nouns—as articles, adjectives, pronouns—have also usually a distinction of masculine and feminine form, so as to agree in gender with the nouns to which they belong.

3. There are, as in English, two articles, the definite and the indefinite.

4. The definite article has in the singular a different form for each gender: namely, **le** before a masculine noun, and **la** before a feminine. Examples are:

le père, *the father*	**la mère**, *the mother*
le roi, *the king*	**la reine**, *the queen*
le cheval, *the horse*	**la vache**, *the cow*
le livre, *the book*	**la fleur**, *the flower*

But in the plural there is one form of the article, **les**, for both genders: thus,

les pères, *the fathers*	**les mères**, *the mothers*
les livres, *the books*	**les fleurs**, *the flowers*

5. Before a word beginning with a vowel (or **h** mute: **64***e*), **le** and **la** both lose their vowel, and take the apostrophe, becoming alike **l'** (**26***c*, **15**): thus,

l'ami, *the friend*	**l'amie**, *the (female) friend*
l'homme, *the man*	**l'heure**, *the hour*

6. The indefinite article is **un** before a masculine noun, and **une** before a feminine: thus,

un père, *a father*	**une mère**, *a mother*
un roi, *a king*	**une reine**, *a queen*
un livre, *a book*	**une fleur**, *a flower*

The indefinite article has no plural.

7. The articles must always be repeated in French before every noun to which they belong (that is, an article may not be understood from a noun to a following noun, as it often is in English): thus,

the father and mother, **le père et la mère**
a king and queen, **un roi et une reine**

8. The commonest possessives used with nouns are **mon** masc., **ma** fem., *my*; **son** m., **sa** f., *his* or *her* or *its*; **notre** m. f. *our*; **votre** m. f. *your*: thus,

mon père, *my father*	**ma mère**, *my mother*
son livre, *his* or *her book*	**sa fleur**, *his* or *her* or *its flower*
notre ami, *our friend*	**votre amie**, *your* (*female*) *friend*

VERB-LESSON.

9. The PRESENT tense of the verb **avoir** *have* is as follows:

1	**j'ai**, *I have*	1	**nous avons**, *we have*
2	**tu as**, *thou hast*	2	**vous avez**, *you have*
3	**il a**, *he has* **elle a**, *she has*	3	**ils ont**, *they* (m.) *have* **elles ont**, *they* (f.) *have*

a. The abbreviation **j'** is for **je**, *I* (26*c*). Notice that **je** is not written with a capital, like English *I*.

b. In French, as in English, the pronoun of the 2d pers. plural, **vous** *you*, is ordinarily used in addressing any one, instead of **tu** *thou*. In the exercises, therefore, *you* should always be rendered with **vous** (and *your* with **votre**), and **tu** should be used only when *thou* is given in the English.

10. The same tense in the interrogative form is as follows:

ai-je, *have I?*	**avons-nous**, *have we?*
as-tu, *hast thou?*	**avez-vous**, *have you?*
a-t-il, *has he?*	**ont-ils**, *have they* (m.)?
a-t-elle, *has she?*	**ont-elles**, *have they* (f.)?

a. For the pronunciation of **je** in **ai-je** and the like, see **18***e*.

b. It is seen that in French (as in English) the subject-pronoun is put after the verb in asking a question; and it must always be joined to the verb by a hyphen.

c. If the 3d pers. sing. of any verb ends in a vowel, **a t** is added to it, with a hyphen between, whenever it is followed by the pronoun **il** or **elle** (or by **on**: XXVII. **4**).

This **t** is that of the 3d sing. in Latin, restored in such cases by analogy with the verbs that have retained it throughout, as **est-il, veut-il.**

11. But if the subject of a verb used interrogatively is a noun, the noun is generally put first, and then a corresponding pronoun is put after the verb: that is, the subject is first stated, and then the question is asked about it by means of a pronoun.

Thus, *has the man a book?* is not **a l'homme un livre?** but **l'homme a-t-il un livre?** (literally, *the man, has he a book?*).

a. For certain exceptions, see XXV. **6.**

VOCABULARY.

le père, *the father*	**la mère,** *the mother*
le *fils, *the son*	**la fille,** *the daughter, girl*
le frère, *the brother*	**la sœur,** *the sister*
l'oncle, *the uncle*	**la tante,** *the aunt*
le cousin m., *the cousin*	**la cousine,** *the cousin* f.
l'homme m., *the man*	**la *femme,** *the woman, wife*
le livre, *the book*	**le papier,** *the paper*
la plume, *the pen*	**le crayon,** *the pencil*
le chien, *the dog*	**le chat,** *the cat*
et, *and*	**ou,** *or*
oui, *yes*	**non,** *no*

EXERCISE 1.

[1] L'homme a un père et une mère. [2] A-t-il un chien ou un chat? [3] Il a un chien, et nous avons un chat. [4] Avez-vous le livre? [5] Oui, j'ai mon livre et votre crayon. [6] Mon père a le papier et la plume. [7] As-tu une sœur? [8] J'ai une sœur et un frère. [9] Ont-ils un cousin? [10] Ils ont une cousine et une tante. [11] La femme a-t-elle sa plume ou son crayon? [12] Elle a mon papier et notre crayon. [13] Sa tante

a-t-elle un fils? [14] Non, elle a une fille. [15] Nous avons notre livre, et vous avez votre papier. [16] Mon oncle a une femme. [17] A-t-il un fils? [18] Non, il a une fille.

THEME 1.

[1] I have an uncle. [2] My uncle has a dog, and my aunt has a cat. [3] Has the man the paper? [4] He has my paper and your pen. [5] Have you a brother? [6] No, we have a sister. [7] Our sister has her book and her pencil. [8] Hast thou a dog? [9] Yes, and my brother has a dog and a cat. [10] Has the woman a mother or a father? [11] She has a mother, and her mother has a father and a cousin. [12] Has your cousin our pencil? [13] No, she has her pencil and our pen. [14] They have our pencil and your pen. [15] The man has his book, and we have our paper.

The sentences given in the exercises and themes should be varied and repeated, and turned into question and answer between teacher and pupils, until the words and forms are impressed on the memory.

LESSON II.

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

1. The plural of a noun is generally formed in French, as in English, by adding **s** to the singular: thus,

le roi, *the king*	**les rois**, *the kings*
la fleur, *the flower*	**les fleurs**, *the flowers*
l'homme, *the man*	**les hommes**, *the men*

The principal exceptions to this rule are as follows:

2. Nouns ending in the sibilants **s**, **x**, and **z** have the same form in the plural as in the singular: thus,

le fils, *the son*	**les fils**, *the sons*
la noix, *the walnut*	**les noix**, *the walnuts*
le nez, *the nose*	**les nez**, *the noses*

3. Nouns ending in **au** and **eu**, and a few in **ou**, add **x** instead of **s**: thus,

le chapeau, *the hat*	**les chapeaux**, *the hats*
le lieu, *the place*	**les lieux**, *the places*
le genou, *the knee*	**les genoux**, *the knees*

The nouns in **ou** taking **x** in the plural are **bijou** *jewel*, **caillou** *pebble*, **chou** *cabbage*, **genou** *knee*, **hibou** *owl*, **joujou** *plaything*, **pou** *louse*—all masculine. Other nouns in **ou** take **s**, according to the general rule: *e.g.*, **fous** *fools*, **clous** *nails*, **trous** *holes*.

4. Most nouns ending in **al** and **ail** change these endings to **aux** for the plural: thus,

le cheval, *the horse*	**les chevaux**, *the horses*
le travail, *the work*	**les travaux**, *the works*

Exceptions are **bals** *balls*, **carnavals** *carnivals*, **chacals** *jackals*, **régals** *treats*, **détails** *details*, **éventails** *fans*, **gouvernails** *rudders*, **portails** *doorways* (all masculine), and a few others.

5. A few nouns form their plural quite irregularly; the most important are:

l'œil, *the eye*	**les yeux**, *the eyes*
le ciel, *the heaven*	**les cieux**, *the heavens*

For other cases, see Second Part, § **19** etc.

6. Some nouns are used only in the singular, others only in the plural; some have different plural forms, according to their different meanings: see Second Part, § **19** etc.

7. The plurals of the possessives already given are **mes** *my*, **ses** *his* or *her* or *its*, **nos** *our*, **vos** *your*.

VERB-LESSON.

8. The PRESENT tense of the verb **être** *be* is as follows:

je suis, *I am*	**nous sommes**, *we are*
tu es, *thou art*	**vous êtes**, *you are*
il est, *he is*	**ils sont**, *they* (m.) *are*
elle est, *she is*	**elles sont**, *they* (f.) *are*

a. Compare the Latin: **ego sum, tu es, ille est, nos sumus, vos estis, illi sunt.**

b. The question-forms are **suis-je, es-tu**, etc. (as for the present of **avoir**: I. **10**), with the subject after the verb, and a hyphen between.

VOCABULARY.

la maison, *the house*	**la chambre**, *the room, chamber*
la porte, *the door, gate*	**la fenêtre**, *the window*
l'habit m., *the coat*	**la robe**, *the dress*
le chapeau, *the hat, bonnet*	**le tableau**, *the picture*
l'animal m., *the animal*	**le cheval**, *the horse*
le bras, *the arm*	**la jambe**, *the leg*
l'œil m., *the eye*	**les yeux**, *the eyes*
un m., **une** f., *one*	**deux**, *two*
trois, *three*	**quatre**, *four*
mais, *but*	**aussi**, *also*

EXERCISE 2.

[1] Votre père a-t-il une maison? [2] Oui, il a une maison. [3] Sa maison a une porte, deux chambres, et quatre fenêtres. [4] Mon oncle a deux fils; (ils sont) mes cousins. [5] J'ai un habit et deux chapeaux. [6] L'homme a deux jambes; mais les chevaux et les chiens ont quatre jambes. [7] L'homme a deux bras et deux yeux, et les animaux ont aussi deux yeux. [8] La fille a-t-elle une robe? [9] La fille a trois robes et un chapeau. [10] Avez-vous mes tableaux? [11] J'ai mon tableau; mais ma cousine a vos tableaux. [12] Sa chambre a trois fenêtres et deux portes. [13] Vous avez nos robes et nos habits. [14] Mes cousins ont une maison, un cheval, et deux chiens.

THEME 2.

[1] Has the man two legs? [2] He has two arms and two legs, but the animals have four legs. [3] My father and my mother have a house, three horses, and four dogs. [4] The girls are my cousins. [5] Her cousins are three girls, and they have three hats and three dresses. [6] The men have a dog and a horse. [7] Our uncle has four sons; they are our cousins. [8] His daughter is also a cousin. [9] She has my hat, and I have her dresses. [10] Your sister has a house. [11] Her house has two doors, three rooms, and four windows. [12] The horse is an animal. [13] His brothers have three pictures. [14] My two sisters have two horses.

VERB-EXERCISE.

Are you? We are and you are also. Are they? Has she? Thou art. Is he? They have. They are. I am. You have. Are we? She is. Hast thou? We are and we have.

All the tenses learned should be exercised upon with such scattering questions as these.

LESSON III.

THE PREPOSITIONS à AND de.

1. Nouns in French have no cases. The same noun-form is used both as subject and object of a verb, and after a preposition (as in English); and the meaning of the English possessive is (as often in English also) expressed by help of the preposition **de** *of*.

a. Thus, we have to say in French *the book of the man*, **le livre de l'homme**, for *the man's book*, because the French has no possessive case-form like *man's*. The phrase **de l'homme** *of the man* is in some grammars called the genitive case of **homme** *man*—and so with other nouns.

2. The preposition **de** is always contracted with the article **le** into **du**, and with the article **les** into **des**; while with **la** and **l'** it remains unchanged: thus,

du père (never **de le père**), *of the father, the father's*
des pères (never **de les pères**), *of the fathers, the fathers'*
des mères (never **de les mères**), *of the mothers, the mothers'*

but, on the other hand,

de la mère, *of the mother, the mother's*
de l'homme, *of the man, the man's*
de la fleur, *of the flower*
de l'amie, *of the (female) friend*

3. The **e** of **de** is apostrophized (26*c*) before any vowel (or silent h): thus,

d'un homme, *of a man*	**d'une fleur**, *of a flower*
d'ami, *of friend*	**d'homme**, *of man*

4. The preposition **à** *to* is in like manner always contracted with the article **le** into **au**, and with the article **les** into **aux**; but with **la** and **l'** it remains unchanged: thus,

au père (never **à le père**), *to the father*	**aux pères**, *to the fathers*
au roi (never **à le roi**), *to the king*	**aux reines**, *to the queens*

but, on the other hand,

à la mère, *to the mother*	**à la fleur**, *to the flower*
à l'homme, *to the man*	**à l'amie**, *to the (female) friend*

a. A noun in French is never used (as it sometimes is in English) datively, or as indirect object of a verb without a preposition. Thus, *I give the man the book* is always **je donne le livre à l'homme**—literally, *I give the book to the man.* The phrase **à l'homme** *to the man* is in some grammars called the dative case of **homme** *man*—and so with other nouns.

5. The prepositions **de** and **à** must be repeated before every noun that they govern: thus,

des pères et des mères, *of the fathers and mothers*

aux hommes, aux femmes, et aux enfants, *to the men, women, and children*

6. For *belong* is used the verb **être** *be*, followed by **à** *to.* Thus, **à qui est-il** *whose is it?* **il est à ma cousine** *it is my cousin's* (literally, *it is* or *belongs to my cousin*).

VERB-LESSON.

7. The IMPERFECT tenses of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are as follows:

j'avais, *I had*	**j'étais**, *I was*
tu avais, *thou hadst*	**tu étais**, *thou wast*
il avait, *he had*	**il était**, *he was*
nous avions, *we had*	**nous étions**, *we were*
vous aviez, *you had*	**vous étiez**, *you were*
ils avaient, *they had*	**ils étaient**, *they were*

a. Every imperfect in the language, without exception, is in-

flected in this way, with the endings **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.**

b. This tense expresses continuous past action (see § **119**), and is often to be rendered by *was having*, *kept having*, *used to have*, and the like.

c. The interrogative form is **avais-je, étais-tu, avait-il,** etc., as in the tenses already given.

d. The French imperfect is from the Latin imperfect: **avais** is **habebam**; **étais** is **stabam**—since parts of the verb **stare** *stand* have been taken to fill up the inflection of the verb **be** in French (see below, XI. 1*a*).

VOCABULARY.

l'ami m., *the friend*	**l'amie** f., *the friend*
le neveu, *the nephew*	**la nièce**, *the niece*
l'enfant m., *the child*	**le garçon**, *the boy*
le jardin, *the garden*	**l'arbre** m., *the tree*
la feuille, *the leaf, sheet*	**la fleur**, *the flower*
je donne, *I give*	**il, elle donne**, *he, she gives*
voici, *here is* or *are*	**voilà**, *there is* or *are*

EXERCISE 3.

[1] La fille de mon oncle est mā cousine, et je suis son cousin. [2] Mā cousine donne la fleur à votre nièce. [3] Le garçon est le fils du neveu de mon père. [4] Je donne les fleurs du jardin aux enfants. [5] Votre sœur a-t-elle mes crayons? [6] Elle a les crayons des filles et des garçons. [7] L'enfant est le fils de l'ami de ma sœur. [8] Voici la maison des deux amies de ma mère. [9] Votre ami a-t-il un jardin? [10] Voilà les arbres du jardin de mon ami. [11] La femme donne une fleur au garçon. [12] La maison est à mon père. [13] Voilà les feuilles de l'arbre; elles sont à votre amie. [14] A-t-elle aussi les fleurs? [15] Non, les fleurs sont à l'enfant. [16] Voici la porte de ma chambre. [17] La maison de nos amis a quatre fenêtres.

THEME 3.

[1] The man's coat and hat. [2] The woman's dress. [3] The eyes of the horse are two, his legs are four. [4] I have the boy's dog and the girl's cat. [5] I give the cat to the chil-

dren, and the dog to the son of my cousin. [6] The brothers of the girls have also a horse. [7] He gives a hat to the son of his friend. [8] My uncle gives the boys the leaves, and the girls the flowers. [9] There are the boy's books. [10] The house is my friend's. [11] The boy gives his sister a book, and the girl gives her brother a pen and pencil. [12] The paper is the children's, but the pens are my sisters'. [13] The house belongs to my father's brother. [14] The sister of my nephew is my niece. [15] She gives her aunt a flower and three leaves.

VERB-EXERCISE.

He was. Had you? They are. Was she? Thou hadst. They were. Are we? I had. Was I? Had she or had he? They have and they had. Am I? You are. Art thou? She is.

LESSON IV.

PARTITIVE AND INCLUSIVE SENSES OF THE NOUN.

1. The partitive sense of a noun is that which in English may be expressed by putting *some* or *any* before the noun, but which is oftenest left unexpressed.

Thus, *have you bread* (*i.e.*, some bread, or any bread)? *we have books* (or, some books); *they had pens, but they had no ink* (*i.e.*, some pens, not any ink); and so on.

2. In French, this sense of a noun is in general distinctly expressed, by putting before it the preposition **de** *of*, along (usually) with the definite article: thus,

j'ai du pain, *I have bread* (literally, *of the bread*)
avez-vous des livres, *have you books* (literally, *of the books*)?
donnez-moi de la farine et de l'eau, *give me some flour and water*

The rules for the combination of **de** with **le** and **les**, and for the repetition of **de** before every noun that it governs, have been already given (III. 2, 5).

3.* Sometimes, however, the article is omitted, and the preposition alone expresses the partitive sense of the noun. This is the case:

a. When the noun has an adjective before it (see below, VIII. 6): thus,

j'ai de bon pain (not **du bon pain**), *I have good bread*
nous avons d'excellents livres, *we have excellent books*

b. After a negative verb (see below, XII. 7): thus,

je n'ai pas de pain (not **du pain**), *I have not any bread*
nous n'avons jamais de livres, *we never have books*

4. More rarely, both preposition and article are omitted, and the bare noun stands in the partitive sense, as in English. This is the case:

a. After **ni**...**ni**, meaning *neither*...*nor* (see below, XII. 7*a*): thus,

je n'ai ni pain ni beurre, *I have neither bread nor butter*

b. In long enumerations: thus,

il y a sur la table eau, vin, bière, pain, beurre, fromage,
there is on the table water, wine, beer, bread, butter, cheese

For further details and exceptions as to the expression of the partitive sense of a noun, see Second Part, § 35.

5. On the other hand, a noun is sometimes used in its most inclusive sense, or as signifying the whole class of objects to which it applies. This sense, which is usually left unexpressed in English, requires in French the definite article before the noun: thus,

man (*i.e.*, the whole race) *is mortal*, **l'homme est mortel**
men (*i.e.*, all men) *are mortal*, **les hommes sont mortels**
life is short, **la vie est courte**
sleep is the brother of death, **le sommeil est le frère de la mort**

a. The article thus used may conveniently be called the INCLUSIVE ARTICLE.

b. The inclusive article is especially common before abstract nouns: *e.g.*, **la vie** *life*, **la beauté** *beauty*, **la nature** *Nature*, **la fortune** *fortune*, **la sensibilité** *sensibility*.

* Paragraphs 3 and 4 are added here because it is desirable to have in one place all the principal rules about the partitive. Classes may well omit them until they take this Lesson in review, after having had Lessons VIII. and XII.

c. The inclusive article is not wholly wanting with a singular noun in English: thus, *the dog is an enemy of the cat; the hand has five fingers*, and so on.

6. The frequently occurring expression of the partitive and inclusive senses of the noun, which in English are left to be simply inferred from the connection, is a marked feature of French usage. Often, the two senses, alike unexpressed in English, are distinguished in French in the same brief sentence: thus, *birds have wings* (*i.e.*, all birds, but a certain limited number of wings), **les oiseaux ont des ailes**; *time is money*, **le temps est de l'argent.**

VERB-LESSON.

7. The PRETERIT tenses of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are as follows:

j'eus, *I had*	**je fus**, *I was*
tu eus, *thou hadst*	**tu fus**, *thou wast*
il eut, *he had*	**il fut**, *he was*
nous eûmes, *we had*	**nous fûmes**, *we were*
vous eûtes, *you had*	**vous fûtes**, *you were*
ils eurent, *they had*	**ils furent**, *they were*

a. As to the pronunciation of **eu** in **eus** etc., see **41***b*.

b. All preterits in the language, without exception, have the plural endings **-mes, -tes, -rent**, and before the first two of these endings they have a circumflexed vowel (either **û**, as here, or **â**, or **î**); and all excepting those of the first regular conjugation (XVIII.) have **-s, -s, -t**, as here, in the singular.

c. The preterit expresses simple past action, with nothing else implied. In some grammars, the tense is called the past definite (Fr. **passé défini**).

d. The interrogative form is **eus-je, fus-tu, eut-il**, and so on, as in the other tenses.

e. The French preterit is the Latin perfect: compare with **fus** etc. the Latin **fui, fuisti, fuit, fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt.**

VOCABULARY.

Dieu, *God*	**la terre**, *the earth*
le pain, *the bread*	**la viande**, *the meat*
le beurre, *the butter*	**le fromage**, *the cheese*
le sel, *the salt*	**le poivre**, *the pepper*
le café, *the coffee*	**le thé**, *the tea*
le lait, *the milk*	**le sucre**, *the sugar*
le fruit, *the fruit*	**l'encre** f., *the ink*

Exercise 4.

[1] L'enfant avait-il du pain? [2] Oui, il avait du pain et du beurre. [3] Mon frère donne des fruits à votre sœur. [4] Ses filles ont-elles du café? [5] Elles ont du café, et elles ont aussi du lait et du sucre. [6] Avez-vous du fromage? [7] Non, mais j'ai du beurre. [8] Je donne au garçon de la viande; il a du sel et du poivre aussi. [9] A-t-il des livres et des crayons? [10] Elle avait du papier et de l'encre. [11] L'homme est l'enfant de Dieu. [12] Dieu donne aux hommes les fruits de la terre. [13] L'homme est un animal. [14] Voilà des livres; ils sont à mon ami. [15] As-tu des frères et des sœurs? [16] Non, mais j'ai des amis et des amies.

Theme 4.

[1] Have you any coffee or tea? [2] Yes, we have some coffee, and our mother has some tea. [3] His mother gives bread and milk to her children. [4] Have your sisters meat, pepper, and salt? [5] No, but they have bread and cheese. [6] I have a garden, and I give fruit to my friends. [7] Have you my pencils? [8] Your brother has your pencils, but I have some paper and pens. [9] The boy has horses and dogs. [10] Cats are animals. [11] The dog is also an animal. [12] God gives to man flowers, the fruits of the earth. [13] God is the friend of man. [14] The earth is the garden of God. [15] Had the child a father or mother? [16] No, but she had friends and sisters. [17] Here are coats and hats. [18] There are books and pens.

VERB-EXERCISE.

(For the past forms, give both imperfect and preterit.)

You had. Had they? Has she? We have. They were. Is he? Have you? You were. He was. Had I? I am. Thou wast. Hadst thou? I was.

LESSON V.

MATERIAL AND MEASURE.

1. In French (as often in English), the material of which anything is made is expressed by help of the preposition **de** *of:* thus,

une bague d'or, *a ring of gold* — **une cuiller d'argent**, *a spoon of silver*

la bourse de soie, *the purse of silk* — **des chapeaux de velours**, *hats of velvet*

a. Such expressions as *a gold ring, a silver spoon, a silk purse, a velvet hat*, in which we use in English the noun of material as if it were an adjective, are impossible in French.

b. English adjectives of material in *-en* or *-n*, as *wooden, woolen, leathern*, also have to be expressed in French by **de** and the noun of material: thus,

une table de bois, *a wooden table* — **du drap de laine**, *some woolen cloth*

2. Nouns expressing measure of quantity, of weight, of number, and so on, are also followed (as usually in English) by **de** *of* before the name of the thing measured: thus,

une bouteille de vin, *a bottle of wine* — **une livre de sucre**, *a pound of sugar*

des morceaux de pain, *bits of bread* — **des paires de bas**, *pairs of stockings*

3. Also after adverbs of quantity, **de** *of* is required in French (though usually omitted in English): thus,

beaucoup d'eau, *much water* (literally, *much of water*)

trop de vin, *too much wine* — **assez de fleurs**, *enough flowers*

This construction is that of a noun instead of an adverb, or like that of the corresponding English words before *this* and *that:* thus, *enough of this and too much of that.*

4. The commonest adverbs of quantity are:

beaucoup, *much, many*	**peu**, *little, few*
plus, *more*	**moins**, *less*
trop, *too much, too many*	**trop peu**, *too little, too few*
tant, *so much, so many*	**autant**, *as much, as many*
combien, *how much?*	**assez**, *enough*

a. **Assez** *enough* is never allowed to stand, as in English, after the noun measured: thus, always **assez de pain**, for English *enough bread*, or *bread enough*.

b. After **bien**, also meaning *much*, *many*, and **la plupart** *most* (literally, *the more part*), **de** must be followed by the definite article before the noun: thus, **bien des hommes** (not **d'hommes**) *many men*, **la plupart des livres** *most books*.

VERB-LESSON.

5. The FUTURE tenses of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are these:

j'aurai, *I shall have*	**je serai**, *I shall be*
tu auras, *thou wilt have*	**tu seras**, *thou wilt be*
il aura, *he will have*	**il sera**, *he will be*
nous aurons, *we shall have*	**nous serons**, *we shall be*
vous aurez, *you will have*	**vous serez**, *you will be*
ils auront, *they will have*	**ils seront**, *they will be*

a. Every future in the language, without exception, is inflected like these, with the endings **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont**, and with **r** before the endings.

b. The interrogative form is, as in other tenses, **aurai-je, seras-tu, aura-t-il** (I. 10*c*), etc.

c. The French future corresponds with no Latin tense, but is a modern formation, made by adding the present of **avoir** to the infinitive of the verb: thus, **aurai** is contracted from **avoir-ai**, *I have to have*, etc. Hence the correspondence of the endings with those of the present of **avoir**, and hence also the preceding **r**; since the French infinitive always ends in **r** (or **re**).

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the words of quantity given in the Lesson.)

le vin, *the wine*	**l'eau** f., *the water*
le drap, *the cloth*	**le velours**, *the velvet*
la laine, *the wool*	**la soie**, *the silk*
la table, *the table*	**la chaise**, *the chair*
le mètre, *the meter, yard*	**la livre**, *the pound*
la bouteille, *the bottle*	**le verre**, *the glass*
la tasse, *the cup*	**le morceau**, *the bit, piece*
le bois, *the wood*	**que**, *than, as*

EXERCISE 5.

[1] Avez-vous une bouteille de vin? [2] Non, mais j'ai un verre d'eau, et un morceau de pain. [3] Mon ami a une table

de bois et beaucoup de chaises. [4] Il a plus de chaises que de tables. [5] Combien de tableaux avez-vous? [6] Nous avons trois tableaux. [7] Le garçon a moins de plumes que de crayons. [8] Votre sœur a-t-elle des robes de drap? [9] Elle a des robes de soie et un chapeau de velours. [10] J'avais deux habits et autant de chapeaux. [11] Avaient-elles du drap de laine? [12] Aviez-vous autant de soie que de velours? [13] Nous avons quatre mètres de soie, et assez de velours. [14] Il avait trop de vin et trop peu d'eau. [15] Elle donne à son frère une tasse de thé ou de café. [16] Bien des hommes ont peu de pain et de viande. [17] La plupart des tables sont de bois.

THEME 5.

[1] Had you much wine? [2] I had a cup of tea and a bit of bread. [3] Your daughter has my silk dress. [4] I had too many pens and pencils, and too little paper. [5] Has the girl dresses enough? [6] She has three woollen dresses, and as many hats. [7] The man gives a bottle of wine to his friends. [8] She had also a bit of bread and cheese, and a glass of milk. [9] I have more friends than brothers. [10] Most men have water enough, and many men have too much wine. [11] My mother had many yards of silk and velvet. [12] We have wooden tables and glass bottles. [13] Most bottles are of glass. [14] My father gives his niece four yards of cloth and a little velvet. [15] I had three pounds of tea and as much coffee, and a pound of sugar. [16] You have less pepper than salt. [17] There are many books and sheets of paper.

VERB-EXERCISE.

She will have. Will he be? Were they? We shall be. They will have. Is he? Had you? I shall be. Shall I have? They had. We are. We shall have. Wilt thou have? You will be.

LESSON VI.

PREPOSITIONS; PROPER NAMES.

1. The commonest French prepositions (besides **à** and **de**) are as follows:

après, *after*	**derrière**, *behind*	**pour**, *for*
avant, *before* (previous to)	**devant**, *before* (in front of)	**sans**, *without*
avec, *with*	**en**, *in, into*	**sous**, *under*
chez, *at the house of*	**entre**, *between*	**sur**, *upon*
dans, *in, into*	**par**, *by, through*	**vers, envers**, *toward*

Other prepositions and preposition-phrases will be given in a later Lesson (XXXIII.).

a. For *in* or *into*, **dans** is more common than **en**; and **en** is almost never used before the definite article or a possessive.

b. Of the two prepositions meaning *before*, **avant** is used only of time, **devant** only of place.

c. **Chez** *at the house of* may often be rendered by *with*, but in a different sense from **avec**: thus, **dînez chez nous**, *dine with us, i.e.*, at our house; but **dînez avec nous**, *dine with us, i.e.*, along with us, in our company somewhere.

2. Names of countries and provinces in French generally take the definite article.

a. Some of the commonest names of countries are:

la France, *France*	**l'Amérique**, *America*
l'Angleterre, *England*	**l'Europe**, *Europe*
l'Allemagne, *Germany*	**l'Asie**, *Asia*
l'Espagne, *Spain*	**l'Afrique**, *Africa*
l'Italie, *Italy*	**la Chine**, *China*
la Suisse, *Switzerland*	**la Belgique**, *Belgium*
l'Autriche, *Austria*	**la Hollande**, *Holland*
la Prusse, *Prussia*	**la Suède**, *Sweden*
la Russie, *Russia*	**la Norvège**, *Norway*

All these are feminine; masculine are **le Danemark** *Denmark*, **le Hanovre** *Hanover*, **le Mexique** *Mexico*, **le Japon** *Japan*, and a few others.

3. But the article is omitted before names of countries in certain cases, especially the following:

a. After **en** *in, into, to:* thus, **il est en France** *he is in France*, **je vais en Amérique** *I am going to America.*

b. After words meaning *king, emperor, kingdom, empire, duchy*, or the like; also after **histoire** *history*, **carte** *map*, etc.: thus, **roi de France** *king of France*, **l'empire d'Allemagne** *the empire of Germany*, **une carte d'Amérique** *a map of America.*

c. After the name of a commodity coming from the country designated: thus, **les vins de France** *the wines of France* (French wines), **du cuir de Russie** *Russian leather*, **de l'or de Californie** *some Californian gold.*

4. With the name of a country, the preposition **en** is used, to express both *in* and *to* (literally, *into*); but with the name of a city or town, **à** is used, to express both *to* and *at* or *in.*

Thus, **je vais en Angleterre** *I am going to England*, **but je vais à Londres** *I am going to London*, and **il demeure en Italie** *he lives in Italy*, but **il demeure à Rome** *he lives in (at) Rome.*

5. With regard to the use of the article, other proper names follow the same rules in French as in English: thus,

a. Names of persons and of cities and towns are used without the article.

b. Names of mountains and rivers take the article.

c. Examples of common names of persons are:

Jean, *John*	**Jeanne**, *Jane, Joan, Joanna*
Louis, *Lewis*	**Louise**, *Louisa*
Henri, *Henry*	**Henriette**, *Henrietta, Harriet*
Jules, *Julius*	**Julie**, *Julia*
François, *Francis, Frank*	**Françoise**, *Frances, Fanny*
Guillaume, *William*	**Marie**, *Mary, Maria*

d. Examples of names of towns are:

Londres, *London*	**Genève**, *Geneva*
Vienne, *Vienna*	**Venise**, *Venice*
***Bruxelles**, *Brussels*	**Lyon**, *Lyons*

e. Examples of names of mountains and rivers are:

les Alpes, *the Alps*	**les Pyrénées**, *the Pyrenees*
le Rhin, *the Rhine*	**la Tamise**, *the Thames*
le Danube, *the Danube*	**la Seine**, *the Seine*

But names of single mountains also take the article: thus, **le Vésuve** *Vesuvius.*

f. A few names of persons and places require the article: thus, **le Dante** *Dante*, **le Havre** *Havre*, **le Caire** *Cairo.*

VERB-LESSON.

6. The CONDITIONAL tenses of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are:

j'aurais, *I should have*	**je serais**, *I should be*
tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*	**tu serais**, *thou wouldst be*
il aurait, *he would have*	**il serait**, *he would be*
nous aurions, *we should have*	**nous serions**, *we should be*
vous auriez, *you would have*	**vous seriez**, *you would be*
ils auraient, *they would have*	**ils seraient**, *they would be*

a. Every conditional in the language, without exception, is inflected like these, with the endings **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**—which are precisely the same with the imperfect endings (III. 7*a*); and these endings are invariably preceded by **r.**

b. **The conditional is, in fact, a kind of imperfect or past tense to the future, always differing from it in the endings only. It is made up of the infinitive with the imperfect of avoir added to it (aurais = avoir avais, literally,** *I had to have*).

VOCABULARY.

(Only the words of the lists given in the Lesson.)

EXERCISE 6.

[1] Jean est-il chez son cousin? [2] Non, il est chez sa tante. [3] Sa sœur est avec ses amies dans le jardin derrière la maison. [4] Le vin de France était sur la table de bois entre les deux fenêtres. [5] Aviez-vous du thé dans votre tasse? [6] J'avais du thé avec du lait et du sucre. [7] La bouteille de lait était pour l'enfant. [8] Louis est en France, mais sa sœur est à Rome. [9] Paris, sur la Seine, est la capitale de la France. [10] Serez-vous en Angleterre? [11] Oui, nous

serons à Londres. [12] La Suisse est entre la France et l'Italie. [13] Les Alpes sont en Suisse. [14] Le chapeau de Jeanne était sous une chaise devant la porte. [15] Avez-vous des amis en Amérique? [16] Mon ami a beaucoup d'arbres devant sa maison.

THEME 6.

[1] Is the child at his uncle's? [2] No, he is in his room with his brothers. [3] The fruit on the table is for the girls. [4] Your brother William is in front of the house behind a tree. [5] John is with Mary at her father's. [6] The chair is between the two windows. [7] Henry is in France, and he will be at Paris. [8] The dress was of French silk, and the coat was of English cloth. [9] The trees are in the garden behind my house, and the fruit is on the trees. [10] You will have sugar and milk in your coffee. [11] Henry's dog is under the table. [12] Frank had water in his glass. [13] The bread and the Italian cheese will be on the table.

VERB-EXERCISE.

Would you have? They will be. She would be. He will have. Will she have? They had. I should be. Wouldst thou be? We are. Have they? We should be. Would they be? I am. Have I? He had. They will have.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES—GENDER.

1. Adjectives in French have in general a variation of form for gender and for number, and are made to agree in both these respects with the nouns (or pronouns) to which they relate.

a. The adjective, whether attributive or appositive or predicative, whether before or after the word it qualifies or otherwise separated from it, whether qualifying a word expressed or understood, must be of the gender and number of the qualified word.

b. Exceptions are adjectives relating to **nous** *we* and **vous** *you*, when these pronouns are used with reference to a single person. Such adjectives are singular only. Thus, *you are very good* is **vous êtes très bon** (to a man), or **vous êtes très bonne** (to a woman); but **très bons** or **très bonnes**, if addressed to more than one.

2. A feminine adjective ends always in mute **e**; and the feminine of most adjectives is made by simply adding mute **e** to the masculine form: thus,

m.	f.		m.	f.	
petit,	**petite,**	*small*	**aisé,**	**aisée,**	*easy*
grand,	**grande,**	*great*	**joli,**	**jolie,**	*pretty*
noir,	**noire,**	*black*	**vrai,**	**vraie,**	*true*
royal,	**royale,**	*royal*	**nu,**	**nue,**	*naked*
plein,	**pleine,**	*full*	**bleu,**	**bleue,**	*blue*

But there are many exceptions to this rule. Thus:

3. If a masculine adjective ends already in **e** mute, the feminine has the same form: thus,

m. f.		m. f.	
sage,	*wise, well-behaved*	**honnête,**	*honest*
facile,	*easy*	**impie,**	*impious*

4. Adjectives ending in the masculine in **el, eil, ien, on,** also many in **s** and **t,** double their final consonant before the added mute **e** of the feminine: thus,

m.	f.		m.	f.	
cruel,	**cruelle,**	*cruel*	**pareil,**	**pareille,**	*like*
ancien,	**ancienne,**	*ancient*	**bon,**	**bonne,**	*good*
gros,	**grosse,**	*big*	**bas,**	**basse,**	*low*
net,	**nette,**	*neat*	**sot,**	**sotte,**	*stupid*

a. Adjectives in **s** and **t** falling under this rule are mostly monosyllabic, but also **épais** (**épaisse**) *thick*, **sujet** (**sujette**) *liable*, **muet** (**muette**) *mute*, and a few others. But **ras** *smooth*, **obtus** *obtuse*, **prêt** *ready*, **mat** *dull*, add **e** simply.

b. **Nul** (**nulle**), **gentil** (**gentille**), and **fol** and **mol** (below, 7), follow the analogy of adjectives in **el** and **eil**.

5. Adjectives ending in the masculine in **x** and **f**

change these respectively to **s** and **v** before the added **e** mute: thus,

m.	f.		m.	f.	
heureux,	**heureuse,**	*happy*	**jaloux,**	**jalouse,**	*jealous*
vif,	**vive,**	*lively*	**neuf,**	**neuve,**	*new*

For an exception or two, see below, **8.**

6. In some adjectives, changes of spelling are the necessary result of the addition of **e** for the feminine: thus,

a. Adjectives having in the masculine an **e** before a final consonant (whether pronounced or silent) change it to **è** in the feminine, if the consonant is not doubled (**21***b*): thus,

m.	f.		m.	f.	
cher,	**chère,**	*dear*	**complet,**	**complète,**	*complete*

And **ef** in like manner becomes **ève**: thus, **bref, brève,** *brief.*

b. Final **c** is changed for the feminine to **que** (**72***a*), and final **g** to **gue** (**62***f*): thus,

m.	f.		m.	f.	
public,	**publique,**	*public*	**[franc,]**	**franque,**	*Frankish*
turc,	**turque,**	*Turkish*	**long,**	**longue,**	*long*

And so **oblong** *oblong.* But **grec** *Greek* makes **grecque** (not **grèque**); and **blanc** *white,* **franc** *frank,* **sec** *dry,* make more irregularly **blanche, franche, sèche.**

c. Adjectives ending in **gu** add **ë** for the feminine (**8***a*): thus, **aigu, aiguë,** *acute;* **ambigu, ambiguë,** *ambiguous.*

7. Five adjectives have two different forms in the masculine, from one of which the feminine is made; they are:

m.		f.	
beau	**bel,**	**belle,**	*beautiful*
nouveau	**nouvel,**	**nouvelle,**	*new, novel*
vieux	**vieil,**	**vieille,**	*old*
fou	**fol,**	**folle,**	*foolish, mad*
mou	**mol,**	**molle,**	*soft*

a. Of the two masculine forms, the one in **l** is used before a word beginning with a vowel (or **h** mute): thus,

un bel homme, *a handsome man*
le nouvel ordre, *the new order*
un fol espoir, *a foolish hope*

but **un beau livre** *a handsome book*, **le livre est beau** *the book is handsome*, and so on.

8. Some adjectives form their feminine more irregularly; of these the commonest are:

m.	f.		m.	f.	
frais,	**fraîche,**	*fresh*	**faux,**	**fausse,**	*false*
doux,	**douce,**	*sweet*	**favori,**	**favorite,**	*favorite*

VERB-LESSON.

9. The IMPERATIVES of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are as follows:

aie, *have, have thou, do thou have*	**sois,** *be,* etc.
ayons, *let us have, have we*	**soyons,** *let us be,* etc.
ayez, *have, have ye, do you have*	**soyez,** *be,* etc.

a. While the English imperative may be used either with or without a subject expressed, the French never allows one.

b. Third persons imperative are supplied from the present subjunctive: see below, VIII. 7*c*.

VOCABULARY.

bon, bonne, *good*	**mauvais, -aise,** *bad, wicked*
beau bel, belle, *handsome, beautiful*	**joli, jolie,** *pretty*
grand, grande, *large, tall*	**petit, petite,** *small, little*
vieux vieil, vieille, *old*	**jeune,** *young*
rouge, *red*	**noir, noire,** *black*
blanc, blanche, *white*	**long, longue,** *long*
heureux, heureuse, *happy*	**cher, chère,** *dear*
la *ville, *the city*	**le *village,** *the village*
le maître, *the master*	**l'élève,** *the pupil*
très, *very*	**trop,** *too*

EXERCISE 7.

[1] Votre sœur est-elle jolie? [2] Ma petite sœur est sage et jolie. [3] La maison de mon père est belle, et son jardin est grand. [4] Le fruit de son arbre est bon. [5] Votre oncle est-il beau? [6] Oui, mon oncle est un bel homme, et ma tante est une très belle femme. [7] Le maître est bon, et l'enfant sera heureux. [8] Le petit enfant a un vieux maître. [9] Le village est-il grand? [10] Non, il est petit, mais la ville est grande et belle. [11] Le petit vieil homme est mon cher

maître. [12] La fleur est blanche, mais le fruit est rouge ou noir. [13] Le maître était très vieux, et l'élève était trop jeune. [14] Ma vieille tante est chez ma chère cousine. [15] Le beau jeune homme est le cousin de mon vieil ami. [16] Votre robe est trop longue.

THEME 7.

[1] Is your brother large? [2] Yes, I have a tall brother and a pretty little sister. [3] The house is handsome, but it is too small. [4] We have a large house and a small garden. [5] The flower is red and the fruit is white. [6] Your city is large and beautiful; our village is small and pretty. [7] I was young and happy, but my master was old. [8] The old man is tall and black. [9] The woman is young, white, and handsome. [10] The beautiful woman is my dear aunt. [11] The master was too old, or the pupil was too young. [12] Is your mother beautiful? [13] No, but she is good and happy. [14] My cousin (f.) is a pretty young woman. [15] Milk (IV. 5) is white, wine is red, and ink is black. [16] The tree is tall and handsome, but the fruit is small and bad.

VERB-EXERCISE.

Be. Let us have. They were. He would be. Be (ye). You will have. They would have. He is. We were. Have (thou). Will he have? Would they be? She has. They (f.) will have. Let us be. He will be We were. Should I be?

LESSON VIII.

ADJECTIVES—NUMBER, POSITION.

1. The plural of an adjective is generally formed as the plural of a noun of like ending would be: thus,

a. A feminine adjective (since it ends in e) always adds s for the plural.

b. Masculines in general add **s**; but final **s** or **x** (**z** does not occur) remain unchanged; **au** and **eu** (not **ou**) add **x**; **al** is usually changed to **aux**.

c. But **bleu** *blue* makes **bleus**; some in **al** make **als** (as **fatals, finals, ovals**, etc.); of the adjectives having two forms in the singular (VII. 7), the plural is made from the form ending in **u**: thus, **beaux, nouveaux, fous, mous.**

2. The adjective in French comes more usually after than before the noun which it qualifies.

a. Adjectives have great freedom of position in French, and it depends very much upon the euphony of the sentence and the choice of the writer or speaker whether in a given case the adjective shall precede or follow the noun. The following rules point out some of the leading considerations that help to determine the question.

3. A few of the commonest adjectives are almost invariably placed before the noun.

a. These are especially the adjectives meaning *good* and *bad* (**bon, mauvais**), *large* or *big* and *small* (**grand** or **gros, petit**), *young* and *old* (**jeune, vieux**), also **beau** *handsome*, **vrai** *true*, with some others: thus,

le bon sens, *good sense*	**un beau livre**, *a handsome book*
de grands hommes, *great men*	**mon vieux cousin**, *my old cousin*

4. *a.* An adjective denoting a physical quality, as color or form, inclines to follow the noun; one denoting an ideal or moral quality, to precede it: thus,

des fleurs rouges, *red flowers*	**une tête ronde**, *a round head*
son lit dur, *his hard bed*	**le bouillon chaud**, *the hot broth*

b. An adjective tends to follow the noun when taken in a more literal sense, and to precede it when taken in a more figurative sense: thus,

un fossé profond, *a deep ditch*	**un profond silence**, *a deep silence*
la barbe noire, *the black beard*	**une noire trahison**, *a black treason*
un livre cher, *a dear book*	**un cher ami**, *a dear friend*

5. *a.* An adjective having adjuncts rather follows the noun; but a simple adjective rather precedes a noun that has other adjuncts: thus, **une fille assez jeune et passablement belle** *a rather young and tolerably handsome girl;* **l'immortel auteur du Paradis perdu** *the immortal author of Paradise Lost.*

b. An adjective used more appositively, or having a special prominence or emphasis, or signifying something brought for-

ward as new rather than referred to as already understood, comes after the noun: thus, **c'est un livre excellent** *this is an excellent book*, but **cet excellent livre est à moi** *this excellent book is mine.*

c. In virtue of these differences, some adjectives have a well-marked distinction of meaning, according as they precede or follow the noun: thus, **cher** *dear* means *costly* after the noun, but *loved* before it; **brave** is *brave* after, but *excellent, worthy* before; **honnête** is *nice, civil* after, but *honest* before; **pauvre** is *indigent* after, but *of poor quality* or *pitiable* before; **simple** is *mere* before; **certain** is *certain* in the sense of *one* or *some* before, of *sure* after; **dernier** is *last elapsed* after, but *concluding, final* before; **propre** is *neat* after, but *own* before—and so on.

6. The partitive sense of a noun that is preceded by an adjective is usually expressed by **de** alone, without the definite article: thus,

de bon pain, *good bread*	**de petits enfants,** *little children*
de mauvais sucre, *bad sugar*	**de belles fleurs,** *beautiful flowers*

a. But if the adjective follows the noun, the article is not omitted: thus, **du pain excellent** *excellent bread*, **des fleurs magnifiques** *magnificent flowers.*

b. Also, if the adjective and following noun form together a current combination, a kind of compound name for something, the article remains: thus, **du bon sens** *good sense*, **des jeunes gens** *young folks*, **des petits pois** *green peas.*

VERB-LESSON.

7. The PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVES of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are as follows:

que j'aie, *that I may have*	**que je sois,** *that I may be*
que tu aies, *that thou mayest have*	**que tu sois,** *that thou mayest be*
qu'il ait, *that he may have*	**qu'il soit,** *that he may be*
que nous ayons, *that we may have*	**que nous soyons,** *that we may be*
que vous ayez, *that you may have*	**que vous soyez,** *that you may be*
qu'ils aient, *that they may have*	**qu'ils soient,** *that they may be*

a. For the exchange of **i** and **y** in these forms, see **37***b*.

b. It is customary to prefix the conjunction **que** *that* to the inflection of the subjunctive tenses in French grammars, because a subjunctive usually (not always) has that conjunction before it. For the abbreviation of **que** to **qu'**, see **26***c*.

c. The 3d persons of this tense are often used in an imperative sense, and in some grammars they are given also with the imperative, as its 3d persons: thus,

qu'il ait, *let him have*	**qu'il soit**, *let him be*
qu'ils aient, *let them have*	**qu'ils soient**, *let them be*

d. This tense corresponds to the one of the same name in Latin.

VOCABULARY.

l'école f., *the school*	**l'église** f., *the church*
la vie, *life*	**la famille**, *the family*
pauvre, *poor*	**riche**, *rich*
bleu, *blue*	**brun**, *brown*
actif, *active*	**laborieux**, *laborious*
aimable, *amiable*	**honnête**, *honest*
simple, *simple*	**modeste**, *modest*
intéressant, *interesting*	**excellent**, *excellent*
nouveau (VII. 7), *new*	**aveugle**, *blind*

EXERCISE 8.

[1] Avez-vous de belles fleurs? [2] J'ai des fleurs bleues et rouges. [3] Les jeunes filles ont de beaux chapeaux. [4] Elles ont aussi de nouvelles robes simples et modestes. [5] Mon pauvre oncle a un fils aveugle. [6] Les hommes pauvres ont une vie active et laborieuse. [7] La vieille église est de bois noir. [8] L'enfant aimable est à l'école chez un maître excellent. [9] L'excellent maître est un bon ami des enfants riches et des enfants pauvres. [10] Nous avons des livres très bons et très intéressants, mais nous avons aussi de mauvais livres. [11] L'honnête homme laborieux aura une vie heureuse. [12] Mon frère est un garçon honnête et aimable. [13] J'ai de bon vin blanc dans des bouteilles noires. [14] Ils ont de bon pain noir, du beurre, et de très-mauvais fromage. [15] La pauvre fille aveugle a un père riche. [16] Elle a de grands yeux noirs. [17] Mon père a une famille aimable et intéressante.

THEME 8.

[1] Have you good friends? [2] I have interesting friends and dear sisters. [3] She is a laborious young girl. [4] My poor cousin is very unhappy. [5] She has a little blind daughter. [6] I have a rich uncle. [7] My rich uncle is an

honest man. [9] He has a simple and modest life. [10] We shall have an excellent school in our little village. [10] There is an interesting old church. [11] Mary is a pretty and modest girl. [12] She has small hands and large blue eyes. [13] Have you black bread and good butter? [14] Here is good white bread and excellent butter. [15] You have old red wine in new black bottles. [16] My good old uncle has very interesting books in his little brown house. [17] He has a large family.

LESSON IX.

ADJECTIVES—COMPARISON.

1. Adjectives in French are for the most part not otherwise compared than by putting before them adverbs meaning *more* etc.

a. The comparative adverb is **plus** *more*, and this is made superlative by prefixing to it the definite article: thus, **le plus** *the most*.

b. We may also prefix **moins** *less* and **le moins** *least* to an adjective, producing a comparison downwards, or of diminution.

2. Hence, examples of the ordinary comparison of a French adjective are as follows:

beau, *handsome*	**plus beau**, *handsomer*	**le plus beau**, *handsomest*
jeune, *young*	**plus jeune**, *younger*	**le plus jeune**, *youngest*
aimable, *amiable*	**plus aimable**, *more amiable*	**le plus aimable**, *most amiable*

a. The article before **plus** is of course varied for gender and number, like the adjective: thus, **la plus belle** *handsomest* (woman), **les plus jeunes** *youngest* (men or women).

3. But three adjectives have a special form for the comparative, which then is made superlative by prefixing to it the definite article. They are:

bon, *good*	**meilleur**, *better*	**le meilleur**, *best*
mauvais, *bad*	**pire**, *worse*	**le pire**, *worst*
petit, *small*	**moindre**, *smaller*	**le moindre**, *smallest*

a. But **mauvais** and **petit** are also compared with **plus**; and even **bon**, in the sense of *good-natured*.

4. Comparison of equality is expressed by **aussi** *as* before the adjective. After the adjective, both *as* and *than* are expressed by **que**. Thus:

aussi belle que sa sœur, *as handsome as her sister*
plus petit que mon frère, *smaller than my brother*

5. Special rules are:

a. The article showing the superlative has to be dropped after a possessive: thus, **mon plus jeune frère** *my youngest brother* (not distinguishable from *my younger brother*).

b. If a superlative adjective is put after a noun having the definite article, the article must be repeated: thus, **l'homme le plus savant** *the most learned man*, **la ville la plus peuplée** *the most populous city*.

c. After a superlative, the preposition **de** *of*, and not **dans** *in*, is used before a word of place: thus, **le plus bel homme du monde** *the handsomest man in the world*, **la plus grande ville de l'Europe** *the largest city in Europe*.

VERB-LESSON.

6. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES of **avoir** *have* and **être** *be* are as follows:

que j'eusse, *that I might have*	**que je fusse**, *that I might be*
que tu eusses, *that thou mightest have*	**que tu fusses**, *that thou mightest be*
qu'il eût, *that he might have*	**qu'il fût**, *that he might be*
que nous eussions, *that we might have*	**que nous fussions**, *that we might be*
que vous eussiez, *that you might have*	**que vous fussiez**, *that you might be*
qu'ils eussent, *that they might have*	**qu'ils fussent**, *that they might be*

a. Every imperfect subjunctive in the language, without exception, is inflected like these, with the endings **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent**, and with a circumflexed vowel (**û** or **â** or **î**) before the **t** of the 3d singular.

b. The subjunctive tenses are by no means always to be rendered in English with the auxiliaries *may* and *might*, but sometimes with others, as *should* and *would*, and sometimes by simple subjunctive or even indicative forms.

c. This tense is from the Latin pluperfect subjunctive: compare **fusse** etc. with Lat. **fuissem** etc.

VOCABULARY.

plus, *more*	**moins**, *less*
meilleur, *better*	**pire**, *worse*
le paysan, *the peasant*	**la rose**, *the rose*
laid, *ugly*	**'haut**, *high*

EXERCISE 9.

[1] Mon frère est le plus joli garçon du village. [2] Mon ami est plus beau que ton frère. [3] Le pauvre garçon est le plus jeune des enfants de mon vieil ami. [4] Étiez-vous plus jeune que votre sœur? [5] Non, ma sœur était la plus jeune et la plus jolie de notre famille. [6] Paris est la plus grande ville de la France, mais elle est moins grande et moins riche que Londres. [7] L'Amérique est plus grande que l'Europe, et moins grande que l'Asie. [8] Louise est la jeune fille la plus aimable du monde. [9] L'enfant sera aussi laid que son pauvre père. [10] Le meilleur vin était dans la plus petite bouteille. [11] Les paysans les plus honnêtes et les plus beaux de l'Europe sont dans les plus hautes montagnes. [12] Les élèves sont plus jeunes que le maître. [13] Henri est le pire des garçons du village. [14] Avez-vous de meilleur vin? [15] La rose est la plus belle des fleurs du jardin.

THEME 9.

[1] His sister is ugly, but his niece is the ugliest girl in the city. [2] The boy is as handsome as his beautiful cousin. [3] The largest pieces of bread are for the poorest children. [4] The good and honest peasants are less poor than the bad men of the city. [5] The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe. [6] A city is larger than a large village. [7] Mary is as pretty as Helen, but she is less amiable and interesting. [8] The youngest of the children are my sisters. [9] The prettiest child is my youngest sister. [10] The peasants of the Alps were his best friends. [11] The women are as handsome as the men. [12] The smallest horse is larger than the largest

dog. [13] The cat is smaller than the dog. [14] The worst boy in the village was your dearest friend. [15] The red wine is better than the white wine.

LESSON X.

CONJUGATION—THE VERB **avoir** *have*.

1. In the preceding lessons have been given, with their complete inflection, examples of all the simple tenses and modes of the French verb. The remaining parts are the infinitive, the present and past participles, and the compound forms, made with an auxiliary verb.

2. The INFINITIVES of the two verbs *have* and *be* are:

avoir, *have, to have* — **être**, *be, to be*

a. The infinitive always ends in **r** or **re**.

b. The "sign of the infinitive," corresponding to the English *to*, is either **à** *to* or (quite as often) **de** *of*. As to the use of the one or the other of these, see Part Second, § **172** etc. But the French infinitive is often also (like the English) used without a sign, as subject of a verb, after various verbs, and after prepositions, especially **pour** *in order to* (literally *for, for to*): thus, **parler est mieux** *to speak is better*, **il veut avoir** *he wishes to have*, **pour être** *in order to be*.

c. The French infinitive corresponds to the Latin infinitive active.

3. The PRESENT PARTICIPLES of the same verbs are:

ayant, *having* — **étant**, *being*

a. The present participle invariably ends in **ant**.

b. This participle, when used as a participle, has no variation for gender or number. Often, however, it is used as an adjective, and then is varied like any other adjective: thus, **une charmante femme** *a charming woman*, **des yeux perçants** *piercing eyes*.

c. This participle is also (apparently) very commonly used after the preposition **en**: thus, **en étant** *in being, in the act of being, while being* (and often best rendered *being* simply).

d. In fact, however, the so-called participle with **en** answers to the Latin ablative gerund in **-ndo** (**en ayant** = Lat. **habendo**). The participle is the Latin present participle (**ayant** = Lat. **habent-em**).

a. This participle is variable for gender and number, like any ordinary adjective.

b. The past participle corresponds to the Latin passive participle.

5. Compound forms for all the parts of a French verb (except the imperative and the past participle) are made, as in English, by adding its past participle to the various forms of an auxiliary verb. The auxiliary is usually **avoir** *have;* but some verbs take instead **être** *be* (see below, XXVIII. **5–7**).

a. Hence, to make any given compound form, the corresponding simple form of **avoir** (or sometimes of **être**) is to be taken, and the past participle of the principal verb added to it.

b. The participle is for the most part unvaried, or has its masculine singular form, in the compound forms of the verb when made with **avoir.** But it is a rule in French that if a compound verb-form has a direct object, and that object stands before the verb, the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number: thus, **quels livres avez-vous eus** *what books have you had?* **les fleurs que j'ai eues** *the flowers which I have had,* and so on: see Part Second, § **191** etc.

6. The compounds of the present and imperfect tenses are best called, as in English, the PERFECT and PLUPERFECT; that of the preterit, the PAST ANTERIOR; those of the future and conditional, the FUTURE PERFECT and CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

a. In many grammars, the indicative perfect is called the past indefinite (Fr. **passé indéfini**). It is very often used where in English we have the preterit; and especially, of anything that has happened during this day, or during any period of which the present is viewed as a part.

b. For the use of the past anterior, see Part Second, § **122.**

7. The compound forms of **avoir** *have* are made, as in English, with **avoir** itself as auxiliary. The simple and compound forms are given together in full below.

COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF **avoir** *have.*

INFINITIVE.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.
avoir, *have, to have*	**avoir eu,** *to have had*
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
ayant, *having*	**ayant eu,** *having had*

PAST (or PASSIVE) PARTICIPLE.

eu, *had*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
j'ai, *I have*	j'ai eu, *I have had*
tu as, *thou hast*	tu as eu, *thou hast had*
il a, *he has*	il a eu, *he has had*
nous avons, *we have*	nous avons eu, *we have had*
vous avez, *you have*	vous avez eu, *you have had*
ils ont, *they have*	ils ont eu, *they have had*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
j'avais, *I had, was having,* etc.	j'avais eu, *I had had*
tu avais, *thou hadst* etc.	tu avais eu, *thou hadst had*
il avait, *he had* etc.	il avait eu, *he had had*
nous avions, *we had* etc.	nous avions eu, *we had had*
vous aviez, *you had* etc.	vous aviez eu, *you had had*
ils avaient, *they had* etc.	ils avaient eu, *they had had*
PRETERIT.	PAST ANTERIOR.
j'eus, *I had*	j'eus eu, *I had had*
tu eus, *thou hadst*	tu eus eu, *thou hadst had*
il eut, *he had*	il eut eu, *he had had*
nous eûmes, *we had*	nous eûmes eu, *we had had*
vous eûtes, *you had*	vous eûtes eu, *you had had*
ils eurent, *they had*	ils eurent eu, *they had had*
FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
j'aurai, *I shall have*	j'aurai eu, *I shall have had*
tu auras, *thou wilt have*	tu auras eu, *thou wilt have had*
il aura, *he will have*	il aura eu, *he will have had*
nous aurons, *we shall have*	nous aurons eu, *we shall have had*
vous aurez, *you will have*	vous aurez eu, *you will have had*
ils auront, *they will have*	ils auront eu, *they will have had*
CONDITIONAL.	CONDITIONAL PERFECT.
j'aurais, *I should have*	j'aurais eu, *I should have had*
tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*	tu aurais eu, *thou wouldst have had*
il aurait, *he would have*	il aurait eu, *he would have had*
nous aurions, *we should have*	nous aurions eu, *we should have had*
vous auriez, *you would have*	vous auriez eu, *you would have had*
ils auraient, *they would have*	ils auraient eu, *they would have had*

IMPERATIVE.

	ayons, *let us have*
aie, *have, have thou*	ayez, *have, have ye*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
que j'aie, *that I may have*	que j'aie eu, *that I may have had*
que tu aies, *that thou mayest have*	que tu aies eu, *that thou mayest* etc.
qu'il ait, *that he may have*	qu'il ait eu, *that he may have had*
que nous ayons, *that we may have*	que nous ayons eu, *that we may* etc.
que vous ayez. *that you may have*	que vous ayez eu, *that you may* etc.
qu'ils aient, *that they may have*	qu'ils aient eu, *that they may* etc.

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
que j'eusse, *that I might have*	que j'eusse eu, *that I might have had*
que tu eusses, *that thou mightest have*	que tu eusses eu, *that thou mightest have had*
qu'il eût, *that he might have*	qu'il eût eu, *that he might have had*
que nous eussions, *that we might have*	que nous eussions eu, *that we might have had*
que vous eussiez, *that you might have*	que vous eussiez eu, *that you might have had*
qu'ils eussent, *that they might have*	qu'ils eussent eu, *that they might have had*

VOCABULARY.

l'or m., *gold*	l'argent m., *silver, money*
la main, *the hand*	la poche, *the pocket*
le marchand, *the* (retail) *merchant*	le boulanger, *the baker*
malheureux, *unhappy*	ignorant, *ignorant*
si, *if*	quoique, *although*

NOTE.—Quoique (XXXIV. 1*a*) always requires the following verb to be in the subjunctive; si (XXXIV. 1*b*) has the indicative. For the abbreviation of si to s', see 29*b*.

EXERCISE 10.

[1] J'ai un morceau de pain, et j'aurai aussi du beurre. [2] Avez-vous eu assez de fromage? [3] Nous aurions eu autant de beurre que de fromage. [4] Eurent-ils de l'argent? [5] Elle eut de l'argent dans la main, et il avait eu de l'or dans la poche. [6] Mon cousin aurait eu du vin, s'il avait eu un verre. [7] Mes sœurs auront de jolies robes. [8] Auraient-elles eu aussi de beaux chapeaux? [9] Ayez du café avec votre pain. [10] Ayons de la viande aussi. [11] Mon frère a eu un grand cheval laid; il aura un beau petit cheval.

[9] Il aura eu deux chevaux. [15] Qu'il ait aussi un chien ! [14] Si nous avions eu un frère, nous aurions eu des amis. [15] Quoique nous ayons beaucoup d'argent, nous sommes très malheureux. [16] Ayant un bon père, elle est heureuse. [17] Quoiqu'il ait eu un maître excellent, l'élève est ignorant et malheureux. [18] Le marchand a-t-il eu de la soie bleue? [19] Il avait beaucoup de soie, mais j'avais très peu d'argent. [20] Le boulanger a du pain noir et de bon pain blanc. [21] Il etait malheureux, quoiqu'il eût assez de pain et de vin.

Theme 10.

[1] Had the merchant some pens? [2] He had pens, and he will have paper, ink, and books. [3] You have had black ink; he will have had good red ink. [4] Had you had white bread? [5] I should have had bread enough, if he had had butter. [6] The boys had money enough; they will have meat and wine. [7] Our old master would have had a new school, if he had had more pupils. [8] Although he had few pupils, he was satisfied. [9] Had you a bit of gold in your pocket? [10] I had gold in my hand, and silver in my pocket. [11] Have a bit of bread and cheese. [12] Let us have new hats and handsome red and blue dresses. [13] We shall have had coffee and tea. [14] Will your sisters have red flowers? [15] Though they had much money, they were unhappy. [16] That I might have some wine and water! [17] That you might have had a horse! [18] The man will have a laborious life, if he has too little money. [19] The baker, having had some wine, had a bottle in his hand. [20] Although the peasants have little money, they are happy and content. [21] Although the girl had beautiful eyes, she was very ugly.

LESSON XI.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB être *be.*

1. All the simple forms of être *be* have been given in previous lessons. They are here repeated in their order, along with the compound forms, which are made, as in English, with the help of the auxiliary avoir *have.*

INFINITIVE.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.
être, *be, to be*	avoir été, *to have been*
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
étant, *being*	ayant été, *having been*

PAST (or PASSIVE) PARTICIPLE.
été, *been*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
je suis, *I am*	j'ai été, *I have been*
tu es	tu as été
il est	il a été
nous sommes	nous avons été
vous êtes	vous avez été
ils sont	ils ont été
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
j'étais, *I was, used to be,* etc.	j'avais été, *I had been*
tu étais	tu avais été
il était	il avait été
nous étions	nous avions été
vous étiez	vous aviez été
ils étaient	ils avaient été
PRETERIT.	PAST ANTERIOR.
je fus, *I was*	j'eus été, *I had been*
tu fus	tu eus été
il fut	il eut été
nous fûmes	nous eûmes été
vous fûtes	vous eûtes été
ils furent	ils eurent été

Future.	Future Perfect.
je serai, *I shall be*	j'aurai été, *I shall have been*
tu seras	tu auras été
il sera	il aura été
nous serons	nous aurons été
vous serez	vous aurez été
ils seront	ils auront été

Conditional.	Conditional Perfect.
je serais, *I should be*	j'aurais été, *I should have been*
tu serais	tu aurais été
il serait	il aurait été
nous serions	nous aurions été
vous seriez	vous auriez été
ils seraient	ils auraient été

Imperative.

	soyons, *let us be*
sois, *be, be thou*	soyez, *be, be ye*

Subjunctive.

Present.	Perfect.
que je sois, *that I may be*	que j'aie été, *that I may have been*
que tu sois	que tu aies été
qu'il soit	qu'il ait été
que nous soyons	que nous ayons été
que vous soyez	que vous ayez été
qu'ils soient	qu'ils aient été

Imperfect.	Pluperfect.
que je fusse, *that I might be*	que j'eusse été, *that I might have been*
que tu fusses	que tu eusses été
qu'il fût	qu'il eût été
que nous fussions	que nous eussions été
que vous fussiez	que vous eussiez été
qu'ils fussent	qu'ils eussent été

a. **Être** corresponds only in part to the Latin esse etc.; the infinitive (disputed), participles, and imperfect come from the corresponding forms of **stare** *stand*; the future and conditional are formed in the usual way (V. 5*c*) from **essere**, made by adding the usual infinitive-ending **re** to **esse**.

2. To express the indefinite subject *it* of *it is*, *it was*, etc., the French generally uses **ce**, literally *this* (XXIV. 2), but sometimes also **il** *it*.

a. **Il** is used in statements of time, particularly of the time of day; and **ce** in most other cases. Thus:

il est quatre heures, *it is* 4 *o'clock*
il était midi, *it was noon*
il sera dix heures, *it will be* 10 *o'clock*
il est minuit, *it is midnight*
il est tard, *it is late*
il est temps de partir, *it is time to go*
c'est bien, *it is well*
c'était en vain, *it was in vain*
c'est moi, *it is I*
c'était nous, *it was we*
c'est à vous que je parle, *it is to you that I speak*

b. If the verb after **ce** is followed by a plural noun, or a plural pronoun of the third person, it is itself made plural: thus,

ce furent elles, *it was they*
ce seront mes amis, *it will be my friends*
ce sont nos livres que je vois, *it is our books that I see*

VOCABULARY.

malade, *sick, ill*
faible, *feeble, weak*
paresseux, *idle, lazy*
content, *contented, happy*
à la campagne, *in the country*
l'heure f., *the hour, o'clock*
à présent, *at present, now*
toujours, *always*

EXERCISE 11.

[1] Votre ami est-il riche? [2] Mon ami est pauvre à présent, mais il a été très riche. [3] Ils seraient heureux, s'ils avaient été honnêtes et laborieux. [4] Nous avons été à l'école, et nous serons à l'église avec nos sœurs. [5] Vous auriez eu de très bon vin, si vous aviez été chez mon oncle. [6] L'homme a-t-il été malade? [7] Il a été très faible, et il sera malade. [8] Quoique les jeunes filles soient très contentes à la campagne, elles seront malheureuses à la ville. [9] Sois bon et sage, et tu seras heureux. [10] Vous êtes jeune et belle; soyez contente. [11] Il est trois heures à présent; il sera quatre heures. [12] Ce sont les enfants de mon frère. [13] Ils auraient eu de belles fleurs et des fruits, mais ils ont été très mauvais. [14] Il est deux heures, et elle sera à l'église. [15] C'était l'homme le plus paresseux du monde. [16] Quoique le garçon fût à l'école, il était toujours pares-

seux. [17] Ayant été malade, la femme est très faible. [18] Quoiqu'il fût riche, il était plus malheureux qu'un homme pauvre. [19] Il aura été chez mon père une heure. [20] C'était du vin d'Espagne.

THEME 11.

[1] It is my children. [2] They have been very bad, but they will be good now. [3] It is three o'clock. [4] My sisters will have been at school two hours. [5] Although they are very young, they are very idle. [6] If the man has been sick, he will be feeble. [7] Although we have been poor, we were always contented. [8] I should have been at school, if we had had a new master. [9] The boy had been at church during three hours. [10] Although the girls had beautiful hands, they were ugly. [11] Be good and active, and you will be happy. [12] Let us be lazy and happy. [13] It will be three o'clock, and the boys will be at school. [14] I should have been at Paris, but my father is in England. [15] If we had been in the country, we should have had fruit and flowers enough. [16] It was one o'clock, and Henry was in his room. [17] My sister had been very rich, and she was in Rome with my mother. [18] Having been in Italy, she is very happy. [19] It is a good man, but it is a bad merchant. [20] It is a wooden table.

LESSON XII.

NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

1. A verb is made negative by putting **ne** before and **pas** after it—in a compound tense, before and after the auxiliary.

a. It must always be borne in mind that in any compound form it is the auxiliary that is the real verb, the added participle being only a verbal adjective. All rules, therefore, as to the place of negative words, subject and object pronouns, and so on, given with reference to the verb, apply to the auxiliary and not to the participle in compound forms.

b. The **ne** comes after the subject, but precedes a pronoun-object (XXII. 7). It is abbreviated always to **n'** before a vowel or **h** mute (**26***c*).

2. Examples of tenses inflected negatively are:

je ne suis pas, *I am not*	**je n'avais pas eu,** *I had not had*
tu n'es pas, *thou art not*	**tu n'avais pas eu,** *thou hadst not had*
il n'est pas, *he is not*	**il n'avait pas eu,** *he had not had*
nous ne sommes pas, *we are not*	**nous n'avions pas eu,** *we had not had*
vous n'êtes pas, *you are not*	**vous n'aviez pas eu,** *you had not had*
ils ne sont pas, *they are not*	**ils n'avaient pas eu,** *they had not had*

3. Instead of **pas** is sometimes used **point**, which makes a stronger or more emphatic negative: thus,

il n'est point, *he is not (at all)* **je n'avais point eu,** *I (certainly) had not had.*

a. **Pas** and **point** are really nouns, meaning *step* and *point*, used adverbially to strengthen the negation, like English *not a bit* and the like.

b. With some verbs, **ne** is usually or always used alone, the **pas** being omitted: see Second Part, § **166.**

4. For *never*, *nobody*, and *nothing*, the French say **ne . . . jamais** (literally, *not ever*), **ne . . . personne** (literally, *not a person*) and **ne . . . rien** (literally, *not a thing*), respectively, the two words being separated, and the **ne** put always before the verb (or auxiliary): thus,

je ne suis jamais malade, *I am never ill*
il n'avait jamais été chez nous, *he had never been at our house*
je n'ai vu personne, *I have seen nobody*
personne n'a eu mon livre, *no one has had my book*
n'avez-vous rien, *have you nothing?*
rien ne serait plus cruel, *nothing would be more cruel*

5. A verb made negative by **ne** is also followed by **ni . . . ni**, to give the sense of *neither . . . nor;* by **guère**, to give the sense of *scarcely, but little;* very often by **que** (literally *than:* i.e. *else than*), to give the sense of *only;* and by **plus**, to give the sense of *no longer:* thus,

il n'est ni jeune ni beau, *he is neither young nor handsome*
il n'a guère d'argent, *he has hardly any money*
je n'ai que trois livres, *I have only three books*
elle n'est plus ici, *she is no longer here*

6. The negative **ne** belongs strictly to the verb, and can never be used except with a verb expressed. If the verb, then, is omitted (for example, in answers), the **ne** is also omitted, and the other word has by itself a negative sense: thus,

avez-vous des livres, *have you books?*	**pas un,** *not one*
qu'avez-vous, *what have you?*	**rien,** *nothing*
qui est ici, *who is here?*	**personne,** *nobody*

7. After a negative verb, the partitive sense of a noun is expressed by **de** alone, without the article: thus,

je n'ai pas de pain, *I have no bread*
nous n'avions guère de vin, *we had scarcely any wine*
vous n'aurez plus de patience, *you will no longer have patience*

a. After **ni . . . ni,** both preposition and article are omitted, and the partitive sense is left unexpressed, as in English: thus,

je n'ai ni pain ni beurre, *I have neither bread nor butter*

b. On the other hand, after **ne . . . que** *only* both preposition and article are used: thus,

nous ne voyons que des ennemis, *we see only enemies*

8. When a negative verb is made interrogative, the subject-pronoun is put, as usual, immediately after the verb (and joined to it by a hyphen), while everything else remains unchanged. An example of a tense used both negatively and interrogatively is as follows:

n'aurai-je pas été, *shall I not have been?*
n'auras-tu pas été, *wilt thou not have been?*
n'aura-t-il pas été, *will he not have been?*
n'aurons-nous pas été, *shall we not have been?*
n'aurez-vous pas été, *will you not have been?*
n'auront-ils pas été, *will they not have been?*

a. **N'est-ce pas** is a much-used phrase, meaning *is it not so?* or corresponding to English repeated questions like *is he not? do they not?* and the like: thus, **il est encore malade, n'est-ce pas** *he is still ill, is he not?* **vous avez mon livre, n'est-ce pas** *you have my book, have you not?*

VOCABULARY.

No new words are given with this Lesson, but all the negative expressions given above are to be well learned.

b. The **ne** comes after the subject, but precedes a pronoun-object (XXII. 7). It is abbreviated always to **n'** before a vowel or **h** mute (**26***c*).

2. Examples of tenses inflected negatively are:

je ne suis pas, *I am not*	**je n'avais pas eu,** *I had not had*
tu n'es pas, *thou art not*	**tu n'avais pas eu,** *thou hadst not had*
il n'est pas, *he is not*	**il n'avait pas eu,** *he had not had*
nous ne sommes pas, *we are not*	**nous n'avions pas eu,** *we had not had*
vous n'êtes pas, *you are not*	**vous n'aviez pas eu,** *you had not had*
ils ne sont pas, *they are not*	**ils n'avaient pas eu,** *they had not had*

3. Instead of **pas** is sometimes used **point**, which makes a stronger or more emphatic negative: thus,

il n'est point, *he is not (at all)* **je n'avais point eu,** *I (certainly) had not had.*

a. **Pas** and **point** are really nouns, meaning *step* and *point*, used adverbially to strengthen the negation, like English *not a bit* and the like.

b. With some verbs, **ne** is usually or always used alone, the **pas** being omitted: see Second Part, § **166.**

4. For *never*, *nobody*, and *nothing*, the French say **ne . . . jamais** (literally, *not ever*), **ne . . . personne** (literally, *not a person*) and **ne . . . rien** (literally, *not a thing*), respectively, the two words being separated, and the **ne** put always before the verb (or auxiliary): thus,

je ne suis jamais malade, *I am never ill*
il n'avait jamais été chez nous, *he had never been at our house*
je n'ai vu personne, *I have seen nobody*
personne n'a eu mon livre, *no one has had my book*
n'avez-vous rien, *have you nothing?*
rien ne serait plus cruel, *nothing would be more cruel*

5. A verb made negative by **ne** is also followed by **ni . . . ni**, to give the sense of *neither . . . nor;* by **guère**, to give the sense of *scarcely, but little;* very often by **que** (literally *than:* i.e. *else than*), to give the sense of *only;* and by **plus**, to give the sense of *no longer:* thus,

il n'est ni jeune ni beau, *he is neither young nor handsome*
il n'a guère d'argent, *he has hardly any money*
je n'ai que trois livres, *I have only three books*
elle n'est plus ici, *she is no longer here*

6. The negative **ne** belongs strictly to the verb, and can never be used except with a verb expressed. If the verb, then, is omitted (for example, in answers), the **ne** is also omitted, and the other word has by itself a negative sense: thus,

avez-vous des livres, *have you books?*	**pas un,** *not one*
qu'avez-vous, *what have you?*	**rien,** *nothing*
qui est ici, *who is here?*	**personne,** *nobody*

7. After a negative verb, the partitive sense of a noun is expressed by **de** alone, without the article: thus,

je n'ai pas de pain, *I have no bread*
nous n'avions guère de vin, *we had scarcely any wine*
vous n'aurez plus de patience, *you will no longer have patience*

a. After **ni . . . ni**, both preposition and article are omitted, and the partitive sense is left unexpressed, as in English: thus,

je n'ai ni pain ni beurre, *I have neither bread nor butter*

b. On the other hand, after **ne . . . que** *only* both preposition and article are used: thus,

nous ne voyons que des ennemis, *we see only enemies*

8. When a negative verb is made interrogative, the subject-pronoun is put, as usual, immediately after the verb (and joined to it by a hyphen), while everything else remains unchanged. An example of a tense used both negatively and interrogatively is as follows:

n'aurai-je pas été, *shall I not have been?*
n'auras-tu pas été, *wilt thou not have been?*
n'aura-t-il pas été, *will he not have been?*
n'aurons-nous pas été, *shall we not have been?*
n'aurez-vous pas été, *will you not have been?*
n'auront-ils pas été, *will they not have been?*

a. **N'est-ce pas** is a much-used phrase, meaning *is it not so?* or corresponding to English repeated questions like *is he not? do they not?* and the like: thus, **il est encore malade, n'est-ce pas** *he is still ill, is he not?* **vous avez mon livre, n'est-ce pas** *you have my book, have you not?*

VOCABULARY.

No new words are given with this Lesson, but all the negative expressions given above are to be well learned.

Exercise 12.

[1] N'avez-vous pas été chez votre oncle? [2] Non, il n'était pas à la maison. [3] Avez-vous du pain? [4] Non, nous n'avons pas de pain, nous n'avons que du beurre et du fromage. [5] Le marchand a-t-il du fruit ou du vin? [6] Il n'a ni fruit ni vin. [7] Le pauvre paysan n'a-t-il pas été malade? [8] Il n'a jamais été malade, mais sa femme est très faible, et il n'a rien pour ses enfants. [9] Quoiqu'elles ne soient pas riches, elles ne sont jamais malheureuses. [10] Votre frère ne sera-t-il pas à Paris avec ses amis? [11] Non, il ne sera ni à Paris ni à Londres; il est en Italie. [12] Personne n'a été chez mon père. [13] N'avez-vous rien pour mes pauvres petits enfants? [14] Vous n'avez jamais eu d'enfants; vous n'avez que des frères et des sœurs. [15] J'ai eu de bon papier rouge et de l'encre excellente, mais je n'ai plus rien. [16] Les garçons n'avaient-ils pas un très mauvais maître? [17] Non, le maître n'était point mauvais; il n'a été que faible et malade. [18] Nous avons assez d'eau, mais nous n'avons guère de vin. [19] Je n'aurais jamais été à l'école, si mon père n'avait pas eu une maison à Paris. [20] Elle n'a été chez personne.

Ei na ele se perso

Theme 12.

[1] Had you not a sister? [2] No, I had neither sister nor brother, but I had many good friends. [3] Is not your father at Paris? [4] No, he has never been in Paris. [5] The young girls will not be either at the house or at the school; they will be at the church. [6] The poor woman is not happy; she has been ill, and she has only a bit of bread in the house. [7] Has not the peasant many children? [8] No, he has no children; he has only a wife and a niece. [9] The school was not in the city. [10] Although the master was old, he was not (at all) ugly. [11] He had good scholars, and he was never unhappy. [12] He would not have been unhappy, if his pupils had not been very bad. [13] We have

a = at Paris.

been ill, but no one is ill any longer. [14] If he had never been idle, he would not be poor now. [15] I have only one friend, and he has neither books nor paper. [16] Are you not happier than your friend? [17] I shall not have had any wine in my glass. [18] If the girls had not had new hats, they would not have been at the church. [19] The children were in the garden, but they had no fruit. [20] No one had any fruit. [21] He is no longer at my father's.

LESSON XIII.

DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. In French is made a fuller distinction than in English between pronominal adjectives, accompanying an expressed noun which they qualify, and pronominal substantives, or pronouns proper, standing for a noun not expressed. The pronoun forms will be given in later Lessons (XXIV.–XXVII.); the adjective forms, here and in the next Lesson. The pronominal adjectives always qualify a following noun, and are of the same gender and number with it.

2. The DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES, meaning *this* or *that* and *these* or *those*, are as follows:

cet or **ce** m., **cette** f.; **ces** m.f. plural.

Cet m. is used when the following word begins with a vowel (or **h** mute); otherwise, **ce**. Thus:

ce chapeau, *this* (or *that*) *hat* — **ces chapeaux**, *these* (or *those*) *hats*
cette robe, *this* (etc.) *dress* — **ces robes**, *these* (etc.) *dresses*
cet arbre, *this* (etc.) *tree* — **cet homme**, *this* (etc.) *man*
cet honnête homme, *this* (etc.) *honest fellow*

3. When the demonstrative is meant to be emphatic, or when *this* and *that* are to be distinguished from one another, the adverbs **ci** *here* and **là** *there* are added respectively to the qualified noun; and they are joined to it in writing by a hyphen: thus,

ce chapeau-ci, *this hat* (literally, *this hat here*)
ces robes-là, *those dresses* (literally, *those dresses there*)
cet homme-ci et cette femme-là, *this man and that woman*

4. The INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE, meaning *which* or *what*, is:

Sing. **quel** m., **quelle** f.; plur. **quels** m., **quelles** f.

Thus:

quel livre avez-vous, *which* (or *what*) *book have you?*
quelles fleurs sont sur la table, *what flowers are on the table?*

5. *a.* The interrogative adjective is also used in exclamation: thus,

quelle bonté, *what goodness!* **quels beaux livres**, *what beautiful books!*

b. It is likewise used as relative: thus,

je ne sais quel livre il a, *I don't know which book he has*

c. The indefinite article, sometimes added in English after *what*, is not expressed in French: thus, **quel bel homme**, *what a handsome man!*

VERB-LESSON.

6. In phrases signifying bodily conditions which one feels or is conscious of, **avoir** with a noun is used in French, where the English has the verb *be* with an adjective: thus,

j'ai faim, *I am hungry* (literally, *I have hunger*)
il a soif, *he is thirsty* (literally, *he has thirst*)
n'avez-vous pas sommeil, *are you not sleepy?*

nous avons froid, *we are cold* **vous avez chaud**, *you are warm*
tu avais peur, *thou wast afraid* **ils auront honte**, *they will be ashamed*

a. Similar phrases are **avoir mal à** *have a pain* or *ache in*, **avoir raison** *be right* or *in the right*, **avoir tort** *be wrong* or *in the wrong:* thus,

j'ai mal à la tête, *I have the headache*
vous avez raison et j'ai tort, *you are right and I am wrong*

b. In a corresponding manner, questions as to one's personal condition are asked and answered with **avoir**: thus, **qu'avez-vous** *what is the matter with you?* (literally, *what have you?*) and **avez-vous quelque chose** *is anything the matter with you?* (literally, *have you anything?*) and **je n'ai rien** *nothing is the matter with me* (literally, *I have nothing*).

VOCABULARY.

la bibliothèque, *the library*	**le conte**, *the story, tale*
le roman, *the romance, novel*	**l'histoire** f., *the history*
la tête, *the head*	**la dent**, *the tooth*
autre, *other*	**ennuyeux**, *dull, tedious*
pourquoi, *why?*	**parce que** (XXXIV. 5*a*), *because*

EXERCISE 13.

[1] Quels enfants ont été à l'école? [2] Ces bons petits garçons-ci sont toujours à l'école, mais ces filles-là n'ont jamais été à l'école. [3] Quels livres avez-vous dans la main? [4] Ce livre-ci est un roman, et cet autre livre est une histoire. [5] C'étaient des livres de la bibliothèque de mon oncle. [6] Ces livres-là sont-ils intéressants? [7] Ces romans-là sont très intéressants, mais cette histoire-ci est trop ennuyeuse. [8] Les contes et les romans sont toujours plus intéressants que les histoires. [9] Quelles histoires avaient-ils eues (X. 5*b*)? [10] Ils avaient eu l'histoire de France; cet autre livre est une histoire d'Angleterre. [11] Cet homme est-il l'ami de votre fils? [12] Non, mon ami, c'est son cousin. [13] Quel maître vos enfants avaient-ils? [14] Je n'ai pas d'enfants; ce garçon-ci est mon neveu, et cette jolie fille-là est ma nièce; ils avaient un maître très bon, mais très ennuyeux. [15] Cette femme a beaucoup de cousins; mais elle n'a que ces deux enfants. [16] Quels jolis petits enfants! [17] Dans quelle maison avez-vous été? [18] J'ai été à Paris chez ma cousine. [19] Quoique cette femme-ci soit très pauvre, elle n'est pas plus malheureuse que cet homme-là. [20] Pourquoi cette femme est-elle malheureuse? [21] Elle est malheureuse, parce qu'elle est toujours malade.

THEME 13.

This young girl has been in the country with her father. [1] What dresses has she had (X. 5*b*)? [2] She has had these dresses and that hat. [3] These histories are longer and less interesting than those novels. [4] What book have you in

the hand? [6] This book is a dull little story. [7] This woman is the mother of this little girl, and the aunt of that big boy. [8] These young girls are not her daughters. [9] She has many cousins, but she has only this child. [10] These books belong (III. 6) to my uncle's library. [11] What beautiful books, and what a large library! [12] If this man had not been ill, these children would have had enough bread. [13] Although this man and this woman are honest and industrious, they have always been poor. [14] He had the bottle in this hand, and the glass in that hand. [15] In what cities have you been? [16] I have been in this city, but I have never been in that village. [17] This old man is very dull. [18] Why is he so dull? [19] He is dull because he has always been idle, and because he has never been at school. [20] What an interesting story!

VERB-EXERCISE.

Are you cold? I am cold, but he is warm. Will he be hungry? He will be hungry and thirsty. What is the matter with him? He is sleepy. Is anything the matter with you? No, nothing is the matter with me. They have the headache. I am right and you are wrong. I am always right; I am never wrong. Nothing is the matter with us. Has she not the toothache? No, nothing is the matter with her. We were afraid. They are ashamed.

LESSON XIV.

POSSESSIVE AND INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

1. The POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES are:

Sing.	**mon** m., **ma** f.;	plur.	**mes** m.f., *my*
	ton m., **ta** f.;		**tes** m.f., *thy*
	son m., **sa** f.;		**ses** m.f., *his, her, its*
	notre m.f;		**nos** m.f., *our*
	votre m.f.;		**vos** m.f., *your*
	leur m.f.;		**leurs** m.f., *their*

a. There is no distinction made in French between *his* and *her* and *its;* **son** etc. has all these meanings, and, like the other adjectives, is varied only to agree with the noun which it qualifies.

2. But the feminine singular forms **ma, ta, sa** are not allowed before a word beginning with a vowel (or **h** mute); instead are used **mon, ton, son**: thus,

mon amie, *my* (female) *friend* — **ton épouse**, *thy spouse*
son âme, *his soul* — **son histoire**, *her history*
mon aveugle sœur, *my blind sister* — **ton aimable fille**, *thy lovely daughter*

3. The possessives are repeated before every noun that they qualify: thus,

my father and mother, **mon père et ma mère**
her friends and relatives, **ses amis et ses parents**

4. Titles of respect or politeness, used both in addressing and in speaking of persons, are the following:

***monsieur**, *sir, Mr., the gentleman*
***messieurs**, *gentlemen, Messrs.*
madame, *madam, my lady, the lady, Mrs.*
mesdames, *my ladies, the ladies*
mademoiselle, *Miss, the young lady*
mesdemoiselles, *Misses, the young ladies*

a. These words are compounds with the possessive **mon** *my*, and both parts of the compounds are inflected.

b. In speaking to any one of his or her relatives, politeness often requires these titles to be put before the possessive: thus,

your mother, **madame votre mère**
your brothers, **messieurs vos frères**
your son and daughter, **monsieur votre fils et mademoiselle votre fille**

c. When these titles are used with a surname, they are written with a capital thus, **Monsieur Guizot**; or, by abbreviation, **M. Guizot.**

5. The possessive is often used in French, especially in address, where it is omitted in English: thus, **bonjour, ma sœur** *good-day, sister*, **oui, mon général** *yes, General.*

a. On the other hand, the definite article is often used in French instead of the possessive, where the connection shows clearly what is meant: thus, **il l'avait dans la poche** *he had it in his pocket*, **fermez les yeux** *shut your eyes.*

6. The commonest INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES are:

chaque, *each, every*	**nul**, *not any, no*
tout, *every, all*	**aucun**, *not any, no*
quelque, *some*	**plusieurs**, *several*

a. Of these words, **chaque** is only singular, and **plusieurs** only plural; **nul** and **aucun** form feminines, **nulle** and **aucune**, but no plural; **quelque** has the plural **quelques**; **tout** makes the feminine **toute**, and the plurals **tous** m., **toutes** f.

b. **Tout** means *all* when followed by an article or possessive or demonstrative: thus,

toute la ville, *all the city (the whole city)*	**toute ville**, *every city*
tous ses enfants, *all his children*	**tout enfant**, *each child*
tout ce temps, *all this time*	**à tout temps**, *at every time*

c. **Quelque** signifies a more limited *some* than the partitive (IV. 1, 2), and is usually better rendered by *a little, a few:* thus,

des pommes, *some apples*	**quelques pommes**, *a few apples*
de l'argent, *money*	**quelque argent**, *some little money*

d. **Nul** and **aucun** both alike require **ne** with the verb: thus,

nul homme n'est parfait, *no man is perfect*
il n'a aucune faute, *he has not any fault*

VOCABULARY.

le bœuf, *the ox*	**la vache**, *the cow*
la brebis, *the sheep*	**le champ**, *the field*
la pomme, *the apple*	**la pomme de terre**, *the potato*
la poire, *the pear*	**la pêche**, *the peach*
le panier, *the basket*	**le vase**, *the vase*
le légume, *the vegetable*	**le parent**, *the relative, parent*

EXERCISE 14.

[1] Monsieur B. a-t-il des enfants? [2] Oui, madame, ce garçon-ci est son fils, mais la petite fille est sa nièce. [3] Ces demoiselles avec Mademoiselle B. sont ses cousines. [4] Ces messieurs sont-ils les amis de monsieur votre père? [5] Non, ce sont ses frères. [6] Mon amie a un grand vase d'argent. [7] Quelles fleurs a-t-elle dans la main? [8] Elle n'a point de

fleurs ; elle n'a qu'un livre dans la main, et une pomme dans la poche. [9] Mademoiselle votre sœur n'a-t-elle pas été en Allemagne ? [10] Non, elle a été en Angleterre avec madame votre tante. [11] As-tŭ des amis, mon enfant ? [12] Oui, madame, j'ai plusieurs amis et quelques parents. [13] Cette femme-ci est-elle ta mère ? [14] Non, madame, elle est ma tante. [15] Voici mon père et ma mère. [16] Ces paysans ont-ils des vaches et des bœufs ? [17] Non, mon oncle, chaque paysan a une vache et quelques brebis, mais aucun paysan n'a de bœufs. [18] Toutes leurs brebis sont dans les champs. [19] Quels fruits avez-vous dans votre panier ? [20] J'ai quelques pommes et plusieurs poires. [21] N'avez-vous pas aussi des pommes de terre ? [22] Je n'ai aucune pomme de terre, mais j'ai des pêches.

Theme 14.

[1] Is your mother at the house ? [2] No, she is in Paris, with her cousin, Miss B. [3] Are these boys your friends ? [4] No, cousin ; they are the children of my teacher. [5] They have been in all the schools of this whole city. [6] Every friend of my son is my friend also. [7] All these peasants have been in the fields, and each woman has a basket on her head. [8] Several women have vegetables in their baskets. [9] Have you peaches and pears, my good woman ? [10] I have a few pears, sir, but I have no peaches. [11] Do all these animals belong to your son ? [12] No, sir, the sheep belong to my son, but he has no horse, and we have only three cows. [13] What vegetables have we, Mary ? [14] We have a few potatoes in the house, and several apples. [15] Each child will have an apple, but no child will have a peach. [16] I had some little money in my pocket, but my brother had nothing. [17] I never have potatoes in my pocket. [18] They had some flowers, but they had no vase. [19] This poor old woman had a basket on her head. [20] My friend (f.) had her history in her hand ; she is now at school.

LESSON XV.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. The names of numbers are as follows:

1 un	10 dix	61 soixante et un
2 deux	20 vingt	62 soixante-deux
3 trois	30 trente	63 soixante-trois
4 quatre	40 quarante	64 soixante-quatre
5 *cinq	50 cinquante	65 soixante-cinq
6 *six	60 *soixante	66 soixante-six
7 *sept	70 soixante-dix	67 soixante-sept
8 *huit	80 quatre-vingts	68 soixante-huit
9 neuf	90 quatre-vingt-dix	69 soixante-neuf
10 *dix	100 cent	70 soixante-dix
11 *onze	101 cent un	71 soixante et onze
12 douze	102 cent deux	72 soixante-douze
13 treize	103 cent trois	73 soixante-treize
14 quatorze	200 deux cents	74 soixante-quatorze
15 quinze	201 deux cent un	75 soixante-quinze
16 seize	206 deux cent six	76 soixante-seize
17 *dix-sept	1000 *mille, mil	77 soixante-dix sept
18 *dix-huit	2000 deux mille	78 soixante-dix huit
19 *dix-neuf	1,000,000 un million	79 soixante-dix-neuf
20 *vingt	2,000,000 deux millions	80 quatre-vingts

2. *a.* **Un** is masculine only, and forms the feminine **une**; no other numeral makes a distinction of gender.

b. **Vingt** *twenty*, *score*, and **cent** *hundred*, are the only numerals (below **million**) that make a plural: thus, **vingts**, **cents**. This plural form is used when *score* or *hundred* is multiplied by a preceding numeral—not, however, if an added numeral follows: thus,

cinq cents, *five hundred* — **cinq cent dix**, *five hundred and ten*
quatre-vingts, *fourscore* — **quatre-vingt-un**, *eighty-one*

3. The French has now no separate names for *seventy*, *eighty*, *ninety*, but after *sixty-nine* (as shown in the table) it counts *sixty-ten*, *sixty-eleven*, etc., up to *sixty-nineteen;* and so in like manner *fourscore-ten*, *fourscore-eleven*, etc., up to *fourscore-nineteen* or *ninety-nine.*

a. But the older **septante** *seventy*, **octante** *eighty*, and **nonante** *ninety*, are still occasionally met with.

4. The other odd numbers between the tens are made in the same way as those for 61 to 69 in the table.

Thus, **vingt et un** 21, ***vingt-deux** 22, **trente-trois** 33, **quarante-cinq** 45, **cinquante-huit** 58, and so on.

a. **Vingt-un** 21, **trente-un** 31, etc., are sometimes used; also **cent et un** 101, **soixante et dix** 70, **soixante-onze** 71; but only **quatre-vingt-un** 81, **quatre-vingt-dix** 90, **quatre-vingt-onze** 91.

5. A hyphen is always inserted between a ten and a unit immediately following, but not when **et** stands between; and it is not used after **cent** or **mille.**

6. **Un** is not used before **cent** or **mille** in counting: that is, the French says simply *hundred*, *thousand*, not *one hundred* or *a thousand* and so on.

7. In giving dates, the briefer form **mil** is used instead of **mille**: thus,

mil sept cent soixante-seize, 1776
mil huit cent quatre vingt-cinq, 1885

a. The French seldom says, in dates or elsewhere, *eighteen hundred* and so on, but rather (*a*) *thousand eight hundred* etc.

8. Still higher numbers are used than those given in the table: thus, **un milliard** or **un billion** *a thousand million*, **un trillion** *a million millions*, etc.

9. After **plus** *more* and **moins** *less*, before a numeral, *than* is expressed by **de**: thus, **plus de trois ans** *more than three years*, **moins de dix minutes** *less than ten minutes.*

VOCABULARY.

l'an m., **l'année** f., *the year*
la semaine, *the week*
la minute, *the minute*
combien, *how much? how many?* (V. 4)
la fois, *the time*
le mois, *the month*
le jour, *the day*
la *seconde, *the second*
la chose, *the thing*
font, *make* (XXXII. 8*b*)

Exercise 15.

(The figures are to be read into words.)

[1] 5; 17; 23; 44; 72; 98; 117; 361; 1492; 1776; 1886. [2] Ce paysan-ci a 3 chevaux, 4 bœufs, 13 vaches, et 219 brebis. [3] L'année a 365 jours. [4] Chaque jour a 24 heures. [5] L'heure a 60 minutes et 360 secondes. [6] L'année a 12 mois. [7] Le mois a 29, ou 30, ou 31 jours. [8] Combien de minutes le jour a-t-il? [9] 60 fois 24 font 1440; le jour a 1440 minutes. [10] Combien de livres avez-vous sur la table? [11] J'ai plus de 7 livres. [12] Mon oncle a plus de 565 livres dans sa bibliothèque. [13] Combien de fruits a-t-il dans son panier? [14] Il a 11 pommes, 7 poires, et plus de 10 pêches. [15] J'ai été en Angleterre 6 mois et 3 semaines. [16] Combien d'heures la semaine a-t-elle? [17] La semaine a 168 heures: 7 fois 24 font 168. [18] 5 fois 9 font 45.

Theme 15.

[1] Have you many books? [2] I have less than a hundred books, but my father has more than a thousand books in his library. [3] How many peasants are in this village? [4] Ninety-six; and each peasant has a wife and several children. [5] How many animals have you, my good friend? [6] I have nine cows, twelve oxen, and a hundred and twenty-one sheep. [7] Charles, how many weeks has a year? [8] A year has fifty-two weeks and one day. [9] Three times four make twelve. [10] Five times two make ten. [11] Seven times nine make sixty-three. [12] Eleven times twelve make a hundred and thirty-two. [13] Where is your mother, sir? [14] She has been more than four days in the country, but she is at home now. [15] These boys have had 41 apples; they will be sick. [16] We shall have been in London less than three weeks. [17] A month has thirty or thirty-one days.

LESSON XVI.

ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1. The ordinals are mostly formed from the cardinals, whether simple or compound, by adding the ending **-ième**, before which a final **e** of the cardinal is omitted. But—

a. First is **premier**, and *second* is either ***second** or the regular **deuxième**—except in compound numbers, where *first* is **unième**, and *second* is **deuxième** only.

b. **Cinq** makes **cinquième**, with inserted **u**; and **neuf** makes **neuvième**, with change of **f** to **v**.

2. Examples of the ordinals are:

1st	**premier**	21st	**vingt-unième** **vingt et unième**
2d	***second** **deuxième**	22d	**vingt-deuxième**
3d	**troisième**	43d	**quarante-troisième**
4th	**quatrième**	56th	**cinquante-sixième**
5th	**cinquième**	67th	**soixante-septième**
6th	**sixième**	77th	**soixante-dix-septième**
7th	**septième**	99th	**quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième**
8th	**huitième**	100th	**centième**
9th	**neuvième**	101st	**cent unième**
11th	**onzième**	713th	**sept cent treizième**
18th	**dix-huitième**	1000th	**millième**
20th	**vingtième**	1248th	**mille deux cent quarante-huitième**

a. An ordinal is generally preceded by the definite article, **le** or **la** or **les**; and **premier** and **second** have a special feminine form: thus, **la première, la seconde.**

b. **Second** and **deuxième** are used somewhat indifferently; but **second** is rather preferred where there are only two objects (no third, fourth, etc., to follow): thus, **le second tome** *the second* (and last) *volume*, or **le deuxième tome**, *the second volume* (of a series).

3. The cardinal numeral sometimes stands in French where in English we use the ordinal: namely—

a. In giving the day of the month, except the first: thus,

le deux janvier, *the second of January*
le quatre ou le cinq avril, *the fourth or fifth of April*
du douze au vingt-trois mai, *from the 12th to the 23d of May*
le dix du mois, *the tenth of the month*

but

le premier mai, *the first of May*

b. In giving the title of a sovereign, except the first and sometimes the second: thus,

Guillaume trois, *William III.*
Henri quatre, *Henry IV.*
Louis quatorze, *Louis XIV.*

but

Henri premier, *Henry I.*
Charles deux or **Charles second**, *Charles II.*

c. In other numerations also, where the number follows the thing enumerated: thus,

tome deux, *volume second* — **chapitre quatre**, *chapter fourth*
page vingt-cinq, *page twenty-fifth* — **article quarante-neuf**, *article* 49

4. As in English, the ordinals are used also as fractionals—but only from *fifth* upward: thus,

un cinquième, *a fifth part* — **trois vingtièmes**, *three twentieths*

a. For *half*, the French has two words, **moitié** f. as noun, and **demi** (**demie** f.) as adjective. But **demi** before a noun is joined to it with a hyphen, and is not varied for gender. Thus:

la moitié du temps, *half of the time*
un demi-pied, *a half-foot, half a foot*
une demi-heure, *a half-hour, half an hour*
un pied et demi, *a foot and a half*
une heure et demie, *an hour and a half*

b. The words for *third* and *fourth* or *quarter* are **tiers** and **quart** respectively: thus,

trois et un tiers, *three and a third*
un quart d'heure, *quarter of an hour*
une aune et trois quarts, *a yard and three quarters*

c. **Quint** is also rarely used for *fifth part*, instead of **cinquième**.

VOCABULARY.

le grand-père, *the grandfather*	**le petit-fils**, *the grandson*
le roi, *the king*	**la reine**, *the queen*
le siècle, *the century*	**le tome**, *the volume*
le chapitre, *the chapter*	**la page**, *the page*
dernier, *last* (VIII. 5*c*)	**prochain**, *next*
Édouard, *Edward*	**Élisabeth**, *Elizabeth*

EXERCISE 16.

(The figures are to be read into words.)

[1] Le 1^{r}, le 5^{me}, le 14^{me}, le 23^{me}, le 34^{me}, le 57^{me}, le 72^{me}, le 96^{me}, le 151^{me}, le 4004^{me}. [2] Henri était le quatrième fils et le septième enfant de ses parents. [3] Louis XV. fut petit-fils de Louis XIV., et grand-père de Louis XVI. et de Charles X. [4] Les deux fils de Charles I. étaient Charles II. et Jacques II. [5] Henri VIII. avait 7 femmes; la première avait une fille, Marie. [6] Quel livre avez-vous dans la main? [7] J'ai le 3^{me} tome d'une histoire de France. [8] Combien de pages ce livre a-t-il? [9] Il a 387 pages; mais le 2^{me} tome a 419 pages, et le 1^{r} n'a que 278 pages. [10] Combien de mois avez-vous été en Italie? [11] J'ai été à Rome deux mois et demi, et à Florence une semaine et demie. [12] J'étais à Londres le 15 du mois, et j'avais été à Paris du 18 au 29 du mois dernier. [13] Quel tome avez-vous? [14] J'ai tome trois, chapitre quarante-deux, page trois cent cinq. [15] Ce garçon a été une demi-heure à l'école; il sera à l'église deux heures et un quart. [16] Ce mois est le 12^{me} de l'année. [17] Avez-vous du pain? [18] Non, monsieur, nous avons trois livres et demie de sucre, et une livre et quart de beurre; mais nous n'avons pas de pain. [19] J'ai été ici trois quarts d'heure, et je n'ai rien eu. [20] Nous sommes enfants du 19^{me} siècle.

THEME 16.

[1] She is the fifth daughter of her parents. [2] George III. was grandson of George II., and father of William IV. [3] Were you in Paris the 13th of last month? [4] No, I was

at Paris the 18th, and I shall be in London from the 12th to the 27th of the next month. [5] What history have you? [6] I have volume fifth of the history of Henry VII. [7] Henry VIII. was son of Henry VII., and father of Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth. [8] Elizabeth was the second queen of England; Victoria is the fifth. [9] Have you been in Germany? [10] I was in Germany a year and three quarters. [11] I shall have been in school two hours and a half. [12] Six months are (the) half of the year. [13] Each child had a half-cup of tea and a bit of bread. [14] They had a pound and a quarter of cheese, and three pounds and a half of sugar. [15] These (ce) are the children of my fourth son. [16] The first, the fourth, and the sixth of the children are boys. [17] The second, the third, and the fifth are girls. [18] My grandfather is now in his 83d year; he has many grandsons. [19] You are the 14th grandson of your grandfather. [20] The France of our days is not the France of the 17th century.

LESSON XVII.

NUMERALS CONTINUED—MONTHS AND WEEK-DAYS.

1. The names of the months are as follows:

janvier, *January*	**mai**, *May*	**septembre**, *September*
février, *February*	**juin**, *June*	**octobre**, *October*
***mars**, *March*	**juillet**, *July*	**novembre**, *November*
***avril**, *April*	***août**, *August*	**décembre**, *December*

2. The names of the days of the week are as follows:

dimanche, *Sunday*	**mercredi**, *Wednesday*	**vendredi**, *Friday*
lundi, *Monday*	**jeudi**, *Thursday*	**samedi**, *Saturday*
mardi, *Tuesday*		

a. The names of months and of week-days are not written with capitals, as in English, but are treated like common nouns.

3. In giving a date, the number (generally cardinal: XVI. 3*a*) of the month-day stands before the month-

name, and is not usually followed by **de** *of*; before it stands the article **le** (in old style, **ce** *this*, and in mercantile style **au** *on the*): thus,

lundi le premier avril (rarely **d'avril**), *Monday, April* 1*st*
mardi le quatre juillet, *Tuesday, July* 4*th*
au trente juin, payez etc., *on June* 30*th, pay* etc.
Paris, ce dix-sept août, mil huit cent, *Paris, Aug.* 17, 1800.

a. In asking the day of the month, various expressions are used: e.g. **quel jour du mois** (or **quel quantième**) **sommes-nous** (or **avons-nous**, or **est-il**) **aujourd'hui** *what day of the month is it to-day?* **nous sommes** (etc.) **le treize** *it is the* 13*th.*

4. In giving the time of day, *o'clock* is expressed by **heures**, literally *hours*, and the parts of hours, as in the following examples:

one o'clock, **une heure** *five o'clock*, **cinq heures**
what o'clock is it, **quelle heure est-il?**
it will soon be eleven, **il sera bientôt onze heures**
half past three, **trois heures et demie**
quarter past four, **quatre heures et quart** (or **et un quart**)
at a quarter to seven, **à six heures et trois quarts** or **à sept heures moins un quart**
twenty-three minutes past eight, **huit heures et vingt-trois minutes**
at twelve minutes before ten, **à dix heures moins douze minutes**

a. As the examples show, **heures** is not to be omitted.

b. But **douze heures** is not used for *twelve o'clock*; instead of it is said **midi** (literally *midday*) for twelve at noon, and **minuit** (literally *midnight*) for twelve at night: thus,

half past twelve o'clock, **midi** (or **minuit**) **et demie**
twenty minutes to twelve, **midi** (or **minuit**) **moins vingt minutes**

5. One's age is thus expressed:

how old are you, **quel âge avez vous?** (literally, *what age have you*)
I am fifteen years old, **j'ai quinze ans** (literally, *I have* 15 *years*)
my sister is five and a half, **ma sœur a cinq ans et demi**

6. Measure is expressed as follows:

he is 6 *feet high*, **il est haut de six pieds** (literally, *high by* 6 *feet*)
this house is 45 *feet long*, **cette maison est longue de quarante-cinq pieds** or **a quarante-cinq pieds de longueur**

7. For *times* with a numeral is used *fois:* thus, **deux fois** *twice*, **cinq fois sept font trente-cinq** *five times seven are* (literally, *make*) *thirty-five.*

8. For other numeral derivatives, see the Second Part, §§ **67** etc.

VOCABULARY.

longueur, *length*	**largeur**, *breadth*
aujourd'hui, *to-day*	**souvent**, *often*
ici, *here*	**là**, *there*
demain, *to-morrow*	**après-demain**, *day after to-morrow*
hier, *yesterday*	**avant-hier**, *day before yesterday*

EXERCISE 17.

[1] Paris, le 23 avril, 1886. [2] Quel jour du mois avons-nous aujourd'hui? [3] Aujourd'hui est le 19 ou le 20; demain sera le 21. [4] Février est le 2me, et décembre le 12me mois de l'année. [5] Dimanche est le 1er et vendredi le 6me jour de la semaine. [6] Nous avons mercredi aujourd'hui; avant-hier a été lundi, et après-demain sera vendredi. [7] À quelle heure seras-tu chez mon père demain? [8] Je serai à l'église à dix heures et demie, et je serai chez ton père à midi et quart. [9] Quelle heure est-il? [10] Il est onze heures moins dix minutes, et nous avons été à l'école deux heures et trois quarts. [11] Quel âge votre fils a-t-il, madame? [12] Mon fils a dix-neuf ans et demi, et il est grand de six pieds. [13] Notre maison a quarante-deux pieds de largeur, et elle est haute de trente-cinq pieds. [14] Ils ont été ici de dix heures à midi. [15] Les enfants ont été à l'école deux fois aujourd'hui, à neuf heures moins un quart, et à deux heures et demie. [16] À midi ils auront été à l'école trois heures et un quart. [17] Trois fois quatre font douze. [18] Sept et huit font quinze.

THEME 17.

[1] London, Sunday, Nov. 5, 1773. [2] Washington, July 4, 1776. [3] What day of the week is it to-day? [4] It is Thursday, the 9th of June. [5] What day were you in Paris? [6] I was at Paris Tuesday or Wednesday of last week. [7] Satur-

day, Aug. 12th, I shall be in the country. [8] At what hour was my father here yesterday? [9] He was here at half past six or a quarter to seven. [10] He will be at the house tomorrow at a quarter past twelve. [11] Is this gentleman often ill? [12] He was ill yesterday, but he is not ill to-day. [13] He has been here a year and nine months. [14] How old is he? [15] He is 67 years old, and he is 5¾ feet tall. [16] I have been three times at the school, but the master was not there. [17] Yesterday we were at church an hour and a half. [18] Our garden was 150 feet long, and 200 feet wide. [19] 7 times 9 are 63. [20] 10 times 11 are 110. [21] 7 and 9 are 16.

LESSON XVIII.

REGULAR VERBS; FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. There are three regular conjugations of French verbs; their infinitives end respectively in 1. **er**; 2. **ir**; 3. **re**: thus, **donner, finir, vendre.**

a. There are also many irregular verbs having these same endings in the infinitive, and others having **oir.** Half-a-dozen of those ending in **oir** in the infinitive are in many grammars called another regular conjugation (the third, those in **re** being reckoned as the fourth). The irregular verbs will be given further on.

2. All the forms of regular verbs (and also most of those of irregular verbs) may be inferred from five leading forms, which are therefore called the PRINCIPAL PARTS of the verb. These are 1. the infinitive; 2. the present participle; 3. the past or passive participle; 4. the present indicative; 5. the preterit indicative.

a. In learning a French verb, then, regular or irregular, the first thing is to learn and make familiar the principal parts.

3. From the infinitive are made the future and conditional, by adding respectively **ai** and **ais** (the **e** of the infinitive ending **re** being lost): thus,

INFINITIVE	donner	finir	vendre
FUTURE	donnerai	finirai	vendrai
CONDITIONAL	donnerais	finirais	vendrais

a. This is the only case of a real derivation: see V. 5*c*, VI. 6*b*.

4. From the present participle may be found the imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive, by changing **ant** into **ais** and **e** respectively: thus,

PRES. PPLE	donnant	finissant	vendant
IMPF. INDIC.	donnais	finissais	vendais
PRES. SUBJ.	donne	finisse	vende

a. In many verbs, the plural persons of the present indicative need also to be inferred from the present participle: thus, **finissons** etc. from **finissant**; see XXIV. 5*c*.

5. From the past participle are made, with the auxiliary verb **avoir** or **être** (see XXVIII. 5–7), the various compound forms — the perfect infinitive, perfect indicative, and so on: thus,

PAST PPLE	donné	fini	vendu
PERF. INFIN.	avoir donné	avoir fini	avoir vendu
PERF. INDIC.	j'ai donné	j'ai fini	j'ai vendu
	etc. etc.	etc. etc.	etc. etc.

6. From the present indicative may be found the imperative: thus,

PRES. INDIC.	donne	finis	vends
IMPV.	donne	finis	vends

a. In general, the three persons of the imperative are the same with the corresponding persons of the present indicative; only, in the first conjugation, the final **s** of the 2d sing. impv. is usually (see below, **10***a*) lost, so that its form agrees with that of the 1st sing. indicative.

7. From the preterit indicative may be made the imperfect subjunctive, by changing final **s** (in the first conjugation, that of the 2d sing.) into **sse**: thus,

PRET. INDIC.	donnai, donnas	finis	vendis
IMPF. SUBJ.	donnasse	finisse	vendisse

a. Verbs of the first conjugation are the only ones in the language that do not end in **s** in the 1st sing. preterit.

First Regular Conjugation.

8. The first regular conjugation, with infinitive ending in **er**, contains the great majority of all verbs in the language.

a. They are principally the verbs of the first Latin conjugation, in **are**, but also a few of those of the second and third conjugations, now come to be inflected like them, and many borrowed and new-made verbs.

9. As a model of its inflection may be taken the verb **donner** *give* (*donate*; Lat. **donare**).

a. The synopsis of its principal parts and the parts derived from them is as follows:

Inf	**donner**	**donnant**	**donné**	**donne**	**donnai**
Ind.	**donnerai**	**donnais**	**avoir donné**	**donne**	**donnasse**
Cond.	**donnerais**	**donne**	etc. etc.		

b. The complete inflection of the simple tenses is (with infinitive and participles prefixed):

Infinitive, *give, to give.*
donner (à donner, de donner)

Present Participle, *giving*
donnant

Past Participle, *given*
donné

Indicative.

Present, *I give, do give, am giving*, etc.

je donne	**nous donnons**
tu donnes	**vous donnez**
il donne	**ils donnent**

Imperfect, *I gave, was giving*, etc.

je donnais	**nous donnions**
tu donnais	**vous donniez**
il donnait	**ils donnaient**

Preterit, *I gave, did give*, etc.

je donnai	**nous donnâmes**
tu donnas	**vous donnâtes**
il donna	**ils donnèrent**

Future, *I shall* or *will give*, etc.

je donnerai	**nous donnerons**
tu donneras	**vous donnerez**
il donnera	**ils donneront**

CONDITIONAL, *I should* or *would give*, etc.

je donnerais	**nous donnerions**
tu donnerais	**vous donneriez**
il donnerait	**ils donneraient**

IMPERATIVE, *give, give thou*, etc.

	donnons
donne	**donnez**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may give*, etc.

que je donne	**que nous donnions**
que tu donnes	**que vous donniez**
qu'il donne	**qu'ils donnent**

IMPERFECT, *that I might give*, etc.

que je donnasse	**que nous donnassions**
que tu donnasses	**que vous donnassiez**
qu'il donnât	**qu'ils donnassent**

c. Of the compound forms, made with the auxiliary **avoir**, it will be sufficient to give the synopsis, the inflection of the auxiliary being already familiar (X.): thus,

PERFECT INFINITIVE, *to have given*
avoir donné

PERFECT PARTICIPLE, *having given*
ayant donné

INDICATIVE PERFECT, *I have given*, etc.
j'ai donné etc.

PLUPERFECT, *I had given*, etc.
j'avais donné etc.

PAST ANTERIOR, *I had given*, etc.
j'eus donné etc.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have given*, etc.
j'aurai donné etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT, *I should have given*, etc.
j'aurais donné etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT, *that I may have given*, etc.
que j'aie donné etc.

PLUPERFECT, *that I might have given*, etc.
que j'eusse donné etc.

10. *a.* The 2d sing. impv. of the first conj. adds an **s** when followed by the object-pronouns **en** or **y** (XXIII. 5-7).

b. As in all verbs (I. 10*c*), the 3d sing. present, preterit, and future add **-t** when followed by the subject-pronouns **il, elle,** or **on**: thus, **donne-t-il, donna-t-elle, donnera-t-on.**

c. If the 1st sing. present indicative or imperfect subjunctive (the latter, of any conjugation) comes to be followed by its subject, it takes an acute accent on its final **e** (21*c*): thus, **donné-je** *do I give?* **donnassé-je** *should I give.*

VOCABULARY.

donner, *give*	**apporter,** *bring*
chercher, *seek, look for*	**trouver,** *find*
aimer, *love, like*	**travailler,** *work, labor*
le jouet, *the plaything, toy*	**la lettre,** *the letter*

EXERCISE 18.

[1] J'ai donné un joli cheval à mon cousin. [2] Aimez-vous votre cousin? [3] Non, madame, je n'aime point ce cousin-là, mais j'aime beaucoup ses frères et ses sœurs. [4] Ces jeunes filles cherchaient des fleurs, mais elles n'ont rien trouvé. [5] Quelles fleurs ont-elles cherchées? [6] Elles aiment toutes les fleurs. [7] Donnez du pain à ce petit garçon; il a faim. [8] Quoiqu'il ait travaillé toute la semaine, il n'a pas d'argent. [9] Pourquoi le marchand ne donna-t-il pas d'argent au garçon hier? [10] Il aurait donné de l'argent, s'il n'avait pas été malade. [11] N'avez-vous pas trouvé le maître? [12] Nous trouvâmes le maître à l'école à dix heures. [13] Ce bon paysan apportait chaque jour du lait à mon oncle. [14] Hier il ne trouva pas ses vaches, et il n'apporta pas de lait. [15] S'il cherchait trois jours, il ne trouverait pas ses vaches. [16] Marie, apporte la lettre de ta tante. [17] Pourquoi madame votre sœur ne donne-t-elle pas de jouets aux enfants? [18] Si elle avait trouvé de beaux livres chez le marchand, elle aurait donné un livre à chaque enfant. [19] Quoique nous ayons cherché dans toute la ville, nous n'avons trouvé que de mauvais livres. [20] Cherchons des fruits, et donnons une pomme ou une poire à chaque garçon, et une fleur à chaque fille.

THEME 18.

[1] Do you love your friends? [2] I love all my friends and relations. [3] What plaything shall I give to your brother? [4] Let us give a book to her brother. [5] What cows was the peasant looking for? [6] He was seeking his cows, but he has found nothing. [7] If he does not find his cows, he will not bring milk to the city. [8] Although he had not found his cows, he brought milk enough yesterday. [9] The peasants work all day. [10] They love the country; we love the city. [11] What letter did Louisa give to this man? [12] She had not found her father's letter, but she gave to the man her uncle's two letters. [13] I often give handsome things to my friends. [14] My uncle will bring from (de) Rome some beautiful pictures for (pour) his nieces. [15] Children, let us give some wine to this poor woman. [16] She has worked ten hours, and she is very unhappy. [17] Give your old black coat to this man; he is cold. [18] Did these young girls look for flowers? [19] Yes, sir; they had been seeking flowers an hour in the garden. [20] Why have they not brought flowers to their mother? [21] They have found no flowers; they have found only leaves in the garden.

LESSON XIX.

SECOND REGULAR CONJUGATION.

1. The verbs of the second conjugation, with infinitive ending in **ir**, are much fewer than those of the first.

a. They are principally verbs of the Latin fourth conjugation, in **ire**, but mixed with a few of the second and third conjugations, and with denominative verbs, made from adjectives and nouns. The forms showing **-iss-** are of inceptive origin, as if from **finisco** beside **finio**.

2. As model of the second conjugation, we will take the verb **finir** *finish*,

a. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is:

finir	**finissant**	**fini**	**finís**	**finis**
finirai	**finissais**	**avoir fini**	**finis**	**finisse**
finirais	**finisse**	etc.		

b. The full inflection of the simple tenses is:

INFINITIVE, *finish, to finish*
finir (**à finir, de finir**)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *finishing*
finissant

PAST PARTICIPLE, *finished*
fini

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I finish*, etc.

je finis	**nous finissons**
tu finis	**vous finissez**
il finit	**ils finissent**

IMPERFECT, *I was finishing*, etc.

je finissais	**nous finissions**
tu finissais	**vous finissiez**
il finissait	**ils finissaient**

PRETERIT, *I finished*, etc.

je finis	**nous finîmes**
tu finis	**vous finîtes**
il finit	**ils finirent**

FUTURE, *I shall finish*, etc.

je finirai	**nous finirons**
tu finiras	**vous finirez**
il finira	**ils finiront**

CONDITIONAL, *I should finish*, etc.

je finirais	**nous finirions**
tu finirais	**vous finiriez**
il finirait	**ils finiraient**

IMPERATIVE, *finish*, etc.

	finissons
finis	**finissez**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may finish*, etc.

que je finisse	**que nous finissions**
que tu finisses	**que vous finissiez**
qu'il finisse	**qu'ils finissent**

IMPERFECT, *that I might finish*, etc.

que je finisse	**que nous finissions**
que tu finisses	**que vous finissiez**
qu'il finît	**qu'ils finissent**

c. Of the compound tenses, the brief synopsis is:

PERF. INFIN.	**avoir fini,** *to have finished*
PERF. PART.	**ayant fini,** *having finished*
INDIC. PERF.	**j'ai fini,** *I have finished*
PLUPF.	**j'avais fini,** *I had finished*
PAST ANT.	**j'eus fini,** *I had finished*
FUT. PERF.	**j'aurai fini,** *I shall have finished*
COND. PERF.	**j'aurais fini,** *I should have finished*
SUBJ. PERF.	**que j'aie fini,** *that I may have finished*
PLUPF.	**que j'eusse fini,** *that I might have finished*

d. Note that, of the simple tenses, the present and preterit indicative are alike in the singular, but different in the plural; also, that the present and imperfect subjunctive are alike throughout, except in the 3d singular.

3. Two or three verbs of this conjugation have slight irregularities, which may be pointed out here:

a. The verb **haïr** *hate* loses its diæresis (that is, has its **a** and **i** united into a diphthong) in the singular persons of the present indicative and of the imperative. These two tenses are thus inflected:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
je hais	**nous haïssons**		**haïssons**
tu hais	**vous haïssez**	**hais**	**haïssez**
il hait	**ils haïssent**		

b. The verb **fleurir** *flourish*, otherwise regular, has a second present participle and imperfect indicative, **florissant, je florissais** etc., from the old verb-form **florir.** The forms with **o** are used only in a figurative sense.

c. The verb **bénir** *bless* has a second past participle **bénit,** used as adjective, *consecrated:* thus, **du pain bénit** *consecrated bread,* **l'eau bénite** *holy water.*

VOCABULARY.

finir, *finish*	**bâtir,** *build*
punir, *punish*	**haïr,** *hate*
choisir, *choose*	**saisir,** *seize*
bénir, *bless*	**fleurir,** *flourish*
la tâche, *the task*	**la chose,** *the thing*
le prêtre, *the priest*	**les gens** pl., *the people*
bien, *well*	**mal,** *ill*

EXERCISE 19.

[1] Ces enfants (n'ont-ils pas) fini leur tâche? [2] Le maître punira les enfants, (s'ils ne) finissent pas leur tâche. [3] Le mauvais homme (n'a point) d'amis; il hait les hommes, et les hommes (haïssent) le mauvais homme. [4] Le prêtre a béni le pain et le vin. [5] Il donnera aux gens le pain bénit, mais il ne donnera le vin à personne. [6] Ces hommes ont bâti une nouvelle église pour le vieux prêtre. [7] Ils finiront l'église le mois prochain. [8] Quoiqu'ils bâtissent l'église, ils ne bâtiront pas l'école. [9] Mon oncle bâtissait une très-jolie maison pour sa fille. [10] Nous choisissions de beaux tableaux pour cette maison. [11] Le fruit fleurit-il dans votre jardin, monsieur? [12] Oui, madame; tous les fruits et toutes les fleurs fleurissent dans ce jardin. [13] Pourquoi punissez-vous ces enfants? [14] Parce qu'ils ont saisi les fleurs de ce pauvre garçon. [15] Mes enfants, ne saisissez jamais les choses des autres. [16] Je choisirai beaucoup de très jolies fleurs, et je donnerai les fleurs à ma mère. [17] Édouard, finis ta tâche. [18] Le maître ne punira pas Édouard, quoiqu'il ne finisse pas sa tâche. [19] Il ne hait pas la tâche, mais il a été malade.

THEME 19.

[1] Have you finished your task, Edward? [2] No, sir; but I shall have finished this task to-morrow. [3] Although you have not finished this book, choose another book. [4] I will choose a history. [5] My sister chose a novel yesterday; she does not like a history. [6] We hate histories, but we like stories and novels. [7] My uncle built the last year a library for the people of the village, and he will build a pretty house for the priest. [8] Why does he not build a church also? [9] Were you choosing a picture for your room? [10] I should have chosen a picture, if I had had money. [11] Charles, choose a present for thy sister, but do not seize the things. [12] Good children never seize other

IMPERFECT, *that I might finish*, etc.

que je finisse	**que nous finissions**
que tu finisses	**que vous finissiez**
qu'il finît	**qu'ils finissent**

c. Of the compound tenses, the brief synopsis is:

PERF. INFIN.	**avoir fini,** *to have finished*
PERF. PART.	**ayant fini,** *having finished*
INDIC. PERF.	**j'ai fini,** *I have finished*
PLUPF.	**j'avais fini,** *I had finished*
PAST ANT.	**j'eus fini,** *I had finished*
FUT. PERF.	**j'aurai fini,** *I shall have finished*
COND. PERF.	**j'aurais fini,** *I should have finished*
SUBJ. PERF.	**que j'aie fini,** *that I may have finished*
PLUPF.	**que j'eusse fini,** *that I might have finished*

d. Note that, of the simple tenses, the present and preterit indicative are alike in the singular, but different in the plural; also, that the present and imperfect subjunctive are alike throughout, except in the 3d singular.

3. Two or three verbs of this conjugation have slight irregularities, which may be pointed out here:

a. The verb **haïr** *hate* loses its diæresis (that is, has its **a** and **i** united into a diphthong) in the singular persons of the present indicative and of the imperative. These two tenses are thus inflected:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
je hais	**nous haïssons**		**haïssons**
tu hais	**vous haïssez**	**hais**	**haïssez**
il hait	**ils haïssent**		

b. The verb **fleurir** *flourish*, otherwise regular, has a second present participle and imperfect indicative, **florissant, je florissais** etc., from the old verb-form **florir.** The forms with **o** are used only in a figurative sense.

c. The verb **bénir** *bless* has a second past participle **bénit,** used as adjective, *consecrated:* thus, **du pain bénit** *consecrated bread,* **l'eau bénite** *holy water.*

VOCABULARY.

finir, *finish*	**bâtir,** *build*
punir, *punish*	**haïr,** *hate*
choisir, *choose*	**saisir,** *seize*
bénir, *bless*	**fleurir,** *flourish*
la tâche, *the task*	**la chose,** *the thing*
le prêtre, *the priest*	**les gens** pl., *the people*
bien, *well*	**mal,** *ill*

EXERCISE 19.

[1] Ces enfants (n'ont-ils pas) fini leur tâche? [2] Le maître punira les enfants, (s'ils ne) finissent pas leur tâche. [3] Le mauvais homme (n'a point) d'amis; il hait les hommes, et les hommes (haïssent) le mauvais homme. [4] Le prêtre a béni le pain et le vin. [5] Il donnera aux gens le pain bénit, mais il ne donnera le vin à personne. [6] Ces hommes ont bâti une nouvelle église pour le vieux prêtre. [7] Ils finiront l'église le mois prochain. [8] Quoiqu'ils bâtissent l'église, ils ne bâtiront pas l'école. [9] Mon oncle bâtissait une très-jolie maison pour sa fille. [10] Nous choisissions de beaux tableaux pour cette maison. [11] Le fruit fleurit-il dans votre jardin, monsieur? [12] Oui, madame; tous les fruits et toutes les fleurs fleurissent dans ce jardin. [13] Pourquoi punissez-vous ces enfants? [14] Parce qu'ils ont saisi les fleurs de ce pauvre garçon. [15] Mes enfants, ne saisissez jamais les choses des autres. [16] Je choisirai beaucoup de très jolies fleurs, et je donnerai les fleurs à ma mère. [17] Édouard, finis ta tâche. [18] Le maître ne punira pas Édouard, quoiqu'il ne finisse pas sa tâche. [19] Il ne hait pas la tâche, mais il a été malade.

THEME 19.

[1] Have you finished your task, Edward? [2] No, sir; but I shall have finished this task to-morrow. [3] Although you have not finished this book, choose another book. [4] I will choose a history. [5] My sister chose a novel yesterday; she does not like a history. [6] We hate histories, but we like stories and novels. [7] My uncle built the last year a library for the people of the village, and he will build a pretty house for the priest. [8] Why does he not build a church also? [9] Were you choosing a picture for your room? [10] I should have chosen a picture, if I had had money. [11] Charles, choose a present for thy sister, but do not seize the things. [12] Good children never seize other

people's things. [13] Why did you punish the dog? [14] I punished the dog, because he seized this poor boy's meat. [15] Do the flowers flourish in your garden? [16] I have many flowers, and they flourish well in my garden. [17] Although these children hate their tasks, they love books. [18] They did not choose good books; they chose bad novels. [19] Their master will punish the children. [20] If you have finished your history, give the book to your brother.

LESSON XX.

THIRD REGULAR CONJUGATION.

1. The verbs of the third conjugation, with infinitive ending in **re**, are but few in number.

a. They are certain verbs of the Latin third conjugation.

2. As model of their conjugation may be taken the verb **vendre** *sell* (Lat. **vendere**).

a. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is:

vendre	**vendant**	**vendu**	**vends**	**vendis**
vendrai	**vendais**	**avoir vendu**	**vends**	**vendisse**
vendrais	**vende**	etc. etc.		

b. The full inflection of the simple tenses is:

INFINITIVE, *sell, to sell.*
vendre (à vendre, de vendre)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *selling*
vendant

PAST PARTICIPLE, *sold*
vendu

INDICATIVE.
PRESENT, *I sell*, etc.

je vends	**nous vendons**
tu vends	**vous vendez**
il vend	**ils vendent**

IMPERFECT, *I was selling*, etc.

je vendais	**nous vendions**
tu vendais	**vous vendiez**
il vendait	**ils vendaient**

PRETERIT, *I sold*, etc.

je vendis	nous vendîmes
tu vendis	vous vendîtes
il vendit	ils vendirent

FUTURE, *I shall sell*, etc.

je vendrai	nous vendrons
tu vendras	vous vendrez
il vendra	ils vendront

CONDITIONAL, *I should sell*, etc.

je vendrais	nous vendrions
tu vendrais	vous vendriez
il vendrait	ils vendraient

IMPERATIVE, *sell*, etc.

	vendons
vends	vendez

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may sell*, etc.

que je vende	que nous vendions
que tu vendes	que vous vendiez
qu'il vende	qu'ils vendent

IMPERFECT, *that I might sell*, etc.

que je vendisse	que nous vendissions
que tu vendisses	que vous vendissiez
qu'il vendît	qu'ils vendissent

c. Of the compound tenses, the brief synopsis is:

PERF. INFIN.	avoir vendu, *to have sold*
PERF. PART.	ayant vendu, *having sold*
INDIC. PERF.	j'ai vendu, *I have sold*
PLUPF.	j'avais vendu, *I had sold*
PAST ANT.	j'eus vendu, *I had sold*
FUT. PERF.	j'aurai vendu, *I shall have sold*
COND. PERF.	j'aurais vendu, *I should have sold*
SUBJ. PERF.	que j'aie vendu, *that I may have sold*
PLUPF.	que j'eusse vendu, *that I might have sold*

d. Notice that the verbs of this conjugation have different vowels in the endings of the preterit and of the past participle: thus, **vendis, vendu.** In nearly all other verbs, regular and irregular, these two forms agree in vowel.

3. Two or three verbs of this conjugation have slight irregularities, which are best pointed out here.

a. **Vaincre** *conquer* (Lat. **vincere**) is perfectly regular to the ear, but is necessarily spelt with **qu** instead of **c** before **e** and **i** (72*a*), and then also before **a** and **o**; the **c** remaining only before **u**, before a consonant, and as final. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is as follows:

vaincre	**vainquant**	**vaincu**	**vaincs**	**vainquis**
vaincrai	**vainquais**	**avoir vaincu**	**vaincs**	**vainquisse**
vaincrais	**vainque**	etc. etc.		

The pres. indicative and imperative (in which alone any change of spelling occurs in inflection) are as follows:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.	
je vaincs	**nous vainquons**		**vainquons**
tu vaincs	**vous vainquez**	**vaincs**	**vainquez**
il vainc	**ils vainquent**		

The compound **convaincre** *convince* is conjugated in the same manner.

b. **Rompre** *break* (Lat. **rumpere**) adds a **t** in the 3d sing. indic. present: thus **il rompt** (not **romp**); in all other respects it is regular.

c. **Battre** *beat* (Lat. **battuere**) loses one of its two **t**'s in the singular of the pres. indicative and of the imperative, which are thus inflected:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.	
je bats	**nous battons**		**battons**
tu bats	**vous battez**	**bats**	**battez**
il bat	**ils battent**		

The rest is regular.

VOCABULARY.

vendre, *sell*	**perdre**, *lose*
attendre, *wait, expect*	**rompre**, *break*
battre, *beat*	**vaincre**, *conquer*
le gâteau, *the cake*	**la voix**, *the voice*
l'oiseau m., *the bird*	**l'ennemi** m., *the enemy*
entendre, *hear, understand*	**la cerise**, *cherry*

EXERCISE 20.

[1] Ce boulanger vend du pain et des gâteaux. [2] Pourquoi n'a-t-il pas vendu de pain à cet homme-ci? [3] Il n'a pas vendu de pain à l'homme, parce qu'il n'avait pas d'argent. [4] Il perdit hier tout son argent. [5] Entendez-vous les oiseaux dans le jardin? [6] Non, madame; je n'ai point entendu les

oiseaux, mais j'entends la voix d'une jeune fille. [7] Ma sœur a été malade, et elle a perdu sa belle voix. [8] Quel livre avez-vous perdu? [9] J'ai perdu l'histoire d'Angleterre. [10] Je perds souvent mon histoire. [11] Les mauvais garçons battent les pauvres chiens. [12] Henri ne bat jamais son chien. [13] Le roi Louis XIV. a vaincu tous ses ennemis. [14] Il vainc toujours. [15] Avez-vous attendu une lettre? [16] Oui, j'attends des lettres chaque jour. [17] Quoique ce boulanger vende beaucoup de pain, il perd toujours de l'argent. [18] Le prêtre rompt et bénit le pain, et donne les morceaux aux hommes. [19] S'il vendait tout le fruit, il n'aurait plus de cerises pour les enfants. [20] Il n'aurait rien perdu. [21] Rompez le pain, et donnez un morceau à ce pauvre enfant.

THEME 20.

[1] I hear a voice in the house. [2] What voice did you hear? [3] I heard yesterday the voice of this young girl in the garden. [4] Did you expect nobody day before yesterday? [5] Yes, I expected my brother. [6] I shall expect many friends to-morrow. [7] This poor man has lost his wife, and he will lose his daughter. [8] This man does not beat his horses. [9] He does not sell his horses, though they are very old. [10] If we sold our horse to this man, he would beat the horse. [11] A good boy never beats his dog. [12] Why does your cousin not break the big cake? [13] Let us break the cake, and let us give a piece to this little girl. [14] Have you sold your bird? [15] No, we did not sell the bird; we lost the bird. [16] If I had not lost all our birds, I should give a bird to this boy. [17] Have the enemies conquered? [18] No, our king has conquered the enemies. [19] He always conquers his enemies. [20] This bad baker often sells bread to our enemy. [21] He will sell bread to all the people, if they have money.

LESSON XXI.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. Besides the verbs of the three regular conjugations, the French has a large number (near a hundred) that are more or less irregularly inflected. Of all these, the inflection has to be separately learned, and it will be given in the lessons following.

2. *a.* Of the first conjugation, or with infinitives ending in **er**, there are but two really irregular verbs, **aller** *go*, and **envoyer** *send* (for which, see XXVII. **8**, and XLII. **11**).

b. But many verbs of the first conjugation, otherwise regular, have to undergo in inflection certain changes of spelling, in accordance with the general rules of the language (laid down above, in the Lesson on Pronunciation). Thus:

3. Since (**21***a*) no word in French may end in two silent syllables, and their occurrence anywhere in a word is generally avoided—therefore

a. Verbs having in the infinitive a mute syllable before the final syllable have to give the former a full pronunciation whenever in inflection the syllable after it becomes mute.

b. This is usually done by putting a grave accent upon the **e** of the syllable in question.

Thus, from the infinitive **mener** *lead*, we have **je mène, tu mèneras, il mènerait, mène, qu'ils mènent**, etc.; but **nous menons, je menais, tu menas, qu'il menât**, etc. Also, from **acheter** *buy*, we have **il achète, nous achèterons, que tu achètes**, etc.; but **vous achetez, il acheta, achetons, que nous achetions**, etc.

c. But a few verbs double instead the consonant (**t** or **l**) following the **e**.

Thus, from **jeter** *throw*, we have **je jette, tu jetteras, il jetterait, jette, qu'ils jettent**, etc.; and from **appeler** *call*, we have **il appelle, nous appellerons, que tu appelles**, etc.

The verbs thus doubling the consonant are **jeter** (and its compounds) and **cacheter; appeler, chanceler, étinceler, renouveler,** and **ensorceler.**

d. The synopsis of principal and derived forms of **mener** is as follows:

mener	**menant**	**mené**	**mène**	**menai**
mènerai	**menais**	**avoir mené**	**mène**	**menasse**
mènerais	**mène**	etc. etc.		

The only tenses that show the difference of spelling in their tense-inflection are the pres. indicative, the imperative, and the pres. subjunctive; they are:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.		Present Subjunctive.	
mène	**menons**		**menons**	**mène**	**menions**
mènes	**menez**	**mène**	**menez**	**mènes**	**meniez**
mène	**mènent**			**mène**	**mènent**

And in like manner with the other verbs.

4. Since the accent on an **e** followed by a silent syllable is regularly and usually the grave (**20***a*)—therefore

a. Verbs having in the infinitive an acute **é** before the final syllable change the accent to grave (**è**) when the next syllable becomes mute—except, however, in the future and conditional, where the acute is retained.

Thus, of the verb **céder** *cede*, for example,

b. The synopsis of principal and derived forms is:

céder	**cédant**	**cédé**	**cède**	**cédai**
céderai	**cédais**	**avoir cédé**	**cède**	**cédasse**
céderais	**cède**	etc. etc.		

And the inflection of the tenses that show a change of accent is:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.		Present Subjunctive.	
cède	**cédons**		**cédons**	**cède**	**cédions**
cèdes	**cédez**	**cède**	**cédez**	**cèdes**	**cédiez**
cède	**cèdent**			**cède**	**cèdent**

c. But the verb **créer** *create* retains the acute throughout: thus, **je crée, ils créent,** etc.; also, in general usage hitherto, the verbs ending in the infinitive in **éger**: thus, from **protéger** *protect*, **je protége, ils protégent,** etc. (but now better **je protège, ils protègent,** etc.: **20***c*).

5. Verbs having **c** or **g** (pronounced soft) before final **er** of the infinitive retain the soft sound of these letters through their whole conjugation; and this is signified by

writing a cedilla under the **c** (thus, **ç**), and by keeping an **e** after the **g** (62*e*), wherever in conjugation those letters come to be followed by **a** or **o**.

Thus, from **placer** *place*, and **manger** *eat*, we have
je place, and **nous plaçons**; **je mange**, and **nous mangeons**
je plaçais, and **nous placions**; **je mangeais**, and **nous mangions**
nous plaçâmes and **ils placèrent**; **nous mangeâmes**, and **ils mangèrent**
and so on.

6. Since **y** (= double **i**) does not usually stand before a mute **e** (37*b*)—therefore

a. Verbs having a **y** before the final **er** of the infinitive change it to **i** when in conjugation it comes to be followed by a mute **e**.

b. Thus, for example, of the verb **payer** *pay* the synopsis of principal and derived forms is:

payer	**payant**	**payé**	**paie**	**payai**
paierai	**payais**	**avoir payé**	**paie**	**payasse**
paierais	**paie**	etc. etc.		

And the present indicative is thus inflected:

paie	**payons**
paies	**payez**
paie	**paient**

And in like manner with **employer** *employ*, **appuyer** *support*, and so on.

c. But verbs in **eyer** preserve the **y** throughout: thus, **je grasseye** (not **grasseie**), etc. And some writers retain the **y** after **a**: thus, **je paye**, etc.

7. When the **i** of a verb ending in **ier** comes to be followed by **i** in inflection (namely, in 1st and 2d plur. impf. indic. and pres. subj.), the two **i**'s remain unchanged (do not become **y**). Thus, from **prier** *pray*, **oublier** *forget*, we have **nous priions**, **vous priiez**; **que nous oubliions**, **que vous oubliiez**.

VOCABULARY.

appeler, *call*	**acheter**, *buy*
mener, *take, lead*	**protéger**, *protect*
manger, *eat*	**commencer**, *begin*
employer, *employ*	**nettoyer**, *clean*
créer, *create*	**oublier**, *forget*
la domestique, *servant, maid*	**le berger**, *the shepherd*
le monde, *the world*	**le temps**, *the time*

Exercise 21.

[1] Appelle la domestique, Hélène. [2] Je l'ai appelée, ma mère, mais elle n'était pas ici; elle nettoyait les chambres. [3] Elle nettoiera votre chambre demain. [4] Ce petit garçon-ci mène aux champs les vaches et les brebis de son père. [5] Le berger et son chien protègent toujours les brebis. [6] Si le berger n'était pas ici, ce vieux chien mènerait et protégerait les brebis. [7] Quel fruit mangez-vous, mes enfants? [8] Nous mangeons des cerises; hier nous mangeâmes des pommes, et demain nous mangerons des poires. [9] Achetez-vous beaucoup de fruit? [10] J'achète du fruit tous les jours de cette vieille femme. [11] Si nous donnons de l'argent à ce garçon, il achètera du pain pour sa mère malade. [12] Quoiqu'il ait acheté du pain pour sa mère, elle ne mangera rien. [13] Elle acheta du fruit et du vin pour cet homme, mais il ne mangea rien. [14] Charles, avez-vous commencé ce livre-ci? [15] Non; mais je commencerai le livre demain matin. [16] Nous commençons l'école aujourd'hui, et je mènerai tous les enfants à leur maître. [17] (Ont-ils) oublié le maître? [18] Quoique nous oubliions le maître, il n'oublie jamais ses élèves. [19] Emploie bien le temps, mon enfant, et n'oublie point ta tâche. [20] Dieu a créé le monde, et il protège toujours les hommes. [21] Il crée les arbres et leurs fruits.

Theme 21.

[1] Edward is hungry, but he does not eat any bread. [2] Let us buy some fruit, and let us eat two apples. [3] You ate (pret.) too many peaches yesterday. [4] If they buy bread to-day, they will buy wine to-morrow. [5] The servant was cleaning the windows yesterday; to-day she will clean the rooms of the house. [6] Did the school begin yesterday? [7] It would have begun, but the master was ill. [8] Let us begin the school to-morrow. [9] The servant will

take all the children to the school. [10] Call Mary; I called her, but she was not there. [11] The shepherd takes the sheep to the fields. [12] At five o'clock he will take the cows to the water. [13] He took the sheep to the water yesterday at two o'clock. [14] If they call the boy, he will protect the sheep. [15] My cousins build houses, and they employ many men. [16] We only employ one servant. [17] Let us begin this pretty story. [18] I have forgotten the book. [19] We were at the school, and you always forgot the books. [20] These children were employing their time well. [21] They had finished the history, and they were beginning a new story. [22] God created all men, he created also the sheep and the cows.

LESSON XXII.

CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. Many pronouns in French, especially the personal pronouns, have a different form according as they are used conjunctively or disjunctively.

2. A conjunctive pronoun is one that is immediately connected with a verb, as either its subject or its direct or indirect object; any other is disjunctive.

3. The subject-pronouns are already familiar; they are:

	1ST PERS.	2D PERS.	3D PERS.
SING.	je, *I*	tu, *thou*	il, *he;* elle, *she*
PLUR.	nous, *we*	vous, *you*	ils m., elles f., *they*

a. In rare instances, however, even the subject-pronoun is obliged to take the disjunctive form: see Second Part, §§ 74*a*, 76.

4. The subject-pronoun stands in general immediately before the personal verb, only the negative ne and the object-pronouns being allowed to come in between the two.

a. But, as in English, the subject-pronoun follows the verb in questions, and in interjected phrases like **dit-il** *said he*, and occasionally in other cases: see Second Part, § **224** etc.

b. In a question, only the subject-pronoun changes its place, everything else remaining as it would be if the sentence were an assertion.

5. Of the object-pronouns, direct and indirect object, all the forms are these:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1ST PERS.	**me, moi**, *me, to me*	**nous**, *us, to us*
2D "	**te, toi**, *thee, to the*	**vous**, *you, to you*
3D "	**le**, *him ;* **la**, *her ;* **lui**, *to him* or *her*	**les**, *them ;* **leur**, *to them*

6. The uses of the object-pronouns are as follows:

a. **Nous** and **vous** are unvaried, standing in every construction and position—as conjunctive pronouns and as disjunctive, as subject and as object, as direct and as indirect object, before the verb and after it.

b. **Me** and **moi**, and **te** and **toi**, are used either as direct or as indirect object, **me** and **te** before the verb, and **moi** and **toi** after it (for one exception, see XXIII. 6*b*). Thus:

tu m'aimes, *thou lovest me*	**aime-moi**, *love me*
tu te donnes, *thou givest thyself*	**donne-toi**, *give thyself*
vous me donnez, *you give to me*	**donnez-moi**, *give to me*

c. **Le, la**, and **les** are used as direct object only, **le** being masculine, **la** feminine, and **les** of either gender; **lui** and **leur** are used only as indirect object, both being of either gender: thus,

il l'aime, *he loves her*	**aimez-la**, *love her*
elle l'aime, *she loves him*	**aime-le**, *love him*
je lui donne, *I give to him* or *her*	**donnez lui**, *give to him* or *her*
nous les vendons, *we sell them*	**vendons-les**, *let us sell them*
vous leur vendez, *you sell to them*	**vendez-leur**, *sell to them*

d. Thus it is seen that the object-pronouns of the 1st and 2d sing. vary in form according to their position before or after the verb, and for that only; while, on the contrary, those of the 3d pers. vary according to their character as direct or indirect object, and the direct object in the singular also for gender, but they have the same form before and after the verb.

e. Notice that the direct-object pronouns **le la les** have the same form, and the same distinctions of gender and number, with the definite article. **Le** and **la** also have their vowels cut off before a following vowel (or **h** mute), just as when they are articles.

7. An object-pronoun, whether direct or indirect object, stands in general immediately before the governing verb—in the compound tenses, immediately before the auxiliary: but with this exception, that if the verb is an imperative affirmative, the pronoun stands instead directly after it (and is joined to it by a hyphen).

For examples, see above, 6*b*, *c*.

a. Nothing is allowed to come between the verb and its pronoun-object; the subject, and the negative **ne**, when used, are placed outside of them: thus,

je ne vous donne pas le livre, *I do not give you the book*
mon ami ne t'a pas vu, *my friend has not seen thee*
ne les aimez-vous pas, *do you not love them?*
ne l'aura-t-il pas fini, *will he not have finished it?*

b. If the verb is an imperative negative, the object-pronoun precedes instead of following it: thus,

ne lui donnez pas le livre, *do not give him the book*
ne les aimez pas, *do not love them*

8. When a verb governs two object-pronouns, one direct and the other indirect, they are both together placed either before or after it, according to the rules just given—that is, after it in the imperative affirmative, otherwise before it.

a. A verb in French does not have two direct objects; and almost never two indirect, unless one be **en** or **y** (Second Part, § 158).

9. As regards their position relative to one another:

a. When both come before the verb, the indirect stands first, unless it be of the third person (lui or leur), in which case it follows the direct: thus,

je te le donne, *I give it to thee*
vous nous le donnerez, *you will give it to us*
je le lui ai donné, *I have given it to him* (or *to her*)
vous le leur aviez donné, *you had given it to them*
il ne me les vendra pas, *he will not sell them to me*
il ne nous les a pas vendus, *he has not sold them to us*
ne me les donne pas, *do not give them to me*
ne vous la vendra-t il pas, *will he not sell it to you?*

b. When both come after the verb, the indirect always stands last: thus,

donnez-les-moi, *give them to me*
vendons-le-leur, *let us sell it to them*

c. As the last examples show, both object-pronouns, when they follow the verb, are joined to it by hyphens. Some, however, prefer to omit the second hyphen: thus **donnez-les moi.**

d. A brief rule, covering all cases of the relative position of direct and indirect object-pronoun, objects of the same verb, is as follows:

Before the verb, the indirect-object pronoun, unless of the third person, precedes the direct.

VOCABULARY.

No new words, except the pronoun-forms above, are given to be learned with this Lesson.

EXERCISE 22.

[1] Le maître n'aime-t-il pas ces enfants? [2] Il ne les aime pas; il les punit toujours. [3] Donnez-moi ces gâteaux. [4] Non, mon enfant, je ne te les donnerai pas; tu ne les mangeras pas. [5] Avez-vous bâti votre maison à Paris? [6] Je l'ai bâtie dans la ville. [7] Le boulanger vous a-t-il vendu ce pain-ci? [8] Il ne nous l'a pas vendu, il nous l'a donné. [9] Les enfants ont beaucoup de gâteaux; le boulanger les

leur a donnés. [9] Si vous avez de bons livres, donnez-les-moi. [11] Apportes-tu cette fleur à ma sœur? [12] Oui, mon ami; je la lui apporte. [13] Apportez-moi aussi des fleurs. [14] Ne lui apportez pas de fruit. [15] Si j'avais du pain, je vous le (donnerais.) [16] Il a faim; je le lui (donnerai.) [17] Avez-vous votre livre, ou l'avez-vous perdu? [18] Je l'ai perdu, monsieur; je le cherche, mais je ne le trouve pas. [19] Cherchez-le toujours; vous le trouverez. [20] Ne me donnerez-vous pas ces jolies fleurs? [21] Je ne vous les donnerai pas; je les ai achetées pour ma mère, et je les lui donnerai. [22] Si vous ne me l'aviez pas donné, je ne vous aurais pas aimé. [23] Tu as les pommes de ces enfants; donne-les-leur. [24] Si tu ne les leur donnes pas, je te punirai.

THEME 22.

[1] I give you the book; you give me the book; they give her the book; we give them the book; he gives us the book; thou givest him the book. [2] I give it to my friend; thou givest them to thy brother; we give it to our father. [3] I give it to you; you give it to me; they give it to her; we give it to them; he gives it to us; thou givest it to him; give it to them; do not give it to her. [4] Will you not give me this apple? [5] I shall not give it to you; I shall give it to this boy. [6] Do not give it to him; give it to me. [7] Did not the baker sell the bread to this woman? [8] Yes; he sold it to her; he did not give it to her. [9] Will she give it to her children? [10] She will not give it to them; she is eating it. [11] Give it to me; do not eat it. [12] Eat it; do not sell it to them. [13] Bring me the book, and I will buy it. [14] If she had brought me cherries, I should have eaten them. [15] The shepherd had sheep, but he has lost them. [16] He is seeking them, and if he finds them, he will lead them to us. [17] Find me the book, and bring it to me. [18] Does the baker sell bread to the poor people? [19] He does not sell it to them, because they have no money. [20] Let us

buy a piece of bread, and let us give it to them. [21] Although we have bread enough, we will not eat it; we will give it to you.

LESSON XXIII.

DISJUNCTIVE AND CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Personal pronouns not immediately connected with a verb, as either its subject or its direct or indirect object, are called disjunctive, or are said to be used disjunctively.

2. The disjunctive forms of the personal pronouns are:

	1st pers.	2d pers.	3d pers.
Sing.	**moi**, *me*	**toi**, *thee*	**lui**, *him;* **elle**, *her*
Plur.	**nous**, *us*	**vous**, *you*	**eux** m., **elles** f., *them*

a. Note that in the first and second persons these pronouns have the same form with some of the conjunctives, while in the third person **eux** is new, and **lui**, which as conjunctive pronoun (indirect object) is of either gender, as disjunctive is masculine only.

3. The ordinary constructions of the disjunctive pronoun are these:

a. With a preposition.

Thus, **à moi** *to me*, **de toi** *of thee*, **avec lui** *with him*, **sans elle** *without her*, **pour eux** *for them* (m.), **entre elles** *between them* (f.).

b. Used absolutely—that is, without any verb expressed with which they should be immediately connected: thus,

qui a dit cela, *who has said that* **moi**, *I* (for **je l'ai dit**)
qui avez-vous vu, *whom have you seen?* **lui**, *him* (for **je l'ai vu**)
elle est plus grande que toi, *she is taller than thou* (*art*)
faites comme moi, *do as I* (*do*)

c. In combination with **même** *self*, to form emphatic pronouns corresponding to our *myself*, *thyself*, etc.: thus,

moi-même, *myself*	**nous-mêmes**, *ourselves*
toi-même, *thyself*	**vous-mêmes**, *yourselves*
lui-même, *himself*	**eux-mêmes**, *themselves* (m.)
elle-même, *herself*	**elles-mêmes**, *themselves* (f.)

But **nous-même** *ourself* and **vous-même** *yourself*, when used of a single person (VII. 1*b*).

These pronouns admit of being used as subject: thus, **lui-même me l'a dit** *himself has said it to me.*

d. As predicates after the impersonal **c'est, ce sont,** *it is:* thus, **c'est moi** *it is I*, **c'est vous** *it is you*, **est-ce lui,** *is it he?* but (XI. 2*b*) **ce sont eux, ce sont elles,** *it is they.*

e. But after personal forms of **être** *be*, the conjunctive pronoun of the direct object is used as predicate, especially in the sense of *it* or *so*, standing for an adjective or noun already expressed: thus, **êtes-vous heureux? nous le sommes,** *are you happy? we are so;* **la reine? je la suis,** *the queen? I am she* (see Second Part, § 81).

f. When more than one pronoun, or a pronoun and noun, are subjects of the same verb, the pronoun has the disjunctive form; and if the two are not of the same person, the compound subject is usually represented by a suitable pronoun before the verb: thus,

vous et moi (nous) sommes amis, *you and I are friends*
lui et son oncle sont partis, *he and his uncle are gone*

The same is necessary in the case of a compound object: thus, **je vous écoute toi et lui et elle,** *I listen to thee and him and her.*

g. If a subject-pronoun is separated from the verb by anything but the negative **ne** and object-pronouns, it has to take the disjunctive form: thus, **lui, saisissant un crayon, écrivit** *he, seizing a pencil, wrote;* **eux seuls sont venus** *they alone have come.*

4. Besides the personal pronouns already given, there is another, a reflexive pronoun of the 3d person, having the conjunctive form **se** and the disjunctive **soi** (like **me moi, te toi**).

Se is used in the inflection of reflexive verbs (XXIX.), both as direct and as indirect object, both as singular and as plural; **soi** is only singular, and usually relates to an indefinite subject: thus,

chacun pense à soi, *every one thinks of himself*
n'aimer que soi, *to love only one's self*

5. There are also two words, **en** and **y**, which have the value of genitive and dative cases, respectively, of personal pronouns of the third person. They are used chiefly of things, not of persons (except of unspecified persons in the plural).

a. **En** means *of it, of them*, and so on; it is the equivalent of a pronoun with the preposition **de (de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles)**.

b. **Y** means *to it, to them*, and so on; it is the equivalent of a pronoun with the preposition **à (à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles)**.

c. Hence they are often used with verbs to represent nouns which, if expressed, would have to be connected with the verbs by **de** and **à** respectively: thus, **s'en approcher** *to approach it* (because one says **s'approcher de quelque chose** *to approach something*); **je vous en remercie** *I thank you for it* (because **remercier de quelque chose**); **j'en ris** *I laugh at it* (because **rire de quelque chose**); **y arracher** *to wrest from them* (because **arracher à quelqu'un** *wrest from any one*), **j'y pense** *I think of it* (because **penser à quelque chose** *think of something*)—and so on.

6. **En** and **y** are treated as conjunctive pronouns, being always joined with the verb in the sentence, whatever their logical connection, and being put before or after the verb according to the same rules as other object-pronouns (XXII. 7): thus,

j'en suis certain, *I am certain of it*
il en connaît les lois, *he knows the laws of it* (*its laws*)
vous y êtes obéissant, *you are obedient to it*

a. When used along with other object-pronouns, they stand last, whether before or after the governing verb: thus,

je l'y conduirai, *I will conduct him to it*
conduisez-l'y, *conduct him to it*
donnez-lui-en, *give him of it* (*some*)
je ne vous en donnerai pas, *I will not give you of it* (*any*)

b. After the verb as well as before it, **me** and **te** are used instead of **moi** and **toi** before **en**, and usually before **y**: thus, **donnez-m'en** *give me of it* (*or some*), **rends-t'y** *betake thyself to it* (but sometimes **rends-y-toi**).

c. When **y** and **en** are used together, **en** follows **y**: thus, **il y en a** *there are some.*

7. **En** is often used partitively, standing for a noun with the partitive preposition **de**.

Thus, **avez-vous du pain?** *have you bread?* **j'en ai; je vous en donnerai,** *I have some; I will give you some.*

a. Where the noun would have an adjective qualifying it, the adjective takes the partitive preposition: thus, **j'en ai de bon** *I have some* (*that is*) *good* (equivalent to **j'ai de bon pain**); **voulez-vous des fleurs? je vous en donnerai de belles** *do you want flowers? I will give you some handsome ones.*

8. **En** and **y** are originally adverbs, and are, especially **y** *there*, not seldom used with that value. They have many idiomatic uses, for which see the Second Part, § 85.

VOCABULARY.

le bal, *the ball, dance*	**le théâtre,** *the theatre*
le plaisir, *the pleasure*	**seul,** *alone*
penser (ã) *think* (*of*)	**parler,** *speak*

EXERCISE 23.

Es-tu plus grand que ton frère, ou est-il plus grand que toi? [2] Il est plus beau que moi, mais je suis plus grand que lui. [3] Le plus grand, c'est moi; et le plus beau, c'est lui. [4] As-tu ton livre avec toi? [5] Non, je l'ai perdu. [6] Toi et moi, nous le chercherons. [7] Moi-même l'ai trouvé, sans vous. [8] Le boulanger donne-t-il des gâteaux à ces enfants? [9] Il en a, mais il ne leur en donne pas. [10] Moi, j'en achèterai pour eux; il en a de bons. [11] Toi et lui, avez-vous été au bal hier? [12] Moi seul y ai été; il était au théâtre avec eux. [13] Ce tableau n'est-il pas très beau? [14] Il l'est; mais j'en ai de plus beaux. [15] Cet homme parle beaucoup de ses amis; mais il n'y pense pas; il ne pense jamais qu'à soi-même. [16] Les garçons sont-ils au théâtre? [17] Ils y ont été avec moi, mais ils n'y sont plus. [18] Ils y ont eu beaucoup de plaisir, mais ils n'en auront plus; ils sont à l'école à présent. [19] Menez-m'y, je cherche leur maître. [20] C'est moi, monsieur; je le suis moi-même. [21] Aviez-vous

parlé de ce livre? [22] Nous y avions pensé, mais nous n'en avions pas parlé. [23] Lui et elle en parleront.

THEME 23.

[1] These children are hungry; give me bread for them. [2] I haven't any; but I will buy some. [3] No, I will buy some myself. [4] They are poorer than I, but I am smaller than they. [5] They alone are unhappy; we are not so. [6] The most unhappy of men—it is I. [7] I have lost my friend, and I am unhappy without him. [8] I do not speak of him, but I think always of him. [9] I was happy, but I never shall be so again. [10] This good man never thinks of himself. [11] He has much money, and he gives some to these poor people. [12] Are these men the peasants of the village? [13] It is they. [14] If you have money, give me some for them. [15] Have you been at the ball? [16] No, I have not been at it. [17] I shall be at the theatre with her to-morrow. [18] My friend and I were at the ball. [19] These books are very handsome, but I have handsomer ones in my library. [20] I will give you some for yourself. [21] What book have you? [22] I have forgotten the name of it. [23] I shall be at the house; wait for me there (at it). [24] I shall not be there (at it); I shall be at my uncle's.

LESSON XXIV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The demonstrative pronouns are:

ce, *this, that, it* (indefinite and neuter);

celui m., **celle** f., *this* or *that one*; **ceux** m., **celles** f., *these, those*

a. To all of them may be added the demonstrative adverbs **-ci** and **-là** (as to the noun following a demonstrative adjective: XIII. 3).

2. **Ce** has the value of a pronoun as subject of **être** *be* in its various tenses, and as antecedent of the relative pronouns **qui, que,** etc. *who, what*

a. In the former case, it is generally to be rendered by *it* in English: thus, **c'est moi** *it is I,* **ce fut son devoir** *it was his duty,* **ç'a été lui** *it was (has been) he,* **ç'aurait été dommage** *it would have been a pity.*

b. **Ce** is much more often used than **il** with the 3d persons of **être** in the sense of *it is, it was,* etc. This is especially the case when something already described or intimated is referred to, so that the **ce** would admit of being rendered by *that;* but it is not limited to such cases. In fact, **il** is hardly used except in expressions of time (XI. 2*a*), before an adjective followed by a logically subject-clause (infinitive or relative) which the **il** anticipates, and in the parenthetic **il est vrai,** meaning *to be sure.*

Thus, **il est temps de partir** *it is time to leave,* **il est tard** *it is late,* **il est six heures** *it is 6 o'clock,* **il est difficile de vous plaire** *it is hard to please you* (i.e. *to please you is hard*), **il est évident que vous avez tort** *it is plain that you are wrong,* **chèrement, il est vrai, mais fort loin** *at a dear rate, to be sure, but very far off;*—but **vous avez tort, c'est évident** *you are wrong, it (that) is plain;* **faites cela, ce n'est pas difficile** *do that, it is not hard,* **ce fut ma faute** *it was my fault,* **c'est votre ami qui est parti** *it is your friend that has left.*

c. **Ce** is also sometimes used with **pouvoir** and **devoir** as auxiliaries of **être,** and in a few phrases with **sembler** *seem:* thus, **ce pouvait être lui** *it might be he,* **ce doit être** *it must be,* **ce me semble** *it seems to me.*

d. For **ce** as antecedent of a relative, see XXVI. **10.**

3. The compounds of **ce** with the demonstrative adverbs are written **ceci** and **cela** (without grave accent; it is often contracted colloquially to **ça**); they mean *this* and *that* in an indefinite way, without reference to any particular object expressed. They are used in all constructions. Thus:

cela ne me plaît pas, *that does not please me*

je ne veux pas ceci; donnez-moi cela, *I don't want this; give me that*

que dites-vous de cela, *what do you say about that?*

a. In a question, **ceci** (rarely used) and **cela** are divided into **ce ci** and **ce là**: thus, **est-ce là votre livre** *is that your book?* **sont-ce ci vos gants** *are these your gloves?*

4. The other demonstratives, **celui** etc., distinguish gender and number, and are used of persons and of things, with more direct reference to something already expressed or distinctly understood. They are used either alone or with **ci** and **là** added to them by a hyphen: thus, **celui** *this* or *that one*, **celui-ci** *this one*, **celui-là** *that one*.

a. The simple **celui celle ceux celles** are used only as antecedents of a following relative, and before the preposition **de** in possessive phrases: thus,

celui qui est mon ami, *he who is my friend*
mes amis et ceux de mon frère, *my friends and my brother's* (literally, *and those of my brother*)
ma robe et celle de ma sœur, *my dress and my sister's*

b. In all other constructions, the compounds **celui-ci, celui-là**, etc., are used—as subject, as object, after prepositions, and so on: thus,

voici deux fleurs; voulez vous celle-ci ou celle-là, *here are two flowers; will you have this one or that one?*
ce livre-ci est à moi; je ne sais rien de celui-là, *this book belongs to me; I know nothing of that one*

c. As the last example shows, the demonstrative adjective is to be used when there is a noun with it for it to qualify, but the demonstrative pronoun to represent the noun, when the latter is omitted.

d. **Celui-ci** etc. often mean *the latter*, and **celui-là** etc. *the former*.

VERB-LESSON.

IRREGULAR VERBS—Vouloir.

5. *a.* Those verbs in French which are inflected throughout like one or other of the three—**donner, finir, vendre**—already given, are called REGULAR VERBS. But there are also many others in the language deviating more or less from these models, and they are called IRREGULAR VERBS.

b. The irregular verbs are one of the principal difficulties of French Grammar. They are of various degrees of irregularity: some are irregular only in their principal parts, all the derived parts coming from them precisely as in the verbs of the three regular conjugations; others are irregular also in the formation of the derived parts (only the impf. subj. coming without any exception regularly from the pret. indic.). But, in all of them, irregularities of tense-inflection are confined to the three present tenses—the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive. Of the other tenses, when the first person is known, the rest follow from it with certainty.

c. The only rules for the formation of the derived parts are those already given for regular verbs (XVIII. 1–7).

Of more special importance among the irregular verbs is the rule for finding the plural persons of the present from the present participle (XVIII. 4*a*).

d. In learning an irregular verb, the principal parts should first be mastered and made familiar, then the synopsis, then the inflection of the present tenses when this is in any way irregular. The synopsis of principal and derived parts will be given in this grammar for every irregular verb, and the inflection of the present tenses when called for. In the synopsis, those derived parts which do not come regularly from the principal parts will have attention called to them by being printed with **spaced** or **open** letters.

6. The very common verb **vouloir** *wish, desire, will* (Lat. **velle**), is also a specially irregular and difficult one.

a. Its synopsis is as follows:

vouloir	**voulant**	**voulu**	**veux**	**voulus**
voudrai	**voulais**	**avoir voulu**	——	**voulusse**
voudrais	**veuille**	etc. etc.		

b. Its pres. indic. and subj. are thus inflected:

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
veux	**voulons**	**veuille**	**voulions**
veux	**voulez**	**veuilles**	**vouliez**
veut	**veulent**	**veuille**	**veuillent**

c. The regular imperative **veux voulons voulez** is very rarely used; instead of it, the 2d pers. sing. and plur. **veuille veuillez** are used, but only with a following infinitive, and in the sense of

ou + u before a vowel = w (ou)

please to, be good enough to: thus, **veuillez vous asseoir** *please sit down.*

d. In **vouloir**, as in a number of other verbs, the vowel of the root is changed (here, from **ou** to **eu**) wherever the radical syllable is accented, not being followed by another of full tone. These forms with changed vowel are sometimes called the STRONG forms (**veux, veulent, veuillent,** etc.).

e. **Vouloir** is used with the infinitive of another verb almost as an auxiliary, and must stand for our *will* whenever a wish or request is implied: thus, **voulez-vous dîner chez nous** *will you dine with us?* It also signifies *wish to have, want:* as, **voulez-vous du lait** *will you have some milk?*

f. **En vouloir**, followed by **à**, means *have a grudge at, be vexed* or *angry at, be hostile to,* etc.: thus, **il en voulait à ce pauvre homme** *he bore a grudge against this poor man.*

VOCABULARY.

le portrait, *the portrait*	**la peinture**, *the painting*
le peintre, *the painter*	**l'atelier** m., *the studio*
vrai, *true*	**mieux** adv., *better*

EXERCISE 24.

[1] Est-ce là votre père? [2] Non, monsieur, c'est mon oncle. [3] Il est vrai que nous ne l'aimons pas, mais c'est parce qu'il est un mauvais homme. [4] Ce sont les trois frères de notre ami; celui-ci travaille toujours, mais ceux-là sont paresseux et ne travaillent jamais. [5] Cherchez-vous ceci? [6] Je ne cherche point cela; je cherche mes livres et ceux de mon frère. [7] Voilà les portraits de ma famille; celui-ci est très bon, mais ceux-là sont mauvais. [8] Ce peintre a beaucoup de beaux tableaux dans son atelier. [9] Achèterez-vous cette peinture-ci ou celle-là? [10] Celle-ci est le portrait de Louis XIV., et celle-là de Louis XV. [11] C'étaient deux rois de France; celui-là était un très grand roi; celui-ci était un très mauvais homme. [12] Ne me donnez pas cela; je ne l'aime pas; j'aime mieux ceci. [13] Ceci est trop cher; je ne vous l'achèterai pas. [14] C'est cher, il est vrai; mais c'est très beau. [15] Si j'avais assez d'argent, j'achèterais tout ceci. [16] Sont-ce là vos livres ou ceux du maître? [17] Ce sont mes livres; ceux de mon maître sont à l'école. [18] Quoique nous fussions très riches, nous n'achèterions pas

ces tableaux-ci ; ceux-là sont beaucoup plus beaux. [19] Cet homme n'est pas très riche, mais celui-là est très pauvre. [20] J'ai beaucoup de robes, et je vous donnerai celle-ci. [21] Je lui donnerai aussi celle de ma sœur. [22] Donnez-moi celle-là ; je l'aime mieux.

THEME 24.

[1] Is that your house? [2] Yes, it is my house, and it is a very good house. [3] We have prettier ones in our village ; but this one is larger than my father's. [4] This picture is handsome ; I do not like that one. [5] Are you the painter of it? [6] I am the painter of this one, and I have many pictures in my studio. [7] Do you like this one better, or that one? [8] I like this one, but those are also very pretty. [9] Which portrait have you bought? [10] I have bought that of the king of England. [11] Have you brought me this? [12] Yes ; but if you do not like this, I will give you that. [13] I have lost your present and your brother's, but I will look for them. [14] I have found this in the garden, and I will give it to you. [15] It is seven o'clock, and I am hungry ; give me bread. [16] I have some, but it is not for you. [17] You had some fruit, and you did not give me any ; now I do not give you this. [18] These men do not work, but those work always. [19] We have lost our horse, but we have my brother's. [20] If we had not had these flowers, we should have bought the old woman's. [21] These flowers are not handsome ; I like those better.

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Voulez-vous du pain? [2] Je n'en veux pas ; je n'ai pas faim. [3] Ne voudriez-vous pas manger ce fruit? [4] Veuillez m'en donner. [5] Ils ne veulent pas travailler. [6] Il voulait manger. [7] Il ne veut pas me le donner. [8] Quoiqu'il voulût manger, il n'avait rien.

[9] I will ; they do not wish ; will you? we shall have wished ; you will wish ; that I might have wished ; that

il n ill after any vowel = i.

she might wish; that we may wish; they wished; we were wishing; they would have wished. [10] Will you have some milk? [11] No, I do not want any; I want some water. [12] I want to give her a present. [13] Give her a new dress; she wants it. [14] Will you buy a dress for her?

LESSON XXV.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The interrogative pronouns are:

qui, *who? whom? what?*	**quoi**, *what?*
que, *what?*	**lequel** etc., *which*

2. **Qui** is hardly used except of persons. It stands for all genders and numbers, and in all constructions—as subject, object, predicate, after a preposition, etc. Thus:

Sub. **qui est là**, *who is there?*
Obj. **qui cherchent-ils**, *whom do they seek?*
Pred. **qui êtes-vous**, *who are you?*
after Prep. **pour qui ce crayon est-il**, *for whom is this pencil?*
" " **à qui est ce livre-là**, *to whom does that book belong?*

3. **Qui** is sometimes, but only rarely, used as subject in the sense of *what?* Generally, the phrase **qu'est-ce qui** *what is that which* or *what is it that* is employed instead. Thus:

qui vous amène, *what brings you here?*
qu'est-ce qui vous trouble, *what troubles you?* (literally, *what is it that troubles you?*)

4. **Que** and **quoi** *what?* are also without distinction of gender or number, but are used only of things; **que** is conjunctive (XXII. 2), and **quoi** is disjunctive (like **me moi**, etc.).

a. **Que** is only object of a verb, or predicate with an intransitive verb: thus,

que voulez-vous, *what do you wish?*
que nous dit cet homme, *what does this man say to us?*
qu'est-ce (or **qu'est-ce que c'est**), *what is it?*
que sert-il, *of what use is it?*
que deviendra-t-il, *what will he become?* (i.e. *what will become of him?*)

b. **Quoi** is used absolutely, and with a preposition: thus,

elle vous a donné—quoi, *she has given you—what?*
de quoi parle-t-il, *of what is he speaking?*

c. Both **que** and **quoi** are frequent in exclamation: thus,

que de bonté! que de bienfaits! *what* (i.e. *how much*) *goodness! what* (i.e. *how many*) *kindnesses!*
quoi de plus heureux, *what more fortunate!*
quoi! vous y êtes encore, *what! you are here still?*

d. **Que** is often also an adverb, meaning *how? why?*: thus,

que vous êtes belle, *how handsome you are!*
que parlez-vous si haut, *why do you speak so loud?*

5. **Lequel** is made up of the interrogative adjective **quel** (XIII. 4) and the definite article; it is written as if one word, but both its parts are inflected for gender and number: thus,

Sing. **lequel** m., **laquelle** f. Plur. **lesquels** m., **lesquelles** f.

They are used in all constructions, in the sense of *which? which one? what one?* Thus:

voici deux livres: lequel choisissez-vous, *here are two books: which do you choose?*
laquelle de ses sœurs est mariée, *which of his sisters is married?*
par lequel de ces chemins, *by which one of these roads?*

a. The article in **lequel** etc. also combines with the prepositions **de** and **à** just as when it stands alone, making **duquel, desquels, desquelles; auquel, auxquels, auxquelles**: thus, **duquel de vos amis parlez-vous** *of which of your friends do you speak?* **auxquelles de ces écolières les a-t-il donnés** *to which of these scholars has he given them?*

6. After some interrogative words—the pronouns **qui** and **que**, the adjective **quel**, and the adverbs **où** *where?* **quand** *when?* **com-**

ment *how?* **combien** *how much, how many?*—a subject-noun is allowed to be itself put after the verb in asking a question (compare I. **11**): thus, **que veut cette femme** *what does this woman want?* **où est notre ami** *where is our friend?* **quel livre a l'écolier** *what book has the scholar?*

7. It is common in French to use paraphrases in asking questions: thus, **qu'est-ce que vous avez** *what is it that you have?* for **qu'avez-vous** *what have you?* **qui est-ce qui vend** *who is it that sells?* for **qui vend** *who sells?* and the like; also **est-ce que vous avez** *is it [the case] that you have?* for **avez-vous** *have you?* and especially **est-ce que j'aime** instead of **aimé-je**, and the like.

VERB-LESSON.

8. The verb **pouvoir** *be able, can*, is, like **vouloir** (XXIV. **6**), a very common and very irregular verb, used somewhat in the manner of an auxiliary of mode.

a. Its synopsis of principal and derived forms is:

pouvoir	**pouvant**	**pu**	**peux** or **puis**	**pus**
pourrai	**pouvais**	**avoir pu**	———	**pusse**
pourrais	**puisse**	etc. etc.		

b. This verb has no imperative. Its pres. subj. is entirely regular in inflection. The pres. indic. is as follows:

peux, puis	**pouvons**
peux	**pouvez**
peut	**peuvent**

c. In this tense is seen the same exchange of **ou** and **eu** as in **vouloir**. The pres. subj. comes regularly from another form of the pres. pple, **puissant**, now used only as ordinary adjective, meaning *powerful, puissant.*

d. **Puis** and **peux** are equally common as 1st sing. In questions, however, only **puis-je** is used.

e. When this verb is made negative before an infinitive, the **pas** is often omitted: thus, **cela ne peut tarder** *that cannot delay.* The omission is more usual with **puis** than with **peux** in 1st sing. present.

f. **Pouvoir** sometimes expresses general possibility, and is to be rendered by *may, might*, etc.: thus, **cela peut être** *that may be*, **il pouvait avoir vingt ans** *he might (perhaps) be* 20 *years old.* It is sometimes used reflexively, in the sense of *be possible* thus, **cela se peut** *that is possible.*

g. **Pouvoir** often takes an object directly where in English we have to use another verb: thus, **peut-il attendre** *can he wait,* **il le peut** *he can (do) it.*

VOCABULARY.

la serviette, *the napkin*	**la nappe**, *the table-cloth*
l'assiette, *the plate*	**la cuiller**, *the spoon*
le couteau, *the knife*	**la fourchette**, *the fork*
dîner, *dine*	**déjeuner**, *breakfast*
maintenant, *now*	**alors**, *then*

EXERCISE 25.

[1] Qui est ce jeune homme? [2] C'est Monsieur B., mon ami. [3] Lequel de vos amis aimez-vous? [4] Je les aime tous. [5] Qui veut dîner avec moi? [6] Moi, je le veux; je n'ai pas encore dîné, et j'ai faim. [7] Laquelle des deux nappes voulez-vous employer? [8] Nous emploierons la rouge; nous voulons nettoyer la blanche. [9] À qui est cette assiette-ci? [10] C'est à mon fils, mais il n'est pas encore ici. [11] Qu'avez-vous à manger? [12] Veuillez manger de la viande et des légumes. [13] Voilà une cuiller et une fourchette; laquelle voulez-vous? [14] Donnez-moi la fourchette, et un couteau aussi. [15] Que veut-il? [16] Il veut du sel et du poivre. [17] Que lui donnez-vous maintenant? [18] Je lui donne une assiette. [19] Lequel de vos frères est ici, et que veut-il? [20] Il veut déjeuner avec moi. [21] De quoi vous a-t-il parlé? [22] Il m'a parlé du concert; qu'en pensez-vous? [23] À quoi pensiez-vous alors? [24] Je pensais à ma tâche. [25] Auxquelles des jeunes filles pensez-vous maintenant? [26] Je pense à ma nièce.

THEME 25.

[1] Who has been in my room? [2] It was I, madam. [3] What did you want? [4] I wanted to find the table-cloth and napkins. [5] Which did you find? [6] I found the white ones. [7] At what hour do you wish to dine? [8] I will dine now, because I have not breakfasted to-day. [9] What have you on the table? [10] We have butter and cheese; which do you wish? [11] I wish cheese with my bread; give me a knife and a plate. [12] Here is a blue and a white plate;

which do you want? [13] Please to give me that large knife. [14] Which of the knives is the largest? [15] This knife is larger than that. [16] Of what are you thinking? [17] Why do you not bring me the meat and the vegetables? [18] Who is this woman, and what has she in her basket? [19] She has potatoes; and I will buy you some. [20] To which of the children did he give the cake? [21] He gave it to nobody then; he will give it now to this good child. [22] Of whom have you bought this picture? [23] I bought it of the painter for my sister. [24] Of what were you speaking? [25] We were speaking of this portrait.

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Il peut travailler. [2] Il ne pouvait pas travailler. [3] Il ne pourra pas travailler, s'il est malade. [4] Il pourrait travailler, s'il n'était pas malade. [5] Il veut travailler, mais il ne le peut pas. [6] Nous le pouvons, mais nous ne le voulons pas. [7] A-t-il attendu? [8] Il ne l'a pas pu.

[9] Can I? you can; we were able; they will be able; she has been able; though he cannot; if thou couldst; that he might be able. [10] We can if we will; he could if he would; he will be able if you shall be able. [11] This one would work if he could; those can (it) and will not (it). [12] I should have been able to love you, if you had been willing to love me. [13] I cannot love you, but I have not been able to hate you.

LESSON XXVI.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. All the interrogative pronouns are used also as relatives, but with some notable differences from their use as interrogatives.

2. By far the commonest relatives are **qui** and **que**—**qui** standing as subject, and **que** as direct object of a verb. Both of them signify either persons or things, of any gender or number. Thus,

l'enfant qui pleure, *the child that cries*
des oiseaux qui volent, *birds that fly*
le livre que vous avez, *the book which you have*
les amis que nous aimons, *the friends whom we love*

a. **Que** is also sometimes predicate with an intransitive, especially **être**: thus, **imbécile que vous êtes** *fool that you are*, **ce que c'est** *that which it is*, **ce que vous devenez** *that which you become*, **ce qu'il nous faut** *what we lack.*

b. The participle of a compound tense following **que** agrees in gender and number (X. 5*b*) with the word to which **que** relates: thus, **les gants qu'il a achetés** *the gloves that he has bought*, **les fleurs que nous avions vues** *the flowers which we had seen.*

c. A verb having **qui** as subject is of the person of its antecedent: thus, **moi qui suis** *I who am*, **toi qui as** *thou that hast*, etc.

3. **Qui** is also used with prepositions, but generally only of persons: thus,

l'homme à qui je l'ai donné, *the man to whom I have given it*
les amis chez qui vous demeurez, *the friends with whom you live*

4. **Lequel** etc. is used with prepositions of objects other than persons: thus,

le chien auquel j'ai donné à manger, *the dog to which I have given (something) to eat*
les maisons dans lesquelles vous demeurez, *the houses in which you dwell*

a. After **parmi** *among*, **lesquels** (or **lesquelles**) is always used, and not **qui**.

5. But **lequel** etc. is also used as subject or direct object of a verb, in place of **qui** or **que**—generally, however, only when there is special reason for distinguishing the gender and number of the person or thing referred to: thus,

voilà l'ami de ma mère, lequel vient me voir, *here is my mother's friend, who comes to see me* (where **qui**, if used, might seem to refer to **mère** *mother*)

6. **Quoi**, when used as relative, is more often a compound relative (or relative implying also its antecedent), and taken in a general or indefinite sense: thus,

des choses à quoi on fait attention, *things to which one pays attention*
après quoi, il s'en alla, *after which, he went off*
je ne sais quoi, *I don't know what*
vous me direz à quoi me fier, *you will tell me on what to rely*

a. **De quoi**, before an infinitive, means *wherewith:* thus, **j'ai de quoi vous amuser** *I have wherewith to amuse you* (*the means of amusing you*).

7. Instead of **qui** or **lequel** with preceding **de** is often used **dont**, meaning *of whom, of which, whose:* thus,

l'homme dont vous parlez, *the man of whom you speak*
notre ami, dont le fils est ici, *our friend, whose son is here*

a. If the word on which **dont** is dependent is object of a verb, it takes its regular place after the verb, however far separated from the relative: thus, **la femme dont vous avez reçu la lettre** *the woman whose letter you have received*, **le livre dont je ne connais pas le titre** *the book of which I do not know the title.*

b. **Dont** is originally an adverb (= Lat. **de unde**), meaning *whence, from whence*, and it is often best so rendered: thus, **l'esprit retourne au ciel, dont il est descendu** *the spirit returns to heaven, whence it descended.*

8. The adverb **où** *where* is also often used almost as a relative pronoun, meaning *to* or *at* or *in which*, and the like: thus, **les honneurs où vous aspirez** *the honors to which you aspire*, **la douleur où je suis plongé** *the grief into which I am plunged.* And **d'où** means *from which* or *whence*, and **par où** *by which, by which route*, etc.

9. **Quiconque** *whoever, anyone who*, is an indefinite relative, generally without antecedent expressed: thus, **quiconque ment, sera puni** *whoever lies shall be punished.*

10. The pronoun used as antecedent of a relative (as already pointed out, XXIV. 2, 4*a*) is not the personal, as in English *he who, they who*, and so on, but the demonstrative, **ce** or **celui** etc.

a. **Ce qui** and **ce que** answer to English *what* or *that which*, the one as subject, the other as object (or sometimes predicate) of a verb: thus,

dites-moi ce qui vous trouble, *tell me what troubles you*
dites-moi ce que vous voulez, *tell me what you wish*
dites-moi ce que vous êtes, *tell me what you are*
faites tout ce que je vous dis, *do all that I tell you*

b. **Ce dont** means *of what* or *that of which:* thus, **dites-moi ce dont vous avez à vous plaindre** *tell me of what you have to complain.*

c. **Celui qui** or **que** etc. means in like manner *he who, the one which*, and so on: thus,

celui qui est dans les cieux, *he who is in the heavens*
celle que vous aimez, *she whom you love*

11. Note that the relative, often omitted in English, must always be expressed in French: thus,

the friends I love, **les amis que j'aime**
the books he has bought, **les livres qu'il a achetés**

VERB-LESSON.

12. The irregular verb **devoir** *owe, ought* etc. is conjugated as follows:

a. Synopsis of principal and derived parts:

devoir	**devant**	**dû**	**dois**	**dus**
devrai	**devais**	**avoir dû**	**dois**	**dusse**
devrais	**doive**	etc. etc.		

b. Inflection of the present tenses:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.		Present Subjunctive.	
dois	**devons**		**devons**	**doive**	**devions**
dois	**devez**	**dois**	**devez**	**doives**	**deviez**
doit	**doivent**			**doive**	**doivent**

c. Note that in the accented or strong forms the root-vowel changes from **e** to **oi.**

d. Several other verbs (**recevoir** etc.) are conjugated like **devoir**, and in some grammars form with it the third regular conjugation (XVIII. 1*a*.)

e. The past participle has the circumflex only in the masc. sing. (to distinguish it from **du** = **de le**); the other forms are **due, dus, dues.**

f. **Doit** etc. very often signifies *is to, is planned* or *destined to:* thus, **il doit venir chez nous demain** *he is to come to us tomorrow*, **je savais ce que je devais faire** *I knew what I was to do.* In many cases it has the sense of *must, have to*, etc.: thus, **elle a dû être belle dans sa jeunesse** *she must have been beautiful in her youth.* The meaning *ought* belongs especially to the conditional: thus, **quand devrais-je revenir** *when ought I to come back?* **il aurait dû le faire** *he ought to have done it.*

VOCABULARY.

la cuisine, *the kitchen*	**la cuisinière**, *the cook*
l'œuf m., *the egg*	**les pois** m., *the peas*
la rue, *the street*	**demander**, *ask*
préparer, *prepare*	**demeurer**, *live, dwell*

EXERCISE 26.

[1] Qui est-ce qui vous cherche? [2] C'est ma cuisinière qui me cherche. [3] Qu'est-ce qu'elle veut? [4] Elle demande à quelle heure je veux déjeuner. [5] Elle préparera (tout) ce que vous (voudrez). [6] Voulez-vous de la viande qu'elle a (preparée), ou des œufs qui sont dans la cuisine? [7] Je mangerai les pois que j'ai sur mon assiette. [8] La femme dont je vous ai parlé est dans la cuisine. [9] C'est la femme à qui j'ai donné de l'argent. [10] Que veut-elle? [11] Elle veut vous vendre ce qu'elle a dans son panier. [12] Qu'est-ce que c'est? [13] Ce sont des œufs qu'elle a apportés de la campagne. [14] Où (cherchez)-vous les brebis? [15] Je les (chercherai) dans les champs où je les ai (perdues). [16] Où (demeurent) ces pauvres gens? [17] Ils demeurent dans la vieille maison où je vous ai mené hier. [18] Quiconque donne aux pauvres sera béni. [19] Celle qui vous aime vous donnera ce que vous voulez. [20] Donnez à celle que vous aimez ce qu'elle veut. [21] Voilà la maison où nous demeurons.

THEME 26.

[1] Whom do you love? [2] I love those who love me; but I do not hate him who hates me. [3] Speak to me of her of whom I was thinking. [4] I looked for the house in which he lived, but I had forgotten in which of the two streets it was. [5] The house is in the street in which my brother lives. [6] If I had found him whom I sought, I should have given him all that I had. [7] My cook bought all the eggs which he had brought in his basket. [8] Does she not want also the peas which are in the basket? [9] No, we have pota-

toes still. [10] The friend at whose house I wish to dine is he of whom you spoke to me. [11] He is a handsome man whom I love, and whose mother was my friend. [12] The books of which you spoke to me are in the library. [13] These houses are those to which we bring milk and eggs. [14] The man to whom we sold the eggs lives in that house. [15] Whoever wishes to be good can be so. [16] I will love him who finds me what I have lost. [17] Give me what is in your pocket, and I will give you what I have in my hand. [18] What is that which you are eating? [19] There is the man to whom I sold my book. [20] Where is the little boy whose father lives in our street?

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Je ne vous dois rien. [2] Il me doit beaucoup d'argent. [3] Il me donna ce qu'il me devait. [4] Ces enfants devraient être punis. [5] Nous devions l'apporter hier, mais nous ne le pouvions pas. [6] J'ai dû être ici à cinq heures.

[7] He owes; they were owing; we owed (pret.); they will owe; she would owe; that you may owe; that he might owe. [8] We are to dine at four o'clock. [9] He was to be here at noon. [10] You must be hungry. [11] You ought (cond.) not to forget what I have told you. [12] They must have forgotten it.

LESSON XXVII.

POSSESSIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. When used substantively, or without an accompanying noun expressed, the possessives have a special form (different from that of the possessive adjectives: XIV.), and are always preceded by the definite article; thus,

Singular.		Plural.	
le mien	**la mienne**	**les miens**	**les miennes**, *mine*
le tien	**la tienne**	**les tiens**	**les tiennes**, *thine*
le sien	**la sienne**	**les siens**	**les siennes**, *his, hers, its*
le nôtre	**la nôtre**	**les nôtres**, *ours*	
le vôtre	**la vôtre**	**les vôtres**, *yours*	
le leur	**la leur**	**les leurs**, *theirs*	

a. The feminines and plurals are made regularly, according to the rules for adjectives (VII., VIII.), except that **leur** has the same form for masculine and feminine.

2. These possessive pronouns (as they may be called) take the gender and number of the object possessed, and must be used whenever the noun expressing that object does not immediately follow them: thus,

mon chapeau et le sien, *my hat and his* (or *hers*)
son chapeau et le mien, *his* (or *her*) *hat and mine*
nous avons nos chapeaux et ils ont les leurs, *we have our hats and they have theirs*

3. A few other words, more or less akin with pronouns in value, call for mention and explanation.

4. As an indefinite subject, **on** is used in the sense of *one*, *they*, *people*, and the like: thus,

on dit, *one says, they say, people say*, etc.

a. Instead of **on** simply, **l'on** (with the article prefixed) is often used after a vowel sound, especially after **et, ou, où, que, si**: thus, **si l'on voit** *if one sees:* but not if the next word begins with **l**.

b. This is the inclusive article (IV. 5), saved in order to prevent hiatus; since **on** is by origin the same word as **homme** (Lat. **homo**).

c. It is very often convenient to substitute in English a passive expression for an active with **on**: thus, *it is said* for **on dit**.

5. Compounds of **un** with the pronominal adjectives (XIV. 6) **chaque** *each* and **quelque** *some* are

chacun m., **chacune** f., *each, each one, every one*
quelqu'un m., **quelqu'une** f., *some one, somebody*
quelques uns m., **quelques unes** f., *some, some people*

a. Something, anything is expressed by **quelque chose**,

and *everything* by **tout** or by **toute chose** (not **chaque chose**).

6. Some words used as pronominal adjectives (XIV. **6**) may stand also substantively, or as pronouns: such are **aucun** m., **aucune** f. (with **ne** before the verb), *not one, no one, none;* **un autre** *another*, **l'autre** *the other*, **d'autres** *others*, etc.; **plusieurs** *several;* **tout** *all, everything;* **le même** *the same.*

a. From **autre** comes the pronoun **autrui** *another, other people, others than one's self;* it is never used as subject.

7. **Un** *one* and **autre** *other* are combined into certain phrases: thus, **l'un et l'autre** *the one and the other*, i.e. *both;* **l'un ou l'autre** *the one or the other*, i.e. *either;* **ni l'un ni l'autre** (with **ne** before the verb) *neither the one nor the other*, i.e. *neither;* **l'un l'autre** *the one the other*, i.e. *one another, each other.*

a. *Both* is also expressed by **tous deux** or **tous les deux** (literally, *all the two*).

b. **Tout le monde** (literally, *all the world*) is a very common expression for *everybody:* thus, **tout le monde l'aime** *everybody loves him.*

VERB-LESSON.

8. The verb **aller** *go* is extremely irregular, being made up in its conjugation of parts derived from three different verbs. It takes **être** as auxiliary (XXVIII. **6***a*).

a. Its synopsis of principal and derived parts is:

aller	**allant**	**allé**	**vais**	**allai**
irai	**allais**	**être allé**	**va**	**allasse**
irais	**aille**	etc. etc.		

b. Its three present tenses are inflected thus:

Present Indicative.		Imperative.		Present Subjunctive.	
vais	**allons**		**allons**	**aille**	**allions**
vas	**allez**	**va**	**allez**	**ailles**	**alliez**
va	**vont**			**aille**	**aillent**

9. *a.* **Va** 2d sing. impv. becomes **vas** before **en** and **y** (compare XVIII. **10***a*).

b. **Vais** etc. come from Lat. **vadere** *walk;* **irai** etc., from Lat. **ire** *go;* the Lat. original of **aller** etc. is obscure and disputed.

c. The present and imperfect indic. of **aller** are used before an infinitive (without infinitive-sign), precisely like *I am going, I was going* in English, as a sort of immediate future tense, or to denote something just about to take place: thus, **il va partir** *he is going to leave,* **j'allais lui répondre** *I was going to answer him.*

d. **Allons** *let us go* is used in the sense of *come, come on.* **Aller voir, aller chercher** correspond to our *visit,* and *look for* or *fetch* For the reflexive **s'en aller** *go off,* see XXIX. 7*c.*

VOCABULARY.

le salon, *the saloon, dining-room*	**le ragoût,** *the stew, ragout*
le couvert, *the cover (place at table)*	**le plat,** *the dish*
la soupe, *the soup*	**la soupière,** *the tureen*
le poisson, *the fish*	**la confiture,** *the sweetmeat*
casser, *break*	**ôter,** *remove, take off* or *away*

EXERCISE 27.

[1] Est-ce que votre oncle et le mien sont ici? [2] Oui, madame, ils sont tous les deux ici. [3] Si tout le monde est ici, nous pouvons dîner. [4] Votre salon est plus grand que le mien. [5] Oui, monsieur, le mien est plus grand, mais le vôtre est plus joli. [6] Ce sont toutes les deux de très belles chambres. [7] Voici votre couvert, et voilà les leurs. [8] Marie, apporte de la soupe à monsieur. [9] Voulez-vous de ce plat-ci ou de l'autre? [10] Je ne veux ni de l'un ni de l'autre; donnez-moi le ragoût et quelques légumes. [11] Ne voulez-vous pas de pommes de terre? [12] J'en ai déjà mangé plusieurs; mais j'en mangerai encore quelques unes. [13] Dois-je donner des confitures aux enfants? [14] Non, aucun des enfants ne doit manger de confitures. [15] On a donné aux enfants du poisson et de la viande, et ils ont mangé de l'un et de l'autre. [16] Où est la soupière? [17] On l'a cassée. [18] On ne doit jamais casser les choses d'autrui. [19] Si l'on casse une

chose, on devrait en acheter une autre. [20] Ces messieurs ont ôté leurs chapeaux ; ôte aussi le tien. [21] On ôte toujours son chapeau dans la maison. [22] J'aime toutes les choses que vous aimez.

THEME 27.

[1] Are you looking for my brother or hers? [2] I have looked for both, but I have found neither ; they have dined already. [3] Several of my friends are here ; let us dine without the others. [4] Each one ought to have a cover. [5] We have eight places, and we can have others. [6] You have not plates enough ; some one has broken several. [7] If one looks in the kitchen, one will find some. [8] We have several dishes ; which will you (have) ? [9] Will you (have) fish or meat? [10] We will (have) neither ; give me some stew. [11] I am not hungry ; give me only very little of the meat ; I ought to eat something. [12] Remove these sweetmeats, and bring me others. [13] Your sweetmeats are much better than mine. [14] Ours are good, but theirs are very bad. [15] Everybody is hungry, but no one of us eats stew. [16] I am poor ; but I have never eaten the bread of others. [17] My children are much more amiable than hers, but his are prettier than yours. [18] Every one loves his children better than those of other people. [19] If one has good children, one is always happy. [20] What do you think of (de) this book? [21] Each of us thinks something of it, but no one thinks the same of it.

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Où allez-vous? [2] Je vais à la ville. [3] Ces enfants iront chercher leurs amis. [4] Ils vont à l'école. [5] Va chercher des confitures, nous allons en manger. [6] Je vais les apporter. [7] Allons, parlons d'autre chose.

[8] Thou goest ; they were going ; she went ; did you go? we shall go ; he would go ; that I may go ; that he might go. [9] We are going to eat. [10] He was going to be hungry.

[11] I shall go to-morrow. [12] Did they go to look for the dog? [13] My friends are going to the city. [14] Come, let us find them.

LESSON XXVIII.

PASSIVE VERBS; AUXILIARIES.

1. The forms of the PASSIVE conjugation of a verb are made in French precisely as in English: namely, by prefixing the auxiliary **être** *be* to a past participle.

a. To make, then, any given passive form of a verb, add to the corresponding form of **être** the past or passive participle of that verb: thus,

he was praised, **il était loué**
he would have been praised, **il aurait été loué**

b. The participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb: thus,

she was praised, **elle était louée**
they (m.) *would have been praised*, **ils auraient été loués**

c. Note, however, that (VII. 1*b*) if **vous** is used to represent a single person, the participle agrees with it only in gender: thus, *you* (sing. f.) *will be praised*, **vous serez louée.**

2. *a.* Taking as an example the verb **louer** *praise*, the synopsis of simple passive tenses is as follows:

INFINITIVE.
être loué (louée, loués, louées), *be praised*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
étant loué (etc.), *being praised*

INDICATIVE	PRESENT,	**je suis loué** (etc.), *I am praised*
	IMPERFECT,	**j'étais loué** (etc.), *I was praised*
	PRETERIT,	**je fus loué** (etc.), *I was praised*
	FUTURE,	**je serai loué** (etc.), *I shall be praised*
CONDITIONAL		**je serais loué** (etc.), *I should be praised*
IMPERATIVE		**sois loué** (etc.), *be praised*
SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT,	**que je sois loué** (etc.), *that I may be praised*
	IMPERFECT,	**que je fusse loué** (etc.), *that I might be praised*

b. The synopsis of compound passive tenses is:

PERFECT	INFINITIVE,	**avoir été loué** (etc.), *to have been praised*
PERFECT	PARTICIPLE	**ayant été loué** (etc.), *having been praised*
INDICATIVE	PERFECT,	**j'ai été loué** (etc.), *I have been praised*
	PLUPERFECT,	**j'avais été loué** (etc.), *I had been praised*
	PAST ANT.,	**j'eus été loué** (etc.), *I had been praised*
	FUT. PERF.	**j'aurai été loué** (etc.), *I shall have been praised*
CONDITIONAL	PERFECT,	**j'aurais été loué** (etc.), *I should have been praised*
SUBJUNCTIVE	PERFECT,	**que j'aie été loué** (etc.), *that I may have been praised*
	PLUPERFECT,	**que j'eusse été loué** (etc.), *that I might have been praised*

3. After a passive verb, *by* is generally represented by **par**; but sometimes also by **de**, if the verb expresses a mental action or feeling: thus,

il est aimé de tout le monde, *he is loved by everybody*
il fut trouvé par le chien, *he was found by the dog*

4. The passive is less used in French than in English; instead of it often stand active verbs with the indefinite subject **on** (XXVII. 4), or reflexive verbs (XXIX.).

Avoir OR **être** AS AUXILIARIES.

5. **Avoir** is the auxiliary used in forming the compound tenses of all transitive verbs, and of the great majority of intransitive or neuter verbs (including **être** *be* itself)

6. **Être** is used to make the compound forms of all passives (above, 1) and reflexives (XXIX. 3), and also of a few intransitives.

a. The commonest intransitives taking always **être** as auxiliary are:

aller, *go*
venir, *come* (with its compounds **devenir**, **parvenir**, etc.)
arriver, *arrive, happen*
entrer, *enter*
naître, *be born*
éclore, *open, hatch*
mourir, *die*
décéder, *decease*
tomber, *fall*
choir, *fall*

7. A number of intransitives take sometimes **avoir** and sometimes **être**—**avoir** when there is had in view especially the performance of an act, but **être** when the resulting condition is intended: thus,

il a passé à quatre heures, *he went by at four o'clock*
il est passé et disparu, *he has gone by and disappeared*

a. Such verbs are especially those that signify a distinct change of place or condition. The most frequent of them are **partir, sortir, retourner** (these three almost always with **être**), **passer, rester, monter, descendre, accourir, changer, cesser, échapper**; and **croître, grandir, vieillir, dégénérer, disparaître, périr**, and so on.

8. When an intransitive has **être** as auxiliary, its participle in the compound tenses agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb; but the participle with **avoir** remains unchanged (i.e. has the masc. sing. form, whatever the character of the subject).

VOCABULARY.

le royaume, *the kingdom, realm*	**la république**, *the republic*
la patrie, *the (one's) country*	**la loi**, *the law*
le citoyen, *the citizen*	**l'ennemi** m., *the enemy*
chasser, *drive off* or *away*	**rappeler**, *recall, call back*
arriver, *arrive*	**rester**, *remain, stay*
passer, *pass*	**retourner**, *return*
vieillir, *age, grow old*	**obéir à**, *obey*
inviter, *invite*	**louer**, *praise*

EXERCISE 28.

[1] Le roi est-il aimé de ses sujets? [2] Non, le roi n'est aimé de personne, mais la reine est aimée de tout le monde. [3] La patrie doit être aimée de tous les citoyens. [4] Les citoyens sont protégés par les lois. [5] Ceux qui n'obéissent pas aux lois seront punis. [6] Le roi a été chassé de son royaume par ses ennemis. [7] Il a passé en Angleterre, et il y est resté pendant deux ans. [8] Il a été rappelé par les citoyens, et il est retourné en France. [9] Charles est-il resté

chez vous? [10] Non, monsieur, il n'est pas encore arrivé. [11] Votre mère a beaucoup vieilli pendant l'année dernière. [12] Cette femme est beaucoup vieillie, mais elle est encore très belle. [13] Est-ce que votre amie est arrivée, madame? [14] Non, je suis allée la chercher, mais je ne l'ai pas trouvée. [15] Êtes-vous invité au bal? [16] Non, madame; je ne suis pas invité, mais vous et votre sœur êtes invitées. [17] N'est-elle pas allée à sa chambre? [18] Oui, mais nous l'avons rappelée, et elle est retournée au salon. [19] Mon ami veut vendre sa maison; la mienne est déjà vendue. [20] Elle a été achetée par mon riche voisin.

THEME 28.

[1] The republic is loved and praised by everybody. [2] The country ought to be protected by its citizens. [3] Where is the king of France? [4] He has gone to England, but the queen has stayed here. [5] Has he never returned? [6] Yes, he returned last year. [7] The citizens are praised because they obey the laws. [8] Many of the enemies of the republic have been driven away, but some have remained. [9] Has not Helen been here? [10] No, she went by at six o'clock, but she did not stay. [11] She has not yet returned. [12] At what hour did you arrive? [13] I arrived at ten o'clock. [14] We arrived at half past eight. [15] You (pl.) did not stay long in Paris. [16] Where has Mary gone? [17] She had gone to her room, but I called her, and she has returned to the dining-room. [18] Is she not invited to the concert to-day? [19] No; we are invited, but she and her sister are not invited. [20] She is still very handsome, although she has aged very much. [21] The enemy passed into Germany last week.

LESSON XXIX.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. A REFLEXIVE verb, or verb used reflexively, describes the subject as acting upon itself.

a. Reflexive verbs are a much more marked and important class in French than in English. Some verbs are reflexive exclusively, or nearly so; others are often such; and almost any transitive verb, and some intransitives, may upon occasion be used reflexively; but the conjugation of them all is the same.

2. A verb is made reflexive, as in English, by adding to it an object-pronoun corresponding in person and number to the subject.

a. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same with the ordinary object-pronouns: namely, **me** and **te** (or **toi**) in the singular, **nous** and **vous** in the plural. For the third person there is a special reflexive pronoun, **se**; it is the same in singular and plural.

b. The place of the reflexive pronoun is the same with that of any other object-pronoun (XXII. 7): namely, in general before the verb, but after it in the imperative affirmative (when **te** becomes **toi**: XXII. 6*b*).

3. The auxiliary of a verb used reflexively is always and only **être**.

4. In accordance with the general rule (X. 5*b*), if the reflexive object is a direct one, the participle in the compound tenses agrees with it in gender and number; if it is indirect, the participle is invariable.

Thus, from **se blesser** *wound one's self*,

il s'est blessé, elle s'est blessée, nous nous sommes blessés,

but from **s'imaginer** *imagine to one's self*,

il s'est imaginé, elle s'est imaginé, nous nous sommes imaginé

5. As a model of reflexive conjugation may be taken the verb **se réjouir** *delight one's self, rejoice.*

It is a regular verb of the second conjugation, inflected like **finir** (XIX.).

a. The full inflection of the present indicative and imperative, with the synopsis of the other simple tenses, is:

INFINITIVE.

se (or **te, me** etc.) **réjouir**, *rejoice*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

se (etc.) **réjouissant**, *rejoicing*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

je me réjouis, *I rejoice*	**nous nous réjouissons**, *we rejoice*
tu te réjouis, *thou rejoicest*	**vous vous réjouissez**, *you rejoice*
il se réjouit, *he rejoices*	**ils se réjouissent**, *they rejoice*

IMPERFECT, **je me réjouissais**, *I was rejoicing*

PRETERIT, **je me réjouis**, *I rejoiced*

FUTURE, **je me réjouirai**, *I shall rejoice*

CONDITIONAL, **je me réjouirais**, *I should rejoice*

IMPERATIVE.

	réjouissons-nous, *let us rejoice*
réjouis-toi, *rejoice (thou)*	**réjouissez-vous**, *rejoice (ye)*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, **que je me réjouisse**, *that I may rejoice*

IMPERFECT, **que je me réjouisse**, *that I might rejoice*

b. The full inflection of the perfect indicative, with the synopsis of the other compound forms, next follows.

To save burdensome repetition, the various forms of the reflexive pronoun (in infin. and pple), and of the past participle (which in this verb must agree in gender and number with the object) are not given.

PERFECT INFINITIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
s'être réjoui, (*to*) *have rejoiced*	**s'étant réjoui**, *having rejoiced*

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

je me suis réjoui *I have rejoiced*	**nous nous sommes réjouis**, *we have rejoiced*
tu t'es réjoui, *thou hast rejoiced*	**vous vous êtes réjouis**, *you have rejoiced*
il s'est réjoui, *he has rejoiced*	**ils se sont réjouis**, *they have rejoiced*

PLUPERFECT,	**je m'étais réjoui**, *I had rejoiced*
PAST ANTERIOR,	**je me fus réjoui**, *I had rejoiced*
FUTURE PERFECT,	**je me serai réjoui**, *I shall have rejoiced*
CONDITIONAL PERFECT,	**je me serais réjoui**, *I should have rejoiced*
SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT,	**que je me sois réjoui**, *that I may have rejoiced*
PLUPERFECT,	**que je me fusse réjoui**, *that I might have rejoiced*

c. Note the form (VII. 1*b*) **vous vous êtes réjoui** *you have rejoiced* (*yourself*), when referring to a single individual.

6. The negative and interrogative forms are made in the same manner as those of any other verb taking object-pronouns. Examples are:

je ne me réjouis pas, *I do not rejoice*
ne se réjouit-il pas, *did he not rejoice?*
vous réjouissez-vous, *do you rejoice?*
ne nous réjouissons pas, *let us not rejoice*
vous ne vous serez pas réjouis, *you* (pl.) *will not have rejoiced*
qu'elle ne se fût pas réjouie, *that she might not have rejoiced*
ne se sont-elles pas réjouies, *have they* (f.) *not rejoiced?*

7. *a.* Many reflexive verbs (like **se réjouir** itself) have to be rendered with simple verbs in English. A few of the commonest of these are as follows:

s'arrêter, *stop*	**se lever**, *arise, get up*
s'asseoir, *sit down*	**se plaindre**, *lament*
se coucher, *go to bed*	**se porter**, *be* (*in respect to health*)
se dépêcher, *make haste*	**se promener**, *take a walk*
se hâter, *hasten*	**se retirer**, *retire*
s'écrier, *exclaim, cry out*	**se souvenir**, *remember*
s'ennuyer, *be bored*	**se taire**, *be silent*
se fâcher, *be angry*	**se tromper**, *be mistaken*

b. A number of reflexive verbs followed by certain prepositions form transitive expressions of special meaning. Those most frequently occurring are:

s'approcher de, *approach, go near*	**se fier à**, *trust*
s'attendre à, *await*	**se mettre à**, *begin* (*set one's self at*)
se défier de, *distrust*	**se moquer de**, *ridicule, mock*
se douter de, *suspect*	**se passer de**, *do* or *go without*
s'entendre à, *be a judge of*	**se servir de**, *use, make use of*

Thus, **il s'approcha du feu** *he approached the fire*, **ils se mirent à écrire** *they began to write*, **elle ne peut se servir de ses mains** *she cannot use her hands*.

c. Of the intransitives used reflexively, the most noteworthy is **s'en aller** *go away, clear out, be off with one's self* (literally, *go one's self from it*). The indirect pronoun-object **en** always follows the other pronoun. Thus: **je m'en vais** *I go off*, **il s'en est allé** *he has gone away*, **va-t'en** *be off!* **ne nous en allons pas** *let us not go away*, **qu'il ne s'en fût pas allé** *that he might not have gone away*, etc.

8. Plural reflexive forms are often used in a reciprocal sense: thus, **aimons-nous** *let us love one another*, **ils s'aiment** *they love each other*, and so on.

VOCABULARY.

The vocabulary of this Lesson consists of the examples of reflexive verbs given above in the Lesson (except, of course, irregular verbs not yet explained).

EXERCISE 29.

[1] À quelle heure vous êtes-vous couché hier? [2] Je me suis couché à dix heures, et je me suis levé à six heures. [3] Pourquoi n'êtes vous pas allé à Paris la semaine dernière? [4] Je ne me portais pas bien, et je me suis arrêté à Rouen. [5] Ces jeunes filles où se promenaient-elles? [6] Elles se sont promenées dans la ville. [7] Pourquoi s'en allèrent-ils? [8] Ils se fâchèrent, et ils ne voulurent plus rester. [9] Ne vous réjouissez-vous pas? [10] Non, nous nous sommes beaucoup ennuyés. [11] Nous irons chercher quelque chose de nouveau. [12] Approche-toi, mon enfant, ne te défie pas de moi. [13] Cet enfant se doute de tout, et ne se fie plus à personne. [14] Elle se serait beaucoup réjouie si vous vous étiez approché d'elle. [15] Nous ne nous serions jamais arrêtés à Paris, si nous nous étions doutés de cela. [16] Pourquoi ces jeunes gens se hâtent-ils tant? [17] Ils s'en vont chez eux; ils veulent se coucher. [18] Vous vous porteriez mieux si vous vous passiez de votre dîner. [19] Arrêtez-vous; je veux vous parler. [20] Je ne peux m'arrêter à présent; je me hâte de me coucher. [21] Ne vous fiez pas au roi; il se moque de vous. [22] Nous ne pouvons nous passer de lui.

THEME 29.

[1] Let us rejoice; I rejoice and you rejoice; that they might rejoice; thou didst rejoice; she will rejoice. [2] Have

you rejoiced? had she not rejoiced? I should have rejoiced if you had rejoiced; though they rejoiced, we did not rejoice. [3] Go to bed; has he not gone to bed? we should not have gone to bed; you would go to bed; that they may have gone to bed. [4] Get up; I have got up; she would have got up; will you not get up? he had not yet got up; I have gone to bed, but I will get up; let us not go to bed, though he has got up. [5] Have your children gone to bed? mine are getting up. [6] Make haste, children; get up, we are going to take a walk. [7] Helen will not go to walk, because she is not well. [8] I shall be bored, if I cannot take a walk. [9] Let us not take a walk; it is two o'clock, and we shall dine soon. [10] The dog did not approach the children; he did not trust them. [11] I cannot do without the book that I have lost. [12] Take a walk with the dog, and I will look for your book. [13] We are going away, because we distrust these men. [14] He who distrusts everybody will never be happy. [15] Why did not the little boy come with you? [16] He stopped at the baker's. [17] He is not well; he ought not to go near the baker. [18] If he does not go without cakes, he will be ill. [19] Go away; we can do without you. [20] The king cannot return to France, because the citizens distrust him. [21] Do not be angry; we will retire. [22] If you trust this man, you will be mistaken.

LESSON XXX.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. A few verbs in French, as in other languages, are used only in the 3d singular, with the indefinite or impersonal subject il *it*, and are therefore called IMPERSONAL verbs. Those oftenest so used are:

geler, *freeze* (**il gèle** *it freezes*, **il a gelé**, etc.)
dégeler, *thaw* (**il dégèle**, **il a dégelé**, etc.)
grêler, *hail* (**il grêle**, **il a grêlé**, etc.)
neiger, *snow* (**il neige**, **il a neigé**, etc.)
pleuvoir, *rain* (**il pleut**, **il a plu**, etc.)
tonner, *thunder* (**il tonne**, **il a tonné**, etc.)

a. These verbs are conjugated like any others (always with the auxiliary **avoir**), except that only the 3d sing. is in use. **Pleuvoir** is irregular: see XLI. 6.

2. Many other verbs are used in great part impersonally, with **il** as subject, and often in a somewhat special meaning. Examples are:

il importe (etc.), *it is of consequence* (etc.)
il convient, *it is suitable* or *proper*
il semble, *it seems*
il arrive, *it happens*
il suffit, *it is sufficient*
il vaut mieux, *it is better*
il s'agit, *the question is*

3. Almost any verb may take the impersonal subject **il** representing by anticipation its real subject, stated later: thus, **il vient un autre** *there comes another*, **il paraît qu'elle n'y était pas** *it appears that she was not there.*

4. The English expression *there is*, *there are*, etc., is represented in French by the verb **avoir**, used impersonally with the adverb **y** *there* before it: thus,

il y a, *there is* or *are* (literally, *it has there*)
il n'y a pas, *there is not*
y a-t il eu, *has there been?*
il n'y aura pas, *there will not be*
n'y aurait-il pas eu, *would there not have been?*
qu'il n'y ait pas, *that there may not be*
qu'il y eût eu, *that there might have been*

a. Since the following noun is in French grammatically the object of the verb, and not its subject as in English, there is of course no change of number in the verb when the noun becomes plural: thus, **il y avait un oiseau** *there was a bird*, and **il y avait quatre oiseaux** *there were four birds* (literally, *it had there one bird*, *four birds*).

b. Even the infinitive, **y avoir**, is used, along with certain verbs

having the value of auxiliaries: thus, **il peut y avoir** *there may be*, **il ne doit pas y avoir eu** *there ought not to have been.*

c. **Il y a** etc. is often used, elliptically, in expressing extent or distance of time reckoned backward from the present: thus, **il y a huit jours qu'il est malade** *he has been ill (these) eight days* (literally, *there are eight days that he [has been and] is ill*), **je le vis il y a deux mois** *I saw him two months ago* (literally, *I saw him, there are two months [since]*).

d. **Il est** etc. is also used impersonally, especially in poetry, instead of **il y a** etc.

5. In speaking of the conditions of the weather, the French uses **il fait** etc., *it makes* etc., with a noun or adjective, where the English uses *it is:* see XXXII. 9*a*.

6. To express English *must*, the French uses the impersonal verb **falloir** *be necessary.*

a. **Falloir** is an irregular verb; its synopsis of principal and derived parts (the tenses in 3d sing.) is as follows:

falloir	(fallant)	**fallu**	**faut**	**fallut**
faudra	**fallait**	**a fallu**		**fallût**
faudrait	**faille**	etc. etc.		

7. Since **falloir** is impersonal only, while the equivalent English expressions, *must*, *have to*, *be obliged to*, etc., admit subjects of all persons and numbers, the sentence has to be cast into a quite different form in French.

a. **Il faut** etc. is oftenest followed by **que** *that* before the verb which in English takes *must* as its auxiliary. This verb must in French always be in the subjunctive: present if the tense of **falloir** is present or future, otherwise imperfect. Thus:

he must work, **il faut qu'il travaille** (literally, *it is necessary that he work*)

you must read, **il faut que vous lisiez**

the boy had to go, **il fallait que le garçon allât**

the army will be obliged to retreat, **il faudra que l'armée se retire**

the books would have had to be sold, **il aurait fallu que les livres fussent vendus**

b. But if the subject be a pronoun, a briefer expression is more often used, the subject being made indirect object of the tense of **falloir**, which is then followed by the infinitive of the other verb: thus,

he must work, **il lui faut travailler** (literally, *it is necessary to him to work*)

you must read, **il vous faut lire**

she had to go, **il lui fallait aller**

they will be obliged to withdraw, **il leur faudra se retirer**

8. **Il faut** etc. is also used with a following subject-noun to express that something is lacking or desired: thus, **il me faut un chapeau** *I want a hat* (literally, *there is wanting to me a hat*), **vous fallait-il des livres** *did you want some books?*

VOCABULARY.

The vocabulary for this Lesson is the impersonal verbs given above in the Lesson (except those that are irregular).

EXERCISE 30.

[1] Est-ce que vous êtes allé à la ville? [2] Non, monsieur il a neigé toute la journée, et il me fallait rester à la maison. [3] Nous devions aller à Paris; mais il gèle, et nous resterons chez nous. [4] S'il dégèle, nous irons demain. [5] Y a-t-il de jolies villes en Angleterre? [6] Il y en a de très jolies; mais la plupart des villes ne sont point jolies. [7] Nous y avons été, il y a deux ans. [8] N'y a-t-il pas eu un bal chez madame votre mère? [9] Non, il n'y avait pas de bal, mais il y avait plusieurs de nos amis qui dînaient chez nous. [10] Il arrive très souvent que nous avons des amis chez nous. [11] Il me faut aller à l'école, et il faut que mon cousin y aille avec moi. [12] Est-ce qu'il y aura un beau concert au théâtre? [13] Il me faudra entendre ce qu'il y a. [14] Vous faut-il quelque chose? [15] Il me faut quelques livres que je ne puis trouver à la bibliothèque. [16] Il m'a fallu les chercher chez mon oncle. [17] Il fallait que les pauvres paysans vendissent toutes leurs brebis. [18] Leur faudra-t-il vendre leurs vaches aussi? [19] Quoiqu'il leur ait fallu vendre leurs brebis, ils ont encore beaucoup de vaches et de chevaux. [20] Que vous faut-il? [21] Il nous faut de l'argent, nous en avons trop peu.

THEME 30.

[1] It snows and hails, and I shall not go to the school. [2] If it freezes, do not go there to-morrow. [3] I shall have to go there to-morrow, if it does not thunder. [4] It thawed yesterday, and it will not freeze to-morrow. [5] There was no concert yesterday, because it was snowing. [6] Will there not be a ball in the town to-morrow? [7] There would have been a ball, if it had not snowed. [8] What does he need? [9] He needs some new pictures for his room. [10] She must buy a new dress and a hat. [11] This man must buy another horse; the one which he has is very old. [12] It seems to me that you are never at home. [13] It happens often that I am in the city. [14] I dined with your aunt three days ago. [15] I should have been there, if it had not snowed. [16] Are there not fine things in this book? [17] I must buy it. [18] It seems to me that everybody is talking of it. [19] I had to go to England to (pour) buy English books for the library. [20] Are there not many fine castles in England? [21] There may be some, but I have not found them. [22] Although it had snowed all day, I should have had to go to the city. [23] My sister was expecting me, and I had to speak to her. [24] If you go, you will be bored. [25] I must go, and my sister must return with me.

LESSON XXXI.

ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

1. Most adjectives, in French as in English, have adverbs made from them by adding an adverbial suffix.

The adverb-making suffix in French is **ment**, and it is in general added to the feminine form of the adjective—yet with not a few exceptions.

a. The suffix **ment** comes from Latin **mente**, ablative of **mens** *mind*, a feminine noun, and hence taking before it a feminine adjective: thus, **vivement** = **viva mente** *with lively mind*, etc.

3. Most adjectives ending in a consonant in the masculine add **ment** to their feminine form: thus,

'haut, *high*	**'hautement**, *highly*
grand, *great*	**grandement**, *greatly*
plein, *full*	**pleinement**, *fully*
certain, *certain*	**certainement**, *certainly*
seul, *sole*	**seulement**, *only, solely*
cruel, *cruel*	**cruellement**, *cruelly*
ancien, *ancient*	**anciennement**, *anciently*
vif, *lively*	**vivement**, *in a lively manner*
heureux, *happy*	**heureusement**, *happily*
cher, *dear*	**chèrement**, *dearly*
franc, *frank*	**franchement**, *frankly*
long, *long*	**longuement**, *lengthily*
doux, *sweet*	**doucement**, *sweetly, softly*

Exceptions to this rule are the following:

4. *a.* Adjectives ending in **ant** and **ent** for the most part change their **nt** into **m**, and add **ment** directly to it; thus,

constant, *constant*	**constamment** *constantly*
prudent, *prudent*	**'prudemment**, *prudently*

But **lentement** *slowly*, **présentement** *presently*, **véhémentement** *vehemently*, by the general rule.

b. A few adjectives change **e** of the feminine to **é** before **ment**: thus, **communément, confusément, diffusément, expressément, importunément, obscurément, profondément, précisément.**

c. **Gentil** forms **gentiment** *nicely*.

5. Most adjectives ending in a vowel add **ment** to their masculine form: thus,

facile, *easy*	**facilement**, *easily*
joli, *pretty*	**joliment**, *prettily*
absolu, *absolute*	**absolument**, *absolutely*
modéré, *moderate*	**modérément**, *moderately*
vrai, *true*	**vraiment**, *truly*

6. Exceptions to this rule are as follows:

a. **Beau, nouveau, fou,** and **mou** add **ment** to their feminine form (VII. 7): thus, **nouvellement, follement,** etc.

b. A few adjectives change their final **e** to **é** before **ment**: thus, **aveuglément, commodément, conformément, énormément, immensément** (and one or two others, little used).

c. A few adjectives change final **u** to **û** before **ment**: thus, **assidûment, continûment, crûment, nûment**; and **gai** *gay* makes either **gaiement** or **gaîment.**

d. **Impuni** forms **impunément** *with impunity.*

7. Adverbs derived from adjectives (and a few others, as **souvent** *often*) have a comparative and superlative, made by prefixing **plus** and **le plus** respectively (as in the comparison of adjectives: IX. 1): thus,

facilement, plus facilement, le plus facilement, *easily, more easily,* etc.
souvent, plus souvent, le plus souvent, *often, oftener, oftenest*

8. Four original adverbs have special comparative forms, which are made superlative by prefixing **le**: thus,

bien, mieux, le mieux, *well, better, best*
mal, pis, le pis, *badly* or *ill, worse, worst*
peu, moins, le moins, *little, less, least*
beaucoup, plus, le plus, *much, more, most*

9. Many adjectives are, either commonly or in certain phrases, used directly as adverbs, without any change of form. Some of the commonest of them are:

bas, *in a low tone*	**fort,** *very*
'haut, *loud, aloud*	**juste,** *correctly*
clair, *clearly*	**tout,** *quite*
droit, *straight*	**soudain,** *suddenly*
exprès, *expressly*	**vite,** *quickly, fast*

a. Most of these form also adverbs in **ment** for certain uses.

VERB-LESSON.

10. The very irregular verb **venir** *come* is also one of the commonest in the language, and has many idiomatic uses.

a. Its synopsis of principal and derived forms is (it takes the auxiliary **être**: XXVIII. 6*a*):

venir	**venant**	**venu**	**viens**	**vins**
viendrai	**venais**	**être venu** etc. etc.	**viens**	**vinsse**
viendrais	**vienne**			

b. The inflection of the present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
viens	**venons**		**venons**	**vienne**	**veniens**
viens	**venez**	**viens**	**venez**	**viennes**	**veniez**
vient	**viennent**			**vienne**	**viennent**

c. Note the change of **e** to **ie** in all the accented or strong forms (in this verb, also in future and conditional).

d. The preterit is regularly inflected: thus, **vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent.** It (with the pret. of **tenir**) is the only preterit in the language having a nasal vowel.

e. The common verb **tenir** *hold* is conjugated throughout precisely like **venir** (except that it takes **avoir** as auxiliary).

f. **Venir and tenir are Lat. venire and tenere.**

11. *a.* **Venir** is followed by an infinitive directly (without **à** or **de**), when it means come in order to do anything: thus **il est venu me voir** *he came to see me*, **venez dîner chez nous** *come and dine with us.*

b. The present and imperfect indicative of **venir** followed by **de** are used before an infinitive to signify time just past: thus, **je viens de le voir** *I have just seen him*, **il venait de dîner** *he had just dined.*

Such phrases mean literally *I am coming from, he was coming from* etc., and are the exact opposite of *I am going to* (e.g. **je vais le voir** *I am going to see him*), *he was going to* (**il allait dîner** *he was going to dine*), etc.

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the adverbs given above in the Lesson.)

amuser, *amuse*	**se fatiguer**, *be tired*
marcher, *walk*	**pleurer**, *weep, weep for*
chanter, *sing*	**la musique**, *music*
extrêmement, *extremely*	**parfaitement**, *perfectly*
dernièrement, *lately, recently*	**continuellement**, *continually*

EXERCISE 31.

[1] Qu'est-ce que vous aimez le mieux, mon enfant? [2] J'aime mon père mieux que tout le monde. [3] Mon oncle a vieilli très vite; malheureusement il a perdu sa fille. [4] Est-ce que vous allez plus souvent au théâtre qu'au concert? [5] J'y vais constamment, mais je ne m'y amuse que modérément. [6] Moi, je m'y amuse toujours extrêmement. [7] Cette jeune femme a-t-elle perdu son mari dernièrement? [8] Oui;

quoiqu'il fût absolument mauvais, et qu'il la battît cruellement, elle l'a aimé aveuglément, et elle le pleure continuellement. [9] De quoi cet homme vous a-t-il parlé si longuement? [10] Il a parlé trop bas, et je n'ai absolument rien entendu. [11] Cette jeune fille chante parfaitement; elle a une voix vraiment belle. [12] Elle ne chante pas toujours juste. [13] Vous marchez trop vite, monsieur; vous vous fatiguerez certainement. [14] Non, madame; je marche constamment, et je ne me fatigue pas facilement. [15] Marcher, c'est ce que j'aime le plus. [16] Malheureusement, je ne dois marcher que très rarement. [17] Pourquoi parlez-vous si haut? [18] Je parlerai plus doucement, si vous le voulez.

Theme 31.

[1] Do you love music, sir? [2] I love it extremely, but unfortunately I cannot sing. [3] Frankly, I do not love music, but it amuses me greatly at the theatre. [4] You go there often, but I go there oftenest. [5] Can I find easily the house of your uncle? [6] You will find it more easily if you walk straight to the village. [7] If you walk too fast, you will certainly tire yourself. [8] Walk slowly, we shall easily arrive in an hour. [9] We ought to take a walk constantly. [10] If you love blindly, you will be extremely unhappy. [11] They love her dearly, but she absolutely does not love them. [12] If you wish to be well, you must eat moderately. [13] Speak softly, but do not speak too low, or I shall not understand you perfectly. [14] Why does this woman weep so cruelly? [15] She is extremely unhappy, because she has lately lost a child that she loved dearly. [16] I trusted my friend fully, but unfortunately I was mistaken in him. [17] No one is constantly happy.

Verb-lesson.

[1] Venez-vous chez nous? [2] Pourquoi ne vient-il pas? [3] Ils ne sont pas encore venus. [4] Vint-il hier? [5] Non, il ne

viendra que demain. [6] Quoiqu'il vienne, elles ne viendront pas. [7] Je suis venu vous trouver. [8] Il vient de trouver les livres que vous aviez perdus. [9] Viens ici, je veux te parler. [10] Je viendrai à quatre heures. [11] Il serait venu, si vous l'aviez appelé. [12] Nous venions d'arriver, et il nous fallait nous en aller encore. [13] Venez diner chez moi. [14] Elles sont venues il y a trois heures.

[15] Will she come? they would not come; he came; you were coming; they come; come! that I may come; that you may not come. [16] Has he not come? they would have come; will she not have come? though he had not come; you had come; will they have come? [17] I have come to speak to you. [18] Will you come to dine with us? [19] I have just dined with my friend. [20] He had just dined, when we invited him. [21] They are going to come to-morrow. [22] She had just gone to Paris, but she is going to return to-morrow.

LESSON XXXII.

VARIOUS ADVERBS.

1. Of adverbs and adverb-phrases there are in French, of course, a great many, which it belongs to the dictionary to give. Only a few of those most used will be presented here; some of them have been already given, and used in the Exercises.

2. Some of the commonest adverbs of place are:

ici, *here*	**là**, *there*
où *where? where*	**jusque**, *as far as*
près, auprès, *near*	**loin**, *far*
ailleurs, *elsewhere*	**partout**, *everywhere*
alentour, *roundabout*	**ensemble**, *together*
***dessus**, *above*	***dessous**, *beneath*
dedans, *within, inside*	**dehors**, *outside, without*

a. The conjunctive adverbs **y** and **en** were explained at XXIII. 5–8; the relative adverbs **dont** and **où**, at XXVI. 7.

b. Some of these adverbs (as well as others) make phrases with prepositions: thus, **d'ici** *hence*, **par là** *that way*, **d'où**, *whence?* **par où** *by what road?* **jusqu'où** *how far?* etc.

3. Some of the commonest adverbs of time are:

maintenant, *now*	**alors**, *then*
quand, *when? when*	**longtemps**, *long*
souvent, *often*	**toujours**, *always*
quelquefois, *sometimes*	**autrefois**, *formerly*
tôt, bientôt, *soon*	**tard**, *late*
encore, *yet, still, again*	**déjà**, *already*
aujourd'hui, *to-day*	**désormais**, *henceforth*
demain, *to-morrow*	**hier**, *yesterday*

4. Some of the commonest adverbs of degree, comparison, etc., are:

ainsi, *thus*	**aussi**, *as*
comment, *how? how*	**si**, *so*
très, bien, fort, *very*	**surtout**, *especially*
plutôt, *sooner, rather*	**davantage**, *still more*
presque, *almost*	**même**, *even*

a. The most often used adverbs of quantity—as **beaucoup, plus, peu, moins, assez, trop, tant, autant, combien**—were given, and their uses with nouns explained, at V. 4.

5. Of the very numerous compound adverbs and adverb-phrases, a few of the commonest are:

à présent, *at present, now*	**sur le champ**, *directly, at once*
tout de suite, *immediately*	**tout à coup**, *suddenly*
tout à fait, *entirely*	**du tout**, *at all*
à peu près, *nearly, almost*	**à peine**, *hardly, scarcely*
quelque part, *somewhere*	**nulle part**, *nowhere*
en haut, *aloft, up-stairs*	**en bas**, *below, down-stairs*
là-bas, *yonder*	**en attendant**, *meanwhile*
peut-être, *may be, perhaps*	**en effet**, *in fact, really*
de bonne heure, *in good time, early*	**à bon marché**, *cheaply, cheap*

6. *a.* The interrogative adverbs—**où, quand, combien, comment**—are, like the interrogative pronouns, also used as relative, in which case their value is rather that of conjunctions.

b. The negative adverbs, and rules for their use, have already been given: see XII.

c. The responsives, **oui** *yes* and **non** *no*, are already familiar. Instead of **oui, si** is sometimes used (especially colloquially), in

reply to a negative question: thus, **vous n'y avez pas été? si** *you have not been there? yes, I have.*

7. Adverbs have considerable freedom of position in the sentence. General rules are:

a. An adverb is almost never allowed before the verb in French: thus, *she always cries* **elle pleure toujours,** *I often take a walk* **je me promène souvent.**

b. With a verb in a compound tense, the adverbs of most frequent use ordinarily come between the auxiliary and the participle: thus, **elle a toujours pleuré** *she has always cried*, **je m'étais souvent promené** *I had often taken a walk.* But such may for special reasons come after the participle, as do adverbial phrases; and the words for *to-day*, *yesterday*, *to-morrow*, etc., always follow the participle.

VERB-LESSON.

8. *a.* Of the very common irregular verb **faire** *make, do*, the synopsis of principal and derived forms is as follows:

faire	**faisant**	**fait**	**fais**	**fis**
ferai	**faisais**	**avoir fait**	**fais**	**fisse**
ferais	**fasse**	etc. etc.		

b. The inflection of the present indicative and the imperative (the pres. subjunctive being regular) is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
fais	**faisons**		**faisons**
fais	**faites**	**fais**	**faites**
fait	**font**		

c. Note that in this verb (39c) **fai** before **s** of another syllable is pronounced as **fe.**

d. Note the special irregularities of the plural: the 2d pers. ending in **tes** (found elsewhere only in **êtes** and **dites**), and the 3d in **ont** (elsewhere only in **ont, sont, vont**).

9. **Faire** has many special uses and idioms; among them may be noticed here:

a. It is used impersonally in describing the conditions of the weather.

Thus, **il fait froid** *it is cold*, **il faisait chaud** *it was warm*, **il fera beau temps** *it will be fine weather;* even **il fait du vent** *it is windy*, **il a fait des éclairs** *it has lightened;* and so on.

b. **Faire** is much used in the sense of *cause to* etc. with a following infinitive, or as an auxiliary forming a kind of causative verb-phrase.

Thus, **je le fais savoir** *I cause to know it* (i.e. *make it known*), **il les a fait venir** *he has made them come*, **vous ferez faire un habit** *you will have a coat made* (literally, *will cause to make a coat*).

If the following infinitive has a direct object, the object of **faire** itself must be made indirect (see Second Part, § 158*b*): thus, **je le fais écrire** *I make him write*, but **je lui fais écrire une lettre** *I make him write a letter*.

c. **Faire** is sometimes (but much less often than *do* in English) used to avoid the repetition of a preceding verb: thus, **je lui ai écrit, comme je devais le faire** *I wrote him, as I ought to do*.

VOCABULARY.

(No new words will be given, besides the adverbs listed above.)

EXERCISE 32.

[1] D'où venez-vous, et où allez-vous? [2] J'ai été à peu près partout. [3] Je viens d'arriver, et je vais aller sur le champ à Paris, où j'achèterai des robes à bon marché. [4] Alors vous viendrez dîner aujourd'hui chez moi, et je vous mènerai plus tard au théâtre. [5] Nous sommes tout à fait fatigués à présent; nous pouvons à peine marcher. [6] Ne voulez-vous pas venir tout de suite déjeuner avec nous? [7] J'ai déjà déjeuné; je viendrai demain. [8] J'ai perdu mes gants quelque part; il me faut les chercher; mais j'irai bientôt, et j'arriverai de bonne heure. [9] Je les ai cherchés partout, mais je ne les trouve nulle part. [10] Je les ai eus en haut. [11] Voici votre ami; menez-le en bas, et allez vous promener. [12] Jusqu'où nous faut-il aller, et par où? [13] Allez jusqu'à la ville, par le chemin de Paris. [14] La petite fille est dedans; je veux qu'elle vienne dehors. [15] Il est déjà tard; elle viendra bientôt. [16] La France était autrefois un royaume; maintenant c'est une république. [17] Elle ne l'a pas été longtemps. [18] Où est ton frère? [19] Il n'est pas ici; il est peut-être là-bas. [20] D'où vient la

lettre que vous avez dans la main? [21] Elle vient de mon oncle d'Amérique.

THEME 32.

[1] Where is your brother? [2] I do not find him here; he must be elsewhere. [3] Look for him everywhere; you will certainly find him somewhere. [4] He has already arrived, but the others have not yet come. [5] He must go immediately to the city. [6] He is going to-morrow to England; he will stay there almost two years. [7] I was there formerly, and I should like (vouloir) to be there still. [8] I have never gone so far; I have always stayed at home; but you, you have been everywhere. [9] I shall come henceforth often to your house. [10] When will the merchant arrive from Paris? [11] He has already arrived; he is within. [12] He cannot have been here long. [13] I looked for her, but she was far from here. [14] How far had she gone? [15] She had gone as far as to Paris; but she will return soon. [16] Do you like the country as much as the city? [17] I have always liked the city better; I do not like the country at all. [18] I go there often, but I do not stay there long. [19] Whence do you come now, and where have you been to-day and yesterday? [20] Formerly I often went to my uncle's, but I no longer go there; he lives too far. [21] I have been sometimes at his house.

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Que faites-vous là? [2] Je ne fais rien. [3] Qu'est-ce qu'ils vont faire? [4] Ils viennent de faire de jolis cadeaux. [5] Ferez-vous chercher vos gants? [6] Je les ai fait chercher partout. [7] Que ferez-vous demain? [8] Je ferais venir la servante, si elle était à la maison. [9] Si vous ne l'avez déjà fait, il faut que vous le fassiez tout de suite. [10] Il fait beau temps aujourd'hui, mais il fera très chaud demain. [11] Quoiqu'il fît froid hier, j'en étais content.

[12] They make; will he not make? let us make; that you

may make; she would not make; I shall do what you do; do what you wish to do. [13] Thou hadst not done; they would have done nothing; I should have done it if he had done it. [14] Is it cold? it will be warm; it would be fine weather if it was not too cold. [15] I have made him come; he will make me come. [16] The cook has made bad bread to-day; she must make better to-morrow. [17] I have just made bread, and I am going to make butter.

LESSON XXXIII.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. The prepositions most used in French were given in early lessons (III., VI.). Other simple prepositions are as follows:

contre, *against*	**moyennant**, *by means of*
depuis, *since*	**outre**, *besides, beyond*
dès, *from, since*	**parmi**, *among*
durant, *during*	**pendant**, *during, pending*
hors, hormis, *out of, except*	**près**, *near, next*
malgré, *in spite of*	**selon**, *according to*

2. Some prepositions are also used along with a preceding preposition or adverb, forming a prepositional phrase: thus,

à travers, *across, through*	**par-dessus**, *over, beyond*
jusqu'à, *as far as*	**quant à**, *as for, as regards*
d'après, *according to*	**d'entre**, *from among*
d'avec, *from with, from*	**de par**, *by authority of*

3. Many prepositional phrases are made of adverbs or adverbial phrases followed by **de** *of*; some of the commonest are:

autour de, *around, about*	**lors de**, *at the time of*
faute de, *for lack of*	**le long de**, *along*
hors de, *out of*	**près de**, *near*
loin de, *far from*	**vis-à-vis de**, *opposite to*
au-devant de, *in front of, to meet*	**au-delà de**, *beyond*

4. A few prepositions are followed by the infinitive directly; they are:

de, *of (to)*	**pour**, *in order to, to*
à, *to*	**sans**, *without*
après, *after*	**par**, *by*

a. Of these, **par** is little used, and **après** almost only with the perfect infinitive: thus, **après avoir dîné** *after having dined.*

b. The English *to* as sign of the infinitive is represented by both **à** and **de**. Often, the reason for using **de**, as meaning properly *of, from*, is to be seen: thus, **il est temps de partir** *it is time to leave* (literally, *time of leaving*), **nous sommes défendus de parler** *we are forbidden to speak* (literally, *kept off from speaking*), **il a cessé d'être** *he has ceased to be* (literally, *ceased from being*), and so on. But in considerable part this is not the case, and the distinction has to be learned for each phrase. See the Second Part, § **171** etc.

5. Prepositional phrases often followed by the infinitive are:

afin de, *in order to, to*	**loin de**, *far from*
au lieu de, *instead of*	**à moins de**, *short of, without*
à force de, *by dint of*	**de peur (crainte) de**, *for fear of*
avant de, *before*	**plutôt que de**, *rather than*

a. It is the English infinitive in *ing* that in very many cases corresponds to the French infinitive after a preposition or prepositional phrase: thus, **sans attendre** *without waiting*, **avant de mourir** *before dying*, **de peur de tomber** *for fear of falling.*

6. Frequent special uses of **à** and **de** are:

a. **À** is much used before the name of that by which anything is characterized (as possessing it, being for it, acting by it, and the like): thus, **un homme au cœur tendre** *a man of tender heart*, **le ver à soie** *the silk-worm*, **un bateau à vapeur** *a steamboat* (see Part Second, § **36**).

b. **De** is much used before a numeral to express the measure of anything, or that by which one thing differs from another: thus,

âgée de seize ans *aged* 16 *years*, **long de douze pieds** *twelve feet long*, **plus grand de la moitié** *larger by a half* (see Part Second, § 61*c*).

VERB-LESSON.

7. *a.* Of the very common irregular verb **dire** *say, tell*, the synopsis of principal and derived parts is this:

dire	**disant**	**dit**	**dis**	**dis**
dirai	**disais**	**avoir dit**	**dis**	**disse**
dirais	**dise**	etc. etc.		

b. The inflection of the present indicative and imperative (the impf. subjunctive being quite regular) is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
dis	**disons**		**disons**
dis	**dites**	**dis**	**dites**
dit	**disent**		

c. Note the 2d plur. ending in **tes** (like **êtes, faites**).

d. Common phrases containing **dire** are: **on dit** (XXVII. 4) or **il se dit** (XXVIII. 4) *it is said;* **c'est à dire** *that is to say, that is;* **à dire vrai** *to tell the truth;* **pour ainsi dire** *so to speak;* **cela va sans dire** *that does not need to be stated* or *is a matter of course* (literally, *goes without saying*). **Vouloir dire** (literally, *wish to say*) means *signify, mean.*

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the prepositions and preposition phrases given in the Lesson.)

le chemin, *road*	**le chemin de fer,** *railroad, railway*
le bateau, *boat*	**le bateau à vapeur,** *steamboat*
la gare, *station, depot*	**le bateau à voiles,** *sailboat*
la poste, *the post, post-office*	**le voyage,** *the journey*
le matelot, *the sailor*	**la mer,** *the sea*
le matin, *the morning*	**le soir,** *the evening*
le fleuve, *the river*	**ordinairement,** *usually, ordinarily*

EXERCISE 33.

[1] Par où allez-vous à la ville? [2] J'y vais par le chemin de fer. [3] Est-ce que la gare est près de votre maison? [4] Non, elle en est très loin; elle est hors du village. [5] Plutôt que d'aller par le chemin de fer, je n'irais jamais au dehors du village. [6] Quant à moi, j'aime extrêmement à

voyager. [7] Au lieu de rester chez moi, je suis allé autour du monde. [8] Je ne peux jamais aller sur la mer, de peur d'être malade. [9] Avant de quitter la France, j'en avais toujours peur; mais à force d'avoir voyagé, je n'y pense plus. [10] Ce matelot est-il allé à travers la mer? [11] Selon lui, il est allé dix fois jusqu'en Amérique. [12] Est-ce qu'il va en bateau à vapeur ou en bateau à voiles? [13] Il voyage ordinairement en bateau à voiles. [14] Mon père vient d'arriver, et je suis allé au-devant de lui. [15] Depuis quelle heure est-il ici? [16] Il est arrivé pendant la nuit. [17] Vous ne me quitterez point, sans faire ce que vous devez faire. [18] J'y suis venu pour le faire. [19] Après avoir déjeuné, il nous mènera sur son grand bateau à vapeur. [20] Je n'ai pas le temps d'aller avec vous. [21] Au lieu d'aller au bateau, il me faut aller à l'école.

THEME 33.

[1] Where have you been since (the) morning? [2] I went to the post in order to find the old sailor. [3] He came to meet me, and we dined together on the steamboat. [4] After having dined, we went around the boat. [5] It is 300 feet long, larger by (the) half than most of the sailboats. [6] Did you talk with the sailors? [7] No, one ought not to speak to them; but, in spite of that, I spoke to one sailor. [8] Before arriving here, he had been around the world. [9] He had gone three times as far as America. [10] For lack of money, I have to remain here, without travelling. [11] Instead of doing nothing, you must work, in order to have money. [12] By dint of working, one can have as much money as one wants. [13] It is time to go to the station. [14] The station is opposite the house of my brother. [15] It is necessary to go along the river, in order to arrive there. [16] As for the railroad, I do not like it at all. [17] I have not the time to travel, but I am not content without going often to Paris. [18] Rather than travel by the railroad, I go usu-

ally by the steamer. [19] Far from loving to (à) travel, I hate it. [20] I can never travel without being sick.

VERB-LESSON.

[1] Que dites-vous? [2] Je n'ai rien dit. [3] Qu'en dira-t-on? [4] On dira que nous ne faisons rien. [5] Dis-moi ce que tu as fait. [6] Je n'en dirai rien à personne. [7] Qu'est-ce qu'ils vous disaient? [8] Ils m'ont dit de m'en aller. [9] Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire? [10] Cela veut dire qu'ils ne m'aiment pas. [11] Dites-lui de venir ici. [12] Il viendra tout de suite: c'est-à-dire, à six heures et demie.

[13] Tell it to me; I shall tell you nothing; he told it to her; will she not tell it to them? we should tell it to you, if they had told it to us. [14] What were you saying? [15] I was going to say that I do not like her. [16] That is a matter of course. [17] What does that mean? [18] It means that she bores everybody. [19] It is said that the queen is in London: that is, she will arrive there soon. [20] Don't tell me that.

LESSON XXXIV.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The conjunctions most used in French are:

et, *and*	**ou**, *or*
mais, *but*	**car**, *for*
que, *that*	**lorsque**, *when, as*
puisque, *since, because, as*	**quoique**, *although, though*
si, *if, whether*	**comme**, *as*

a. Of these conjunctions, **quoique** *although* requires the following verb to be always in the subjunctive: thus,

although he is ill, **quoiqu'il soit malade**
though we had nothing, **quoique nous n'eussions rien**

b. The conjunction **si** *if* (which in English especially

requires the subjunctive) is in French almost always followed by the indicative (pres. or impf.): thus,

if he come, **s'il vient** *if they were here*, **s'ils étaient ici**

But the subjunctive pluperfect is also allowed after **si**: thus, *if he had been here* is **s'il eût été ici** (or **s'il avait été ici**).

Si may be followed by the future (or conditional) when used in the sense of *whether*: thus, **qui sait s'il viendra** *who knows whether he will come?*

Note the abbreviation of **si** before **il** or **ils** (29*b*).

c. The conjunction **que** *that* (as well as the relative: XXVI. 11), though often omitted in English, must always be expressed in French: thus, *I believe you are right* **je crois que vous avez raison.**

2. The interrogative adverbs, in their relative sense (XXXII. 6*a*), have the value of conjunctions: thus, **quand je le vis, je ne savais pas d'où il était venu** *when I saw him, I did not know whence he had come.*

3. Correlative conjunctions, used in successive clauses, are:

et . . . et, *both . . . and*	**ou . . . ou**, *either . . . or*
ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*	**soit . . . soit**, *whether . . . or*
plus . . . plus, *the more . . . the more*	**moins . . . moins**, *the less . . . the less*
autant . . . autant, *as much . . . as*	**tantôt . . . tantôt**, *now . . . now*

4. Connectives of sentences, having the character rather of adverbs than of conjunctions, are:

aussi, *also, too, accordingly*	**ainsi**, *thus, so*
or, *now*	**donc**, *then, consequently*
puis, *then, next*	**alors**, *then*
néanmoins, *nevertheless*	**toutefois**, *yet, however*
cependant, *meanwhile, however*	**pourtant**, *yet, still*
autrement, *otherwise*	**d'ailleurs**, *besides, moreover*

5. Many phrases having a conjunctional value are made by adding the conjunction **que** *that* to a preposition or adverb or adverbial phrase.

a. Some of those most commonly used are:

après que, *after that, after*	**depuis que**, *since (the time that)*
aussitôt que, *as soon as*	**dès que**, *when, as soon as*
pendant que, *while*	**tandis que**, *while, whereas*
parce que, *because*	**ainsi que**, *as*
tant que, *so long as*	**autant que**, *as much as*

b. Some such phrases require the following verb to be in the subjunctive; examples are:

afin que, *in order that*	**pour que,** *in order that*
avant que, *before*	**jusqu'à ce que,** *until*
bien que, *although*	**pourvu que,** *provided that*
sans que, *without that*	**au cas que,** *in case that*

After **sans que**, the verb can hardly be rendered except by our infinitive in *ing:* thus, **sans que personne s'en aperçoive** *without any one's perceiving it.*

c. One or two require the following subjunctive to be preceded by the negative **ne**: they are **à moins que** *unless*, **de crainte** (or **peur**) **que** *for fear that, lest:* thus, **à moins qu'il ne vienne** *unless he come.*

VERB-LESSON.

6. *a.* Of the irregular verb **savoir** *know* (Lat. **sapere**) the synopsis of principal and derived parts is:

savoir	**sachant**	**su**	**sais**	**sus**
saurai	**savais**	**avoir su** etc. etc.	**sache**	**susse**
saurais	**sache**			

b. The inflection of the present indicative and imperative (the pres. subj. being quite regular) is as follows:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
sais	**savons**		**sachons**
sais	**savez**	**sache**	**sachez**
sait	**savent**		

c. The impf. indic. comes from another form of the pres. pple, **savant**, now used only as an adjective, meaning *learned.*

7. *a.* With an object and a predicate relating to it, **savoir** means *know to be:* thus, **je le sais modeste** *I know him to be modest;* with a following infinitive, it means *know how:* thus, **il sait se taire** *he knows how to hold his tongue.*

b. The pres. subj. (?) **je sache** etc. is in certain phrases used like an indicative: thus, **je ne sache personne qui** *I know no one who* etc.; **que je sache** *so far as I know.* The conditional **saurais** is used (negatively) in the sense of *can, be able:* thus, **ils ne sauraient servir** *they are unable to be of use.*

c. The phrase **je ne sais quoi** (or **qui, quel,** etc.) is much used in the sense of *something, I can't tell what* etc.

d. **Savoir** is very often conjugated negatively with **ne** alone (**pas** being omitted).

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the conjunctions given in the lists above.)

la fabrique, *the factory*	**le fabricant**, *the manufacturer*
le magasin, *the shop, store*	**se marier**, *marry, be married*
l'ouvrier m., *the workman*	**l'ouvrière** f., *the workwoman*

EXERCISE 34.

[1] Il va geler ; allez-vous donc à Paris ? [2] Bien qu'il gèle, il faut que j'y aille. [3] D'ailleurs je ne veux pas rester chez moi toute la journée. [4] Que ferez-vous pendant que vous y serez ? [5] Je vais chercher un cadeau pour mon amie, parce qu'elle vient de se marier. [6] Dès que je suis arrivé, j'ai cherché partout des cuillers d'argent ; mais je n'en ai trouvé de jolies, ni au magasin ni à la fabrique. [7] Pourtant on m'a dit que ce marchand en a de très belles. [8] Il me les a montrées ; mais plus je les regardais, plus je les trouvais laides. [9] Alors que me faut-il faire, afin que j'aie quelque chose pour elle ? [10] Il faut attendre jusqu'à ce qu'on en fasse de plus jolies. [11] Est-ce qu'on aùra le temps de les faire avant qu'elle se marie ? [12] Depuis que je vous ai parlé, je suis allé à la fabrique. [13] Pourvu qu'il y ait assez de temps, le fabricant va me les faire. [14] Il ne pourrait les faire, sans qu'il eût de bons ouvriers. [15] Il en aura, dès qu'il voudra en avoir. [16] S'il eût eu de bons ouvriers, il aurait déjà de jolies choses.

THEME 34.

[1] Have you been at the shop since you left me ? [2] I have been both at the shop and at the factory. [3] Then you have bought something. [4] I wanted to buy either forks or spoons ; but I have bought neither forks nor spoons. [5] If you had found some, should you not have bought them ? [6] Although I have found some, nevertheless they were not pretty. [7] Moreover, the manufacturer wishes that I wait (subj.) until he shall make some new ones. [8] Provided that he makes them at once, we can wait ; otherwise we

shall go elsewhere. [9] I wish to give them to my friend, before she is married. [10] The workmen go to the factory early, in order that they may work longer. [11] Although she is ill, this poor workwoman works the whole day. [12] Unless she works ten hours, the merchant will not give her money. [13] So long as she shall work, she will be ill. [14] However, she must work, in order that he may give her bread for her children. [15] She cannot work much, because she is ill. [16] She had to work, lest he should give her nothing. [17] As soon as she shall be better, she will work more. [18] The more she works (fut.), the more he will give her money. [19] You must stay at home, since you are not well. [20] While you are working, I shall go to the school.

VERB-LESSON.

Sais-tu quelle heure il est? [2] Je ne sais pas. [3] Ils n'en savent rien. [4] Je ne saurais vous le dire. [5] Il sait travailler. [6] Il n'y a personne ici, que je sache. [7] Charles vous savait malade, et il n'est pas venu. [8] Savez-vous s'il viendra demain? [9] Personne ne saurait dire où il sera demain. [10] Je saurai le trouver.

[11] Does he know? you know; she knew; they were knowing; we shall know; that he might know. [12] Has he known it? we know what you know; I knew, but I do not know now; she knew and she had always known; you would not have known it, if I had not told it to you. [13] Did you know that he was ill? [14] I had known it, but I had forgotten it. [15] You know how to work. [16] I could not tell how he loves her. [17] I do not know whether he is going to Paris.

LESSON XXXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS ENDING IN ire.

1. *a.* The general account of the irregular verbs was given above, at XXIV. 5, and some of the commonest among them have been explained in full.

Those so explained are as follows: **avoir** *have*, X., **être** *be*, XI., **vouloir** *wish* at XXIV. 6 etc., **pouvoir** *be able* at XXV. 8 etc., **devoir** *owe* at XXVI. 12 etc., **aller** *go* at XXVII. 8 etc., **falloir** *must* at XXX. 6 etc., **venir** *come* at XXXI. 10 etc., **faire** *do* at XXXII. 8 etc., **dire** *say* at XXXIII. 7 etc., and **savoir** *know* at XXXIV. 6 etc.

b. It remains now to give the rest of the irregular verbs, and to explain their inflection.

2. The verbs **conduire** *conduct* etc., **instruire** *instruct* etc., and **cuire** *cook*, are conjugated alike, having past participles ending in **it**, and preterits in **isis**. Their derived parts are all made regularly. Thus:

a. *1.* **conduire**	**conduisant**	**conduit**	**conduis**	**conduisis**	
conduirai	**conduisais**	**avoir conduit**	**conduis**	**conduisisse**	
conduirais	**conduise**	etc. etc.			

b. The present indicative and imperative (the pres. subj. being entirely regular) are inflected thus:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
conduis	**conduisons**		**conduisons**
conduis	**conduisez**	**conduis**	**conduisez**
conduit	**conduisent**		

c. Like **conduire** are conjugated the other compounds of **-duire** (Lat. **ducere**): namely,

déduire, *deduce*	**introduire**, *introduce*	**séduire**, *seduce*
éconduire, *remove*	**produire**, *produce*	**traduire**, *translate*
enduire, *do over*	**reconduire**, *reconduct*	
induire, *induce*	**réduire**, *reduce*	

The simple verb, **duire** *suit*, is used only in the 3d sing. present.

Of the other two verbs, it will be enough to give the principal parts only.

d. *2.* **instruire** **instruisant** **instruit** **instruis** **instruisi**

e. Like **instruire** are conjugated the other compounds of **-struire** (Lat. **struere**): namely,

construire, *construct* **détruire**, *destroy* **reconstruire**, *reconstruct*

f.	**3.** **cuire**	**cuisant**	**cuit**	**cuis**	**cuisis**

g. Like **cuire** (Lat. **coquere**) is conjugated its compound:

recuire, *cook again*

3. The verbs **nuire** *injure* and **luire** *shine* are conjugated in the same way, except that their past participle ends in **i** instead of **it**. Thus:

a.	**4.** **nuire**	**nuisant**	**nui**	**nuis**	**nuisis**
	5. **luire**	**luisant**	**lui**	**luis**	———

b. The pret. indic. and impf. subj. of **luire** are not in use. Like it is conjugated its compound:

reluire, *shine, glisten*

c. These verbs are Lat. **nocere** and **lucere** respectively.

4. The verbs **suffire** *suffice*, **confire** *preserve*, and **circoncire** *circumcise*, are conjugated alike, except the past participles, which end respectively in **i**, **it**, and **is**. Their preterit ends in **is** simply, like the present (not in **isis**, like the preceding verbs). Thus:

a.	**6.** **suffire**	**suffisant**	**suffi**	**suffis**	**suffis**
	7. **confire**	**confisant**	**confit**	**confis**	**confis**
	8. **circoncire**	**circoncisant**	**circoncis**	**circoncis**	**circoncis**

b. These verbs are respectively Lat. **sufficere**, **conficere**, and **circumcidere**.

c. Like **confire** is conjugated its compound:

déconfire, *discomfit*

5. The very common verb **dire** *say, tell* differs from **confire** only by having in the 2d plural pres. indic. and impv. **dites** (instead of **disez**). Its principal parts are:

	9. **dire**	**disant**	**dit**	**dis**	**dis**

The complete inflection of this verb was given above, at XXXIII. **7** etc.

a. Of the compounds of **dire** (Lat. **dicere**), only

redire, *say again*

is conjugated precisely like it. Most of the others—namely,

contredire, *contradict* **interdire**, *interdict* **prédire**, *predict*
dédire, *disown* **médire**, *slander*

—are like **confire**, having **-disez** (instead of **-dites**) in the 2d

plural. But **maudire** *curse* (Lat. **maledicere**) is much more irregular, having double **ss** in the present participle and in all the forms that follow its analogy. Thus:

10. **maudire**	**maudissant**	**maudit**	**maudis**	**maudis**	
maudirai	**maudissais**	**avoir maudit**	**maudis**	**maudisse**	
maudirais	**maudisse**	etc. etc.			

The inflection of the pres. indic. and impv. is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
maudis	**maudissons**		**maudissons**
maudis	**maudissez**	**maudis**	**maudissez**
maudit	**maudissent**		

6. **Lire** *read* forms its past participle in **u** and its preterit in **us**. The other parts and their inflection are like those of **conduire**, above (2). Thus:

11. **lire**	**lisant**	**lu**	**lis**	**lus**
lirai	**lisais**	**avoir lu**	**lis**	**lusse**
lirais	**lise**	etc. etc.		

a. Like **lire** (Lat. **legere**) are conjugated its compounds

élire, *elect* **relire**, *read again* **réélire**, *re-elect*

7. The verb **écrire** *write* is in the main like **conduire**; but it has everywhere **v** instead of **s** after **i** in the full forms of the root. Thus:

a. *12.* **écrire**	**écrivant**	**écrit**	**écris**	**écrivis**	
écrirai	**écrivais**	**avoir écrit**	**écris**	**écrivisse**	
écrirais	**écrive**	etc. etc.			

b. The inflection of the pres. indic. and impv. is as follows:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
écris	**écrivons**		**écrivons**
écris	**écrivez**	**écris**	**écrivez**
écrit	**écrivent**		

c. Like **écrire** (Lat. **scribere**) are conjugated the compounds:

circonscrire, *circumscribe*	**prescrire**, *prescribe*	**souscrire**, *subscribe*
décrire, *describe*	**proscrire**, *proscribe*	**transcrire**, *transcribe*
inscrire, *inscribe*	**récrire**, *rewrite*	

8. The verb rire *laugh* is still more unlike the above verbs. Thus:

a. *13.* **rire**	**riant**	**ri**	**ris**	**ris**	
rirai	**riais**	**avoir ri**	**ris**	**risse**	
rirais	**rie**	etc. etc.			

b. The inflection of the present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.			Impv.	Pres. Subj.	
ris	rions		rions	rie	riions
ris	riez	ris	riez	ries	riiez
rit	rient			rie	rient

c. Like **rire** (Lat. **ridere**) is inflected its compound:

sourire, *smile*

9. The verb **frire** *fry* is like **rire**, except that its past participle ends in **it**, and that it lacks the present participle and all forms following its analogy—namely, the impf. indic., the pres. subj., and the plural of the pres. indicative. Thus:

14. **frire**	—	**frit**	**fris**	**fris**

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs in the Lesson.)

le poète, *the poet*	**la poésie**, *poetry*
la tragédie, *the tragedy*	**la comédie**, *the comedy*
l'ouvrage m., *the work*	**la manière**, *the manner*
le journal, *the journal, newspaper*	**le rédacteur**, *the editor*
français, *French*	**anglais**, *English*

EXERCISE 35.

[1] Avez-vous lu les ouvrages de ce poète, madame? [2] Je lis toujours de la poésie, mais je ne sais ce que cet homme a écrit. [3] Je lus l'année dernière une de ses comédies, qui me fit beaucoup rire. [4] Nous lisons les tragédies, et nous ne rions jamais. [5] Vous écrivez beaucoup pour les journaux, n'est-ce pas? [6] Ce sont les rédacteurs qui écrivent pour les journaux; moi, je n'écris que de la poésie. [7] Qu'écriviez-vous hier? [8] Nous traduisions les comédies de Molière. [9] Les avez-vous lues? [10] Si vous les avez traduites, je les lirai certainement. [11] Vous en rirez; elles sont très amusantes. [12] Nous en avons beaucoup ri, quand nous les lisions. [13] Pourquoi le poète maudissait-il le rédacteur? [14] Parce que celui-ci lui a nui. [15] Il a décrit sa dernière tragédie d'une manière amusante, et tout le monde en rit. [16] J'ai lu ce qu'il en a écrit, et je n'ai pas même souri en le

lisant. [17] Que faites-vous avec ces jeunes filles? [18] Nous les conduisons au théâtre, afin qu'elles s'y amusent. [19] Les bonnes comédies instruisent beaucoup les jeunes gens. [20] Si vous voulez écrire de la poésie, il faut que vous lisiez les poètes français.

THEME 35.

[1] He will conduct; I have conducted; we were conducting; conduct him! they would conduct her, if she wished to go there. [2] Read your letter; I have read it; we shall read it to you; let us not read it to her. [3] They were writing; she would write; we had written; you will never have written; I shall write to nobody; nobody has written to me. [4] Has he read the letter that she has written him? write him a letter, in order that he may read it. [5] He has laughed; she will laugh; they were laughing while I was reading; do not laugh at (de) the books which you read. [6] I read much poetry; but I have not read the works of all the poets. [7] Do you write nothing? [8] Yes, I have always written a great deal for the newspapers. [9] I translate many comedies, but I do not write any. [10] I was reading a tragedy, and I did not laugh at it. [11] Why do you not read the newspapers? [12] Because they do not instruct me. [13] My daughters write poetry, and my son has written a tragedy. [14] They have always read the best works of the French poets, and they have translated English poetry.

LESSON XXXVI.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN aindre *etc.*, AND aître *etc.*

1. Among the other irregular verbs ending in re, there are two important groups which may be taken up first.

2. A considerable number of much-used verbs have

their infinitive in ndre preceded by one of the three digraphs ai, ei, oi—verbs in aindre, eindre, and oindre. They are conjugated precisely alike, and their derived parts are made with entire regularity from the principal parts—which, however, are quite irregular in their relations to one another.

3. As examples may be taken craindre *fear*, peindre *paint*, joindre *join*. Thus:

a.	***15.*** craindre	craignant	craint	crains	craignis
	craindrai	craignais	avoir craint	crains	craignisse
	craindrais	craigne	etc. etc.		

b. The inflection of the pres. indic. and impv. (the pres. subj. being quite regular) is as follows:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
crains	craignons		craignons
crains	craignez	crains	craignez
craint	craignent		

c. Of the other two verbs, it will be enough to give the principal parts. Thus:

16. peindre	peignant	peint	peins	peignis
17. joindre	joignant	joint	joins	joignis

d. Like these verbs are conjugated:

plaindre, *pity*	contraindre, *constrain*	
astreindre, *constrain*	enceindre, *gird*	geindre, *groan*
atteindre, *attain*	enfreindre, *infringe*	ratteindre, *re-attain*
ceindre, *gird*	épreindre, *squeeze out*	repeindre, *paint again*
dépeindre, *depict*	éteindre, *extinguish*	restreindre, *restrain*
déteindre, *fade*	étreindre, *draw tight*	reteindre, *dye over*
empreindre, *imprint*	feindre, *feign*	teindre, *tinge*
conjoindre, *conjoin*	enjoindre, *enjoin*	poindre, *puncture*
déjoindre, *disjoin*	oindre, *anoint*	rejoindre, *rejoin*
disjoindre, *disjoin*		

e. These verbs end in Latin mostly in -ngere: thus, plaindre, Lat. plangere; peindre, Lat. pingere; joindre, Lat. jungere; éteindre, Lat. extinguere; and so on. Hence the gn in many of their forms. But -preindre and geindre are Lat. -premere, gemere.

4. A number of verbs in aitre and oitre, some of them very common ones, are conjugated nearly alike. They,

too, make their derived parts quite regularly from an irregular set of principal parts.

5. As models may be taken **paraître** *appear* and **croître** *grow*. Thus:

a. ***18.*** **paraître** **paraissant** **paru** **parais** **parus**
paraîtrai **paraissais** **avoir paru** **parais** **parusse**
paraîtrais **paraisse** etc. etc.

b. The inflection of pres. indic. and impv. is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
parais	**paraissons**		**paraissons**
parais	**paraissez**	**parais**	**paraissez**
paraît	**paraissent**		

Note that the circumflex of the infinitive appears here in the 3d sing., but not elsewhere.

c. Like **paraître** are conjugated its compounds:

apparaître, *appear* **comparaître**, *appear* **disparaître**, *disappear*

also **connaître** *know, be acquainted with*, and its compounds:

méconnaître, *fail to recognize* **reconnaître**, *recognize*

also **paître** *graze* and its compound:

repaître, *feed*

But of **paître** the pret. indic. and impf. subj. are not in use.

d. Old infinitive forms are **apparoir** and **comparoir**, for **apparaître** and **comparaître**; from **apparoir** is made also the impersonal 3d sing. **il appert** *it appears*.

6. Of **croître** *grow* the principal and derived parts are:

19. **croître** **croissant** **crû** **croîs** **crûs**
croîtrai **croissais** **avoir crû** **croîs** **crûsse**
croîtrais **croisse** etc. etc.

a. The inflection of the pres. indic. and impv. is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
croîs	**croissons**		**croissons**
croîs	**croissez**	**croîs**	**croissez**
croît	**croissent**		

Note that the circumflex of the infinitive appears here through the whole singular. The circumflex in past pple and pret. is chiefly for the purpose of distinguishing the forms from those of **croire** *believe* (below, XXXVII. 5).

b. Like **croître** are conjugated its compounds:

accroître, *increase* **décroître**, *decrease* **recroître**, *grow again*
surcroître, *overgrow*

These, however, have no circumflex in the past pple: thus, **accru** etc.; and some authorities omit it in the impf. subj. throughout: thus, **crusse**, **accrusse**, etc.

7. The verb **naître** *be born* is in part inflected like **paraître** etc., but is very peculiar in its past participle and in its preterit. It takes the auxiliary **être** (XXVIII. 6*a*). Thus:

20. **naître**	**naissant**	**né**	**nais**	**naquis**
naîtrai	**naissais**	**être né**	**nais**	**naquisse**
naîtrais	**naisse**	etc. etc.		

a. The inflection of the pres. indic. and the impv. is precisely as in **paraître**:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
nais	**naissons**		**naissons**
nais	**naissez**	**nais**	**naissez**
naît	**naissent**		

b. Like **naître** is conjugated its compound:

renaître, *be born again*

c. In the sense of *was born* is used the perfect, **suis né** etc., if the person spoken of is living.

8. These verbs come, with some anomalous changes, from Latin verbs in **-scere**: thus, **paraître** is Lat. **parescere**; **connaître**, Lat. **cognoscere**; **croître**, Lat. **crescere**; **naître**, Lat. **nasci**.

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

le général, *the general*	**le soldat**, *the soldier*
l'armée f., *the army*	**la guerre**, *the war*
le bonheur, *happiness, good fortune*	**le malheur**, *unhappiness, misfortune*

Exercise 36.

[1] Ne plaignez-vous pas cette pauvre femme? [2] Je la plains beaucoup, car elle est très malheureuse. [3] Elle a eu un bon mari; mais il joignit l'armée l'année dernière, et il a tout à fait disparu. [4] Elle n'a pas de pain pour son pauvre enfant, qui est né il y a quelques mois. [5] Connaissez-vous le vieux général? [6] Nous l'avons connu autrefois, mais je

ne pense pas qu'il nous reconnaîtra à présent. [7] Ces arbres ont beaucoup crû, depuis que je ne les ai vus. [8] Les enfants croissent très vite, et après peu de temps on ne les reconnaît plus. [9] Il paraît que nous allons avoir une guerre avec l'Allemagne. [10] Tous les malheurs de la patrie naissent de la guerre. [11] Aussitôt que la guerre commencera, le bonheur des citoyens aura disparu. [12] Qui est-ce que vous plaigniez? [13] Nous plaignions les pauvres soldats, qui doivent aller à la guerre. [14] Qui est-ce que cet homme veut peindre? [15] Il a peint beaucoup de généraux de France; maintenant il va peindre ce soldat-ci. [16] Napoléon naquit en Corse le 15 août, 1769. [17] La plupart de nos grands hommes sont nés en France. [18] Donnons-nous la main, et soyons bons amis. [19] Mon père naquit en 1796, et moi, je suis né en 1853. [20] Nous ne craignons pas le malheur; pourquoi le craindrions-nous?

THEME 36.

[1] They fear; we shall fear; that he may not fear; fear nothing; did he never fear? he would have feared it. [2] I had recognized her; do you not recognize me? we should recognize him; he will recognize them; she recognized him as he was entering. [3] Will he not appear? if he appears, we shall disappear; although he had not yet appeared, we went away; do they not appear? he appeared yesterday; we appear to-day; they will appear to-morrow. [4] You paint; was he not painting? I will paint it, if you wish; give me what you have painted. [5] What was the man painting? [6] He has painted the beautiful flowers which grow in our garden. [7] Does he never paint men? [8] Those painters always paint animals. [9] Do you not recognize this picture? [10] Yes, I recognize it well; it is the portrait of the young general. [11] Did you know him? [12] I knew him very well, and we have always known his family. [13] Where is he now? [14] He disappeared last year. [15] It appears that his family has had many misfortunes.

[16] Yes, we pity them very much. [17] When was your son born? [18] He was born in 1878. [19] He has grown a good deal since I went away. [20] Yes, he grows very fast; all the children are growing; he will still grow a little.

LESSON XXXVII.

FURTHER IRREGULAR VERBS IN re.

1. The verb **traire** *draw, milk* lacks the preterit and the imperfect subjunctive.

a. Its principal and derived parts are as follows:

21. **traire**	**trayant**	**trait**	**trais**	——
trairai	**trayais**	**avoir trait**	**trais**	
trairais	**traie**	etc. etc.		

b. The inflection of pres. indic. and impv. is:

PRES. INDIC.		IMPV.	
trais	**trayons**		**trayons**
trais	**trayez**	**trais**	**trayez**
trait	**traient**		

c. Like **traire** (Lat. **trahere**) are conjugated its compounds:

abstraire, *abstract*	**distraire**, *distract*	**rentraire**, *darn*
attraire, *attract*	**extraire**, *extract*	**retraire**, *milk again*
		soustraire, *subtract*

2. The verb **braire** *bray* is conjugated like **traire**, but is hardly used except in the infinitive and the 3d sing. and p^{l}. of pres. indic., fut., and conditional.

22. **braire**	**brait**	**braira**	**brairait**
	braient	**brairont**	**brairaient**

a. This verb is of doubtful origin.

3. The very common verb **faire** *make, do,* which is also very irregular, has been given in full above: see XXXII. 8.

a. *23.* Like **faire** (Lat. **facere**) are conjugated its compounds:

contrefaire, *counterfeit*	**malfaire**, *do ill*	**refaire**, *remake*
défaire, *undo*	**méfaire**, *do harm*	**satisfaire**, *satisfy*
forfaire, *offend*	**parfaire**, *complete*	**surfaire**, *overdo*

4. The verbs **plaire** *please* and **taire** *keep silent* are conjugated alike, except that **plaire** has an irregular circumflex in the 3d sing. pres. indicative. Thus:

a. ***24.*** **plaire** **plaisant** **plu** **plais** **plus**
plairai **plaisais** **avoir plu** **plais** **plusse**
plairais **plaise** etc. etc.

b. The inflection of the pres. indic. and impv. is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
plais	**plaisons**		**plaisons**
plais	**plaisez**	**plais**	**plaisez**
plaît	**plaisent**		

c. Like **plaire** (Lat. **placere**) are conjugated its compounds:
complaire, *be complaisant* **déplaire**, *displease*

d. **Plaire** is much used impersonally, especially in the phrase **s'il vous plaît** *if you please.*

e. Of **taire**, it is enough to give the principal parts:
25. **taire** **taisant** **tu** **tais** **tus**
The 3d sing. pres. indic. is **il tait.**

f. **Taire** (Lat. **tacere**) is much used reflexively, in the sense *be silent, hold one's peace:* thus, **tais-toi** or **taisez-vous** *be silent!*

5. There are two verbs in **oire**—namely, **croire** *think, believe,* and **boire,** *drink*—of which the former is regular in the formation of its derived parts and in its tense-inflection, while the latter is irregular in both. Thus:

a. ***26.*** **croire** **croyant** **cru** **crois** **crus**
croirai **croyais** **avoir cru** **crois** **crusse**
croirais **croie** etc. etc.

Inflection of the three present tenses:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
crois	**croyons**		**croyons**	**croie**	**croyions**
crois	**croyez**	**crois**	**croyez**	**croies**	**croyiez**
croit	**croient**			**croie**	**croient**

b. A compound of **croire** (Lat. **credere**), **accroire** (in **faire accroire** *deceive into believing*), is used only in the infinitive; another, **décroire** *disbelieve,* only in the 1st sing. present.

c. **Croire** in French is followed by an infinitive without infinitive-sign, where in English we use instead a dependent clause, or insert a reflexive pronoun: thus, **je crois l'avoir dit** *I think (myself) to have said it,* or *I think that I have said it.*

d. ***27.*** **boire** **buvant** **bu** **bois** **bus**
boirai **buvais** **avoir bu** **bois** **busse**
boirais **boive** etc. etc.

Inflection of the three present tenses:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
bois	**buvons**		**buvons**	**boive**	**buvions**
bois	**buvez**	**bois**	**buvez**	**boives**	**buviez**
boit	**boivent**			**boive**	**boivent**

e. Like **boire** (Lat. **bĭbere**) are conjugated its compounds:

emboire, *imbĭbe* **imboire,** *imbĭbe, imbue* **reboire,** *drink again*

6. There is one verb in **ore,** namely **clore** *close,* with its compound **éclore** *open, hatch* (taking **être** as auxiliary: XXVIII. **6***a*). Their conjugation is as follows (only a few of the forms being in actual use):

a. ***28.*** **clore** [closant] **clos** **clos** ———
clorai ——— **avoir clos** ——— ———
clorais **close** (**être éclos**)

b. The 3d sing. pres. indic. is **clôt** (and **éclôt**); of the plural only the 3d pers. **éclosent** is in use. The fut. and cond. of **éclore** are more usually written with the circumflex: **éclôra** etc. (only the 3d persons are in use).

c. Of **clore** (Lat. **claudere**) there are other compounds:

déclore, *unclose* **enclore,** *enclose* **forclore,** *foreclose*

but they are rarely used, and only in a few forms.

7. There is also a single verb ending in **ure,** namely **-clure** in **conclure** *conclude* etc. The conjugation is as follows:

a. ***29.*** **conclure** **concluant** **conclu** **conclus** **conclus**
conclurai **concluais** **avoir conclu** **conclus** **conclusse**
conclurais **conclue** etc. etc.

b. Inflection of the present tenses:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
conclus	**concluons**		**concluons**	**conclue**	**concluions**
conclus	**concluez**	**conclus**	**concluez**	**conclues**	**concluiez**
conclut	**concluent**			**conclue**	**concluent**

c. Like **conclure** are conjugated also the other compounds of **-clure** (Lat. **-cludere**): namely,

exclure, *exclude* **reclure**, *shut up*

but of **reclure** only a few forms are in use.

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

la ferme, *the farm*	**la fermière**, *the farmer's wife*
le lis, *the lily*	**la violette**, *the violet*
le matin, *the morning*	**le soir**, *the evening*

EXERCISE 37.

[1] Que buvez-vous? [2] Je bois du lait frais; voulez-vous en boire? [3] Où l'avez-vous trouvé? [4] La fermière trayait ses vaches, et elle m'en a donné. [5] Croyez-vous que je puisse en avoir aussi? [6] Elle les a déjà traites, mais elle les traira encore ce soir. [7] Alors j'en boirai ce soir. [8] Voilà de jolies fleurs; elles sont écloses ce matin. [9] Les roses éclôront demain, je crois. [10] J'en veux quelques unes. [11] Je crois vous avoir dit que j'aime extrêmement toutes les fleurs. [12] Est-ce que ces petites filles ne vous plaisent pas? [13] Elles m'ont beaucoup déplu, parce qu'elles ne se taisent jamais. [14] Il faut qu'un enfant se taise lorsque les autres veulent parler. [15] Avant de m'en aller, il faut que je boive un peu de vin. [16] Vous en avez déjà bu, et nous ne croyons point qu'il vous en faille encore. [17] Mais le lait ne me plaît pas. [18] Taisez-vous, et buvez ce qu'on vous donne. [19] Je me tairai, mais je ne boirai pas ce qui me déplaît. [20] Ne croient-ils pas ce que je leur ai dit? [21] Ils n'en ont rien cru.

THEME 37.

[1] He believes; does she not believe? they will believe; believe what I say; I have believed what she has said to me. [2] Will he drink? do you drink? they would have drunk; drink, and go away; let us drink water; he would drink wine, if he had some. [3] Does she please you? that would never please me; they have pleased me. [4] She spoke

and I was silent; be silent while your mother speaks; if you do not keep silence, I shall say nothing. [6] I want to go to the farm this morning, if you please. [7] I will conduct you there; but you must be silent while I speak to the farmer's wife. [8] Do you believe that she will milk the cows while we are there? [9] If she milks them, she will give you some milk. [10] I drank some fresh milk formerly, and I shall drink some to-day. [11] We drink milk often, but we have never drunk wine. [12] Do you think that the lilies have opened? [13] They have not yet opened, but they will open this evening. [14] These violets please me much; give me some, if you please. [15] Be silent, my child; you have displeased me. [16] We thought that we had pleased you. [17] Since you are silent, we conclude that we displease you. [18] Although we drink much milk, we are always thirsty.

LESSON XXXVIII.

THE REMAINING VERBS IN re.

1. The remaining verbs ending in the infinitive in **re** have a consonant next before the **r**. They are quite discordant, and in part very irregular, in their conjugation, and must be taken up one by one.

a. We will begin with two that are extremely common in use.

2. The verb **prendre** *take* is thus conjugated:

30. **prendre**	**prenant**	**pris**	**prends**	**pris**	
prendrai	**prenais**	**avoir pris** etc. etc.	**prends**	**prisse**	
prendrais	**prenne**				

Inflection of the present tenses:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
prends	**prenons**		**prenons**	**prenne**	**prenions**
prends	**prenez**	**prends**	**prenez**	**prennes**	**preniez**
prend	**prennent**			**prenne**	**prennent**

a. For the doubling of the **n** in **prenne** etc., see **21**.

b. Like **prendre** (Lat. **prehendere**) are conjugated its numerous compounds (some of them very much used):

apprendre, *learn*	**rapprendre**, *relearn*	**méprendre**, *mistake*
désapprendre, *unlearn*	**comprendre**, *understand*	**reprendre**, *resume*
éprendre, *seize*	**entreprendre**, *undertake*	**surprendre**, *surprise*

3. The verb **mettre** *put* is thus conjugated:

31. **mettre**	**mettant**	**mis**	**mets**	**mis**	
mettrai	**mettais**	**avoir mis**	**mets**	**misse**	
mettrais	**mette**	etc. etc.			

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
mets	**mettons**		**mettons**
mets	**mettez**	**mets**	**mettez**
met	**mettent**		

a. Like **mettre** (Lat. **mittere**) are conjugated its numerous and much-used compounds:

admettre, *admit*	**omettre**, *omit*	**remettre**, *remit*
commettre, *commit*	**permettre**, *permit*	**soumettre**, *submit*
démettre, *put out*	**promettre**, *promise*	**transmettre**, *transmit*
émettre, *emit*	**compromettre**, *compromise*	

b. For the phrase **se mettre à** *begin* (literally, *set one's self at*), see above, XXIX. *7b.*

4. The verb **vivre** *live* is very irregular in its preterit and past participle: thus,

32. **vivre**	**vivant**	**vécu**	**vis**	**vécus**
vivrai	**vivais**	**avoir vécu**	**vis**	**vécusse**
vivrais	**vive**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
vis	**vivons**		**vivons**
vis	**vivez**	**vis**	**vivez**
vit	**vivent**		

a. Like **vivre** (Lat. **vivere**) are conjugated its compounds:

revivre, *revive* **survivre**, *survive*

b. The pres. subj. is used in good wishes for English *long live:* thus, **vive le roi** *long live the king.* The expression **qui vive** *who goes there?* is explained as meaning *who* [*do you wish*] *may live long?* i.e. *on whose side are you?*

5. The verb **suivre** *follow* is quite nearly regular. It is conjugated as follows:

33. **suivre**	**suivant**	**suivi**	**suis**	**suivis**
suivrai	**suivais**	**avoir suivi**	**suis**	**suivisse**
suivrais	**suive**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
suis	**suivons**		**suivons**
suis	**suivez**	**suis**	**suivez**
suit	**suivent**		

a. Notice the identity of **je suis** *I follow* with **je suis** *I am.*

b. Like **suivre** (Lat. **sequi**) are conjugated its compounds:

ensuivre, *ensue* **poursuivre**, *pursue*

6. The verb **coudre** *sew* is thus conjugated:

34. **coudre**	**cousant**	**cousu**	**couds**	**cousis**
coudrai	**cousais**	**avoir cousu**	**couds**	**cousisse**
coudrais	**couse**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
couds	**cousons**		**cousons**
couds	**cousez**	**couds**	**cousez**
coud	**cousent**		

a. Notice the unusual difference in the final vowel-sound of the pple **cousu** and pret. **cousis.** Such difference is found only in **coudre, vêtir** (XXXIX. **11**), and **voir** (XLI. **4**).

b. Like **coudre** (Lat. **consuere**) are conjugated its compounds:

découdre, *unsew, rip* **recoudre**, *sew over again*

7. The verb **moudre** *grind* is thus conjugated:

35. **moudre**	**moulant**	**moulu**	**mouds**	**moulus**
moudrai	**moulais**	**avoir moulu**	**mouds**	**moulusse**
moudrais	**moule**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
mouds	**moulons**		**moulons**
mouds	**moulez**	**mouds**	**moulez**
moud	**moulent**		

a. Like **moudre** (Lat. **molere**) are conjugated its compounds:

émoudre, *whet* **remoudre**, *grind over*

8. The very irregular verb **résoudre** *resolve* is thus conjugated:

36. **résoudre**	**résolvant**	**résolu**	**résouds**	**résolus**
résoudrai	**résolvais**	**avoir résolu**	**résouds**	**résolussse**
résoudrais	**résolve**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.			Impv.	
résouds	**résolvons**			**résolvons**
résouds	**résolvez**		**résouds**	**résolvez**
résoud	**résolvent**			

a. Nearly like **résoudre** are conjugated the other compounds of **-soudre** (Lat. **solvere**): namely,

absoudre, *absolve* **dissoudre**, *dissolve*

except that their past participles are **absous** and **dissous** (fem. **-soute**). And **résous** (only masc.) is also a rarely used participle of **résoudre**, in the sense of *dissolved*.

9. Of **sourdre** (Lat. **surgere**) *rise forth* are used only the infinitive and the 3d persons pres. indicative: thus,

37. **sourdre** **sourd, sourdent.**

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

la malle, *the trunk*	**le mouchoir**, *the handkerchief*
le col, *the collar*	**la manchette**, *the cuff*
la leçon, *the lesson*	**le thème**, *the exercise, theme*
anglais, *English*	**allemand**, *German*

EXERCISE 38.

[1] Qu'avez-vous appris de votre frère? [2] J'apprends qu'il va entreprendre un long voyage. [3] Permettez-vous qu'il s'en aille? [4] Il l'a résolu, et il faut que je le lui permette. [5] Est-ce qu'il prendra toutes ces malles avec lui? [6] Il ne prend jamais qu'une malle. [7] Voilà la malle qu'il a prise l'année dernière. [8] Prenez ces mouchoirs et mettez-les dans la malle. [9] Est-ce que vous y avez mis les manchettes et les cols? [10] Il faut que je les couse avant de les y mettre. [11] Ne les cousez pas, il en achètera d'autres. [12] Si votre frère va en Angleterre, il lui faudra apprendre l' **anglais**. [13] Il a résolu de l'apprendre, et il prend des leçons d' **anglais** depuis un an. [14] Maintenant il l'aura appris très bien, je crois. [15] Comprenez-vous l' **allemand**, mademoi-

selle? [16] Non, monsieur; mais je me suis mise à l'apprendre. [17] Ce qu'on a résolu d'apprendre, on l'apprend toujours. [18] Est-ce que votre chien vous suit? [19] Il m'a toujours suivi; mais il devient vieux, et je ne crois pas qu'il me suive plus longtemps. [20] Les chiens ne vivent pas aussi longtemps que les hommes. [21] Bien que celui-ci n'ait vécu que dix ans, il est déjà vieux, et il faut que je me résolve à en acheter un autre. [22] Nous vivrons désormais dans la ville.

Theme 38.

[1] You will take; they have taken; take it; we took it; will she not take it? I wish that you may take it; thou wast taking; I have taken nothing. [2] We would put; that they may put; let us put it there; he put it in his pocket; will he not put it there? I shall put it where I wish; he will have put it on the table; I never put them there. [3] They were living; he lived; do we not live? live! I wish that the king may live long; you would have lived. [4] She sews; they were sewing; I did not sew; if you sew, we shall sew also; that he might sew; let us sew. [5] That he may resolve; I have resolved; we shall resolve; would he not resolve? they were resolving; let us resolve; she would not have resolved. [6] What have you done with (de) the handkerchiefs which I was sewing? [7] I put them in your trunk. [8] I did not permit you to (de) put them there. [9] If I had not put them there, my brother would not have been able to go away. [10] Which trunk has he taken? [11] He has taken the old black trunk which he took last year. [12] Have you learned why he leaves? [13] My father permits him to leave, in order that he may learn English [14] Does he not understand English? [15] He does not understand it yet, but he is beginning to learn it, and he will understand it soon. [16] You take English lessons also, I believe. [17] No, sir; but I take German lessons. [18] This child must understand German, if he is going to Germany. [19] Where have

you put your little dog? "It is dead; it lived only three months. "I took your pencil, and put it on the table; but it is no longer there. "Put your book where you will be able to find it again.

LESSON XXXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN ir.

1. A number of verbs ending in the infinitive in **ir** are conjugated alike, and quite regularly.

Such are **partir** *set out, leave, depart*, **sortir** *go out*, **sentir** *feel*, **mentir** *lie, tell a lie*, **repentir** (reflexive) *repent*, **dormir** *sleep*, **servir** *serve*.

a. These verbs are more properly regular than the so-called regular verbs of the second conjugation (like **finir**), since they do not, like the latter, mix together simple and inceptive forms. But the verbs like **finir** are much the more numerous.

2. The verb **partir** is thus conjugated:

38.	**partir**	**partant**	**parti**	**pars**	**partis**
	partirai	**partais**	**être parti**	**pars**	**partisse**
	partirais	**parte**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
pars	**partons**		**partons**
pars	**partez**	**pars**	**partez**
part	**partent**		

3. Of the others in **tir**, it will be enough to give the principal parts:

39.	**sortir**	**sortant**	**sorti**	**sors**	**sortis**
40.	**sentir**	**sentant**	**senti**	**sens**	**sentis**
41.	**mentir**	**mentant**	**menti**	**mens**	**mentis**
42.	**repentir**	**repentant**	**repenti**	**repens**	**repentis**

a. Like these verbs (Lat. **partiri, sortiri, sentire, mentiri, -pœnitere**) are conjugated their compounds:

départir, *distribute* **repartir**, *set out again*
ressortir, *go out again*
consentir, *consent* **pressentir**, *foresee* **ressentir**, *feel, resent*
démentir, *give the lie to*

b. But **répartir** *distribute* is like **finir**; and so also **ressortir** when it means *resort;* and **assortir** *assort* is not a compound of **sortir**, and is regular.

c. As to the auxiliary with **partir** and **sortir**, see XXVIII. 7.

4. Of the two verbs in **mir** and **vir**, the principal parts are as follows:

43.	**dormir**	**dormant**	**dormi**	**dors**	**dormis**
44.	**servir**	**servant**	**servi**	**sers**	**servis**

Their pres. indic. (with which the imperative persons, as usual, agree) are these:

Pres. Indic.		Pres. Indic.	
dors	**dormons**	**sers**	**servons**
dors	**dormez**	**sers**	**servez**
dort	**dorment**	**sert**	**servent**

a. Like these verbs (Lat. **dormire, servire**) are conjugated their compounds:

endormir, *put to sleep* **redormir**, *sleep again* **rendormir**, *put to sleep again*
desservir, *clear* (*a table*)

But **asservir** *subjugate* is regular (like **finir**).

b. The phrase **se servir de** *use, make use of*, was given at XXIX. 7*b*.

5. Somewhat less regular is **assaillir** *assail*, which has a present indicative like a verb of the first conjugation.

a. The principal parts are:

45.	**assaillir**	**assaillant**	**assailli**	**assaille**	**assaillis**

The pres. indic. and impv. are:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
assaille	**assaillons**		**assaillons**
assailles	**assaillez**	**assaille**	**assaillez**
assaille	**assaillent**		

b. Like **assaillir** is conjugated another compound of **saillir**,

tressaillir, *be startled*

but the simple **saillir** (Lat. **salire**) *gush forth* is like **finir**; in the sense of *jut out, project*, it has the 3d persons pres. indic. like **assaillir**.

6. The verb **cueillir** *gather* is still further irregular, in having also the future and conditional made after the manner of the first conjugation: thus,

46. cueillir	cueillant	cueilli	cueille	cueillis
cueillerai	cueillais	avoir cueilli	cueille	cueillisse
cueillerais	cueille	etc. etc.		

The present tenses are like those of **assaillir**.

a. Like **cueillir** (Lat. **colligere**) are conjugated its compounds:

accueillir, *receive* **recueillir**, *collect*

7. The verb **fuir** *flee, shun* has a very regular conjugation: thus,

47. fuir	fuyant	fui	fuis	fuis
fuirai	fuyais	avoir fui	fuis	fuisse
fuirais	fuie	etc. etc.		

The pres. indic. and impv. are:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
fuis	fuyons		fuyons
fuis	fuyez	fuis	fuyez
fuit	fuient		

a. Like **fuir** (Lat. **fugere**) is conjugated its compound:

s'enfuir, *run away, fly*

8. Of the verb **bruire** (probably from Lat. **rugire**) *roar, be noisy*, the few forms that occur may best be put here, on account of their analogy with those of **fuir**. They are only

48. bruire	bruyant	il bruit	il bruyait
			ils bruyaient

9. The verb **ouïr** *hear* (Lat. **audire**) is now hardly used except in the infinitive and past participle, with the perfect indic. and pluperfect subj. Its full conjugation is as follows:

49. ouïr	oyant	ouï	ois	ouïs
oirai	oyais	avoir ouï	ois	ouïsse
oirais	oie	etc. etc.		

10. The verb **faillir** *miss, fall short* is also very defective, being used at present only in the infinitive, future, and conditional, and in the compound tenses: thus,

50. faillir	[faillant]	failli	[faux]	[faillis]
faillirai	[faillais]	avoir failli		
faillirais	[faille]	etc. etc.		

a. Other forms of this verb are met with in older use, and sometimes agreeing in form with those of **falloir** (originally the same word: Lat. **fallere**). As meaning *fail (in business)*, it is sometimes conjugated like **finir**.

b. The perfect **j'ai failli** etc. is used with a following infinitive in the sense *come near, just escape:* thus, **j'ai failli tomber** *I came within an ace of falling.*

c. The compound **défaillir** *fail* is also used only in a part of its forms, and with somewhat varying conjugation.

11. The verb **vêtir** *clothe* differs from the preceding in having **u** as ending of its past participle. It is thus conjugated:

51. **vêtir**	**vêtant**	**vêtu**	**vêts**	**vêtis**
vêtirai	**vêtais**	**avoir vêtu**	**vêts**	**vêtisse**
vêtirais	**vête**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
vêts	**vêtons**		**vêtons**
vêts	**vêtez**	**vêts**	**vêtez**
vêt	**vêtent**		

a. But this verb is also sometimes conjugated like **finir**.

b. Like **vêtir** (Lat. **vestire**) are also conjugated its compounds:

dévêtir, *unclothe* **revêtir**, *reclothe, dress*

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

le cœur, *the heart*	**l'amitié** f., *the friendship*
la voiture, *the carriage*	**adieu**, *farewell, adieu*
le mari, *the husband*	**le beau-frère**, *the brother-in-law*

Exercise 39.

[1] Pourquoi sortiez-vous de bonne heure aujourd'hui? [2] Je suis sorti avec mon ami, qui partait pour l'Angleterre. [3] On m'avait dit qu'il ne partirait pas avant ce soir. [4] On a menti, monsieur; il est parti ce matin. [5] S'il n'était pas parti de si bonne heure, nous nous serions levés pour lui dire adieu; mais nous dormions encore. [6] Moi, je n'ai point dormi; je me sentais trop malheureux. [7] Ressentez-vous tant d'amitié pour lui? [8] Je ne mens pas; je l'aime de tout mon cœur. [9] Est-ce que les enfants sont partis? [10] Ils sortirent il y a deux heures. [11] Qu'est-ce qu'ils font? [12] Ils vont donner aux pauvres soldats malades les fleurs qu'ils ont cueillies. [13] Ils sont sortis ce matin, et ils ont cueilli les fleurs dans les champs. [14] De quoi se sont-ils servis pour aller aux champs? [15] Ils se sont servis de notre grande voi-

ture. [16] Qui est cette femme, qui est vêtue de noir? [17] C'est ma tante; depuis la mort de son enfant elle se vêt toujours ainsi. [18] Elle a failli perdre aussi son mari. [19] J'ai ouï dire que les soldats avaient fui devant l'ennemi. [20] On a menti; les soldats français ne fuient jamais. [21] Celui qui ment doit être puni. [22] Ne sortez pas, mon ami; il fait trop froid.

Theme 39.

[1] Let us set out; they were setting out; she would depart; shall you not set out? that he might depart; she has departed; you would have departed. [2] Is he not sleeping? she slept; if he had slept; sleep! that you may sleep; if we had not slept. [3] You clothe; they had not clothed; do I not clothe? that you might clothe; let us clothe. [4] She gathers flowers; we will gather flowers for her; she has gathered them for us; why have you not gathered any flowers? [5] Go out of this room; he will not go out of it; we have gone out of the town; he went out by the door; you will go out by the window. [6] Why does this woman always dress herself in black? [7] She dresses herself in black because she has lost her husband. [8] Let us gather some violets in order to give to her. [9] Where have you gathered these beautiful flowers? [10] We went out of the house and gathered them in the garden. [11] Did your cousins go away in the large carriage? [12] No, they made use of the small carriage. [13] Where have they gone? [14] They did not sleep at all here. [15] I go to sleep very early, when I am in (à) the country. [16] We shall sleep before going out. [17] Has the teacher gone away without saying farewell to us? [18] Although he has lied to us, we still feel friendship for him. [19] Why do these women dress themselves so badly? [20] They are very poor, and they use old dresses, which some one has given them. [21] Let us flee, while our enemies sleep.

LESSON XL.

OTHER IRREGULAR VERBS IN ir.

1. In this Lesson will be given the rest of the irregular verbs having the infinitive ending in ir.

2. The verb **courir** *run* is thus conjugated:

52. **courir**	**courant**	**couru**	**cours**	**courus**	
courrai	**courais**	**avoir couru**	**cours**	**courusse**	
courrais	**coure**	etc. etc.			

The pres. indic. and impv. are:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
cours	**courons**		**courons**
cours	**courez**	**cours**	**courez**
court	**courent**		

a. Note the double pronunciation of the **rr** in the (abbreviated) fut. and cond. of this verb (*73d*).

b. Like **courir** (Lat. **currere**) are conjugated its compounds:

accourir, *run up*	**encourir**, *incur*	**recourir**, *recur*
concourir, *concur*	**parcourir**, *traverse*	**secourir**, *succor*
discourir, *discourse*		

c. An old form of the infinitive, **courre**, is sometimes used as a hunting term.

3. Four verbs—namely, **offrir** *offer*, **souffrir** *suffer*, **ouvrir** *open*, and **couvrir** *cover*—have **ert** as ending of the past participle, and **e** of the present indicative: thus,

a. 53. **offrir**	**offrant**	**offert**	**offre**	**offris**	
offrirai	**offrais**	**avoir offert**	**offre**	**offrisse**	
offrirais	**offre**	etc. etc.			

The pres. indic. and impv. are:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
offre	**offrons**		**offrons**
offres	**offrez**	**offre**	**offrez**
offre	**offrent**		

b. Of the others, it will be enough to give the principal parts:

54.	**souffrir**	**souffrant**	**souffert**	**souffre**	**souffris**
55.	**ouvrir**	**ouvrant**	**ouvert**	**ouvre**	**ouvris**
56.	**couvrir**	**couvrant**	**couvert**	**couvre**	**couvris**

c. Of **offrir** (Lat. **offerre**) and **souffrir** (Lat. **sufferre**), there are no compounds; like **ouvrir** (Lat. **aperire**) and **couvrir** (Lat. **cooperire**) are conjugated their compounds:

rouvrir, *reopen*	**entr'ouvrir**, *half open*
découvrir, *discover*	**recouvrir**, *cover again*

4. Certain verbs in **ir** are used in only a few forms:

a. ***57.*** **Férir** *strike* (Lat. **ferire**) occurs only in the infinitive (and, very rarely, the past participle **féru**).

b. ***58.*** **Issir** *issue* (Lat. **exire**) has only the past participle **issu** (and, according to some, also the present participle **issant**).

c. **Gésir** *lie* (Lat. **jacere**) has only the following parts:

59.	**gésir**	**gisant**	——	**gis**	——
		gisais			

And of the pres. indic., only the 3d. sing. and the plural persons are in use: thus,

	gisons
	gisez
gît	**gisont**

especially in the phrase **ci gît** *here lies*, on a tombstone. As to the pronunciation of **s** in this verb, see **74***c*.

5. The remaining verbs in **ir** change the root-vowel in a part of their forms—namely, in those persons of the three present tenses which are accented on the root, being either monosyllables or followed only by a mute syllable.

6. The verbs **venir** *come* and **tenir** *hold* are conjugated precisely alike. They change their **e** to **ie** in the accented persons; and also in the future and conditional, which are irregularly formed.

a. Of **venir** the whole conjugation has been already given (XXXI. **10**); it takes (XXVIII. **6**) **être** as auxiliary. Only its principal parts will be repeated here:

60.	**venir**	**venant**	**venu**	**viens**	**vins**

b. The verb **tenir** is thus conjugated:

61. **tenir**	**tenant**	**tenu**	**tiens**	**tins**	
tiendrai	**tenais**	**avoir tenu**	**tiens**	**tinsse**	
tiendrais	**tienne**	etc. etc.			

The inflection of the present tenses is as follows:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
tiens	**tenons**		**tenons**	**tienne**	**tenions**
tiens	**tenez**	**tiens**	**tenez**	**tiennes**	**teniez**
tient	**tiennent**			**tienne**	**tiennent**

c. Like **venir** (Lat. **venire**) and **tenir** (Lat. **tenere**) are conjugated their numerous and much-used compounds:

advenir, *happen*	**parvenir,** *arrive*	**ressouvenir,** *remind again*
avenir, *happen*	**intervenir,** *intervene*	
circonvenir, *circumvent*	**prévenir,** *anticipate*	
contrevenir, *contravene*	**provenir,** *proceed*	
convenir, *agree*	**redevenir,** *become again*	**se souvenir,** *remember*
devenir, *become*	**revenir,** *return, come back*	**subvenir,** *assist*
disconvenir, *disagree*		**survenir,** *come in addition*
abstenir, *abstain*	**détenir,** *detain*	**obtenir,** *obtain*
appartenir, *belong*	**entretenir,** *entertain*	**retenir,** *retain*
contenir, *contain*	**maintenir,** *maintain*	**soutenir,** *sustain*

d. For the auxiliary used with **venir** and most of its compounds, see XXVIII. 6*a*.

7. The verb **mourir** *die* changes its **ou** to **eu** in the accented forms, and is also irregular in the future and conditional. It is conjugated thus:

62. **mourir**	**mourant**	**mort**	**meurs**	**mourus**
mourrai	**mourais**	**être mort**	**meurs**	**mourusse**
mourrais	**meure**	etc. etc.		

The inflection of the three present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
meurs	**mourons**		**mourons**	**meure**	**mourions**
meurs	**mourez**	**meurs**	**mourez**	**meures**	**mouriez**
meurt	**meurent**			**meure**	**meurent**

With **mourir** (Lat. **mori**) are formed no compounds.

a. For the pronunciation of **rr** in the fut. and cond., see *73d.*

8. Of the simple verb **quérir** *seek*, only the infinitive is in use; but its compounds are fully conjugated.

As example may be taken **acquérir** *acquire*. The change of the root-vowel **e** is to **ie** (as in **venir**); the future is made as in **mourir** and **courir**.

63.	**acquérir**	**acquérant**	**acquis**	**acquiers**	**acquis**
	acquerrai	**acquérais**	**avoir acquis**	**acquiers**	**acquisse**
	acquerrais	**acquière**	etc. etc.		

The inflection of the three present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
acquiers	**acquérons**		**acquérons**	**acquière**	**acquériens**
acquiers	**acquérez**	**acquiers**	**acquérez**	**acquières**	**acquériez**
acquiert	**acquièrent**			**acquière**	**acquièrent**

a. In the same manner are conjugated the other compounds of **-quérir** (Lat. **quærere**):

conquérir, *conquer* **s'enquérir**, *inquire* **reconquérir**, *reconquer*
requérir, *require*

9. The verb **bouillir** *boil* is conjugated nearly like **partir** (XXXIX. 2), being irregular only in the singular of the present indicative and imperative. Thus:

64.	**bouillir**	**bouillant**	**bouilli**	**bous**	**bouillis**
	bouillirai	**bouillais**	**avoir bouilli**	**bous**	**bouillisse**
	bouillirais	**bouille**	etc. etc.		

Inflection of the pres. indic. and impv.:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
bous	**bouillons**		**bouillons**
bous	**bouillez**	**bous**	**bouillez**
bout	**bouillent**		

a. Like **bouillir** (Lat. **bullire**) are conjugated its compounds:
ébouillir, *boil away* **rebouillir**, *boil again*

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

l'air m., *the air* **le pied**, *the foot*
le bas, *the stocking* **le soulier**, *the shoe*
la poule, *the fowl, hen* **la basse-cour**, *the poultry-yard*
froid, *cold* **chaud**, *warm*

Exercise 40.

[1] Est-ce que vous ne vous sentez pas bien, mon enfant? [2] J'ai mal à la tête, et je souffre beaucoup. [3] Il vous faut de l'air frais; j'ouvrirai la fenêtre. [4] Si vous ouvrez la fenêtre, j'aurai froid. [5] Alors sortez, et courez dans le jardin. [6] Nous avons beaucoup couru ce matin, et nous avons mal aux pieds. [7] Nous courrons ce soir, si vous voulez. [8] Que faites-vous là? [9] Je fais bouillir de l'eau; nous allons avoir du thé. [10] Il faut que l'eau bouille, pour faire de bon thé. [11] Lorsque j'aurai fait le thé, je vous en offrirai. [12] Pourquoi ne m'avez-vous pas offert aussi des œufs? [13] Les œufs ne m'appartiennent pas; donc je ne vous les offre pas. [14] Qu'est-ce que vous tenez dans la main? [15] Un livre qui appartient à mon frère; il a appartenu autrefois à Monsieur B. [16] Mon ami mourut l'année dernière. [17] Il était devenu très pauvre, et depuis qu'il est mort, on a dû vendre tout ce qui lui appartenait. [18] Mon père a acquis beaucoup de biens en travaillant; si vous travaillez, vous en acquerrez aussi. [19] Je n'ai pas ouvert ce livre-là. [20] Que quelqu'un ouvre la porte, ou je mourrai. [21] On vient d'ouvrir la porte de la basse-cour, et toutes les poules courent dans le jardin. [22] Si nous avions des bas et des souliers, nous ne souffririons pas du froid aux pieds.

Theme 40.

[1] They run; we were running; you ran; he will run; she would run; let us run; that I may run; that thou mightest run. [2] Offer! we shall offer it to him; they would have offered them to me; I offered her nothing; thou never offerest anything to anybody. [3] He holds; will you not hold? hold! they were holding; that she might hold; we should have held; do not hold it; that he may hold them. [4] Why do not these children run? [5] Their feet have become cold, and they cannot run any more. [6] If you run

very fast, your feet will become warm. [7] These poor children have been able to obtain neither shoes nor stockings. [8] Their father has died, and they have become very poor. [9] He died six months ago; and now their mother is dying. [10] We have offered her a fowl, but she suffers so much that she cannot eat. [11] They are suffering from headache. [12] If they opened the window, they would have more air, and they would suffer less. [13] Where does he acquire all his money? [14] He has sold all that which belonged to him, but he has not acquired much. [15] If he works well, he will acquire more. [16] This dress belongs to me, and I will offer it to her. [17] Let us offer to the children the old shoes which have belonged to us. [18] The water boils; make the tea. [19] Give me some boiling water, and I will make it. [20] If my uncle does not come back to-day, he will come back certainly to-morrow.

LESSON XLI.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN oir.

1. The verbs ending in oir are much less numerous than the irregular ones in ir and in re, but some of them are very common and important.

We may take up first among them a little group ending in the infinitive in **evoir**, which in many grammars are treated as a separate regular conjugation—called the third, the verbs in **re** being reckoned as the fourth.

2. The verb recevoir *receive* is thus conjugated:

65. recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
recevrai	recevais	avoir reçu	reçois	reçusse
recevrais	reçoive	etc. etc.		

The inflection of the present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
reçois	recevens		recevons	reçoive	recevions
reçois	receves	reçois	recevez	reçoives	receviez
reçoit	reçoivent			reçoive	reçoivent

a. Like **recevoir** are conjugated the other compounds of **-cevoir** (Lat. **-cipere**); namely,

concevoir, *conceive* **décevoir**, *deceive* **percevoir**, *receive*
apercevoir, *perceive*

3. In the same manner is conjugated also the verb **devoir** *owe*, which has been given in full above (XXVI. 12 etc.); its principal parts are:

66. **devoir** **devant** **dû** **dois** **dus**

a. Like **devoir** (Lat. **debere**) is conjugated its compound:

redevoir, *owe again*

4. The verb **voir** *see* is thus conjugated:

67. **voir** **voyant** **vu** **vois** **vis**
verrai **voyais** **avoir vu** **vois** **visse**
verrais **voie** etc. etc.

The present tenses are thus inflected:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.		Pres. Subj.	
vois	voyons		voyons	voie	voyions
vois	voyez	vois	voyez	voies	voyiez
voit	voient			voie	voient

a. Like **voir** (Lat. **videre**) are conjugated two of its compounds:

revoir, *see again* **entrevoir**, *see partly*

b. But two other compounds, **prévoir** *foresee* and **pourvoir** *provide*, make regular futures and conditionals, and the latter also has the preterit in **us** instead of **is**: thus,

68. **prévoir** **prévoyant** **prévu** **prévois** **prévis**
prévoirai **prévoyais** **avoir prévu** **prévois** **prévisse**
prévoirais **prévoie** etc. etc.

c. Of **pourvoir** it will be enough to give the principal parts:

69. **pourvoir** **pourvoyant** **pourvu** **pourvois** **pourvus**

d. Like **pourvoir** is conjugated its compound

dépourvoir, *deprive*

5. Of the verb **choir** *fall*, only the infinitive and the past participle **chu** are now in use.

But its compound **déchoir** *fall, decay* is still conjugated in full.

70. **déchoir**	[déchoyant]	déchu ·	déchois	déchus
décherrai	déchoyais	avoir déchu	déchois	déchusse
décherrais	déchoie	etc. etc.		

The pres. indic. and impv. are thus inflected:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	
déchois	déchoyons		déchoyons
déchois	déchoyez	déchois	déchoyez
déchoit	déchoient		

a. The pres. pple is not in use, and in its value as gerund after **en** (X. 3*c*, *d*) is found **déchéant.**

b. The other compound of **choir** (Lat. **cadere**), namely

échoir, *fall in*

is conjugated in the same way, but is used in only a few of its forms, chiefly the 3d persons singular: thus, pres. **échoit** (sometimes **échet**), pret. **échut**, gerund **échéant**, etc.

6. The verb **pleuvoir** *rain* is impersonal, or used only in the third persons singular (XXX. 1); it is thus conjugated:

71. **pleuvoir**	pleuvant	plu	pleut	plut
pleuvra	pleuvait	avoir plu	———	plût
pleuvrait	pleuve	etc. etc.		

a. Of **pleuvoir** (Lat. **pluere**) there are no compounds.

7. For **apparoir** and **comparoir**, see XXXVI. 5*d*.

VOCABULARY.

(Besides the verbs given in the Lesson.)

le projet, *the plan, project*	**le paquet**, *the package*
le besoin, *the need, requirement*	**la difficulté**, *the difficulty*
le pouvoir, *the power*	**peut-être**, *perhaps, maybe*

Exercise 41.

[1] J'ai reçu une lettre de mon ami. [2] Qu'est-ce qu'il vous écrit? [3] Il me dit qu'il me verra demain, s'il ne pleut pas. [4] Il pleuvra certainement, et je ne le reverrai jamais. [5] Il faut que vous le voyiez avant de partir. [6] Je ne conçois point pourquoi vous voulez partir. [7] Il a conçu un projet,

dont il n'aperçoit pas encore toutes les difficultés. [8] N'avez-vous pas reçu le petit paquet dont je vous ai parlé ? [9] Nous ne l'avions pas trouvé, mais nous le voyons maintenant. [10] Est-ce que vous êtes pourvu d'argent pour tous vos besoins ? [11] Oui, et nous en recevrons encore le mois prochain. [12] Avez-vous vu le roi depuis qu'il est déchu du pouvoir ? [13] Il partit pour l'Angleterre, et il n'a jamais revu la France. [14] Avez-vous vu les soldats qui partaient pour la guerre ? [15] Je ne les ai pas vus ; il pleuvait, et je n'ai pas pu sortir. [16] Nous les reverrons dans quelques jours. [17] Avez-vous reçu des lettres du général B. ? [18] Les lettres ne sont pas encore venues ; il faut qu'il les reçoive demain. [19] Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venu me voir hier ? [20] Parce qu'il a tant plu. [21] Dès que je vous verrai chez nous, je vous montrerai le cadeau que je viens de recevoir de lui.

Theme 41.

[1] They will receive ; let us receive ; he received ; she was receiving ; you receive ; that she might receive ; we have received them ; they had received it ; that I may have received her. [2] Do you see ? I have seen nothing ; he will see what I saw ; let us see ; did you not see him ? they will have seen us ; though he had not seen them, they saw him. [3] It rained ; it would have rained if it had not been too cold ; it has not rained to-day, but it will rain to-morrow ; if it rains to-day, it will not snow. [4] Have you seen the general to-day ? [5] No, but I saw him yesterday, and I shall perhaps see him to-morrow. [6] You will not see him again ; he has gone off to the war. [7] You have received a letter ; is it not so ? [8] Here is the letter which we have received this morning ; we shall receive a package this evening. [9] I shall receive money from my father next week. [10] He must receive many letters from us. [11] Do you not perceive the difficulties of the plan which you have con-

ceived? [13] I perceive all the difficulties, but I must provide for (à) the needs of my family. [13] Although I have seen my father, I have received no money from him. [14] Whom did you see in Paris? [15] I saw no one of my friends. [16] It rained so much that nobody came to see me. [17] Although it rained a good deal, I went to the shops, but I saw nothing there. [18] If it had not rained, I should have seen you there. [19] Does it not rain? [20] I do not think that it rains now; but it will perhaps rain this evening. [21] We could see nothing, for it was night.

LESSON XLII.

THE REMAINING IRREGULAR VERBS (IN oir AND er).

1. The remaining verbs in oir are more irregular in their conjugation, and for the most part show changes of radical vowel in the inflection of their present tenses.

2. Of the extremely common verb **vouloir** *wish, be willing, will*, the conjugation has already (XXIV. 6 etc.) been given in full. The principal parts are here repeated:

72.	**vouloir**	**voulant**	**voulu**	**veux**	**voulus**

a. Of **vouloir** (Lat. **velle**) there are no compounds.

3. The verb **valoir** *be worth, have the value of* is conjugated nearly like **vouloir**. Thus:

73.	**valoir**	**valant**	**valu**	**vaux**	**valus**
	vaudrai	**valais**	**avoir valu**	**vaux**	**valusse**
	vaudrais	**vaille**	etc. etc.		

The inflection of the present tenses is:

PRES. INDIC.		IMPV.		PRES. SUBJ.	
vaux	**valons**		**valons**	**vaille**	**valions**
vaux	**valez**	**vaux**	**valez**	**vailles**	**valiez**
vaut	**valent**			**vaille**	**vaillent**

a. Like **valoir** (Lat. **valere**) are conjugated its compounds:

équivaloir, *be equivalent* **prévaloir**, *prevail* **revaloir**, *pay back*

except that **prévaloir** makes the pres. subj. **prévale** etc.

b. Be worth more is **valoir mieux**; *be worth the trouble* or *be worth while* is **valoir la peine**.

4. The impersonal verb **falloir** *be necessary, must* has been conjugated in full above (XXX. 6 etc.). Its forms closely correspond with those of **valoir**. The principal parts may be repeated here:

74. **falloir** **fallant** **fallu** **faut** **fallut**

a. This verb and **faillir** (XXXIX. 9) are by origin one (Lat. **fallere**).

5. The extremely common verb **pouvoir** *be able, can* has been given in full above (XXV. 8 etc.). Its principal parts may be repeated here:

75. **pouvoir** **pouvant** **pu** **peux, puis** **pus**

6. The verb **mouvoir** *move* is thus conjugated:

76. **mouvoir**	**mouvant**	**mû**	**meus**	**mus**
mouvrai	**mouvais**	**avoir mû**	**meus**	**musse**
mouvrais	**meuve**	etc. etc.		

The circumflex is taken only by the singular masculine of the participle. The inflection of the present tenses is:

Pres. Indic.		Impv.	Pres. Subj.	
meus	**mouvons**	**mouvons**	**meuve**	**mouvions**
meus	**mouvez**	**meus** **mouvez**	**meuves**	**mouviez**
meut	**meuvent**		**meuve**	**meuvent**

a. Like **mouvoir** (Lat. **movere**) are conjugated its compounds:

émouvoir, *agitate, move* **promouvoir**, *promote*

but they take no circumflex in the participle: thus, **ému, promu**.

7. Of the common verb **savoir** *know, know how* the full conjugation has been already given (XXXIV. 6 etc.). The principal parts only are here repeated:

77. **savoir** **sachant** **su** **sais** **sus**

a. **Savoir** (Lat. **sapere**) has no compounds.

8. The verb **seoir** *sit* is defective as a simple verb. But its compound **asseoir**—chiefly used reflexively, **s'as-**

seoir *seat one's self, sit down*—is conjugated in full. Thus:

78. **asseoir**	**asseyant**	**assis**	**assieds**	**assis**	
assiérai	**asseyais**	**avoir assis**	**assieds**	**assisse**	
assiérais	**asseye**	etc. etc.			

The usual inflection of the present tenses is this:

Pres. Indic.			Impv.	Pres. Subj.	
assieds	**asseyons**		**asseyons**	**asseye**	**asseyons**
assieds	**asseyez**	**assieds**	**asseyez**	**asseyez**	**asseyez**
assied	**asseyent**			**asseye**	**asseyent**

a. The above are the more usual and accepted forms. But a variety of others are occasionally met with: thus, pres. indic. and impv. **assois, assoyons,** etc.; impf. **assoyais**; pres. subj. **assoie**; fut. **assoirai,** or **asseyerai.** The compound **rasseoir** *seat again* is conjugated like **asseoir.**

b. Of the simple verb **seoir** (Lat. **sedere**) in the sense of *sit* are used almost only the infinitive and the two participles (**seyant** and **sis**); but in the sense of *sit on, fit* (said of clothes and the like), the 3d persons **sied siéent, seyait seyaient, siéra siéront, siée siéent,** are also met with. The compound **messeoir** *fit badly, misfit* is used in the same forms, except the infinitive.

c. Another compound of **seoir**—namely **surseoir** *supersede*—lacks the pres. participle and the parts made from it, and has the pres. indic. **sursois** and the fut. **surseoirai.**

9. ***79.*** Of the old verb **souloir** *be accustomed* (Lat. **solere**) is left in use only the imperfect **soulait,** itself antiquated and rare.

10. ***80.*** Of the common auxiliary **avoir** *have* the complete conjugation was given above (X.).

a. The sole compound of **avoir** (Lat. **habere**), namely **ravoir** *have again*, is used only in the infinitive.

11. There are only two irregular verbs having the infinitive ending in **er.**

One of these, **envoyer** *send*, is irregular only in the future and conditional (which are like those from **voir**). It is thus conjugated:

81. **envoyer**	**envoyant**	**envoyé**	**envoie**	**envoyai**
enverrai	**envoyais**	**avoir envoyé**	**envoie**	**envoyasse**
enverrais	**envoie**	etc. etc.		

a. Like **envoyer** is conjugated its compound:

renvoyer, *send back*

12. The other irregular verb in er—namely, **aller** *go* —has been conjugated in full above (XXVII. 8 etc.). Its principal parts are repeated here:

82. **aller** **allant** **allé** **vais** **allai**

13. *83.* The common auxiliary **être** *be* is, like **aller**, made up of the forms of more than one root. Its complete conjugation was given above (XI.).

a. Of **être** (Lat. **esse, stare**) there is no compound.

VOCABULARY.

le tailleur, *the tailor*	**la couturière**, *the dressmaker*
le cordonnier, *the shoemaker*	**la botte**, *the boot*
le manteau, *the cloak*	**le récit**, *the tale, story*
le franc, *the franc*	**le feu**, *the fire*
près de, *near to, near*	**autour de**, *around, about*

EXERCISE 42.

[1] Qui vous a envoyé cet habit? [2] Mon tailleur me l'envoya il y a deux jours; mais il ne me sied pas bien. [3] Vous le lui renverrez, n'est-ce pas? [4] Il vaut mieux en acheter un autre. [5] Allons, nous irons chez la couturière acheter un manteau. [6] Celui que vous portiez l'hiver dernier vous seyait trop mal. [7] Je vous en donnerai un qui vous siéra mieux. [8] Asseyez-vous pendant que je le cherche. [9] Est-ce que celui-ci vous plaît? [10] Combien vaut-il? [11] Il vaut cent vingt-cinq francs; mais ce manteau-là vaudra deux cents francs. [12] Mon vieux manteau ne valait que quatre-vingts francs. [13] Pourquoi le cordonnier ne m'a-t-il pas envoyé mes bottes? [14] Le pauvre homme est malade; il les enverra dès qu'il se portera mieux. [15] Il m'a fait le récit de ses malheurs; et j'en suis tout ému. [16] Les malheurs des pauvres émeuvent tous les cœurs. [17] Assieds-toi, mon enfant. [18] J'ai très froid, madame; il ne faut pas que je m'asseye. [19] Tu t'assiéras près du feu, n'est-ce pas? [20] Pendant que tu y seras assis, nous enverrons chercher des gâteaux pour toi et ta petite sœur. [21] Cela ne vaut pas la peine, madame; nous n'avons pas faim.

Theme 42.

[1] They have sat down; sit down; do not sit down there; I will sit down; we sat down; that she may sit down; he sits down. [2] What is that worth? it is worth nothing; they were worth ten francs last month; they will be worth twelve francs to-morrow. [3] That is not worth the trouble. [4] Those books are worth more than these. [5] Will the dressmaker send you anything to-day? [6] She has already sent me a cloak. [7] Does it fit you? [8] No, the things that she sends me never fit me; I shall send it back to her to-morrow. [9] Are you going to take the coat which the tailor has sent you? [10] That one was worth a hundred francs, and I shall buy one which is worth (fut.) only seventy-five francs. [11] Who makes your boots? [12] An English shoemaker makes them, and they fit me always well. [13] I must send [and] buy some. [14] How much are they worth? [15] They are very dear; they are worth fifty francs. [16] It is not worth the trouble to (de) show them to me; I shall not buy them. [17] It will be better to buy our boots from this poor French shoemaker. [18] Why have you seated yourselves about the fire? and what has moved you so much? [19] Charles is telling (faire) the tale of the poor king. [20] Sit down also, and hear the tale. [21] This tale does not move me, and I do not wish to sit down. [22] The tale is finished; let us go away.

INDEX OF IRREGULAR VERBS, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

The references are to the number in the series of verbs, and to the page where the conjugation is explained.

	No.	p.		No.	p.		No.	p.
absoudre	36	178	comparoir	18	168	décrire	12	164
abstenir	61	187	complaire	24	172	décroire	26	172
abstraire	21	171	comprendre	30	176	décroître	19	168
accourir	52	185	compromettre	31	176	dédire	9	163
accroire	26	172	concevoir	65	191	déduire	1	162
accroître	19	168	conclure	29	173	défaillir	50	183
accueillir	46	182	concourir	52	185	défaire	23	171
acquérir	63	188	conduire	1	162	déjoindre	17	167
admettre	31	176	confire	7	163	démentir	41	180
advenir	60	187	conjoindre	17	167	démettre	31	176
aller	82	128	connaître	18	168	départir	38	180
aperceveir	65	191	conquérir	63	188	dépeindre	16	167
apparaître	18	168	consentir	40	180	déplaire	24	172
apparoir	18	168	construire	2	163	dépourvoir	69	191
appartenir	61	187	contenir	61	187	désapprendre	30	176
apprendre	30	176	contraindre	15	167	desservir	44	181
assaillir	45	181	contredire	9	163	déteindre	16	167
asseoir	78	196	contrefaire	23	171	détenir	61	187
astreindre	16	167	contrevenir	60	187	détruire	2	163
atteindre	16	167	convaincre		96	devenir	60	187
attraire	21	171	convenir	60	187	dévêtir	51	183
avenir	60	187	coudre	34	177	devoir	66	124
avoir	80	58	courir	52	185	dire	9	155
ténir		92	courre	52	185	disconvenir	60	187
boire	27	173	couvrir	56	186	discourir	52	185
bouillir	64	188	craindre	15	167	disjoindre	17	167
braire	22	171	croire	26	172	disparaître	18	168
bruire	48	182	croître	19	168	dissoudre	36	178
ceindre	16	167	cueillir	46	182	dormir	43	181
choir	70	191	cuire	3	163	distraire	21	171
circoncire	8	163	décevoir	65	191	duire	1	162
circonscrire	12	164	déchoir	70	192	ébouillir	64	188
circonvenir	60	187	déclore	28	173	échoir	70	192
clore	28	173	déconfire	7	163	éclore	28	173
commettre	31	176	découdre	34	177	éconduire	1	162
comparaître	18	168	découvrir	56	186	écrire	12	164

	No.	p.
élire	11	164
emboire	27	173
émettre	31	176
émoudre	35	177
émouvoir	76	195
empreindre	16	167
enceindre	16	167
enclore	28	173
encourir	52	185
endormir	43	181
enduire	1	162
enfreindre	16	167
enfuir	47	182
enjoindre	17	167
enquérir	63	188
ensuivre	33	177
entreprendre	30	176
entretenir	61	187
entrevoir	67	191
entr'ouvrir	55	186
envoyer	81	196
épreindre	16	167
éprendre	30	176
équivaloir	73	195
éteindre	16	167
être	83	62
étreindre	16	167
exclure	29	174
extraire	21	171
faillir	50	182
faire	23	150
falloir	74	141
feindre	16	167
férir	57	186
fleurir, florir		92
forclore	28	173
forfaire	23	171
frire	14	165
fuir	47	182
geindre	16	167
gésir	59	186
haïr		92
imboire	27	173
induire	1	162
inscrire	12	164
instruire	2	162
interdire	9	163
intervenir	60	187
introduire	1	162
issir	58	186
joindre	17	167
lire	11	164
luire	5	163
maintenir	61	187
malfaire	23	171
maudire	10	164
méconnaître	18	168
médire	9	163
méfaire	23	171
mentir	41	180
méprendre	30	176
messeoir	78	196
mettre	31	176
moudre	35	177
mourir	62	187
mouvoir	76	195
naître	20	169
nuire	4	163
obtenir	61	187
offrir	53	185
oindre	17	167
omettre	31	176
ouïr	49	182
ouvrir	55	186
paître	18	168
paraître	18	168
parcourir	52	185
parfaire	23	171
partir	38	180
parvenir	60	187
peindre	16	167
percevoir	65	191
permettre	31	176
plaindre	15	167
plaire	24	172
pleuvoir	71	192
poindre	17	167
poursuivre	33	177
pourvoir	69	191
pouvoir	75	119
prédire	9	163
prendre	30	175
prescrire	12	164
pressentir	40	180
prévaloir	73	195
prévenir	60	187
prévoir	68	191
produire	1	162
promettre	31	176
promouvoir	76	195
proscrire	12	164
provenir	60	187
quérir	63	188
rapprendre	30	176
rasseoir	78	196
ratteindre	16	167
ravoir	80	196
reboire	27	173
rebouillir	64	188
recevoir	65	190
reclure	29	174
reconduire	1	162
reconnaître	18	168
reconquérir	63	188
reconstruire	2	163
recoudre	34	177
recourir	52	185
recouvrir	56	186
récrire	12	164
recroître	19	168
recueillir	46	182
recuire	3	163
redevenir	60	187
redevoir	66	191
redire	9	163
redormir	43	181
réduire	1	162
réélire	11	164
refaire	23	171
rejoindre	17	167
relire	11	164
remettre	31	176
reluire	5	163
remoudre	35	177
rendormir	43	181
renaître	20	169
rentraire	21	171
renvoyer	81	196
repaître	18	168
repartir	38	180
repeindre	16	167
repentir	42	180
reprendre	30	176
requérir	63	188
résoudre	36	178
ressentir	40	180
ressortir	39	180
ressouvenir	60	187
restreindre	16	167
reteindre	16	167
retenir	61	187
retraire	21	171
revaloir	73	195

	No.	p.		No.	p.		No.	p.
revenir	60	187	souloir	79	196	survivre	32	176
revêtir	51	183	soumettre	31	176	taire	25	172
revivre	32	176	sourdre	37	178	teindre	16	167
revoir	67	191	sourire	13	165	tenir	61	187
rire	13	164	souscrire	12	164	traduire	1	162
rouvrir	55	186	soustraire	21	171	traire	21	171
saillir	45	181	soutenir	61	187	transcrire	12	164
satisfaire	23	171	souvenir	60	187	transmettre	31	176
savoir	77	159	subvenir	60	187	tressaillir	45	181
secourir	52	185	suffire	6	163	vaincre		96
séduire	1	162	suivre	33	177	valoir	73	194
sentir	40	180	surcroître	19	168	venir	60	145
seoir	78	196	surfaire	23	171	vêtir	51	183
servir	44	181	surprendre	30	176	vivre	32	176
sortir	39	180	surseoir	78	196	voir	67	191
souffrir	54	186	survenir	60	187	vouloir	72	114

ABBREVIATIONS OF AUTHORS' NAMES,

OFTEN USED IN THE ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Bal.	Balzac.	*de Mais.*	de Maistre.
Barth.	Barthélemy.	*de Maint.*	de Maintenon.
Beaum.	Beaumarchais.	*Mar.*	Marivaux.
Bon.	Bonnechose.	*Mig.*	Mignet.
Bour.	Bourrienne.	*Mol.*	Molière.
Chat.	Chateaubriand.	*Mont.*	Montesquieu.
Cherb.	Cherbuliez.	*de Mu.*	de Musset.
Corn.	Corneille.	*Pasc.*	Pascal.
Dau.	Daudet.	*Pon.*	Ponsard.
Dum.	Dumas.	*Rac.*	Racine.
Fén.	Fénelon.	*Rouss.*	Rousseau.
Lab.	Laboulaye.	*de Sév.*	de Sévigné.
La Br.	La Bruyère.	*Ste.-B.*	Sainte-Beuve.
La F.	La Fontaine.	*de Vi.*	de Vigny.
Lam.	Lamartine.	*Vol.*	Voltaire.
La R.	La Rochefoucauld.	*Voln*	Volney.

REFERENCES.

References to the Second Part are always preceded by the paragraph-sign: thus, § 176*a*, etc. Arabic numbers without paragraph-sign refer to the rules of pronunciation: thus, 18*a*, etc. References to the Lessons of the First Part are made by Roman numerals: thus, XXIV. 2*b*, etc.

SECOND PART.

I.—THE RELATION OF FRENCH TO LATIN.

1. The French is a language descended or derived from Latin.

a. By this is meant, that the old Latin has gradually changed into French, by processes of alteration similar to those which every living language (English as well as the rest) is undergoing at the present day. These processes consist in the loss of old words and forms, the acquisition of new words (in considerable part, by borrowing out of other languages) and new forms (this, however, on only a very small scale), and the alteration in respect to meaning and construction of what has been preserved from former times: and all this, accompanied by a great change in the pronounced form of the words preserved, partly by abbreviation, partly by turning certain sounds into certain other sounds. To explain all this in detail would be the duty of a comparative or historical grammar of French; only the principal points can be touched upon here.

b. What we call French is only one among many dialects found in France. But it is the principal dialect, the one taught in the schools, and universally used by educated people and in literature. In a similar way, what we call Latin was the cultivated or literary dialect of Rome and its provinces, and some of the peculiarities of the other dialects, imperfectly known to us, may be traced in French.

c. By race, the French people is mainly Celtic, related with the Welsh, the Bretons, the Irish, and the Scotch Highlanders. Their Latin language was a consequence of the conquest and government of the country by Rome, and the introduction of Roman institutions. Extremely little of Celtic language is left in French. The country was later conquered by Germanic tribes, especially the Franks, from whose name come the words *France*, *French*, etc.; and the French vocabulary contains a considerable number of words of German origin. But also, in later times, a great

many words have been borrowed into French, just as into English, out of the classical languages, especially the Latin. The words thus obtained from Latin are in general much less altered than those that form a part of the language by regular descent.

d. Other languages besides French are descended from Latin, in the same way as French, and are therefore related (as it is called) with the latter. The chief among them are the Italian, the Spanish and Portuguese, and the Wallachian. They form together the group of so-called Romanic languages.

e. The oldest specimens preserved to us of what has the right to be called French, as distinguished from Latin, date from the tenth century; a considerable French literature begins in the twelfth century. But the Old French of that period is very different from the present French, so different that a Frenchman has to study it hard in order to understand it (much as we have to study the Anglo-Saxon). Its condition is in many respects intermediate between those of Latin and of modern French, and it illustrates in a very instructive way the transition from the one to the other of these.

2. Of the changes of pronounced form by which Latin words have become French words, a very brief statement, touching only upon the most important points, is here given.

a. The accented syllable of the Latin word is the last fully pronounced syllable of the French word, being either actually the final syllable, or virtually so, as having after it only a syllable containing a mute **e**.

Examples are: F. **aimer**, L. **ama're**; **aimèrent, amave'runt**; **fûtes, fuis'tis**; **cruel, crude'lem**; **faire, fac'ere**; **frêle, frag'ilem**; **siècle, sec'ulum**; **fable, fab'ulam.**

b. If the accented syllable is preceded in Latin by two others, the latter of these, when a short vowel, is lost; when a long, is changed to **e**: thus, **bonté, bonita'tem**; **blâmer, blasphema're**; **poitrail, pectora'le**; **cercler, circula're**; but **ornement, ornamen'tum**; **vêtement, vestimen'tum.**

c. Of vowels not lost, those that in Latin were followed by more than one consonant oftenest remain unchanged in French: thus, **arbre, arborem**; **sept, septem**; **fort, fortem**; **juste, justum**: yet **i** in such a position becomes **e**, and **u** more usually **ou**: thus, **ferme, firmum**; **sourd, surdum.** In other situations, **a** vowel long in quantity is treated otherwise than a short: short **a, e, i, u** becoming respectively **ai, ie, oi, ou**, as **maigre, macerum**; **fier, ferum**; **poire, pirum**; **loup, lupum**; while long **a** and **e** become **e** and **oi**, as **nez, nasum**; **avoine, avenam**; and long **i** and **u** re-

tain the same form, as **ami, amicum**; **pur, purum**. But long and short o both become **eu**, as **neuf, nov'em**; **heure, ho'ram**. The diphthong **au** becomes **o**, as **or, aurum**; and æ and œ become **e** or **ie**, as **ciel, cælum**.

d. Of the Latin consonants, the liquids **m, n, l, r** have on the whole suffered least alteration: thus, **venir, venire**; **nous, nos**; **mer, mare**; **nom, nomen**; **lettre, literam**; **sel, sal**; **rare, rarum**; **ver, vermem**; their exchanges with one another are only exceptional. The mutes, **c** and **g**, and **t** and **d**, are often lost between vowels: thus, **faire, facere**; **froid, frigidum**; **chaine, catenam**; **cruel, crudelem**; and sometimes **b**: thus, **ayant, habentem**. In other situations (as sometimes in this), they remain; or the surd mute (**c, t, p**) is changed to the sonant (**g, d, b**); and **c** and **t** not seldom become sibilants; thus, **cher, carum**; **raison, rationem**. The vowels brought together by the loss of an intervening consonant then show another series of combinations and changes.

e. Groups of two or more consonants, either coming from the Latin, or arising by the loss of an intermediate vowel, are to a great extent simplified, by the loss or assimilation of a consonant: thus, **fait, factum**; **route, ruptam**; **dette, debitum**; **dame, dominam**. Those groups of which **r** or **l** is a member undergo least alteration. But before **l** or **r** is not seldom inserted a mute after a nasal: thus, **épingle, spinulam**; **humble, humilem**; **cendre, cinerem**; **chambre, cameram**. Very frequent, even in inflection, is the change of **l** before another consonant into **u**: thus, **autre, alterum**; **coupable, culpabilem**; **vaut, valet**; **chevaux** from **cheval**, **travaux** from **travail**, and so on. To initial **sc, st, sp** was prefixed an **e**: thus, **escalier, scalarium**; **estomac, stomachum**; **esprit, spiritum**; and then, in many such words, the **s** was later dropped, and the **e** marked with the acute accent: thus, **école** (earlier **escole**), **scholam**; **étude, studium**; **époux, sponsum**, and many others.

3. The differences in inflection between Latin and French consist chiefly in losses by the latter of forms possessed by the former.

They may be summarily stated as follows:

4. In declension, or inflection for case and number and gender, in nouns and adjectives and pronouns:

a. The distinctions of case have been entirely lost in modern French, except to a certain extent among pronouns.

For the distinction in pronouns of subject and object, or nominative and accusative, and, in the 3d personal pronoun, of direct

and indirect object, or accusative and dative, see the Lessons on the Pronouns (XXII.–XXVI.).

b. In Old French, there still remained a distinction of subject and object form, or nominative and accusative, in nouns. Thus, **murs** *wall* (L. **murus**) nom., **mur** (**murum**) accus. sing.; **mur** (**muri**) nom., **murs** (**muros**) accus. plur.; and so **pâtre** *shepherd* (L. **pas'tor**) nom., **pasteur** (**pasto'rem**) accus.; **sire** *sir* (L. **se'nior**) nom., **sieur** (**senio'rem**) accus. But this also died gradually out; and it was generally the accusative or objective form that remained in use, in either number: thus, **mur** sing., **murs** plur. That is to say, the French noun is, as a rule, the representative of the Latin accusative, and has its pronounced form determined by that of this case, and not by that of the Latin nominative.

c. In a few cases, however, the nominative form has been retained instead; examples are **fils, sœur, peintre, ancêtre, traître.** And sometimes (as in **pâtre pasteur, sire sieur,** mentioned above) both forms are left in French, as apparently independent words.

d. There remains in most French nouns and adjectives a distinction of the plural from the singular. And the **s** that marks the plural is, as seen above, that of the Latin accusative plural (that is, as found in words having a difference of nominative and accusative plural, as **rosæ rosas, muri muros**; **pastores** having both values).

e. The Latin triple distinction of gender, as masculine, feminine, and neuter, is represented in French by a double one only, since the differences of masculine and neuter forms have been effaced, and these two genders have been merged into one, which we call masculine. There are a number of exceptions to the identity of gender between a Latin noun and its French descendant; they are pointed out below (§ **12**). Those adjectives which in Latin had the same form in masculine and feminine, as **grandis,** have mostly come to have a distinction of gender—as **grand, grande**—made in them in modern French, by analogy with the others; in Old French this was wanting, and such combinations as **grand'mère, grand'messe, grand'route** (instead of **grande mère** etc.) are relics of the former state of things. Traces of old neuter forms (used adverbially) are to be seen in the adverbs **mieux** (**melius**), **pis** (**pejus**), **moins** (**minus**), as distinguished from the adjectives **meilleur** (**meliorem**), **pire** (**pejorem**), **moindre** (**minorem**).

f. The Latin comparison of adjectives is almost lost; the superlative being entirely gone, and of the comparative only a few examples being left, in adjectives (IX. **3**) and adverbs (XXXI. **8**).

5. The changes in the inflection of verbs, or in conjugation, are as follows:

a. The Latin passive is entirely lost, its place being filled with compound forms, or verb-phrases.

b. Of the tenses of the active, there are saved in French the present, imperfect, and perfect indicative, and the present and pluperfect subjunctive—the last, with the value of a past simply. Then there are supplied a new future and conditional, made by combining the infinitive with an auxiliary (see V. **5***c*, VI. **6***b*). And a whole series of compound tenses, or verb-phrases, made with an auxiliary, are added.

c. The endings of tense-inflection are much changed, although the distinctions of person and number are well preserved. Of the 1st singular, all signs of a final **m** are lost; but an **s** has in recent time (since the 14th century) got itself generally added, though even now sometimes omitted in poetry. The final **s** of the 2d singular is everywhere retained. The final **t** of the 3d singular is to a great extent lost, but reappears by analogy in case certain subject-pronouns follow, and is treated as if a euphonic insertion (I. **10***c*). The **mus** of the 1st plural is retained as **mes** in all preterits, and in the present **sommes** (**sumus**); elsewhere it is contracted to **ns** (for **ms**), and a constant **o** has come to be prefixed. The **tis** of the 2d plural is retained as **tes** in all preterits, and in the presents **êtes, faites, dites**; elsewhere the **t** is lost, and **ez** written, instead of **es**. The **unt** of the 3d plural has become in general **ent** (of which, however, the **n** is wholly lost in pronunciation); but it is **ont** instead in four present tenses, namely **sont, font, vont, ont** (and hence also in the futures, which contain **ont** as auxiliary: V. **5***c*).

d. The Latin infinitive active is saved as French infinitive; also one case of the gerund, in the so-called present participle as used with **en** (more properly called gerund: see X. **3***c*, *d*). The supines and the gerundives, or future passive participles, are gone. The present active and the past (passive) participles are retained; and the latter, with auxiliaries, makes a double series of verb-phrases, active and passive.

e. The four Latin conjugations are much made over. The French 1st conjugation, indeed, corresponds in the main to the Latin 1st, and has become still more the predominant one, including perhaps five sixths of all French verbs; it has drawn in many verbs from the Latin 2d and 3d conjugations, and contains the majority of borrowed verbs, and of new verbs, made from nouns and adjectives. The French 2d conjugation corresponds in a general way with the Latin 4th (**ir** = **ire**); but in its inflection it has become mixed with the Latin inceptive conjugation (see XIX. **1***a*); it too has drawn in verbs from the Latin 2d and 3d conjugations, and it contains a considerable number of borrowed and new verbs. The French 3d conjugation is made up of a few verbs from the Latin 3d, which agree in their inflection well

enough to be classed together. The rest are so discordant as to have to be left as irregular verbs.

6. Of new synthetic formations (that is, such as result in the combination into one word of two independent words, one of which acquires the value of a formative element), the French has not many to show. The principal ones among them are the new future and conditional, spoken of above, and a large class of adverbs from adjectives with **ment** (L. **mente**) added (see XXXI. 2*a*).

a. Many French words, however, exhibit a fusion of two or more Latin words into one; and some of the cases are very curious: e.g. **encore, hanc horam**; **devant, de ab ante**; **désormais, de ipsa hora magis**; **m3me, semet ipsissimum**: see the Vocabulary.

7. The changes in the value and construction of French words as compared with Latin are innumerable and infinitely various.

The lost inflection is in part replaced by fixed rules of position, in part by auxiliary words: thus, prepositions stand instead of cases, auxiliary verbs instead of tenses and modes, and adverbs instead of endings of comparison. Of parts of speech, or what are analogous with such, the French has added only the articles: the definite article altered from a demonstrative (**le, la, les** from **illum, illam, illos** and **illas**), and the indefinite from the numeral *one*—both as in other languages. Numerous additions, in part quite peculiar, have been made especially to the classes of prepositions and conjunctions.

8. The power of making compound words, possessed in a high degree by the Latin, has been almost entirely lost in French.

9. It was pointed out above (§ 1*a*) that many new words have been borrowed into French out of other languages: especially, in former times, from German; recently, from Latin and Greek; but also more or less from a great variety of different tongues.

In this way, there are in modern French many pairs of words coming from the same Latin word, one by ancient descent, and the other, much less altered, by recent borrowing: examples are **frêle** and **fragile** from **fragilem**; **blâmer** and **blasphémer** from **blasphemare**; **essaim** and **examen** from **examen**; **conter** and **computer** from **computare**, and so on. Many new derivatives, also, have been made from primitives of every kind and source.

10. Many of the items of correspondence and of difference here grouped together have been pointed out in detail in the Lessons of the First Part, and others will be pointed out in their order in the Second Part. And the general Vocabulary at the end of the volume gives the Latin and other sources from which the French words it contains are derived.

a. It must depend upon the class and the teacher what use is made of this chapter in the class-room. It does little good to call a class's attention to the details of comparison between French and Latin unless its members have already a fair knowledge of Latin; but the general facts of the relation between the two languages may in any case profitably be set before his pupils by the teacher. And a teacher well versed in the subject, with a class prepared for it, may well follow the comparison into much greater detail than is indicated here. The most convenient and accessible guide for the teacher in such a case is Brachet's little Historical Grammar and Etymological Dictionary of French.

II.—NOUNS.

A.—Gender of Nouns.

11. All nouns in French have a distinction of gender, a part of them being masculine and the rest feminine.

a. For the reduction of the three genders in Latin to the two in French, see above, § 4*e*.

12. For the most part, French gender corresponds with Latin: that is to say, a noun is feminine in French if its original in Latin was feminine; otherwise, it is masculine.

Hence, a rule of general use (if one knows Latin) is to call to mind the Latin gender, which is in many cases plainly shown by the ending of the word, in order to determine the French.

But there are a considerable number of exceptions: thus,

a. Abstract nouns in **eur** (Latin **-or** masc.) are feminine in French: thus, **la douleur, une erreur,** etc. Exceptions are **un honneur, le labeur, les pleurs.**

b. A number of nouns corresponding to Latin neuter plurals in **a** or **ia** are feminine in French: e.g. **la muraille** (L. **muralia**), **la merveille** (L. **mirabilia**), **une arme** (L. **arma**). Other cases are more irregular, and must be learned from the dictionary: examples are **la lèvre** (**labrum**), **la joie** (**gaudium**), **la réponse** (**responsum**), and other words from neuters in **um**; **la mer** (**mare** n.), etc.

c. Not a few words are masculine in French that were feminine in Latin: examples are **un épi** (**spicam**), **un ongle** (**ungulam**), **un art** (**artem** f.), **un arbre** (**arborem** f.), **le sort** (but also **la sorte**: **sortem** f.), **la dent** (**dentem** m.).

13. The gender of many nouns may be inferred from their endings.

a. It is not worth while to attempt to give rules for all endings, because of the small number of words belonging to some, and the numerous exceptions to others; only a few of the principal classes will be noted.

b. Masculine are most nouns ending in **age, ège** (or **égе**: **20***c*), **asme, isme, ime, iste, eu, au, oir**: examples are **le voyage, le privilège, l'enthousiasme, le paganisme, le crime, un artiste, le feu, le chapeau, le miroir**; also the great majority of those ending in a consonant (except **eur**).

c. Feminine are most nouns ending in **té** and **tié** (L. **-tatem**), in **tion** and **sion** (L. **-tionem** etc.), and in **ence, ense, ance** (L. **-ntiam**): examples are **la bonté, la pitié, une action, la passion, la prudence, la défense, la connaissance**; also, nearly all those ending in mute **e** preceded by another vowel or by a double consonant: e.g. **une epée, la vie, la vue, la plaie, la lieue, la chatte, la noisette, la faiblesse, la lionne, la feuille.**

14. The gender of many nouns may be inferred from their meaning: thus,

a. Masculine are the names of all male persons, and also of animals conspicuously male: e.g. **un homme, le roi, le maître, le bœuf.**

But a few abstracts, used concretely, are feminine even when they designate males: thus, **la caution** *bail*, **une connaissance** *acquaintance* (also **dupe, pratique, recrue, sentinelle, victime**); and the feminine name of a musical instrument sometimes designates its player, as **une clarinette** *a clarinettist.*

b. Masculine are the names of seasons, months, days. most

divisions of the day (not hours), and cardinal points: e.g. **un hiver, le février, le dimanche, le matin, le sud.**

c. Masculine are the names of trees and metals: e.g. **le pommier, le chêne, le fer, le plomb.**

d. Masculine are infinitives used as nouns, as **le rire,** *laughter;* also other parts of speech and phrases used as nouns, as **le non** *the no,* **un si** *an if,* **le qu'en dira-t-on** *the "what will people say about it"?* most names of letters (not of **f, h, l, m, n, r, s**); and adjectives taken as abstract nouns, as **le bon et le vrai** *the good and the true.*

e. Feminine are the names of female persons and of animals conspicuously female: e.g. **la femme, la jument, la vache.**

f. Feminine are most names of countries, islands, towns, and rivers, if they end in **e** mute: e.g. **la France, la Sardaigne, la vieille Rome, la Seine:** exceptions are **le Hanovre, le Mexique, le Bengale, le Hâvre, le Danube, le Rhône,** and a few others.

g. Feminine are most names of fruits and flowers: e.g. **la pomme, la cerise, la rose.**

15. Some nouns are either masculine or feminine, according to their different meanings.

a. The most important of these are as follows:

m.	f.
aide, *helper*	**aide,** *help*
aigle, *eagle*	**aigle,** *standard*
couple, *united pair*	**couple,** *pair* or *brace in general*
enseigne, *ensign (officer)*	**enseigne,** *sign, mark*
garde, *keeper, guard*	**garde,** *watch, guard*
guide, *guide*	**guide,** *leading-rein*
manœuvre, *workman*	**manœuvre,** *manœuvre*
manche, *handle*	**manche,** *sleeve*
mémoire, *memorial*	**mémoire,** *memory*
paillasse, *clown*	**paillasse,** *straw-bed*
pendule, *pendulum*	**pendule,** *hanging-clock*
poste, *post (military* etc.)	**poste,** *post-office*
vapeur, *steamer*	**vapeur,** *steam*
voile, *veil*	**voile,** *sail*

b. In this list are not included words that have accidentally the same form, though coming from different originals. Such are **livre** m. *book* (L. **liber**), **livre** f. *pound* (L. **libra**); **page** m. *page (in waiting)* (It. **paggio**), **page** f. *page (of a book)* (L. **pagina**); other examples are **aune, moule, mousse, poêle, somme, tour, vase.**

c. **Amour, délice, orgue** are masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural (**amour**, in poetry, sometimes in sing. also); also **Pâques** *Easter* (**Pâque** *passover* is fem. also in sing.).

d. **Gens** pl. *people, folks* (almost never used in sing.) is in general treated as a masculine; but an adjective preceding it has the feminine form; and also **tout** before such an adjective, provided the latter is distinctively feminine in form: thus, **les gens sensés**, but **les bonnes gens**; and **toutes les bonnes gens**, but **tous les braves gens**, like **tous les gens sensés**.

e. **Enfant** *child* is feminine in the singular if it means a girl: thus, **cette pauvre enfant**; and the same is true of **esclave** *slave*.

16. Some nouns, names of living creatures, have a special derivative form for the feminine: thus,

a. Many nouns in **eur**, coming directly from French verbs, have a feminine in **euse**: e.g. **danseur danseuse** *dancer*, **chasseur chasseuse** *hunter, huntress*. A few in **teur** have a feminine in **trice**: e.g. **acteur actrice, bienfaiteur bienfaitrice**; **impératrice** is feminine to **empereur**. But many—as **auteur, orateur, sculpteur**—are used in their masculine form for persons of both sexes.

b. Some nouns ending in **e** have a feminine in **esse**: e.g. **comte comtesse, maître maîtresse, âne ânesse**. More irregular cases are **abbé abbesse, dieu déesse, duc duchesse, pécheur pécheresse.**

c. Many nouns form a corresponding feminine in the manner of adjectives (VII.), by adding **e**, often along with various modification of a final consonant: e.g. **ami amie, cousin cousine, ours ourse, marquis marquise, lion lionne, chien chienne, chat chatte, époux épouse, veuf veuve, citoyen citoyenne, paysan paysanne.**

d. More irregular cases are **roi reine, héros héroïne, loup louve, mulet mule**, and a few others.

17. Many names of animals are masculine or feminine only, without regard to the natural sex of the animals: e.g. **un éléphant, le léopard, le cygne; la panthère, la souris, la mouche.** A few, ending in **e**, take either the masculine or feminine article, according as a male or female is intended: e.g. **un buffle une buffle.**

18. *a.* The gender of a compound noun is in general determined by that of the noun or the principal noun in the compound, to which the other element serves as modifier: e.g. **le chef-lieu, la fête-dieu, une mappe-monde, le beau-père, le chat-huant, une eau-forte, un arc-en-ciel, un avant-bras.**

b. Compound nouns made up of a verb and governed noun are

masculine: e.g. **un casse-cou, un essuie-mains, le prie-Dieu, le portefeuille.**

B.—Number of Nouns.

19. The general rules for forming the plural of a noun, and their principal exceptions, were given in the First Part (Lesson II.). Further matters requiring notice are the following:

20. Nouns ending in **ant** and **ent** usually dropped their final **t** in former times before the plural ending **s**, and this spelling is still met with in some authors: e.g. **enfans, conquérans, momens, sentimens. Gens** (sing. **gent** no longer in use) is always so spelt.

21. Nouns in **al** and **ail** that add **s** in the plural (instead of changing those endings to **aux**) are: **bal** *ball*, **cal** *callus*, **carnaval** *carnival*, **chacal** *jackal*, **pal** *stake*, **régal** *treat*, **détail** *detail*, **épouvantail** *scarecrow*, **éventail** *fan*, **gouvernail** *rudder*, **poitrail** *poitrel*, **portail** *portal*, **sérail** *seraglio*.

a. **Travail** forms **travails** when it means *reports* or certain machines; **ail** *garlic* forms **ails** or (less often) **aulx**. The collective **bétail** *cattle* has also the equivalent plural **bestiaux**.

22. Other cases of a double form of plural are:

a. **Ciel** has as plural **ciels** (instead of **cieux**, II. 5) when it means *awnings*, or *climates*, or the *skies of pictures*.

b. **Œil** has **œils** (instead of **yeux**, II. 5) in the compound **œils-de-bœuf** *bulls' eyes*.

c. **Aïeul** has **aïeuls** meaning *grandparents*, but **aïeux** meaning *ancestors* in general.

23. Some nouns—besides those ending in the singular in **s** or **x** or **z** (II. 2)—form no plural different from the singular: thus,

a. Some foreign words not wholly naturalized remain unchanged when used with a plural meaning: examples are **ave, credo, specimen, fac-simile, andante, crescendo**; while others of the same class make regular plurals, as **opéras, pensums, zéros**; and with regard to many there is a difference of usage.

b. Proper names are often used unchanged with plural meaning: as, **les deux Caton** *the two Catos*. They are always singular when, though preceded by the plurals **les** or **ces**, they signify but a single person (§ **42***e*): thus **les Molière et les Racine**. On

the other hand, they take the plural-sign when used in the sense of *people like so-and-so*, or *the works of so-and-so:* thus, **ils étaient les Cicérons de leur pays** *they were the Ciceros of their country*, **j'ai vu plusieurs Raphaels au musée** *I saw several Raphaels at the picture-gallery.*

c. Other parts of speech used as nouns, and the names of letters and figures, take no plural-sign: thus, **les mais et les si** *ifs and buts*, **écrivez trois a** *write three a's*, **ôtez les deux un** *cancel the two* 1*'s.*

d. Some words are naturally without a plural, as certain proper names and abstract words: thus, **Europe, modestie.** But many abstract nouns are used concretely, and form plurals: thus, **les vertus** *the virtues*, **ses bontés** *his kindnesses.*

24. Some nouns are used only in the plural.

The commonest of them are: **annales** *annals*, **ancêtres** *ancestors*, **débris** *ruins*, **environs** and **alentours** *environs*, **entrailles** *entrails*, **frais** and **dépens** *expense*, **funérailles** and **obsèques** *funeral*, **hardes** *clothes*, **mânes** *manes*, **mœurs** *manners, morals*, **mouchettes** *snuffers*, **pleurs** *tears*, **vivres** *victuals.*

25. Some nouns have a special meaning in the plural —usually, in addition to their regular plural meaning.

The commonest of these are: **ciseau** *chisel*, **ciseaux** *chisels* and also *scissors;* **fer** *iron*, **fers** *irons, fetters*, **gage** *pledge*, **gages** *pledges*, and also *wages;* and in like manner **lettres** *literature*, **lunettes** *pair of spectacles*, **lumières** *enlightenment*, **épingles** *pin-money*, **armes** *coat of arms*, and a few others.

26. In compound nouns, the principal word, if a noun or adjective, takes its plural form for the plural. Thus:

a. If the compound is made up of a noun and an adjective qualifying it, or another noun in apposition with it, both parts take the plural form: e.g. **beau-frère, beaux-frères** *brothers-in-law;* **chou-fleur, choux-fleurs** *cauliflowers;* **chef-lieu, chefs lieux** *chief towns.*

b. If the compound is made up of a noun and a qualifier of any other kind, the noun alone takes the plural form: e.g. **pots-au-feu** *broth-kettles*, **arcs-en-ciel** *rainbows*, **chefs-d'œuvre** *masterpieces*, **timbres-poste** *postage stamps*, **vice-rois** *viceroys.*

c. If the compound is made up of a verb and a following object-noun, the plural is regularly like the singular: e.g. **les coupe-gorge** *the cutthroats*, **les porte-drapeau** *the standard-bearers.* But those more familiarly used not seldom take the plural sign:

thus, **porte-manteaux** *valises*, **porte-crayons** *pencil-cases*, **garderobes** *wardrobes*.

Some of the compounds of this kind have the object-noun in the plural: e.g. **un tire-bottes** *a boot-jack*, **l'essuie-mains** *the towel*, **le cure-dents** *the toothpick;* these are of course without change in the plural.

d. A compound not containing a noun as principal word is not changed for the plural: thus, **les passe-partout** *the master keys*, **les forte-piano** *the pianofortes;* and so also such as **les tête-à-tête** *the private interviews*, **les pied-à-terre** *lodgings on the road.*

But a word that has lost by frequent and familiar use the sense of its character as a compound is liable to take the plural-sign irregularly.

C.—Case-relations of Nouns.

27. No French noun has any variation of form to express the varying relations of case; the simple noun stands as subject and as object, or as nominative and accusative or objective; the other case-relations are in general expressed by prepositions.

a. For the gradual loss in French of the Latin cases, see above, § 4*a*, *b*.

b. Of the prepositions, **de** *of* and **à** *to* are especially frequent, and form with a following noun combinations closely analogous with the cases of Latin, and of various other languages; so that, in some grammars, **de l'homme** *of the man*, for example, is called the "genitive case" of **homme**, and **à l'homme** *to the man* its "dative case"—this, however, is artificial and false. The uses of a noun with **de** and **à**, as with other prepositions, will be explained in this work under the various constructions.

28. But the simple noun has a number of independent constructions (analogous with those of the accusative in Latin). Thus:

a. It expresses place where or whither, but only rarely, in the adverbial expressions **quelque part** etc.: thus, **il est quelque part** *he is somewhere*, **je n'irai nulle part** *I shall go nowhere*, **vous le trouverez autre part** *you will find him elsewhere.*

b. It often expresses time when: thus, **il est venu ce matin** *he came this morning*, **il viendra le onze** *he will come (on) the eleventh*, **nous le voyons tous les jours** *we see him every day.*

But a preposition (**à, de, en, sur,** etc.) is often used with a noun in expressions of time.

c. It expresses very often duration of time, extent of space, measure of dimension, of weight, of price, and so on: thus, **il restera deux jours** *he will stay two days*, **ils travaillèrent toute la nuit** *they worked the whole night*, **allez trois milles** *go three miles*, **cela vaut dix francs** *that is worth ten francs.*

But dimension with an adjective is usually expressed by **de**: see § **61***c*.

d. A noun is not seldom used absolutely in French, along with an accompanying adjunct, which is oftenest a participle (compare § **195**): thus, **le dîner fini, il sortit** *the dinner done, he went out*, **parleriez-vous ainsi, le maître présent** (or **étant présent**) *would you speak thus, the master being present?* **il court, les mains dans les poches** *he runs along, his hands in his pockets*, **elle me répondit les larmes aux yeux** *she answered me with tears in her eyes.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—I. Noun used absolutely.

(§ 28.) [1] Et, s'il va quelque part, on le met à la porte. (*Pon.*) [2] Nulle part il n'y a plus de paroles et moins de faits. (*G. Sand.*) [3] Le 5 mai 1789 était le jour fixé pour l'ouverture des États Généraux. La veille, une cérémonie religieuse précéda leur installation. Le lendemain, la séance royale eut lieu dans la salle des menus. (*Mig.*) [4] Où courez-vous la nuit? (*Rac.*) [5] Je ne veux de trois mois rentrer dans la maison. (*Rac.*) [6] Il gagnait en un jour plus qu'un autre en six mois. (*Rac.*) [7] Ils attendirent encore quelque temps, les yeux[a] toujours cloués sur cette poterne. (*Dau.*) [8] Je continuai ma route l'espace de six milles. (*Voln.*) [9] Paris était resté vingt-et-un jours sans nouvelles de l'empereur et de la grande armée. (*Bon.*) [10] Elle vend ce secret mille louis à Fouché. (*Bour.*) [11] Le mérite vaut bien la naissance. (*Mar.*) [12] On résolut de périr les armes à la main. (*Vol.*) [13] Le coude appuyé sur la balustrade, le menton dans la main, le regard distrait, elle avait l'air d'une statue de Vénus, déguisée en[b] marquise. (*de Mais.*) [14] Je pouvais, suivant une douce habitude, rêver les yeux ouverts, en attendant le déjeuner. (*Lab.*) [15] Paris tombé, l'expérience a prouvé que la France tombe. (*Chat.*)

[a] § 28*d*. [b] § 207*e*.

29. A noun preceded by **de** *of* is used (much as in English) to limit another noun, in all the ordinary senses of a genitive or possessive case.

The more noteworthy of these uses are given in the following paragraphs.

30. A noun with **de** is used to express possession, appurtenance, connection, in the most general and varied way.

Thus, **la tête du lion** *the lion's head*, **la porte de la maison** *the door of the house*, **le fils du père** *the father's son*, **le père du fils** *the son's father*, **les œuvres de Racine** *Racine's works*.

a. **De** is sometimes used in French where the English prefers another preposition: e.g. **le chemin de Paris** *the road to Paris* (*Paris road*), **le voyage du Rhin** *the journey on the Rhine* (*Rhine journey*).

b. Sometimes, as in other languages, this expression assumes the value of a subjective or objective genitive: thus, **les conquêtes de Napoléon** *Napoleon's conquests*, **la conquête de ce royaume** *the conquest of this kingdom*, **la haine du tyran** *the tyrant's hatred* (*of some one*), **la haine de la tyrannie** *the hatred of tyranny* (*by some one*).

c. A noun with preceding **de** not seldom follows another noun in French as an adjectival adjunct to it where in English an adjective would be used or a compound formed: thus, **une ville de province** *a provincial city*, **le maître de chant** *the singing-master*, **son bras de héros** *his heroic arm* (i.e. arm like that of a hero).

31. A noun with **de** is used as a genitive of apposition or equivalence.

Thus: **le titre de président** *the title of president*, **le nom de Henri** *the name of Henry*, **le pays de France** *the country of France*, **la ville de Rouen** *the city of Rouen*, **le mot de gueux** *the word "beggar"*.

a. In familiar and low language are used (as also in English) inverted appositional genitive phrases like **un diable d'homme** *a demon of a man*, **ces fripons d'enfants** *these rogues of children*, **la drôle d'idée** *the oddity of an idea* (i.e. *the odd idea*).

32. A noun with **de** is used as a genitive of characteristic quality, or as the equivalent of a descriptive adjective.

Thus, **un homme de sagesse** *a man of wisdom* (i.e. *wise man*), **une femme d'une grande beauté** *a woman of great beauty*, **un temps de désordre et de trouble** *a time of disorder and trouble*, **il est d'un caractère très généreux** *he is of a very generous character.*

33. A noun with **de** is used to signify material.

Thus, **la table de bois** *the table of wood* (i.e. *wooden table*), **une cuiller d'argent** *a silver spoon.*

Owing to the deficiency of adjectives of material in French, this use is a common one. See Part First, V. **1.**

34. A noun with **de** is used partitively, or as a partitive genitive, signifying something of which a certain part or quantity is taken.

Thus, **un peu d'argent** *a little money*, **un morceau de pain** *a bit of bread*, **trois livres de thé** *three pounds of tea.*

a. Such a partitive genitive is used after adverbs as well as nouns of quantity: thus, **assez de pain** *enough bread*, **infiniment de courage** *an infinite amount of courage.* See Part First, V. **2–4.**

b. It is much used after superlatives, numerals, and other words implying selection: thus, **le meilleur des amis** *the best of friends*, **trois de ces messieurs** *three of these gentlemen*, **lequel de nous tous** *which of us all?*

c. By a grammatical confusion, we meet sometimes with expressions like **qui des deux est le plus grand, ou de César ou de Pompée**, or even **qui est le plus grand, de César ou de Pompée** *which is the greater, Cæsar or Pompey?* the alternatives, when specified, being treated as if in apposition not with the interrogative but with the added genitive phrase (whether expressed or understood).

d. A partitive genitive is sometimes used in French where the English has an appositive noun or adjective: thus, **cent soldats de prisonniers, cent de tués** *a hundred soldiers prisoners, a hundred slain*, **y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi** *is there any one bold enough?* **donnez-nous quelque chose de bon** *give us something good*, **rien d'étonnant** *nothing astonishing:* such instances as the last two are especially frequent.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—II. Noun with *de*, qualifying a noun.

(§ 30.) [1] Une demi-heure après, il traversait le jardin maraîcher du No. 12 de la rue de la Santé, et il sonnait à la porte de Madame Blouet. (*Theuriet.*) [2] Il nous racontait pour la centième fois cette sinistre retraite de Russie.

(*Dau.*) [3] Le bon abbé est étonné que les voyages d'Aix et de Marseille vous aient[a] jetés dans une si excessive dépense. (*de Sév.*) [4] Les vents, depuis[b] trois mois enchaînés sur nos têtes, d'Ilion trop longtemps vous ferment le chemin. (*Rac.*) [5] Lisez la vie de St. Louis ; vous verrez combien les grandeurs de ce monde sont au-dessous du désir du cœur humain. (*de Maint.*) [6] Les hommes, pressés par les besoins de la vie, et quelquefois par le désir du gain ou de la gloire, cultivent des talents profanes, ou s'engagent dans des professions équivoques. (*La Br.*) [7] Il sent peu à peu[c] s'amollir son cœur de fonctionnaire. (*Theuriet.*)

(§ 31.) [1] Je ne sais qui prononça d'abord le mot de mariage ; mais qu'importe[d] ? (*About.*) [2] Votre coquine de Toinette est devenue plus insolente que jamais. (*Mol.*) [3] C'était un grand diable de garçon, d'une quarantaine d'années. (*Coppée.*) [4] Votre belle âme de comtesse s'en scandalise ; mais tout le monde n'est pas comtesse.[e] (*Mar.*)

(§ 32.) [1] Il est permis aux gens de mauvaise humeur de[f] la trouver comme ils voudront.[g] (*Mar.*) [2] La femme était d'une jolie figure, mais d'une mauvaise santé. (*Berquin.*)

(§ 33.) [1] Le pot de fer proposa au pot de terre un voyage. (*La F.*) [2] Quelques chaises de paille, un bureau de noyer, formaient tout l'ameublement. (*Dum.*)

(§ 34.) [1] Il y a gagné beaucoup d'idées, et perdu considérablement de vigueur. (*About.*) [2] L'amour-propre est le plus grand de tous les flatteurs. (*La R.*) [3] Les dieux et les déesses d'Olympe avaient les yeux attachés sur l'île de Calypso, pour voir qui serait victorieux, ou de Minerve ou de l'Amour. (*Fén.*) [4] De ton cœur ou de toi, lequel est le poète ? C'est ton cœur. (*de Mu.*) [5] Qu'il achève, et dégage sa foi, et qu'il choisisse après de la mort ou de moi. (*Corn.*) [6] Il n'y a pas une seule plante de perdue de celles qui étaient connues de Circé. (*Fén.*) [7] La vie est trop courte ; je voudrais qu'on eût[h] cent ans d'assurés, et le reste dans l'incertitude. (*de Sév.*) [8] La perte des ennemis a été grande ; ils ont eu, de leur aveu, quatre mille hommes de tués. (*de Sév.*) [9] Il n'y a rien d'étroit, rien d'asservi, rien de limité, dans la religion. (*de Sév.*) [10] S'il y a quelque chose de bon et d'utile dans ce récit, profitez-en, jeunes gens. (*de Staël.*)

[a] § 134*b*. [b] § 211. [c] § 37*c*. [d] § 148*b*.
[e] § 50*b*. [f] § 173*b*. [g] § 123*a*. [h] § 134*a*.

35. A noun preceded by **de** (with or without the definite article), having the value of a partitive genitive, is much used in French where it is desired to express a certain part or number or quantity of what the noun signifies, or where in English we put or might put *some* or *any* before the noun.

This is called the PARTITIVE NOUN, or the noun used partitively. It may stand in any noun-construction—as subject, as object, as predicate, as governed by a preposition (except **de**), and so on.

Thus, **des soldats l'arrêtèrent** *some soldiers arrested him*, **il est des gens qui mentent** *there are people who lie*, **ils boivent du vin** *they drink wine*, **avec du secret et de l'adresse** *with secrecy and address*, **pour des raisons suffisantes** *for sufficient reasons*, **sujet à de graves erreurs** *liable to grave errors.*

a. The principal rules for this frequent and important usage were given in Part First, IV. **1–4.** For further rules as to the use or omission of the article, see § **39.**

b. After a negative verb, a noun not properly admitting partition is often put in the partitive form: thus, **il n'a pas de mère** *he has no mother*, **elle n'a d'autre désir que celui-ci** *she has no other wish than this.*

c. Nouns are often also used in a sense really partitive without **de**: thus, after **ni . . . ni**, and in an enumeration, the usual partitive expression is omitted (see Part First, IV. **4**); also after certain prepositions, especially **sans**: thus, **sans faute** *without fault;* also a plural noun in the predicate expressing condition, profession, and the like (compare § **50***b*): thus, **soyons amis** *let us be friends;* also as objects of verbs in many familiar phrases, as **avoir peur** *be afraid*, **chercher fortune** *seek one's fortune*, **donner courage** *give courage*, **entendre raison** *listen to reason*, **faire grand bruit** *make a great noise*, **perdre haleine** *lose breath*, **prendre conseil** *take counsel*, **rendre justice** *do justice*, **tenir compagnie** *keep company*, and so on.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—III. Partitive noun.

(§ 35.) [1] De puissants défenseurs prendront notre querelle. (*Rac.*) [2] Ce sont des héros qui fondent les empires, et des lâches qui les perdent. (*V. Hugo.*) [3] Polyeucte a du nom, et sort du sang des rois. (*Corn.*) [4] Ils disaient que ce

n'était point avec des garnisons que l'on prend des États, mais avec des armées. (*Vol.*) [5] Il la fit asseoir près de lui, la consolant par de douces paroles. (*Blanc.*) [6] Il n'est point de noblesse où manque la vertu. (*Crébillon.*) [7] Un homme libre, et qui n'a point de femme, peut s'élever au-dessus de sa fortune. (*La Br.*) [8] L'homme n'a point de port ; le temps n'a point de rive ; il coule, et nous passons. (*Lam.*) [9] Nous n'avons point de banqueroutiers, parce qu'il n'y a chez nous ni or ni argent. (*Vol.*) [10] Il tombe sur son lit sans chaleur et sans vie. (*Rac.*) [11] Je fais grâce à l'esprit en faveur des sentiments. (*de Sév.*) [12] Il faut tenir tête à trois feux. (*de Vi.*) [13] Je vous aimais trop pour vous rendre justice. (*Mar.*)

36. A noun preceded by **à** is often used to express that by which something is characterized, as a distinguishing feature or quality, a purpose, means, ingredient, and the like.

Thus, **l'homme au long nez** *the man with the long nose*, **Lydie au doux sourire** *Lydia of the sweet smile*, **des arbres à fruit** *fruit-trees*, **la boîte aux lettres** *the letter-box*, **la poudre au canon** *gunpowder*, **un bateau à vapeur** *a steamboat*, **du café au lait** *coffee with milk*.

As the examples show, such phrases often correspond to compound words in English.

37. Other special uses of **à** with nouns are :

a. After **mal** *ache* etc., with the part affected : thus, **mal à la tête** *headache*, **mal aux dents** *toothache*.

b. Between two numerals, to express approximate number : thus, **dix à douze** *ten or a dozen*.

c. Between two repetitions of the same noun, to signify succession : thus, **un à un** *one by one*, **goutte à goutte** *drop by drop*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—IV. Noun with **à**, qualifying a noun.

(§ 36.) [1] Le poudre à canon change le système de la guerre; la peinture à l'huile se développe, et couvre l'Europe des[a] chefs-d'œuvre de l'art. (*Guizot.*) [2] On parlait de Thèbes aux cent portes. (*Vol.*) [3] Cette ressemblance continuait

[a] § 162*c*.

encore, autant qu'un homme aux yeux noirs, à la chevelure épaisse et brune, peut ressembler à ce souverain aux yeux bleus, aux cheveux châtains. (*Bal.*) [4] Combien d'hommes à talent à qui il ne manque qu'un grand malheur pour devenir hommes[a] de génie ! (*Dum.*)

(§ 37.) [1] Il approcha une chaise de[b] la cheminée et s'assit. J'ai froid aux pieds, dit-il. (*V. Hugo.*) [2] Son père avait assez loyalement gagné six à huit mille livres de rente. (*Bal.*) [3] Vous voyez un homme de quarante-cinq à cinquante ans, endurci au travail manuel. (*About.*) [4] L'eau était bien bouillante, et je l'ai versée goutte à goutte. (*Coppée.*)

Theme 1.

CASE-RELATIONS OF NOUNS.

[1] Did you go nowhere yesterday? [2] I went to Paris last week, and stayed there three days, but I did not find my friend; he was elsewhere. [3] I shall go there Monday, May 15th; the ceremony will take place Tuesday, and we will return together the next day (morrow). [4] They had been several days without news of their son. [5] He will remain some time at Bordeaux; one cannot gain much in a few days. [6] These beautiful pictures are well worth a look. [7] I have just bought them for 10,000 francs. [8] Why do you look at this house with tears in your eyes? [9] Because it was my parents' house. [10] The winds and the rain have closed to us the road to Paris, and we shall lose the journey to Italy. [11] Have you read the history of the conquests of Napoleon? [12] He wanted to make also the conquest of England. [13] He was born in Corsica, and gained later the title of Emperor of France. [14] His name is admired and loved in all the country of France. [15] He was a man of much talent, but of little virtue. [16] The silver spoons are in an iron box on the wooden table. [17] If I had money enough, I should buy a little bread. [18] If I had an

[a] § 35c. [b] § 162f.

infinite amount of money, I should give him none of it. [19] Which poet is the greater, Victor Hugo or Lamartine? [20] Victor Hugo is the best of all the modern French poets. [21] Read me something beautiful. [22] There is nothing interesting in this book. [23] Good books are rare; but there are books that we love very much. [24] One does not make conquests by soft words, but by brave deeds. [25] Kings are not always heroes. [26] The child that has no mother is very unhappy. [27] This man has neither money, nor friends, nor talent. [28] He is without hope and without happiness. [29] If he will listen to reason, he will go to seek his fortune in America. [30] Who is this woman with blue eyes and brown hair? [31] I have seen her on the steamboat, but I do not know her. [32] There are six or eight steamboats on the river, but I see no sailboat there. [33] I have a pain in the eyes; I can see nothing. [34] I hope that you will be better little by little. [35] They walk two by two.

III.—ARTICLES.

38. The forms of the definite and indefinite articles, and the general rules as to their use, were given in Part First. Certain points require further or more detailed notice here.

A.—Definite Article.

39. The partitive noun, or noun used partitively with **de** (§ **35**), is usually accompanied by the definite article.

Thus, **du pain et de la viande** *bread and meat*, **des soldats** *soldiers*.

a. The common exceptions—that the article is omitted after a negative, also before an adjective, and both article and preposition after **ni . . . ni** and in a long enumeration—were given in Part First, IV. **3**, **4**.

b. The article is also omitted after an infinitive governed by **sans** *without*, as implying a sort of negation: thus, **sans avoir d'amis** *without having any friends:* compare § **210**.

c. After **que** of **ne . . . que**, meaning *only*, the article is re-

tained : thus, **il n'a pas de pain, il n'a que de la viande** *he has no bread, he has only meat.*

d. The article is also sometimes retained after a negative verb, when a certain affirmative sense is intended to be implied : thus, **n'avez-vous pas des amis** *have you not friends?* (i.e. *is it not true that you have friends?*), **je ne vous ferai pas des reproches frivoles** *it is not frivolous reproaches that I am going to make to you.*

e. The article is retained before an adjective, if this and the following noun form a sort of compound noun, or current phrase of simple meaning : thus, **des grands-pères** *grandfathers*, **du bon sens** *good sense*, **des jeunes gens** *young folks*, **des petits pains** *rolls.*

f. The article is used also with the partitive genitive after **bien** and **la plupart**: (see Part First, V. 4*b*).

40. The article is used in French, much more generally than in English, before a noun taken inclusively, or expressing the whole kind or class.

See Part First, IV. 5. Further examples are: **le chien est l'ennemi du chat, et le chat de la souris** *the dog is the cat's foe, and the cat the mouse's* (here the usage is the same in both languages : but), **le vinaigre est acide** *vinegar is sour*, **le bois léger a moins de valeur** *light wood is worth less*, **j'aime la salade** *I like salad*, **nous apprenons l'histoire** *we learn history.* The article thus used we have called the inclusive article (see Part First, IV. 5*a*).

a. By a like usage, the article generally stands before an abstract noun : thus, **la foi, la charité, et l'espérance** *faith, love, and hope*, **la modestie est une belle vertu** *modesty is a beautiful virtue*, **le temps du péril est aussi celui du courage** *the time of danger is also that of courage.* So also with an adjective used as an abstract noun : thus, **le culte du beau** *the worship of the beautiful*, **elle aime le vert** *she likes green.*

b. But the article is often omitted in proverbial and old-style expressions, as well as in various phrases.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—V. Partitive and Inclusive Article.

(§ 39.) [1] On a des bras, pas de travail; on a du cœur, pas d'ouvrage. (*V. Hugo.*) [2] Il y avait sur cette table, et à profusion, brosses, éponges, savons, vinaigres, pommades, etc., mais pas une goutte d'eau. (*Lab.*) [3] Je n'ai vraiment que des obligations au baron Taylor. (*Dum.*) [4] Madame, je n'ai point des sentiments si bas. (*Rac.*) [5] Vous savez bien

que nous ne sommes pas des hypocrites. (*G. Sand.*) Voulez-vous des petits pains? restez; j'en[a] ai d'excellents. (*Dum.*) [7] Il s'agit d'avoir[b] du bon sens, mais de l'avoir sans fadeur. (*Constitutionnel.*)

(§ 40.) [1] On éprouva tout-à-coup les horreurs de la famine. (*de Genlis.*) [2] C'est vrai; mais quand la colère me prend, ordinairement la mémoire me quitte. (*Mar.*) [3] Si on avait pu, on aurait mis la force entre les mains de la justice. (*Pas.*) [4] Jeune fillette a toujours soin de[c] plaire. (*Vol.*) [5] Ce que femme veut, Dieu le veut. (*Vol.*)

41. The article is generally used before the name of a country.

That is, when the name is subject or object of a verb, or governed by any other preposition than **en** and sometimes **de**. See Part First, VI. **2–4**. Further special rules are as follows:

a. If the name of a country is the same with that of a city contained in it, it is generally used without article; likewise an island of little extent: thus, **Naples, Bade** (there are a few exceptions, as **le Hanovre**); **Malte, Elbe** (but **la Sardaigne, la Sicile**).

b. The article is generally omitted after **venir de, partir de,** and the like: thus, **il vient d'Amérique** *he comes from America,* **sortir de France** *go out of France.*

c. The article is generally omitted after **de** when it makes a genitive of equivalence (§ **31**), also when it follows the name of a product, of a ruler or other official, the words *history, map, war,* etc., and in various other cases where the name of the country is used with the value of an adjective.

Thus, **le royaume de France** *the kingdom of France,* **du vin de Hongrie** *Hungarian wine,* **la reine d'Angleterre** *the queen of England,* **l'ambassadeur d'Autriche** *the Austrian ambassador,* **l'histoire de Russie** *the history of Russia,* **les villes d'Allemagne** *the German cities,* **la frontière d'Espagne** *the Spanish frontier.*

d. But, in both these classes of cases (*b* and *c*), the article is generally retained if the name of the country is masculine, or plural, or contains an adjective; also if it designates a remote and unfamiliar country: and there are special cases besides. Thus, **venir du Mexique** *come from Mexico,* **l'empire des Indes** *the empire of the Indies,* **l'empereur de la Chine** *the emperor of China,* **en toile du Bengale** *in Bengal cloth,* **l'histoire de la Grande Bretagne** *the history of Great Britain.*

[a] XXIII. 7*a*. [b] § 178*c*. [c] § 135*a*.

e. The article is always omitted after **en,** meaning both *in* and *to* or *into:* see Part First, VI. 3*a*. But **dans,** with the article, is used instead of **en,** if the name of the country is qualified by an adjective: thus, **dans la Suisse française** *in French Switzerland.*

42. With other proper names, French usage in regard to adding the article is in general the same as English.

But the following differences are to be noted:

a. The article is used before the name of a single mountain: thus, **le Vésuve** *Vesuvius,* **le Mont-Blanc** *Mont-Blanc.*

b. Proper names, whether of persons or places, take the article when qualified by an adjective: thus, **le pauvre Jean** *poor John,* **l'antique Rome** *ancient Rome.*

c. Some proper names are always joined with the article as an inseparable prefix to them; the most common are **le Havre, au Caire** *at Cairo,* **le Dante, le Titien, du Corrège** *of Correggio,* **le Poussin, le Camoëns.**

d. In familiar language, the article is often added to the names of noted persons, especially women: thus, **la Rachel, la Grisi;** in a still more colloquial and lower style, it is used yet more widely: thus, **sans attendre la Barbette** *without waiting for Barbette.*

e. The plural article is, in a higher narrative style, often put before the name of an individual, to mark him as a person of note and importance: thus, **les Bossuet et les Racine ont été la gloire de leur siècle** *such men as Bossuet and Racine were the glory of their century.*

f. Before the name of a saint's day, **la** stands by abbreviation for **la fête de** *the festival of:* thus, **la Saint-Jean** *St. John's day,* **la Saint-Martin** *Martinmas.*

La is used also before a word for the middle of a month: thus, **la mi-mai.**

g. **À la** is familiarly used by abbreviation for **à la mode de** *in the manner* or *after the fashion of:* thus, **une barbe à la François I.** *a beard in the style of Francis I.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—VI. Article with Proper Names.

(§ 41.) [1] Héritier, comme archiduc, de l'Allemagne orientale, souverain des Pays-Bas, de l'Espagne, de Naples, de la Sicile, comme successeur des ducs de Bourgogne, des rois de Castille et d'Aragon, ce possesseur de tant de territoires, qui régnait sur les principales îles de la Méditerranée, qui occupait par plusieurs points le littoral de l'Afrique, n'avait alors que dix-neuf ans. (*Mignet.*) [2] Vous arrivez de France? —Ce matin même. (*Scribe.*) [3] La loi des Visigoths inté-

resse plus l'histoire d'Espagne que l'histoire de France. (*Guizot.*) [4] Le roi des Indes lui offrait cent éléphants. (*Vol.*) [5] Portez ces porcelaines du Japon chez la maréchale. (*Scribe.*) [6] En Espagne, au milieu du règne de Philippe II., éclate la révolution des Provinces Unies. (*Guizot.*)

(§ 42.) [1] Le joyeux écolier n'avait jamais songé à ce qu'il y a de lave bouillante furieuse et profonde sous le front de neige de l'Etna. (*V. Hugo.*) [2] C'était un des rois qui ont, après un siège de dix ans, renversé la fameuse Troie. (*Fén.*) [3] À ton tour, reçois-moi comme le grand Byron. (*de Mu.*) [4] À sa suite parut le jeune Mazarin. (*de Vi.*) [5] Si l'âme de la Pompadour était revenue visiter son château, elle aurait trouvé peut-être que la vie qu'on y menait manquait de gaieté. (*Cherb.*) [6] Je ne viens pas pour te parler de la Madelon. (*G. Sand.*) [7] Les scrupules de justice ne sont pas, en général, ce qui arrête les hommes de la portée des Frédéric et des Napoléon. (*Ste.-B.*) [8] Tous les arts, à la vérité, n'ont point été poussés plus loin que sous les Médicis, sous les Auguste et les Alexandre. (*Vol.*) [9] Monsieur ne sait pas ce que c'est que[a] la Saint-Nicolas . . . à Paris on ne fête pas ce saint-là. (*Theuriet.*)

43. The article is used before a title.

Thus, **le docteur Akakia** *Dr. Akakia*, **le professeur B.** *Prof. B.*, **le général Bonaparte** *Gen. Bonaparte.* The titles of politeness, **monsieur** etc. (XIV. **4**), stand before this article: thus, **monsieur le docteur A.**

44. In describing the parts of a person or thing, the French ordinarily uses, after **avoir**, the article before the name of the part, and the descriptive adjective after the latter (really as objective predicate): thus, **elle a les yeux bleus** *she has blue eyes* (literally, *has her eyes blue*), **il a l'esprit cultivé** *he has a cultivated mind*, **le chêne a l'écorce rude** *the oak has rough bark.*

45. The article is often used in French where the English uses a possessive, when the connection points out the possessor with sufficient clearness.

Thus, **je tournai la tête** *I turned my head*, **fermez les yeux** *shut your eyes.*

46. The definite article is often used distributively, or where in English *each* or *every* might stand.

[a] § 98*a*.

Thus, **deux fois la semaine** *twice each week*, **trois francs la livre** *three francs a pound*, **le bateau part le lundi, et revient le jeudi** *the boat goes every Monday, and returns every Thursday.*

As the examples show, English often has the indefinite article in such a case.

47. There are many phrases where the article, omitted by abbreviation in English, is retained in French; as also where, retained in English, it is omitted by abbreviation in French.

Examples are: **à l'école** *at school*, **à l'église** *at church*, **l'an passé** *last year*, **avez-vous le temps de le faire** *have you time to do it?* **vers le soir** *toward evening;* and **à genoux** *on the knees*, **sous prétexte** *under the pretense*, **courir risque** *run the risk*, **mettre pied à terre** *set foot on the ground*, **monter à cheval** *get on a horse.*

a. In many other phrases, French and English agree in the omission of the article: for example, **après dîner** *after dinner*, **à table** *at table*, **perdre de vue** *lose from sight.*

b. Before a numeral following the noun it qualifies, the article is omitted more uniformly than in English: thus, *Charles First* or *Charles the First*, **Charles premier.**

c. For *the more* etc. the French says simply **plus** etc.: see XXXIV. **3.**

48. *a.* For **l'on** instead of **on** *one* see XXVII. **4***a.*

b. In like manner, **l'un** is sometimes used for **un**: thus, **le bec-croisé est l'un des oiseaux** *the crossbeak is one of the birds.* In the combinations of **un** and **autre,** the article is always used: see Part First, XXVII. **7.** For the article in expressions of time, see § 70*b.*

c. In intimate and familiar address, the article is sometimes put before a noun used vocatively: thus, **l'ami, crois-moi, rentre chez toi** *friend, take my advice and go home.*

d. Either **tous deux** or **tous les deux** *both* is said; so with **tous les trois** *all three.* Higher numbers generally take the article.

49. Though the article is generally required to be repeated before each separate word (Part First, I. **7**), it is occasionally understood, especially when a word is added by way of explanation: thus, **les députés ou représentants du peuple** *the deputies or popular representatives*, **les ministres et grands officiers** *the ministers and high officers.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—VII. Various Uses of the Article.

(§ 43.) [1] Monsieur l'abbé ! voulez-vous m'ouvrir ? je vais quérir madame la baronne. (*de Mu.*) [2] Dans[a] une heure, à cheval, et l'attaque des lignes ! Messieurs les maréchaux, suivez-moi. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 44.) [1] Les habitants de la Nouvelle-Hollande ont le nez gros, les lèvres grosses, et la bouche grande. (*Buffon.*) [2] Pauline a l'âme noble, et parle à[b] cœur ouvert. (*Corn.*) [3] Ce n'est rien, dit-il ; j'ai senti que j'avais encore la jambe sûre et la tête froide. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 45.) [1] Mais je veux t'épouser demain ; viens, Jeanne, donne-moi la main. (*de Vi.*) [2] Elle était vêtue de blanc, et avait un voile blanc sur la tête. (*Vol.*)

(§ 47.) [1] Tu te tais maintenant, et gardes le silence. (*Corn.*) [2] L'enfant met pied à terre, et puis le vieillard monte. (*La F.*) [3] Monsieur mon neveu, je vous souhaite le bonjour. (*de Mu.*) [4] Les loups firent la paix avec les brebis. (*La F.*) [5] Sachez que plus mes bontés sont grandes, plus vous serez puni si vous en[c] abusez. (*Mont.*) [6] Dieu ! que[d] plus on est grand, plus vos coups sont à craindre[e] ! (*Vol.*)

(§ 48.) [1] Après cela, l'un de ces messieurs de la Comédie française et l'une de ces dames récitaient une saynète. (*Cherb.*) [2] Adieu, donc, la fille ; bonjour, l'ami. (*Mar.*) [3] Vous pourriez encore danser, la belle ! (*V. Hugo.*) [4] Faites comme moi, l'ami, et vous deviendrez riche comme moi. (*Arnault.*) [5] Du moins devait-elle attendre, et les voir tous deux. (*Mar.*) [6] Ne les grondez point ou ne les corrigez point tous les deux en même temps. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 49.) [1] Les voies ferrées ou chemins de fer établissent la communication la plus rapide entre les grandes villes. (*Ploetz.*)

B.—Indefinite Article.

50. In certain cases, where the English usually has the indefinite article, it is omitted in French. Thus:

a. The article is often omitted before a word standing in apposition with another: thus, **Dieppe, ville de Normandie** *Dieppe, a city of Normandy*, **Charles, fils de M. Pierre** *Charles, a son* (or *the son*) *of Mr. Pierre*, **Zaïre, tragédie de Voltaire** *Zaïre, a tragedy of Voltaire.*

[a] § 207*c*. [b] § 161*d*. [c] § 162*f*. [d] § 199*a*. [e] § 174*c*.

b. It is usually omitted before a predicate noun designating, in a general way, nationality or condition in life or profession. Thus, **je suis Américain** *I am an American*, **son frère est soldat** *his brother is a soldier.* But there are frequent exceptions, especially when the predicate noun is qualified by an adjective etc., also after **c'est** etc.: thus, **il est un bon peintre** *he is a good painter*, **c'est un peintre** *it is a painter.*

c. It is omitted, by abbreviation, in titles of books, superscriptions, etc.: thus, **Grammaire anglaise** *an English Grammar.*

d. It is often omitted, especially in familiar speech, before **nombre, quantité,** and the like: thus, **je l'ai vue nombre de fois** *I have seen her plenty of times.*

e. It is omitted before **cent** and **mille** (see XV. **6**): thus, **mille jours, cent ans** *a thousand days, a hundred years;* also after **quel** used interjectionally (see XIII. 5*c*): thus, **quelle vue affreuse** *what a horrible sight!*

f. It is omitted after **jamais** before a subject-noun: thus, **jamais homme n'a été plus exalté** *never has a man been more extolled.*

g. It is omitted by abbreviation in certain phrases, where the English retains it: thus, **mettre fin** *put an end*, **faire présent** *make a present*, **prendre femme** *take a wife.* There are other phrases where the contrary is the case, or where the two languages agree.

h. As to English *a* used distributively, see above, § **46.**

i. Both articles are omitted in those combinations in which a noun after **de** is added to another noun with adjectival value: see § **30***c.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—VIII. Indefinite Article.

(§ 50.) [1] Sylla, homme emporté, mène violemment les Romains à la liberté; Auguste, rusé tyran, les conduit doucement à la servitude. (*Mont.*) [2] Anne, belle-sœur de Guillaume III., et fille de Jacques II., mariée à George, prince de Danemark, était l'héritière constitutionnelle de la couronne. (*Rémusat.*) [3] Un jeune homme nommé Croisiller, fils d'un orfèvre, revenait de Paris au[a] Havre. (*de Mu.*) [4] Ma fille est veuve d'un homme qui était fort considéré dans le monde. (*Mar.*) [5] Monsieur est Persan? c'est une chose extraordinaire! Comment peut-on être Persan? (*Mont.*) [6] Dans le langage des partis, on est courtisan quand on appuie la royauté, républicain quand on défend la liberté,

[a] § 42*c.*

traître ou déserteur quand, de l'opposition montant au pouvoir, on soutient le gouvernement qu'on a voulu. (*Rémusat.*) [7] Danton était un révolutionnaire gigantesque. (*Mignet.*) [8] Un vieux domestique, nommé Jean, qui servait sa famille depuis[a] nombre d'années, s'approcha de lui. (*de Mu.*) [9] Quel joli métier vous lui apprenez ! (*Cherb.*) [10] Quelles belles épaules blanches ! quel sourire d'éternelle jeunesse dans cette toile merveilleuse ! (*Gautier.*) [11] Jamais personne ne recouvra la santé avec moins de plaisir que moi. (*G. Sand.*) [12] Jamais homme n'a eu tant d'éclat ; jamais homme n'a eu plus d'ignominie. (*Pasc.*) [13] Saint-Nicholas est descendu dans ma cheminée . . . et il m'a fait cadeau d'une femme. (*Theuriet.*)

THEME 2.

ARTICLES.

[1] Have you neither brush nor comb ? [2] Brushes, combs, sponges, we have them all ; and we have soap also ; but we have no water. [3] Has not the servant brought you water ? [4] He has not brought me any hot[b] ; he has only brought me cold water. [5] I will not return without bringing you news of your friends. [6] Do not be anxious ; have you not health, fortune, and friends ? [7] Young folks have not always good sense. [8] I do not like history ; most[c] histories speak only of war and of famines. [9] Force is sometimes the friend of justice. [10] The love of the true and the beautiful is one of man's finest qualities. [11] This history of Germany is very tedious, but I will give you a history of the United Provinces, which will interest you very much. [12] I have travelled in Italy and in Italian Switzerland ; I come now from Germany, and I shall go next winter to China or Japan. [13] The queen of England is also the[d] queen of Great Britain and the[d] empress of India. [14] We sell French and Spanish wines, Italian silk, and English wool. [15] Which is the higher mountain, Ve-

[a] § 211. [b] XXIII. 7*a*. [c] V. 4*b*. [d] § 50*b*.

suvius or Etna? [16] Parnassus is the favorite mountain of the poets. [17] Little John is better; but his grandmother, poor old Mary, died this morning. [18] Great Demosthenes was the most eloquent orator of ancient Greece. [19] Rachel was the glory of the French theatre. [20] Shakspeare and Racine are in literature what Napoleon and Wellington are in war. [21] The English hardly know what St. Martin's day is. [22] He dresses in the style of Louis XV. [23] Gen. Thomas and Prof. St. Pierre are going to dine to-day with Dr. Lucas. [24] Madame Tellier has blue eyes and auburn hair. [25] His heart is young, though his hands are weak. [26] If you are afraid, shut your eyes and give me your hand; I will guide you. [27] She is cold, because she has nothing on her head. [28] He has lost his right arm. [29] I go to Paris three times a month; I start from here Tuesdays, and arrive there Fridays. [30] This cloth costs ten francs a yard. [31] I wish you good morning, sir; I am going to church. [32] I have not time to go there at present; I shall perhaps go toward evening. [33] The more he goes to school, the less he likes to study. [34] The greater one is, the more one runs the risk of falling. [35] I admire one of these ladies and love the other. [36] As for me, I admire them both; but I love neither. [37] Marcus Aurelius, an emperor of Rome, was a good philosopher also. [38] James II. of England, the son of Charles I. and the brother of Charles II., and the constitutional heir of the crown, was, during many years, a guest of Louis XIV., the king of France. [39] William, a grandson of our friend Mr. Morton, is a soldier, and he hopes to become a general. [40] His brother is a painter, I think. [41] How can he be a painter? he has made quantities of pictures, indeed, but they are all very bad. [42] What an ugly woman! [43] Never has an author been more admired than she.

15th Ex.

IV.—ADJECTIVES.

51. The French adjective corresponds in general to the Latin. Respecting its loss of the neuter gender, of the distinctions of case, and of formal comparison, see above, § 4*e*, *f*.

52. The adjective is in general varied for gender and number.

For the rules for forming the feminine and the plural of an adjective from its masculine singular (as being the simplest form), see Part First, VII.–IX. A few particulars remain to be added here.

53. Further specialties of formation of the feminine are as follows:

a. The following adjectives in **ot** add **e** without doubling the **t** (see VII. 4): **bigot, dévot, idiot, manchot, cagot, ragot.**

b. **Bel** is used instead of **beau** in a few titles: thus, **Philippe le Bel**; **vieux** is sometimes allowed to stand before a vowel: thus, **un vieux homme** (see VII. 7).

c. A few more adjectives that form their feminine irregularly (VII. 8) are: **tiers tierce** *third*, **roux rousse** *red*, **bénin bénigne** *benign*, **malin maligne** *malignant*, **coi coite** *quiet*, **hébreu hébraïque** *Hebrew*.

d. Masculines without corresponding feminine are **châtain** *chestnut-colored*, **fat** *foppish*, **dispos** *in lusty health*. Feminines without corresponding masculine are **crasse** *crass*, **océane** *oceanic*.

Certain other words of color, properly nouns, are sometimes used in the manner of adjectives, but without variation of form: such are **aurore, soufre, orange,** etc.

e. Certain classes of nouns make a feminine, after the manner of adjectives: see above, § 16. Of these, the nouns in **-eur -euse** are often used as adjectives: thus, **une langue trop flatteuse** *a too flattering tongue*.

54. As regards the formation of the plural:

a. **Feu** *late* (i.e. *deceased*), according to some authorities, has no plural; others allow one to say **les feus rois de Prusse et d'Angleterre** *the late kings of Prussia and England*, and the like: compare below, § 56*a*.

b. Plurals in **als** from adjectives in **al** (VIII. 1*b*, *c*) are little used; for some adjectives such plurals are altogether wanting, being avoided by using some other form of expression.

c. Adjectively used nouns of color form no plural (as no feminine: above, § **53***d*): thus, **des cheveux châtain-clair** *bright brown hair.*

55. As regards comparison:

a. Certain French adjectives represent Latin comparatives and superlatives, without having (any more than the corresponding words in English) a value as such. Examples are: **majeur** *major*, **antérieur** *anterior*, **extrême** *extreme*, **suprême** *supreme.* They are not themselves compared.

b. Absolute superlatives in **issime**, as **illustrissime** *most illustrious* and **révérendissime** *most reverend*, are late and learned fabrications.

56. As regards the agreement of an adjective with the noun which it qualifies:

a. Some adjectives are differently treated according to their position. **Demi** *half* before a noun is taken as forming a compound with it, and is invariable: thus, **une demi-livre** *a half-pound*, **une livre et demie** *a pound and a half.* **Nu** *bare* is similarly treated: thus, **marcher nu-tête**, or **marcher tête nue** *walk bare-headed;* but only **la nue vérité** *the naked truth.* The participles **excepté, supposé, y compris** are invariable, as if used prepositionally, before the noun: thus, **excepté les dames** *except the ladies*, but **les dames exceptées** *the ladies excepted.* In like manner **franc de port** *prepaid* (as letters etc.): thus, **je reçois franc de port les lettres que . . .** *I receive prepaid the letters which . . .*, but **envoyez-moi vos lettres franches de port** *send me your letters prepaid.* **Ci-inclus** and **ci-joint** *enclosed, annexed, herewith* are invariable at the beginning of a phrase, and also with a noun not accompanied by the article: thus, **ci-inclus vous recevez la copie** *you receive enclosed the copy*, but **vous trouverez ci-jointe la copie** *you will find annexed the copy.* **Feu** *late (deceased)* is variable only after an article or possessive: thus, **feu la reine**, but **la feue reine**, *the late queen;* **feu ma tante**, but **ma feue tante**, *my late aunt.*

b. An adjective following **avoir l'air** *have the aspect* or *look* is sometimes made to agree with **air** and sometimes with the subject of the verb: thus, **elle a l'air content** or **elle a l'air contente** *she looks satisfied* (the one meaning rather *she has a satisfied look*, the other *the look of being satisfied*).

c. **Soi-disant** *pretended* stands always before its noun, and is invariable: compare § **189***c*.

d. An adjective used as adverb (XXXI. **9**) is of course invariable. But in **frais cueilli** *fresh-picked* and **tout-puissant** *all-powerful*, the adverbial adjective is treated as an adjective if the qualified noun is feminine: thus, **des fleurs fraîches cueillies**

fresh-picked flowers, **une reine toute-puissante** *an all-powerful queen*. There are also combinations in which **nouveau, premier**, etc., are treated as adjectives while logically rather adverbs: thus, **les nouveaux mariés** *the newly-married couple* (*or couples*). For the treatment of **tout**, see § **116***c*.

57. As regards the form of an adjective qualifying more than one noun, the general rule is that it is made plural, and masculine if any one of the qualified nouns is masculine.

Thus, **le frère et la sœur furent contents** *the brother and sister were happy*, **une veste et un pantalon bleus** *a blue vest and trousers*, **du pain et du beurre excellents** *excellent bread and butter*, **la langue et la littérature latines** *the Latin language and literature*, **vos nom et prénoms** *your surname and given names*.

a. But the adjective is not seldom made to agree with the nearest noun alone, and especially if this is added rather as an equivalent or explanation of another noun, or if a gradation is implied. Thus, **avec une vitesse, une rapidité inconcevable** *with a swiftness, a rapidity inconceivable*, **l'estime et la confiance publique** *the public esteem and confidence*, **point de roman, point de comédie espagnole sans combats** *no Spanish romance or comedy without fights*.

b. If two nouns are connected by the disjunctive **ou** *or*, the adjective regularly and properly agrees only with the nearer one: thus, **l'estime ou la confiance publique** *the public esteem or confidence*. But it is not always so: for example, **voir son fils ou sa fille perdus pour la société** *to see one's son or daughter lost to society* (Vol.).

58. Two or more singular adjectives sometimes qualify a plural noun, as including a singular belonging to each of them: thus, **les langues française et anglaise** *the French and English languages*, **les dix-huitième et dix-neuvième siècles** *the 18th and 19th centuries*. But the same thing may be expressed by **la langue française et la langue anglaise** or **la langue française et l'anglaise**; and, in like manner, **le dix-huitième et le dix-neuvième siècle**, or **le dix-huitième siècle et le dix-neuvième**.

59. An adjective, of either gender or number, is often used as a noun.

Thus, **un riche** *a rich man*, **cette belle** *this beauty*, **le bon et le vrai** *the good and the true*, **les pauvres** *the poor*.

a. An adjective so used may be qualified by another adjective

or an adverb : thus, **le vrai beau** *the true beautiful*, **de pauvres aveugles** *poor blind men*, **les infiniment petits** *the infinitely small.*

60. The adjective in French, when used attributively, stands often before the noun that it qualifies, but still more often after it.

The principal rules respecting the place of the adjective were given in Part First (VIII. **2-5**) ; a few more particulars are added here.

a. The adjectives that most regularly and usually precede the noun (compare VIII. 3*a*) are :

bon, *good*	**grand**, *large*	**beau**, *handsome*
mauvais, *bad*	**gros**, *big*	**joli**, *pretty*
méchant, *wicked*	**petit**, *small*	**vilain**, *ugly*
meilleur, *better*	**moindre**, *less*	**jeune**, *young*
pire, *worse*	**vaste**, *vast*	**vieux**, *old*

Even these are sometimes made to follow the noun ; and there are others which nearly as regularly precede.

b. Since (VIII. **4, 5**) a physical meaning rather than an ideal or moral one, and a literal rather than a figurative one, tend to belong to an adjective following its noun, some adjectives have a well-marked difference of meaning, according as they precede or follow.

The most important of these are instanced as follows :

certain homme, *a certain man*	**une chose certaine**, *a sure thing*
un pauvre homme, *a poor fellow*	**un homme pauvre**, *a poor man*
un brave homme, *a fine fellow*	**un homme brave**, *a brave man*
un galant homme, *a gentleman*	**un homme galant**, *a man of gallantry*
diverses / **différentes** } **choses**, *sundry things*	**choses** { **diverses**, / **différentes**, } *different things*
mon cher ami, *my dear friend*	**un livre cher**, *a dear book*
sa propre main, *his own hand*	**sa main propre**, *his clean hand*
une sage femme, *a midwife*	**une femme sage**, *a wise woman*

Dernier following the noun means *last* in the sense of *next preceding the present time :* thus, **l'année dernière** *last year*, but **la dernière année de sa vie** *the last year of his life.*

c. With a proper name, the adjective usually precedes : thus, **le vertueux Aristide** *the virtuous Aristides*, **le vénérable Socrate** *the venerable Socrates.*

d. If two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, and are not coördinate, but each added one further qualifies the noun as already limited, each is put before or after the noun as it would be if used alone.

Thus: **un cheval noir** *a black horse*, **un petit cheval noir** *a little black horse*, **un pauvre petit cheval noir** *a poor little black horse;* and so **une grande tasse bleue cassée** *a large white cup broken.*

e. Two or more adjectives joined by conjunctions (expressed or understood) stand together either before or after the noun—usually after, if one of them is such as does not ordinarily precede the noun. Thus, **un grand et beau jardin** *a large and fine garden*, **une dame riche, jeune, et aimable** *a young, rich, and amiable lady*, **une femme petite, mais bien faite** *a short but well-formed woman.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—IX. Agreement and Place of Adjectives.

(§ 56.) [1] J'étais, depuis une demi-heure environ, plongé dans une sorte de torpeur. (*Feuillet.*) [2] Hier, à dix heures et demie, le roi déclara qu'il épousait la princesse de Pologne. (*Vol.*) [3] Les demi-savants s'en moquent[a], et triomphent à[b] montrer là-dessus sa folie. (*Pasc.*) [4] C'est l'abbé de Sainte-Geneviève, nu-pieds, précédé de cent cinquante religieux, nu-pieds aussi. (*de Sév.*) [5] Louis suivait, pieds nus, l'étendard de la sainte croix. (*Fléchier.*) [6] J'ai ouï dire à[c] feu ma sœur que sa fille et moi naquîmes[d] la même année. (*Mont.*) [7] Ah, monsieur! si feu mon pauvre père était encore vivant, c'était bien votre affaire. (*Rac.*) [8] La feue reine y allait souvent de Fontainebleau, et prenait grand soin du bien-être du couvent. (*St. Simon.*) [9] Alors ce sont les premiers arrivés qui font la loi dans votre auberge? (*Lücking.*) [10] Celui-ci avait déjà jeté un coup d'œil pénétrant sur le nouveau venu. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 57.) [1] Les arrivées et les départs principaux n'ont lieu que pendant la nuit. (*Constitutionnel.*) [2] La paix et le contentement étaient donc revenus à la Bessonière. (*G. Sand.*) [3] C'est d'eux[e] que nous sont venus cette tendresse, cette délicatesse de sentiment, cette religion, ce culte des femmes, qui

[a] XXIX. 7*b*. [b] § 182*a*. [c] § 158*b*.
[d] § 146. [e] i.e. des conteurs arabes.

ont eu une si grande influence sur notre chevalerie. (*de Sismondi.*) [4] Lisez les Commentaires de César ; c'est un style d'une netteté et d'une fermeté singulières. (*Ampère.*) [5] Sa vie n'a été qu'un travail et une occupation perpétuelle. (*Massillon.*) [6] Il semble avoir complètement oublié qu'il est fils[a], et qu'il s'agit de ses père et mère. (*Ste.-B.*)

(§ 58.) [1] Les armées française et italienne traversent le Tanaro. (*Vol.*) [2] La ville de Nuremberg, beaucoup plus populeuse aux douzième et treizième siècles qu'elle ne[b] l'est aujourd'hui, était le centre d'une grande industrie. (*R. d. deux Mondes.*)

(§ 59.) [1] L'aveugle ne répondit rien. (*G. Sand.*) [2] Dès qu'un grand est mort, on s'assemble dans une mosquée, et l'on fait son oraison funèbre. (*Mont.*) [3] Quelques habiles prononcent en faveur des anciens contre les modernes. (*La Br.*) [4] Ils sortent de l'art pour l'ennoblir, s'écartent des règles, si elles ne les conduisent pas au grand et au sublime. (*La Br.*) [5] Va trouver de ma part ce jeune ambitieux. (*Rac.*)

(§ 60.) [1] Penseur[c] profond sous le règne du pédantisme, auteur brillant et ingénieux dans une langue informe et grossière, Montaigne écrit avec le secours de sa raison et des anciens. Son ouvrage, longtemps unique, demeure toujours original; et la France, enrichie tout à coup de brillantes merveilles, ne sent pas refroidir son admiration pour ces antiques et naïves beautés. (*Villemain.*) [2] Au mois de mai dernier a disparu une figure unique[d] entre les femmes qui ont régné par leur beauté et par leur grâce. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] M. de Chateaubriand, dans les vingt dernières années, fut le grand centre de son monde. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] À quoi le bon oncle répond, en découpant son propre melon de sa propre main : Ce neveu-là aura l'héritage. (*Soulié.*) [5] Et ne craignez-vous point l'impatient Achille? (*Rac.*) [6] Le vénérable Malesherbes s'offrit à la Convention pour défendre Louis XVI. (*Mignet.*) [7] Laurence vit la vieille femme aveugle étendue sur son lit. (*G. Sand.*) [8] Ah, madame ! excusez mon aveugle douleur. (*Corn.*) [9] Je m'étais assis devant cette vieille petite table noire que vous connaissez. (*Sue.*) [10] Un long et sourd gémissement s'éleva autour de Whitehall. (*Guizot.*)

[a] § 50b. [b] § 170c.

[c] § 50a. [d] i.e. Mme. Réçamier.

61. Adjectives are often, as in English, modified or limited by nouns, joined to them by a preposition, especially **de** or **à**.

In the majority of cases, the French preposition corresponds to the one that is used in English: thus, **capable de trahison** *capable of treason*, **cher à ses amis** *dear to his friends*, **exempt d'orgueil** *exempt from pride*, **célèbre par** (or **pour**) **ses victoires** *celebrated by* (or *for*) *his victories*, **constant dans l'adversité** *constant in adversity*. But there are certain cases that require notice.

a. **De** is often used before a noun expressing source or cause or motive, after an adjective which in English requires a different preposition: thus, **content de lui** *satisfied with him*, **fâché de ma faute** *sorry for my fault*, **surpris de cette nouvelle** *surprised at this news*.

The commonest adjectives having this construction are **aise, amoureux, avide, confus, content** and **mécontent, désolé, épris, fâché** *sorry*, **fou, furieux, gros, inconsolable, indigné, inquiet, ivre, justiciable, offensé, ravi, rassasié, rempli, surpris, tributaire.**

b. **De** is sometimes used in the sense of *in respect of, in regard to*, where the English uses a different preposition: thus, **riche d'attraits** *rich in attractions*, **curieux de l'avenir** *curious about the future*.

The commonest adjectives thus used are **complice, curieux, dédaigneux, faible, reconnaissant, redevable, responsable, riche, soigneux, triste, victorieux.**

c. **De** is used before a numeral after an adjective signifying quantity or dimension; also after a comparative adjective, to signify measure of difference. Thus, **grand de six pieds** *six feet tall*, **large de deux pouces** *two inches wide*, **âgé de douze ans** *twelve years old*; **plus haut d'un pied** *higher by a foot*, **moins âgé de cinq ans** *less aged by five years*, **inférieur de vingt pieds** *twenty feet lower*.

d. More peculiar is the use of **de** after words of nearness: thus, **proche d'elle** *near to her*, **voisin du grand chemin** *bordering on the highway* (also **près de** *near to*: compare § **162***f*, end).

e. The preposition **à** *to, toward, at*, is sometimes used in the sense of *in respect to* where English prefers a different expression: thus, **adroit au jeu** *skilled in play*, **âpre au gain** *greedy for gain*, **il n'est bon à rien** *he is good for nothing*.

f. Some adjectives are followed by different prepositions, either without or with noticeable differences of meaning: thus, **cruel à** or **envers** *cruel to* or *toward*, **indulgent à** or **pour** or **envers** *in-*

dulgent to etc., **habile à** or **dans** or **en** *skilled in:* but **fâché contre** means *angry at*, and **fâché de** means *angry on account of* or *sorry for*.

g. Participles in general take the same prepositions after them as the verbs to which they belong.

h. For the use of **de** or **à** before an infinitive after an adjective, see § **184**. For the use of **de** or **par** with a passive verb-phrase, see XXVIII. **3**.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—X. Noun-Adjuncts of Adjectives.

(§ 61.) [1] Savez-vous, après tout, de quoi je suis capable? (*Mol.*) [2] Oswald était mécontent de lui-même. (*de Staël.*) [3] À tort ou à raison, le monde s'imagina que Marchal était plus amoureux du cadre que du tableau. (*About.*) [4] Je n'en suis pas surprise; son caractère était si différent du vôtre. (*Mar.*) [5] Il est très adroit à tous les exercices; nul ne tire mieux l'arc que lui. (*Gautier.*) [6] Il y en a qui sont braves à coups d'épée, et qui craignent les coups de mousquet. (*La R.*) [7] Elle fut sublime de soins et d'attentions pour son vieux père, dont les facultés commençaient à baisser. (*Bal.*) [8] Fatigué d'écrire, ennuyé de moi, dégoûté des autres, abîmé de dettes, et léger d'argent, . . . j'ai quitté Madrid. (*Beaum.*) [9] En 1783 vivait dans le Calvados une jeune fille, âgée de vingt-cinq ans, réunissant à une grande beauté un caractère ferme et indépendant. (*Thiers.*) [10] Quoique voisin d'une ville populeuse, ce lieu présente un aspect mélancolique. (*Töpfer.*) [11] Un peuple si juste devait être chéri des dieux. (*Mont.*)

THEME 3.

ADJECTIVES.

[1] We went there at half past four, and we were there about half an hour. [2] A hundred monks, bare-footed, preceded the coffin of the late princess, and all the court, except the ladies, followed it, with bare heads. [3] Do you receive your newspapers prepaid? [4] I receive them every day, and I send you one of them herewith. [5] This lady looks very happy. [6] It is because the count marries her to-day at half past ten. [7] To-morrow all their friends will come to see the newly-married [couple]; there will be no place for the last comers. [8] She is very well acquainted

with the French language and literature. [9] The first and second emperors of France were the two Napoleons. [10] He passed the first and last years of his life in London. [11] They found the door and window shut. [12] Montaigne, the greatest thinker of his time, enriched the young and unformed literature of France with his profound and brilliant essays. [13] The illustrious Chateaubriand was a much-esteemed author, but during the past[a] twenty years France has felt[b] her admiration for his works grow cold. [14] This old black table is not very neat, and I will hold the melon in my own hands. [15] The poor sick child was stretched upon her little old hard bed. [16] If I thought you capable of that, I should be much dissatisfied with you. [17] Were you angry at the news which I brought? [18] No, but I was surprised at it. [19] I imagined that our friend was inconsolable for the loss of his wife, but they say that he is already in love with this young and handsome girl. [20] They say also that she is rich in charms and attractions. [21] This young man, seventeen years old, is six feet and two inches tall; he is taller by seven inches than his brother, who is three years older. [22] He is skilled in all games.

V.—NUMERALS.

62. The numerals, both cardinal and ordinal, along with the principal rules for their use, were given in the First Part (Lessons XV.–XVII.). A few further particulars are added here.

63. **Mille** is used instead of **mil** even in dates, when not followed by another number, and also usually when the date is before Christ.

Thus, **en mille** *in (the year) a thousand*, **en l'an deux mille** *in the year two thousand.*

a. In giving the year, one uses oftenest **en** simply, but also **en l'an**, or **l'an** alone (for numbers under 100).

[a] § 211. [b] § 118*d*.

64. **Cent** and **quatre-vingt** are used without **s** in dating, and also when following the noun in an ordinal sense.

Thus, **en mil huit cent** *in (the year)* 1800, **tome quatre-vingt, page deux cent** *volume* 80, *page* 200.

65. The indefinite article **un** is the numeral **un** with weakened meaning; and sometimes it may admit of question whether the word is to be called numeral or article.

66. Old ordinals, now hardly in use as such, or used only in special phrases, are **prime** *first*, **tiers** (**tierce** f.) *third*, **quart** (**quarte** f.) *fourth*, **quint** *fifth*. The last three are used also as fractionals (see XVI. 4*b*, *c*). **Quint** still appears in one or two names of sovereigns: **Charles-Quint, Sixte-Quint.**

67. Collectives are formed from cardinal numerals by the ending **aine**; they mean *about the number of*.

Thus, **une douzaine** *a dozen, about* 12, **une vingtaine** *a score or so*, **une soixantaine** *some threescore.*

a. The only ones in ordinary use are **huitaine, dizaine, douzaine, quinzaine, vingtaine, trentaine, quarantaine, cinquantaine, soixantaine, centaine.** Instead of **une centaine** is said **un cent**, especially of articles sold by the hundred: thus, **un cent de clous** *a hundred nails.*

b. **Un millier** *a thousand or so* is a like collective from **mille.**

68. Of special multiplicatives are in use only the following:

simple, *simple*	**quadruple**, *quadruple*	**septuple**, *seven-fold*
double, *double*	**quintuple**, *five-fold*	**octuple**, *eight fold*
triple, *triple*	**sextuple**, *six-fold*	**décuple**, *ten-fold*
		centuple, *hundred fold*

a. For the other numbers, one says **neuf fois** *nine times*, or **neuf fois autant** *nine times as much*, or **neuf fois plus** *nine times more*; and so **onze fois** *eleven times*, and so on.

69. *a.* For the numeral adverbs *once, twice, thrice*, and so on, the French uses **fois** f. with the numeral prefixed.

Thus, **une fois, deux fois, trois fois, quatre fois** (*four times*), and so on. But **bis** is also used in certain special connections for *twice.*

b. Numeral adverbs are also made, as in English, from the ordinals, in the same manner as from other adjectives (XXXI.): thus, **premièrement** *firstly*, **secondement** or **deuxièmement** *secondly*, **troisièmement** *thirdly*, and so on.

70. The following special uses are to be noted:

a. After **plus** *more* or **moins** *less*, the English *than* before a numeral is expressed by **de**: thus, **plus de dix minutes** *more than ten minutes*, **moins de cent ans** *less than a hundred years.*

b. The article is not seldom used after **vers** *toward* and **sur** *about* in expressions of time: thus, **vers** or **sur les six heures** *about* 6 *o'clock;* and then, by analogy, even in **vers les une heure** *about* 1 *o'clock.*

c. Such expressions as **lui cinquième**, literally *himself the fifth*, are sometimes used for *he and four others*, and the like.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XI. Numerals.

(§ 66.) [1] Charles-Quint! dans ces temps d'opprobre et de terreur, que fais-tu dans ta tombe? (*V. Hugo.*)

(§ 67.) [1] Il vit devant lui une jeune fille d'une vingtaine d'années, qui se tenait sur le seuil. (*Theuriet.*) [2] L'album contenait des portraits, parmi lesquels se trouvaient une trentaine d'amis intimes. (*Bal.*) [3] Il se retirait toujours le visage droit aux ennemis, et l'épée au poing, leur donnant plus de crainte qu'un cent d'autres. (*Michelet.*)

(§ 69.) [1] Le timbre sonore lentement frémit douze fois . . . et l'année expire à sa voix. (*Tastu.*) [2] J'ai vu deux ou trois fois ici M. d'Autun. (*de Sév.*)

(§ 70.) [1] Votre majesté aura encore plus d'une heure pour s'y reposer. (*Guizot.*) [2] Les scélérats! ils m'ont attaché les mains, comme vous voyez; ils étaient plus de vingt. (*de Vi.*) [3] C'était sur les cinq heures de l'après-midi, par le plus beau temps du monde. (*G. Sand.*) [4] Tu partiras vers les deux heures après dîner; tu seras là-bas à la nuit. (*G. Sand.*) [5] Il est parti lui douzième; tout le reste courra après. (*de Sév.*)

THEME 4.

NUMERALS.

[1] Charles the Fifth died in the year 1558. [2] He had abdicated sovereign power in 1555, but he lived, in the cloister to which he had retired, more than three years longer. [3] Have you begun the second volume of the novel you were

reading yesterday? [4] It has three volumes, sir; I have just finished the second, and I am going to begin the third this evening. [5] I left at Paris some hundred friends, among whom there were not more than ten or so intimate ones. [6] He would not have retired before a hundred enemies. [7] He was in the army more than twenty years; he has made a dozen campaigns, and has been wounded five or six times. [8] I have seen him only once; it was toward eleven o'clock in the evening. [9] He came in, he and nine others, but he stayed less than an hour.

VI.—PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

71. In the First Part, the substantive forms and the adjective forms of the various classes of pronouns, with their uses, were explained separately; here the two kinds will be treated together in each class.

A.—Personal Pronouns.

72. The forms of the personal pronouns, and their principal uses, were explained in the First Part (Lessons XXII. and XXIII.). Further rules are added here.

73. Both the subject-pronoun and the object-pronoun are ordinarily repeated with each verb to which they belong in sense.

Thus, **nous allons et nous venons** *we go and come*, **je le vois et je l'entends** *I see and hear it.*

a. But exceptions are not infrequent: the rule applies more strictly to object- than to subject-pronouns, to pronouns of the first and second than to those of the third person, and with simple than with compound tenses of the verb. The repetition is necessary if the object-pronouns are in different constructions: thus, **je l'ai vu et je lui ai parlé** *I have seen and spoken to him.*

74. If a subject-pronoun is to be made emphatic, it is usually repeated, in its disjunctive form, either before the verb or, sometimes, after it.

Thus, **moi, je l'ai dit** or **je l'ai dit, moi** *I (myself) have said it.*

a. Then the proper subject is sometimes omitted, and the emphatic disjunctive is left alone as subject: thus, **lui n'a eu qu'un ami** *he* (emphatic) *had only one friend.*

75. In like manner, an object-pronoun is repeated, in combination with **même**, for emphasis or distinctness, and with **à** if it is indirect object.

Thus, **il se l'est fait à lui-même** *he has done it to himself*, **je t'ai vu toi-même** *I have seen thee thyself.*

76. A subject-pronoun separated from the verb, by a clause or even a single word, like **seul** or **aussi**, has to take the disjunctive form (see XXIII. 3*g*).

Thus, **eux aussi nous ont vus** *they too have seen us*, **lui seul a raison** *he alone is right.*

a. But in old-style and official speech this rule is sometimes violated: thus, **je soussigné déclare** *I the undersigned declare.*

77. The use of two conjunctive pronouns with one verb, as its direct and indirect objects respectively, is limited to cases in which the direct object is of the 3d person, and not reflexive (**se**); otherwise, the direct object alone is made conjunctive, and the indirect follows the verb as disjunctive, with **à**.

Thus, **je me présente à toi** or **à lui** *I present myself to thee* or *to him*, **il se montra à moi** *he showed himself to me.*

78. While a noun-object with **à** *to* is ordinarily represented in pronoun-form by the simple conjunctive pronoun of the indirect object, there are certain verbs which require instead the disjunctive pronoun with **à**.

Such verbs are especially **penser à** or **songer à** *think of*, **venir à** *come to*, **courir à** *run to*, **être à** *belong to;* also **appeler à** *call to*, **renoncer à** *renounce*, **accoutumer à** *accustom to:* thus, **je pense à toi** *I think of thee*, **il vint à nous** *he came to us*, **cette maison est à moi** *this house belongs to me.*

79. *a.* Certain verbs that govern an infinitive directly (without **de** or **à**) are treated like auxiliaries in taking before them an object-pronoun logically belonging to the infinitive.

Such verbs are **faire** or **laisser** *cause*, **sentir** *feel*, **entendre**

hear, **voir** *see:* thus, **je l'ai fait faire** *I have caused to make it* (or *caused it to be made*), **nous l'avons entendu dire** *we have heard it said* (literally, *have heard say it*).

For the case of two object-pronouns in such a combination, see below, § **158.**

b. The same is not seldom the case with **vouloir** *wish*, **pouvoir** *can*, **devoir** *ought:* thus, **il me le veut persuader** or **il veut me le persuader** *he wants to persuade me of it*, **on le peut gagner** or **on peut le gagner** *one can win him*, **qui le doit emporter** *who ought to get the better?* Other cases sometimes occur: e.g. **nous l'allons montrer** *we are going to show it.*

80. If an imperative affirmative is followed by another, connected with it by **et** *and* or **ou** *or*, the pronoun-objects of the latter may be placed before it instead of after.

Thus, **console-toi et m'écoute** (or **et écoute-moi**) *comfort thyself and listen to me*, **montrez-les-moi ou me les peignez** *show or describe them to me.*

81. *a.* The direct object-pronoun of the third person, **le**, is used predicatively without variation of gender or number to represent a preceding adjective, or noun of condition or quality, where *so* may be used in English.

Thus, **êtes-vous heureux? je le suis** *are you happy? I am so*, **fut-elle servante? elle le fut** *was she a servant? she was so.*

b. But where the question is one of identity, the predicate pronoun is varied to agree with the noun to which it relates: thus, **êtes-vous la Marie? je la suis** *are you Mary? I am she.*

82. *a.* The French often uses **le** to repeat or to anticipate something stated in a preceding or following clause, while the English omits it.

Thus, **ils ne sont pas ici, je le vois** *they are not here, I see*, **vous le savez, c'est un caractère faible** *you know, he is a weak character.*

The repetition, in fact, of either subject or object in the form of a conjunctive pronoun (also **en** and **y**) with the verb is a frequent and familiar peculiarity of French.

b. With a few verbs, the French uses **le** as a sort of indefinite constant object: thus, **l'emporter** *get the better* (literally, *carry it off*), **le céder** *give way*, **le disputer** *contest, vie*, and so on.

83. The disjunctive pronouns of the third person—

lui, elle, eux, elles—are chiefly, though not exclusively, used of persons, other modes of expression being substituted when things are referred to.

84. Soi (XXIII. 4) is used of persons only in an indefinite way, when no reference is had to a particular person. As relating to things, its employment is less restricted; but modern usage tends to substitute for it the ordinary disjunctives of the third person, especially in the feminine, and where definite objects are intended.

Thus, **un bienfait porte sa récompense en soi** *a kindness brings its own reward with it*, but **les choses ne sont en elles-mêmes ni pures ni impures** *things are neither pure nor impure in themselves.*

85. En and **y** (XXIII. 5–8) are adverbs that have acquired the value and construction of pronouns, being used instead of personal pronouns (rarely, of demonstratives) in the genitive and dative cases respectively, or as governed by the prepositions **de** and **à**. They refer usually to things; but also to persons, if plural or understood in an indefinite sense; to a definite person in the singular, only rarely.

a. Quite frequently, they refer to a whole (preceding) clause, or to something still more indefinitely suggested: thus, **il n'est pas ici, j'en suis sûr** *he is not here, I am sure of it*, **il est sorti, fiez-vous y** *he has gone out, depend upon it.*

b. Hence also, in many special combinations, they have a yet more indefinite reference, to nothing specified or distinctly suggested, but to things in general; and they form idiomatic phrases, where they are hardly, if at all, translatable: **en** meaning *in respect of it, because of it, from it, away;* and **y** meaning *there, unto it*, etc.

Some of the commonest of these combinations are:

s'en aller (XXIX. 7*c*), *go off*
s'en retourner, *come back*
en avoir à, *have to deal with*
en vouloir à, *have a grudge against*
en être fait, *be all over*
s'en prendre à, *make responsible, accuse*
en user avec, *treat, handle*
en être, *be at a point* or *situation*
en venir à, *come to the point of*
en finir, *make an end*

y avoir (XXX. 4), *there is*, etc. **y être**, *comprehend*
y aller de, *concern* **y voir**, *see things, have eyes*

En in the sense of *away* (as in **s'en aller**) is in many cases compounded with a verb: thus, **s'enfuir** *run away*, **s'envoler** *fly off*, **s'emporter** *lose one's self-control*, **emmener** *carry off*.

c. **En** is sometimes used pleonastically to repeat a genitive (usually plural) depending on the same verb: thus, **de ces trois unités il n'y en a qu'une d'importante** *of these three unities there is only one* [*that is*] *important*.

d. For **en** having the value of a possessive, see below, § **88***b*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XII. Personal Pronouns.

(§ 73.) [1] Oui, j'étais et je suis encore dans une grande perplexité. (*About.*) [2] Votre lettre, madame, me plaît, me touche, et m'alarme. (*Rouss.*) [3] En attendant le jour du départ j'allais, je venais, je ne pouvais me rassasier de voir la citadelle, l'arsenal, le port. (*Barth.*) [4] Je la vis la veille, je lui parlai, je me désespérai. (*Mar.*)

(§ 74.) [1] Moi, sans me vanter, j'ai la mine qu'il faut[a] pour les contes à faire[b] peur. (*Courier.*) [2] Moi, j'ai passablement couru pour trouver une femme. (*About.*) [3] En attendant, lui ne bouge pas de sa fenêtre. (*Tœpfer.*) [4] S'il n'en dit rien à Claire, ce n'était pas qu'il craignît[c] de la rendre jalouse, ou que lui-même gardât[c] au fond du cœur un reste de dépit. (*About.*) [5] On ne loue point une femme ni un auteur comme eux-mêmes se louent. (*La R.*)

(§ 75.) [1] Si vous avez fait de votre mieux, ne vous en veuillez[d] pas à vous-mêmes. (*Jouffroy.*) [2] Je ne puis[e] sans horreur me regarder moi-même. (*Delavigne.*)

(§ 76.) [1] Elle les nomme; et lui, saisissant un crayon, se met à les écrire. (*Thiers.*) [2] Mais lui, voyant en moi la fille de son frère, me tint lieu, chère Élise, et de père et de mère. (*Rac.*) [3] Eux seuls savent juger, savent penser, savent écrire, doivent écrire. (*La Br.*) [4] Lui, bravant tous les dangers, semblait seul tenir la campagne. (*Béranger.*)

(§ 77.) [1] C'est moi qui me fie à vous. (*Mignet.*) [2] C'est l'art et non pas la nature simple qui se montre à nous. (*Fén.*) [3] J'ai mérité ce qui m'arrive, puisque j'ai pu m'adresser à lui. (*Scribe.*) [4] On trouve à qui parler quand on s'adresse à moi. (*Delavigne.*)

(§ 78.) [1] J'ai pensé à elle d'abord, c'était mon devoir;

[a] XXX. 8. [b] § 185*b*. [c] § 133. [d] XXIV. 6*f*. [e] § 166*a*.

à moi ensuite, c'était mon droit. (*Augier.*) [2] Mon moulin est à moi, tout aussi bien, au moins, que la Prusse est au roi. (*Andrieux.*) [3] Un soir, comme j'arrivais, l'enfant vint à moi toute troublée. (*Dau.*)

(§ 79.) [1] Monsieur lui voulut faire voir St. Cloud lui-même. (*St. Simon.*) [2] Aimez-moi toujours ; c'est la seule chose qui me peut donner de la consolation. (*de Sév.*) [3] Tu trahis mes bienfaits ; je les veux redoubler. (*Corn.*) [4] Ainsi toujours les dieux vous daignent inspirer ! (*Corn.*) [5] N'ayant pu vous venger, je vous irai rejoindre. (*Corn.*)

(§ 80.) [1] Monsieur Lysidas, prenez un siège vous-même, et vous mettez là. (*Mol.*) [2] Tenez, monsieur ; battez-moi plutôt et me laissez rire. (*Mol.*)

(§ 81.) [1] Sois gentille.—Je ne le suis donc pas toujours ? —Oh ! si. (*About.*) [2] Vous n'étiez pas coupable envers moi ; c'est moi qui le fus envers moi-même. (*G. Sand.*) [3] Vous êtes Ardasire ? lui dis-je.—Oui, perfide, répondit-elle ; je la suis. (*Mont.*)

(§ 82.) [1] C'est dans cette chambre bien simple, vous le voyez, que j'ai passé les plus douces heures que j'ai vécu[a]. (*Dum.*) [2] Il s'en va ; je n'ai pas tant de pouvoir sur lui que je le croyais. (*Mar.*) [3] Lui seul, madame, vous aura aimée comme vous devriez l'être. (*Bal.*) [4] Cette alternative prouve en effet qu'il leur manque quelque chose à chacun. (*Cuvier.*) [5] Les richesses et le luxe des arts le disputent en éclat aux dons splendides des fées. (*de Sismondi.*)

(§ 84.) [1] Il est beau de triompher de soi. (*Corn.*) [2] Il est plus aisé d'être sage pour les autres que de l'être pour soi-même. (*La R.*) [3] Etre trop mécontent de soi est une faiblesse ; être trop content de soi est une sottise. (*de Sablé.*) [4] La poésie porte son excuse avec soi. (*Boileau.*) [5] Les victoires traînent toujours après elles autant de calamités pour un État que les plus sanglantes défaites. (*Massillon.*)

(§ 85.) [1] En 1814, la Restauration, trouvant le général Dupont en prison, en eut fait un ministre de la guerre. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] En sortant de l'état de nature, nous forçons nos semblables d'en sortir aussi ; nul n'y peut demeurer malgré les autres. (*Rouss.*) [3] J'étais indigne de vous, et j'en rougis.

[a] § 194*b*.

(*G. Sand.*) [4] C'était elle, j'en étais sûr, qui avait si douillettement installé là sa bonne mère. (*Coppée.*) [5] On m'a dit tant de mal de cet homme, et j'y en vois[a] si peu ! (*La Br.*) [6] Comment s'y prend-on, à la guerre, pour éviter les mauvais coups ? (*About.*) [7] J'en étais là de mes réflexions, quand j'entendis appeler[b] mon nom. (*Dau.*). [8] Pourquoi s'en prendre aux hommes de ce que les femmes ne sont pas savantes ? (*La Br.*) [9] C'en est fait, mes amis ; il n'est plus de patrie. (*Vol.*) [10] La dispute s'échauffant, on en vint bientôt aux armes. (*Vertot.*) [11] Il y va de ma gloire ; il faut que je me venge. (*Corn.*) [12] De deux personnes qui s'aiment, soit d'amour, soit d'amitié, il y en a toujours une qui doit donner de son cœur plus que l'autre. (*G. Sand.*)

Theme 5.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

[1] We are and always shall be charmed with this book ; it pleases and instructs us. [2] Do you know who is its[c] author ? [3] I[d] know and have spoken with him ; he came himself to see me, the eve of his departure. [4] He alone knows how[e] to write really interesting stories. [5] I will give this book to yourself, but you will not permit her to[f] read it. [6] They also will read it, but he alone will understand it. [7] If he wants to present himself to us, we shall not show ourselves to him. [8] We were thinking of her when she came to us. [9] This house—I cannot accustom myself to it, although it is mine. [10] I saw them arrive this morning. [11] I have caused to say to her that I cannot see her to-day. [12] She sends you this letter ; take it and read it. [13] Is she not your sister ? [14] She is (so) ; I was always kind to her, but she has not been so toward me. [15] You know, I have passed here many happy years. [16] I love this room more than you would believe[g]. [17] Some men are happier than they ought[g] to be. [18] One ought not to be too well-

[a] § 161*e*. [b] § 176*d*. [c] § 88*b*. [d] emphatic.
[e] XXXIV. 7*a*. [f] § 179*b*. [g] § 170*c*.

satisfied with one's self. [19] Every weakness carries its own punishment in itself. [20] He who triumphs over[a] himself triumphs over[a] all misfortunes. [21] It was she who said so much evil of them, depend upon it. [22] It is all over; let us make an end, and go away. [23] Of all these people, there is not one that I love.

B.—Possessives.

86. The possessives are the adjective forms corresponding to the personal pronouns as substantives. The forms and principal uses of them have been already given (XIV. **1-5**, XXVII. **1, 2**).

a. The so-called possessive pronouns (Lesson XXVII.) are only a different form of the possessive adjectives, made of substantive value by prefixing the definite article.

87. The possessive pronoun is occasionally used predicatively without article, and attributively after the indefinite article instead of the definite: thus, **cette maison est mienne** *this house is mine*, **un mien parent** *a relation of mine.*

88. The possessive adjective is often omitted in French where English usage requires it, or its meaning is expressed by the French in another manner than in English.

a. It is omitted especially in speaking of parts of the body or dress, where the connection makes clear what is meant: thus, **il me donna la main** *he gave me his hand.*

b. Its meaning is often expressed by an indirect object-pronoun with the verb, or by **en**: thus, **il s'est cassé le bras** *he has broken his arm*, **le sol en est fertile** *its soil is fertile.*

c. On the other hand, the possessive is used in address before the name of a relative, the title of a superior officer, and in other like cases: thus, **bonjour, mon père** *good day, father*, **oui, mon général** *yes, General.*

89. The possessive is made emphatic, as in English, by adding **propre** *own;* but also by adding the corresponding disjunctive pronoun with **à**: thus, **de mes propres yeux** *with my own eyes*, **la maison de mon père et la mienne propre** *my father's house and my own*, **votre opinion à vous** *your very own opinion.*

[a] **de.**

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XIII. Possessives.

(§ 87.) [1] Elle peut[a] nous plaire plus ou moins, mais elle est sienne. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] Un mien cousin, César, Comte de Garofa, près de Velalcazar. (*V. Hugo.*)

(§ 88.) [1] Je me suis blessé à la main. (*Duvivier.*) [2] Jeunes femmes, ne jetez jamais les yeux sur les maîtres chanteurs de Bohême. (*Gautier.*) [3] Plus nombreux, ils levaient le front plus haut que lui. (*Delavigne.*) [4] Je m'attachai à me perfectionner le goût. (*Le Sage.*) [5] Au second coup seulement, le bourreau lui abattit la tête. (*Mignet.*) [6] Pour chasser ce cauchemar, je fermai les yeux ; le cœur me battait à[b] me rompre la poitrine. (*Lab.*) [7] La main me tremblait, mon regard se troublait, le cœur me manqua. (*Lam.*) [8] En passant en Pologne, il en vit le roi. (*St. Simon.*) [9] Cette vie, je l'ai en grande partie parcourue ; j'en connais les promesses, les réalités, les déceptions. (*Jouffroy.*) [10] Ma mère, ma mère ! pourquoi es-tu si longtemps couchée ? (*Berquin.*) [11] Pauvre cher homme ! j'ai dîné hier avec lui ; je lui disais : Vous mangez trop, mon oncle. (*Augier.*) [12] J'en ferai confidence à tout le régiment ; merci, mon vieux ! (*About.*)

(§ 89.) [1] Aimable enfant, ajoutait-il, votre présence et vos doux sourires, voilà mes fêtes à moi. (*Sandeau.*) [2] Ainsi, toute ma famille à moi, c'est ma pauvre nourrice, la mère Joseph. (*Scribe.*)

THEME 6.

POSSESSIVES.

[1] Here is a cousin of thine ; give him thy hand. [2] I cannot give him my hand ; I have broken my arm. [3] If you perfect your taste, you will like books better ; you will understand their beauties and know their authors. [4] France is the most beautiful country in Europe, and Paris is its capital and largest city. [5] Cousin, you do not know the world. [6] You are afraid, friend ; your hand trembles, and your courage fails. [7] Come with me, captain ; you shall see the whole company. [8] I did it with my own hands. [9] I am not going to dine with you at the restaurant ; it is

[a] XXV. 8*f*. [b] § 182*h*.

my[a] happiness to[b] dine with my own family, in my own house.

C.—Demonstratives.

90. The forms and principal uses of the demonstrative adjectives and pronouns are given in the First Part (XIII. **1-3**, XXIV. **1-4**).

91. The demonstratives containing **ci** and **là** are often used respectively in the sense of *latter* (i.e. nearer) and *former* (i.e. farther off).

Thus, **Corneille et Racine sont deux grands poètes; celui-là** [i.e. Corneille] **est plus sublime, celui-ci** [i.e. Racine] **est plus vrai** *Corneille and Racine are two great poets; the former has more sublimity, the latter more truth.* And in the same manner **ce . . . -ci** and **ce . . . -là**, and **ceci** and **cela.**

92. *a.* Instead of the simple demonstratives **celui** etc. (XXIV. **4***a*) as antecedent of a relative, the compounds **celui-là** etc. are used, if something intervenes before the relative, or if the relative clause is additive or parenthetic in value: thus, **celui-là est bon qui fait du bien aux autres** *he is good who does good to others*, **celui-ci, qui coûte deux francs, est meilleur que celui-là, qui en coûte cinq** *this one, which costs two francs, is better than that one, which costs five.*

b. On the other hand, the simple **celui** etc. are in rare cases used otherwise than before a relative or **de**: thus, **cette remarque, ainsi que celles purement grammaticales** (Volt.) *this remark, as well as those purely grammatical.*

93. **Ça** is a familiar substitute for **cela** (XXIV. **3**); it is sometimes used in a derogatory or contemptuous way of persons: thus, **lui, qu'est-ce que ça** *he? what is he?*

94. *a.* For the repetition by **ce** of a subject already expressed, see § **147***c*.

b. The adjective **ce** is often used of persons present or near one, where the English uses instead the article: thus, **ces dames** *the ladies* (*of the house*), and so on.

Illustrative Sentences.—XIV. Demonstratives.

(§ 91.) [1] Livie a quelques traits de Madame de Maintenon; si celle-ci fonda Saint-Cyr, celle-là s'occupait des jeunes filles en les mariant. (*Ampère.*)

(§ 92.) [1] Ceux-là seuls qui ont la conscience de n'être

[a] emphatic. [b] § 173*b*.

rien par eux-mêmes, manifestent des regrets en tombant du pouvoir. (*Bal.*)

(§ 93.) [1] Ça marche ! ça marche ! dans huit jours nous entrerons à Berlin. (*Dau.*) [2] Aie bien soin de tout ; tu me rendras compte de ça là-bas ! dit-il. (*Bal.*) [3] Davoust ? Qu'est-ce que c'est que[a] ça ?—Ça, monsieur le marquis, c'est le héros qui prépara Wagram. (*Sandeau.*)

(§ 94.) [1] Ce que je désire, c'est de[b] vous voir réussir. (*Rac.*) [2] Il a peur de[c] perdre une minute, parce que le temps, c'est de l'argent. (*Lab.*) [3] Faites approcher ce monsieur, que ces messieurs avaient attaché. (*V. Hugo.*)

Theme 7.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

[1] I have read the life of Wellington and that of Napoleon ; the latter was the greater man, the former the better citizen. [2] He alone is happy who triumphs over[d] himself. [3] Those who love others are themselves beloved. [4] This man, who has never had anything, is happier than that one, who has lost his great wealth. [5] Wagram ? what is that ? [6] Wagram was one of the great battles of Napoleon's wars.

D.—Interrogatives.

95. The interrogative adjective and pronouns were given, and their principal uses explained, in the First Part (XIII. **4, 5,** XXV.).

96. **De qui** is not used in the sense of *whose ?* with the governing noun immediately following : thus, **de qui est-ce le livre** *whose book is this ?*

97. The predicative **que** (XXV. **4***a*) is used almost as subject in certain impersonal expressions, where the impersonal subject is omitted : thus, **que vous en semble** *what do you think of them ?* (literally, *what seems to you of them ?*) **qu'arrive-t-il** *what is happening ?*

98. After **qu'est-ce** meaning *what is ?* a **que** is added before the predicate noun : thus, **qu'est-ce que la vie** *what is life ?*

a. The same is the case after the doubled interrogative **qu'est-ce que c'est** (XXV. **7**) : thus, **qu'est-ce que c'est que la vie** *what is life ?*

[a] § 98. [b] § 173*b*. [c] § 185*a*. [d] de.

99. For the repetition of **de** after an interrogative before two alternatives, see above, § **34***c*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XV. Interrogatives.

(§ 95.) [1] Qui voulez-vous que mon cœur mette à votre place? (*Mar.*) [2] Qui vous rend si hardi de troubler mon breuvage? (*La F.*) [3] Qui vous a fait poète?—Le malheur. (*Dum.*) [4] Qui vous a engagé à commettre cet assassinat?—Ses crimes. (*Thiers.*) [5] Sais-tu que c'est son sang? le sais-tu?—Que m'importe? (*Corn.*) [6] Qu'êtes-vous maintenant, soldats anglais? (*Guizot.*) [7] Voulez-vous que je vous apprenne la logique?—Qu'est-ce que c'est que cette logique? (*Mol.*)

E.—Relatives.

100. The forms and principal uses of the relative pronouns and adjective were given and explained in the First Part (XIII. 5*b*, XXVI.).

a. For the use of a relative clause where in English a present participle stands, see below, § **189***g*.

101. *a.* **Lequel** is occasionally used as adjective, when introducing a clause that has additive value: thus, **lequel chevalier devait épouser Mademoiselle B.** *which gentleman was to marry Miss B.*

b. In antiquated and official phraseology, **lequel** stands sometimes where ordinary usage requires **qui** or **que**: thus, **un témoin, lequel a dit . . .** *a witness, who has said . . .*

102. **Dont** and **de qui** are not used as dependent upon an antecedent that is governed by a preposition: thus, **le roi aux bienfaits duquel . . .** *the king to whose benefits . . .*

103. **Qui, que,** and **quoi** are all often used as compound relatives, or relatives implying also their antecedent, and having a general or indefinite sense.

a. **Qui** referring to persons thus signifies *any one who, whoever*, and is used also as object: thus, **qui s'excuse s'accuse** *whoever excuses himself accuses himself*, **qu'importe la vie à qui perd le bonheur** *of what use is life to any one who loses happiness?* **je ne sais qui chercher** *I don't know whom to look for.*

b. **Qui** is also used instead of **ce qui** as referring to things after **voici** and **voilà**, and in parenthetic phrases like **qui plus est** *what is more:* thus, **voilà qui serait merveilleux** *that would be admirable* (lit'ly, *behold what would be admirable*).

c. **Que** hardly occurs in this sense except as object of an infinitive immediately following it: thus, **il ne sait que faire** *he knows not what to do.*

d. **Quoi** stands with this value especially after a preposition (see XXVI. 6): thus, **voilà de quoi il parle** *that is what he is talking about*, **dites-moi en quoi je puis vous servir** *tell me in what I can be of service to you.* And **de quoi** has become an idiomatic phrase, meaning *the wherewith*, *the means* of anything.

104. Qui, quoi, and **quel,** when followed by **que** before a subjunctive, correspond to *whoever* and *whatever* with the subjunctive in English; **qui** being used relating to persons, **quoi** as object relating to things, and **quel** as predicate adjective: thus, **qui que vous soyez, quoi que vous fassiez, quels que soient vos talents** *whoever you may be, whatever you may do, whatever be your talents*, **quoi qu'il en soit** *whatever the case may be.*

a. The same phrases are used sometimes in the sense of *any one soever*, *anything whatever*, and the like: thus, **il ne connaît qui que ce soit** *he knows nobody at all.*

b. Very rarely, **qui** is used instead of **que,** with a verb following of which it is the subject: thus, **quoi qui suive** *whatever may ensue.*

c. For the use of **quelque que** in a similar sense, see below, § **107***c*; for that of relative adverbs, see § **137***c.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XVI. Relatives.

(§ 100.) [1] Moi qui suis royaliste, je le dis franchement. (*de Vi.*) [2] Dis-moi, qui es-tu, toi qui me parles ainsi? (*Mar.*) [3] Ce fut moi qui m'inclinai à mon tour. (*Dum.*) [4] Soleil qui vois, entends, connais tout! (*Chénier.*)

(§ 102.) [1] Monsieur, c'est un homme sur la vie duquel reposent d'énormes capitaux. (*Bal.*) [2] Celui-là seul avait le droit de triompher, sous les auspices duquel la guerre était faite. (*Mont.*)

(§ 103.) [1] Qui dit le peuple, dit plus d'une chose; c'est une vaste expression. (*La Br.*) [2] A qui venge son père, il n'est rien d'impossible. (*Corn.*) [3] Qui sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux. (*Vol.*) [4] Je n'aurai qui tromper, non plus que qui me trompe. (*Corn.*) [5] J'ai de quoi me défendre, et de quoi vous répondre. (*Rotrou.*) [6] Voilà qui m'étonne, que nous ayons été seules, l'une et l'autre, tout aujourd'hui. (*Mol.*) [7] Édouard III. ne se crut pas assez fort tout seul; il chercha qui embaucher dans sa cause. (*Vacquerie.*) [8] C'est la pensée qui fait l'être de l'homme, et sans quoi on ne le peut concevoir. (*Pasc.*) [9] S'il faut agir, je ne sais que faire; s'il faut parler, je ne sais que dire. (*Rouss.*)

(§ 104.) [1] Qui que ce soit, parlez, et ne le craignez pas. (*Rac.*) [2] Quoi que vous fassiez, votre image m'est restée. (*de Mu.*) [3] Le grand mystère de la mort, quel qu'il soit, doit donner du calme. (*de Staël.*) [4] Madame, j'aime mieux vos intérêts que les siens, et que ceux de qui que ce soit au monde. (*Mar.*) [5] Mais n'importe, ma chère nièce; quoi qu'il arrive, quelle que soit notre famille, cela ne change rien à mes projets. (*Scribe.*) [6] Désormais je ne douterai de quoi que ce soit. (*de Mu.*)

Theme 8.

Interrogatives and Relatives.

[1] Whose pretty picture is this? [2] What matters it to you who is its owner? [3] What is man's happiness? [4] Who told you that? [5] What do you want?

[6] He alone has the right to be happy, on whose life rests the happiness of others. [7] One who wants to be rich ought to work. [8] I do not know what to do, to whom to address myself, with what to defend myself. [9] Here is something to defend yourself with. [10] We have worked a great deal, and we have gained the means of living. [11] Nobody can tell what she is thinking of at present. [12] That is the man who has deceived me. [13] Speak to him, and you will find that he has nothing to answer you with. [14] Whatever they do, they are always wrong. [15] Whatever I said to her, she would not listen to me. [16] Whatever may be your talents, you will never succeed without application. [17] Do your duty, whatever it may be, and you cannot[a] be really unhappy. [18] We have not seen any one whomsoever. [19] Whatever may happen to you, be firm. [20] They do not succeed in anything whatever.

[a] § 123a.

F.—Indefinite Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.

105. Some of the forms and uses of the pronominal words falling under this head were given in the First Part (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **3-7**); further particulars are added here.

106. On (XXVII. **4**). A predicate noun or adjective relating to **on** as subject usually takes the number and gender corresponding to the implied meaning: thus, **on n'est point des esclaves** *people are not slaves*, **qu'on est folle d'agir ainsi** *how foolish one* (i.e. a woman) *is to act thus.*

a. If a corresponding object-form to **on** is required, **vous** has to be used. And **vous** is also sometimes used as subject in an indefinite way, as in English, instead of **on.**

b. **On** is sometimes used to soften the force of a command: thus, **qu'on se taise,** instead of **taisez-vous** *be silent.*

107. Quelque, quelqu'un, quelque chose (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **5**).

a. **Quelque chose** *something* is treated as masculine (although **chose** is feminine): thus, **quelque chose de bon** *something good*, **ce quelque chose** *this something.*

b. The negative correlatives to **quelqu'un** and **quelque chose** are **personne** and **rien.** These are used not only where the negation is distinct or distinctly expressed, but also often where a degree of negative sense is implied: thus, **sans voir personne** *without seeing any one*, **je le défie de rien dire de moi** *I defy him to say anything of me.*

c. In the sense of English *whatever* with subjunctive, **quelque . . . que** stands in French in an attributive sense, or directly qualifying a noun expressed: thus, **quelques talents que vous ayez** *whatever talents you may have*, **de quelque côté qu'on se tourne** *in whatever direction one may turn.*

Compare the corresponding use of **qui, quoi, quel,** with following **que,** above, § **104.** Here, also, the **que** is in rare cases replaced by **qui** as subject: thus, **quelques nouveaux malheurs qui nous doivent attendre** *whatever new misfortunes may await us.*

d. **Quelque** is also used in the same way adverbially, qualifying an adjective or adverb, in the sense of *however*, and is then, of course, invariable: thus, **quelque grands que soient vos talents** *however great your talents may be*, **quelque fort qu'on se défende** *however stoutly one may resist.* Compare the conjunction **quoique** *although.*

e. **Quelque** is also invariable when used in the sense of *about, nearly*, with a word of quantity, generally a numeral: thus, **quelque vingt ans** *some twenty years*, **quelque peu** *some little.*

108. Quelconque. This is a pronominal adjective of infre-

quent use, meaning *whatever*, and always following the noun it qualifies: thus, **donnez-moi un point quelconque, des points quelconques** *give me any point whatever, any points whatever.*

109. Chaque, chacun (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **5**). Of the two words meaning *every*, **chaque** is distributive and individualizing, **tout** is inclusive and generalizing: thus, **tout homme est mortel; chaque homme a son caractère à lui** *every man is mortal; every* (or *each*) *man has his own character.* In many cases, however, the two may be used indifferently.

110. Tel *such.* **Tel** is varied for gender and number like any other adjective in **el**: thus, **tel, tels; telle, telles.** It is used in all adjective constructions, and also substantively. It takes the indefinite article before it, instead of after, as in English: thus, **un tel homme** *such a man*, **sa conduite était telle que . . .** *his conduct was such as . . .*

a. **Tel** has various idiomatic uses. It means *so-and-so*, or *such-and-such*, standing in place of a word which it is desired not to express distinctly: thus, **à telle époque** *at such-and-such an epoch*, **monsieur un tel** *Mr. such a one.* It may often be rendered by *one and another* or *many a one*, or the like: thus, **tel parle de choses qu'il n'entend pas** *some people talk of things they don't understand.* **Tel . . . tel** stand for *one . . . another:* thus, **tel rit, tel pleure** *one laughs, another cries;* or for *as . . . so:* thus, **tel père, tel fils** *as the father, so the son.* **Tel quel** means elliptically *such as it is, of whatever sort or quality.*

111. Aucun, nul (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **6**). These words are used both adjectively and substantively, and both alike require **ne** before the verb. They but rarely occur in the plural.

a. They are used not only as distinct negatives, but also where a negative sense is implied or suggested, as after **sans** *without* and verbs of denial or doubt: thus, **sans nul égard** *without any consideration*, **je doute qu'aucun de vous le fasse** *I question whether any of you would do it.* **Aucun** is occasionally found in old-style French with a fully positive meaning: thus, **aucuns croient que . . .** *some believe that . . .*

112. Plusieurs *several* etc. **Plusieurs** (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **6**) is only plural, and used both adjectively and substantively.

a. Other adjectives used nearly in the same sense are (much as in English) **certain, différent, divers**, *certain, sundry, divers*, and the like.

113. Maint *many a, many.* This is an attributive adjective only, having the usual adjective inflection: thus, **maint homme** *many a man*, **maintes fois** *many times* or *many a time.*

114. *a.* **Même** *self, same*, etc. This word, a pronoun by origin, has acquired a variety of values. For its combinations with the disjunctive pronouns, **moi-même** *myself* etc., see the First

Part (XXIII. 3*c*). After a noun, it has a similar meaning, *itself* etc.: thus, **la vertu même** *virtue itself*, **les Français mêmes** *the French themselves;* and it is sometimes best translated *very:* thus, **ce matin même** *that very morning.*

b. Before the qualified noun, it means *same:* thus, **ce même matin** *that same morning*, **les mêmes Français** *the same Frenchmen.*

c. It is also often used as adverb, meaning *even:* thus, **même ce matin** *even this morning*, **ses ennemis même** *even his enemies.* With this value it is, of course, invariable in form.

115. Autre *other* (XXVII. **6**). This word is for the most part an ordinary adjective, capable of being used also substantively. For its combination with **un** into phrases, see the First Part (XXVII. **7**).

a. It is sometimes added to **nous** or **vous** expletively, or simply to emphasize the distinction of *us* or *you* from others: thus, **nous autres Français** *we Frenchmen*, **vous autres Anglais** *you English.*

b. **Autre chose** *anything else* is common with a negative verb in the sense of *nothing else.*

116. Tout *all, every* (XIV. **6**, XXVII. **5–7**, § **109**). This is also in the main an ordinary adjective, but having some values analogous with pronominal words.

a. In certain phrases, **tout** signifies *all, whole* without accompanying article etc.: thus, **à toute force** *with all one's might;* this is especially the case in the plural: thus, **en toutes choses** *in all things*, **de toutes sortes** *of all sorts.*

b. **Tout** *everything* is sometimes used in the sense of *everybody.* **Le tout** is *the whole.*

c. **Tout** is very often used adverbially, meaning *wholly, entirely, quite, altogether, all*, and the like. In these senses, it remains invariable before a noun, an adverb, a preposition, a masculine adjective, and a feminine adjective beginning with a vowel; but, before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant, it is itself treated as an adjective, and made to agree with the following noun: thus, **elles sont tout admirées** *they are altogether admired*, but **elles sont toutes malades** *they are quite ill*, **elle était tout aimable, toute gracieuse** *she was altogether amiable and gracious.*

d. **Tout** before an adjective, or noun used adjectively, with **que** after it, adds the meaning of *however:* **tout bon qu'il est** *however good he is*, **tout gentilshommes qu'ils pouvaient être** *however much the gentleman they might be.* Here, too, the **tout** is treated as adjective before a feminine beginning with a consonant: thus, **toutes bonnes qu'elles sont** *good though they are.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XVII. Indefinites.

(§ 106.) [1] Quand on est jeunes, riches, et jolies, mesdames, on n'est pas réduites à l'artifice. (*Diderot.*) [2] Qu'on redouble demain les heureux sacrifices. (*Corn.*)

(§ 107.) [1] Un gentilhomme croit sincèrement qu'il y a quelque chose de grand et de noble à la chasse. (*Pasc.*) [2] Quelques lumières, quelques traits d'esprit que l'on ait, rien n'est si aisé que de se tromper. (*Pasc.*) [3] Enfin, de quelque manière que les finances de l'État soient administrées, la France possède dans le travail d'environ vingt millions d'habitants un trésor inestimable. (*Vol.*) [4] Quelque corrompues que soient nos mœurs, le vice n'a pas encore perdu toute sa honte. (*Massillon.*) [5] Et quel âge avez-vous?—Hé ! quelque soixante ans. (*Rac.*)

(§ 108.) [1] Toutes les jouissances sont toujours précédées d'un travail quelconque. (*Campan.*)

(§ 109.) [1] Chaque condition a ses dégoûts, et à chaque état sont attachées ses amertumes. (*Massillon.*) [2] Toute confiance est dangereuse, si elle n'est entière. (*La Br.*) [3] Chacun se croit capable de tout. (*Nicole.*) [4] Comme si les travers de la famille humaine ne rajeunissaient pas chaque an, chaque semaine ! (*de Mu.*)

(§ 110.) [1] Mais où Madame de Lafayette retrouvera-t-elle un tel ami, une telle société? (*de Sév.*) [2] Tel qu'est le juge du peuple, tels sont ses ministres. (*Saci.*) [3] Tels doivent être loués de ce qu'ils ont fait, et tels de ce qu'ils auraient fait. (*La Br.*) [4] La sculpture, au contraire, ne fait guère rêver ; car elle représente nettement telle chose, et non pas telle autre. (*Cousin.*) [5] Mais l'enfant retrouvée telle quelle, on s'est calmé bien vite. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 111.) [1] Notre vie ne suffit pour aucun exercice, pour aucun art, pour aucune profession. (*Nicole.*) [2] Hélas ! aucun son ne frappait notre oreille. (*Chat.*) [3] Partout la force éclate, mais sans grâce aucune. (*Le Bury.*) [4] Je me suis retourné ; je l'ai regardé : lui, sans nul égard, sans nulle attention, a répété le même discours. (*Sedaine.*) [5] A-t-il lu un livre qui lui a plu ? C'est la plus belle chose qu'il y ait en aucune langue. (*de Mu.*)

(§ 112.) [1] Ah, monsieur ! il y a certains petits adoucissements à cause de la faiblesse du sexe. (*de Sév.*)

(§ 113.) [1] Car, si les loups mangeaient mainte bête égarée, les bergers de leur peau se faisaient maints habits.

(*La F.*) [2] Avec quelques vertus, j'ai maint et maint défaut. (*Chaulieu.*)

(§ 114.) [1] C'est la voix même de la patrie, gonflée de souvenirs et de larmes. (*Dau.*) [2] À la cour, à la ville, mêmes passions, mêmes faiblesses, mêmes petitesses. (*La Br.*) [3] Ce sont encore les Français, mais non les mêmes. (*Pasc.*) [4] Il est probable même qu'un seul été [de flânerie] ne suffirait point à faire un grand homme. (*Tœpfer.*)

(§ 115.) [1] Nous autres diplomates profitons volontiers des fautes de nos collègues. (*Scribe.*) [2] Vous avez fini, vous autres écrivains, par rendre bien ridicules les femmes qui se prétendent méconnues. (*Bal.*) [3] Avez-vous de l'or et de l'argent? me disent-ils; nous ne souhaitons pas autre chose. (*G. Sand.*) [4] Toutes les passions ne sont autre chose que les divers degrés de la chaleur et de la froideur du sang. (*La R.*)

(§ 116.) [1] Tout petit prince a des ambassadeurs; tout marquis veut avoir des pages. (*La F.*) [2] Autour d'elle tout s'était écroulé; tout en elle souffrait et gémissait. (*Sandeau.*) [3] Quand mon père venait au parloir, j'étais toujours accompagné de Césarine, qui était pour lui tout aimable, toute gracieuse. (*Scribe.*) [4] Pour voir donc les passions dans leur difformité naturelle, il faut les considérer toutes nues. (*Nicole.*) [5] Elle tressaillit, puis devint toute rouge. (*Theuriet.*) [6] Il est de ce héros, de Frédéric II., qui, tout roi qu'il était, fut un penseur profond. (*Andrieux.*) [7] La valeur, tout héroïque qu'elle est, ne suffit pas pour faire des héros. (*Massillon.*) [8] L'espérance, toute trompeuse qu'elle est, sert au moins à nous mener à la fin de la vie par un chemin agréable. (*La R.*) [9] Vous semblez tout effrayée!—Effrayée? répondit-elle ingénument, non, mais troublée et contente. (*Theuriet.*)

Theme 9.

INDEFINITES.

[1] Do not be deceived. [2] How foolish people are to talk thus! [3] Whatever riches we may have, we can lose them in a day. [4] However dull a man may be, he has always something good or noble in his character. [5] Whatever gifts may be offered us, we shall not accept them. [6] I have been at his house already some ten times without

finding him. [7] Although he is already some eighty years old, he has not yet lost all his wit. [8] I wanted to give you something beautiful and interesting, but nothing is more difficult than to find such an article. [9] Give me any book whatever, and I will be satisfied; there is nothing easier than to choose one. [10] Every book pleases me; I read every volume that is given me. [11] Every man is more or less unhappy, but each man has his own troubles. [12] Where have you seen such a judge and such ministers? [13] Some love sculpture and some painting. [14] Such as are the people, such is the government. [15] One ought not to admire every painting, whatever its quality; praise only those that are excellent. [16] No life is sufficient for more than one art or for more than one profession. [17] No one has more grace, but she is without any force. [18] I doubt if there is any language that she does not speak. [19] Man has many a weakness, many a defect; but in many things he is strong. [20] I saw my friend last week, and I have seen him again this very morning. [21] We saw him at the same time as you. [22] Even our weaknesses and our passions are not the same. [23] You women, you are always asking gold and silver; you want nothing else, it seems to me. [24] You men never see in us anything else than faults. [25] During the last century, everything has changed. [26] France has changed in everything. [27] These little girls are quite young still. [28] Life, however rich in attractions it may be, is not always happy. [29] The hopes of men are altogether vain and deceptive.

VII.—VERBS.

117. The inflection of all the verbs in the language, regular and irregular, was given in the First Part, together with the more important rules respecting the uses of the forms; such further particulars as most need to be given follow here.

A.—Tenses of the Verb.

118. The PRESENT tense in French has no variety of expression corresponding to the English *I give, I do give, I am giving*, etc.; all alike are rendered by the simple present **je donne.**

a. The present stands for the usual varieties of present action, as purely present, habitual present, expression of general truths, and the like.

b. As in English, the present is often used instead of the past in lively narration.

Thus, **la nuit approche, l'instant arrive; César se présente** *night draws nigh, the moment comes; Cæsar presents himself.*

And in French, much more often than would be regarded as good style in English, present and past are mixed and interchange in the same sentence.

c. The present not infrequently stands where the future would be more logically correct.

Thus, **dès que je pourrai, je reviens** *as soon as I shall be able, I [shall] come back,* **je pars demain** *I set out to-morrow.*

But the French makes this substitution of present for future less often than the English: see below, § **123***a*.

d. The present is regularly used (instead of the perfect, as in English) for past action continued into the present, or for what has been and still is.

Thus, **il est ici depuis une semaine** *he has been here for a week,* **je l'ai déjà deux ans** *I have had it two years already.*

Compare the similar use of imperfect for English pluperfect, below, § **119***c*.

119. As between the two simple past tenses, imperfect and preterit, the PRETERIT expresses simply past action, without further implication; the IMPERFECT expresses past action viewed as continuous, as a lasting condition or quality, as habitual, repeated, or the like.

a. This distinction is in part quite clear and easy to make, as in cases where our language says or might say *I was giving*, or *I kept giving*, or *I gave repeatedly*, or *I used to give*, or the like,

the imperfect being required in such cases; but often also it is much more difficult, being determined by the way in which things are looked at, or even by idiomatic usage that is not readily to be accounted for. It depends in great part, not on the character of the action itself, but on the relation of that action to some other: especially, when one action is represented as going on at the time another occurs, the former is imperfect and the latter preterit: thus, in English, *he was* (impf. **était**) *there as I entered* (pret. **entrai**); *he spoke* (pret. **parla**) *to me as I entered* (impf. **entrais**); *I turned* (pret. **tournai**) *while he spoke* (impf. **parlait**); *as I turned* (impf. **tournais**) *I saw* (pret. **vis**) *something*—and so on.

The student should never pass an imperfect in reading without stopping to ask himself why that tense is used instead of the preterit.

b. Certain special cases are: the imperfect sometimes in verbs of speaking, when the words of the speaker are quoted (as if *went on to say* or the like): thus, **elle vous trahira, lui répond-il . . . Avouez, reprenait son ami . . . Jamais, jamais, répétait l'autre** *she will betray you, replies he . . . Confess, his friend went on . . . Never, never, repeated the other;* sometimes a series of successive events are combined, as it were, into a whole by the use of the imperfect; the imperfect is used in an emphatic way for the conditional: thus, **s'il ne l'avait pas fait, l'autre était mort** *if he had not done so, the other was* (i.e. *would have been*) *a dead man.* For the imperfect instead of conditional or subjunctive after **si**, see below, § **138***a*.

c. The imperfect is regularly used (instead of the pluperfect, as in English) for previous action continued to or into a past time, or for what had been and still was.

Thus, **il y était depuis longtemps** *he had been there for a long time;* **ils avaient des défenseurs; ils n'en eurent plus** *they had been having defenders; they no longer had any.*

Compare the similar use of present for our perfect, above, § **118***d*.

120. The PRETERIT needs no other definition than that given above; it is the tense for simple past action in a general way, when special reasons do not require the imperfect or perfect.

121. The PERFECT answers in the main to the English perfect, being the expression for past action with some reference to the present involved.

But there are also considerable differences between the two, es-

pecially as the French often uses the perfect where we set the simple preterit: thus,.

a. To express general facts of the past, not in connection with their surroundings: thus, **Alexandre a détruit l'empire des Perses** *the Persian empire was destroyed by Alexander*, **Dieu a créé le monde** *God created the world.*

b. Especially, the perfect is very often used to express recent events, connected with the present, as having taken place within a division of time now current.

Thus, **je me suis levé à six heures ce matin** *I got up at 6 o'clock this morning;* **lui avez-vous parlé** *did you speak to him?*

c. Not seldom in other cases, not easy to define, the perfect is employed where general analogy would lead us to expect the preterit.

d. Occasionally, it stands instead of the future perfect: thus, **attendez, j'ai fini dans un moment** *wait; I [shall] have finished in a moment.*

122. The PLUPERFECT and the PAST ANTERIOR both answer to the English pluperfect, but the French pluperfect is its ordinary equivalent, and much the commoner of the two tense-forms.

a. In general, the past anterior is used only after certain particles, which give a special definiteness to the action expressed, in its relation to another past action. These particles are **quand** and **lorsque** *when*, **après que** *after*, **dès que** and **aussitôt que** *as soon as*, **à peine** *hardly*, and the like: thus, **lorsqu'il eut fini, je sortis** *when he had finished, I went out.*

b. Only the pluperfect can be used after **si** *if.*

123. The future corresponds to the English future.

a. The French, however, often uses the future in compound sentences where it is logically more correct, but where the English has the present instead: thus, **vous direz ce qu'il vous plaira** *you will say what you [shall] please*, **tant qu'il vivra** *as long as he lives* (or *shall live*).

b. The future is used after **si** only in the sense of *whether:* thus, **je ne sais s'il viendra** *I know not whether he will come.*

c. As in English, the future is sometimes used in an imperative sense: thus, **tu ne tueras pas** *thou shalt not kill;* or to express a probability: thus, **ce sera quelque grand homme** *he is doubtless some great man.*

124. The future perfect is used like the corresponding tense in English.

a. Its peculiarities of use are closely analogous to those of the simple future: thus, **tu recueilleras ce que tu auras semé** *thou wilt reap what thou hast (shalt have) sown*, **personne ne saura s'il sera venu** *no one will know whether he has come;* **il aura rendu quelques services** *he has doubtless rendered some service.*

125. The CONDITIONAL agrees in general in use with the English conditional, or verb-phrase made with the auxiliaries *would* and *should.*

a. The future has in some degree a modal character, as having a contingent or hypothetical meaning; and the conditional, which is properly a past tense to the future, like the corresponding English (*would* and *should* being past tenses of *will* and *shall*), is still more modal, and is often so classed and described, as the "conditional mode."

b. The conditional answers to a past tense as a future to a present: thus, **j'espère qu'il viendra, j'espérais qu'il viendrait** *I hope he will come, I hoped he would come;* **qui l'aura, sera mort, qui l'aurait, serait mort** *whoever has it will be a dead man, whoever had it would be a dead man;* **je ne sais s'il viendra, je ne savais s'il viendrait** *I don't know whether he will come, I did not know whether he would come;* and so on.

c. In a hypothetical sentence, the conditional is used in the conclusion: thus, **si je l'avais, je serais content** *if I had it, I should be satisfied.* But instead of it, the past subjunctive may be used: see below, § **131***d*. If **quand** is used instead of **si**, the conditional may stand also in the other clause: thus, **quand je l'aurais** *if I had it;* also after **que**, in an idiomatically inverted sentence: thus, **je l'aurais, que je n'en serais pas content** *I might have it, and yet not be satisfied.*

d. As in English, the conditional is used to soften a request or statement: thus, **auriez-vous la bonté . . .** *would you have the kindness . . .*, **je voudrais que . . .** *I should like to have . . .* **Saurais** (XXXIV. 7*b*) is idiomatically used in the sense of the present *can.*

126. The CONDITIONAL PERFECT corresponds to the same tense in English, and is related to the simple conditional precisely as the future perfect to the future.

127. For the *quasi*-tenses of immediate past and immediate future, formed with the present and imperfect of **aller**, and of **venir** with **de**, see the First Part (XXVII. 8*c*, XXXI. 11*b*). Cer-

tain other phrases have an analogy with tense-forms: thus, **j'ai à faire** *I have to do*, **c'est à espérer** *it is to be hoped*, and so on.

128. Phrases with a redundant auxiliary participle are sometimes made in colloquial French, and occasionally appear even in the literature: thus, **dès qu'il aura eu fini** *as soon as he shall have (got) finished.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XVIII. Tenses of the Verb.

(§ 118.) [1] Au quinzième siècle tout change; la pensée humaine découvre un moyen de se perpétuer[a]. (*V. Hugo.*) [2] Alors elle tire un couteau de son sein, frappe Marat au flanc gauche, et enfonce le fer jusqu'au cœur. À moi[b], s'écria-t-il. (*Thiers.*) [3] Comme j'achevais la quatrième ligne, je lève vaguement les yeux, et j'aperçois de[c] l'autre côté du fossé . . . un ours qui me regardait fixement. (*V. Hugo.*) [4] Je pars dans l'instant, répondit Charles; laissez-moi. (*Guizot.*) [5] Je vous ramène chez moi en sortant du Louvre; là je vous écoute, et je pars pour continuer mon ouvrage; car rien ne m'ébranlera, je vous en avertis. (*de Vi.*) [6] Je songe, depuis quelques jours, que les intérêts humains m'ont trop détourné de cette unique pensée. (*de Vi.*) [7] Il y a longtemps que je rêve d'un officier qui me sauve la vie. (*V. Hugo.*)

(§ 119.) [1] Quand je revins à moi, il faisait jour . . . Pour chasser ce cauchemar, je fermai les yeux; le cœur me battait à me rompre[d] la poitrine; quand j'osai regarder, j'étais seul . . . Je n'avais qu'à me taire; je laissai Zambo exhaler sa furie, et ne voulus pas voir qu'il me tirait la langue. (*Lab.*) [2] Pendant que j'écrivais, une grosse mouche vint se poser sur l'oreille ensanglantée de mon spectateur . . . Je commençais à me faire à ce tête-à-tête lorsque survint un incident. (*V. Hugo.*) [3] Nous cherchâmes, tant qu'il fit jour, notre chemin à travers ces bois; mais, plus nous cherchions, plus nous nous perdions, et il était nuit noire quand nous arrivâmes près d'une maison fort noire . . . On crut que nous portions les diamants de la couronne . . . Par les fentes de la porte je vis le père, sa lampe dans une main, dans l'autre un de ses grands couteaux. Il montait, sa femme après lui; moi derrière la porte; il ouvrit. (*Courier.*) [4] Vous vous occupez toujours de police? lui disait Bonaparte avec une sorte d'admiration.—Oh! répondait mo-

[a] § 185*a*. [b] § 222*b*. [c] § 204*a*. [d] § 182*h*.

destement Fouché, j'ai conservé quelques amis qui me tiennent au courant. (*Lanfrey.*) [6] À Eylau, l'infanterie russe paraissait inébranlable ; Napoléon lançait sur elle soixante escadrons de dragons et de cuirassiers, et y ouvrait ainsi une brèche qui ne se refermait plus. (*Thiers.*) [6] Si le czar avait eu toujours cette humanité, c'était le premier des hommes. (*Vol.*) [7] Pensez ! depuis quarante ans il était là à la même place, avec sa cour en face de lui. (*Dau.*) [8] Elles duraient depuis plus de dix ans, sans qu'il eût pu les changer. (*St. Simon.*)

(§ 121.) [1] Quand vous m'aviez connue, je n'étais pas ce que je suis aujourd'hui. (*G. Sand.*) [2] Ma chère, m'a-t-il dit, j'ai failli être tué sur les quatre heures. (*Bal.*) [3] J'ai su que vous étiez l'un des meilleurs amis de ce pauvre garçon. (*Bal.*) [4] Achille Deveria a tracé d'elle, le jour de sa mort, une esquisse fidèle, qui exprime la souffrance et le repos. (*Ste.-B.*) [5] Enfin, je me suis levé brusquement. " Qu'est-ce que c'est ? ai-je dit ; qu'est-ce que vous faites ?" Madame de V. a feint une vive surprise. Est-ce que monsieur n'a pas demandé à dîner ? — Pas du tout.— Édouard m'a dit que monsieur . . . Édouard s'est trompé." . . . La pauvre femme s'est mise alors à plier tristement sa nappe, en me jetant les yeux éplorés d'un chien qu'on a battu. " Monsieur a probablement dîné, a-t-elle repris d'une voix timide.— Probablement." (*Feuillet.*)

(§ 122.) [1] Après que les deux comtes furent sortis, Marie consola ses serviteurs, qui fondaient en larmes . . . Quand elle eut fini d'écrire, il était près de deux heures du matin . . . Lorsqu'on les eut éloignés, elle se remit en marche. (*Mignet.*) [2] À peine sa jambe eut-elle touché le gazon, qu'il tomba à genoux. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 123.) [1] Fais comme tu voudras, Bourguignon. (*Mar.*) [2] Mon père me pardonnera, dès qu'il vous aura vue. (*Mar.*) [3] Nous serons dispersés sur la surface de la terre, parce que nous serons de ta famille, et maudits, parce que nous porterons ton nom. (*Dum.*) [4] Si mon fils le rencontre, il lui fera tout le bien qu'il pourra. (*V. Hugo.*) [5] Quand vous jugerez la chose à point, et qu'il sera temps de l'arrêter, vous tirerez un coup de pistolet. (*V. Hugo.*) [6] Enfin, ce sera, je le suppose, un trait lancé contre la jurisdiction expéditive (*Dupin.*)

(§ 124.) [1] Quand vous aurez fini votre prière, vous m'ap

prendrez si vous voulez m'aider. (*de Vi.*) [2] C'est là que, lorsqu'il sera mort, elle vivra obscure et paisible. (*Coppée.*) [3] Quand vous en aurez goûté, vous ne voudrez plus manger d'autre chose. (*Dum.*) [4] Jamais, à coup sûr, il n'aura fait autant de bruit de son vivant. (*Scribe.*)

(§ 125.) [1] Je voulus voir si les races vivantes m'offriraient plus de vertus, ou moins de malheurs que les races évanouies. (*Chat.*) [2] Si tu avais fait la guerre dans la Valteline, tu ne parlerais pas comme ça. (*de Vi.*) [3] Si nous devions, dès ce monde, recevoir le prix dû à nos vertus ou à nos forfaits, toutes les prospérités seraient honorables, et un coup de foudre serait une mort infamante. (*Saintine.*) [4] Quand vous me donneriez cent mille francs, ça ne me ferait pas autant de plaisir que de vous voir manger mon pauvre dîner. (*Feuillet.*) [5] Cet exemple, je l'espère, ne sera pas perdu ; je voudrais qu'il servît à combattre l'espèce d'affaissement moral qui est la maladie de la génération nouvelle. (*Thierry.*) [6] Je saurais être pauvre, et je m'en ferais gloire. (*Ponsard.*)

(§ 126.) [1] Cependant que m'auraient servi des conseils ? Je ne les aurais pas suivi. (*de Vi.*) [2] Madame Récamier les connaissait tous, et en parlait très bien ; celui qui aurait voulu en écrire avec goût aurait dû en causer auparavant avec elle. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] Vous ne me répondez pas ; me serais-je trompé ? (*de Vi.*)

(§ 127.) [1] Le dîner était tout prêt ; il va être perdu, et le petit va être grondé par son père. (*Feuillet.*) [2] Je vais m'enfermer et m'abandonner à ma douleur. (*de Mu.*) [3] Vous cherchez une explication à ce que je viens de vous dire, n'est-ce pas ?— Et je ne la trouve point, je l'avoue. (*Dum.*) [4] Le parlement de Paris venait d'être relégué dans une petite ville. (*Mont.*)

(§ 128.) [1] Quand M. Fouquet a eu cessé de parler, M. Pussort s'est levé impétueusement. (*Sév.*) [2] Il sera sorti dès qu'il aura eu achevé la lettre. (*Duvivier.*)

Theme X.

Tenses of the Verb.

[1] I find Charles and speak to him ; but he answers nothing, and I leave him again. [2] I am going to-morrow, said he, and I shall take you back with me. [3] I shall come back in

half an hour; wait for me here. [4] I have been here some time; I am waiting for the young officer. [5] He has been talking for two weeks of his friend who was to come from Paris. [6] Now I shall leave you; I have listened to you already two hours. [7] As I raised my eyes, I saw him in front of me. [8] He was looking at me. [9] I drew near to him, and said a few words. [10] He listened to me, but said nothing. [11] He departed, and I found myself alone. [12] When she first came to our city, I kept seeking her everywhere. [13] I thought that she had arrived, but I could not find her. [14] As we were going to the theatre yesterday, we discovered them. [15] If they had given me the letter earlier, you would already have the answer. [16] He had been speaking several hours, and we were all very tired. [17] During many years, Napoleon had appeared invincible, but then he fell. [18] We had already been there a week when our friends arrived. [19] Louis XIV. was the greatest monarch of his time. [20] Where did your friends travel last winter? [21] They visited England and Scotland. [22] We told the poor boy that we were his best friends, but he did not believe us. [23] I saw yesterday the picture which he had made of her, and admired it greatly. [24] My friend, said I to him, you never painted anything so beautiful. [25] As soon as I had dined, I folded my napkin and went out. [26] When I had arrived at home, I began to write. [27] After I had finished the letter, I sent it at once to the post. [28] I cannot tell whether they will come; but as long as they are here, I shall be happy. [29] When you begin the picture you will tell me so. [30] They will get up as soon as the dinner is ready. [31] I shall recognize them as soon as I have seen them. [32] If this world were perfect, we should receive the reward due to our virtues. [33] If you ate my poor dinner, I should be satisfied. [34] He would like to give us a thousand francs, but he has not so much money. [35] I cannot tell you what time it is; I have no watch. [36] Would

you have received me, if I had come to see you? [37] If I had known that you were coming, I should have stayed at home in order to receive you. [38] I have just visited one of our friends; I am going to come to your house again to-morrow; at present I have other things to do.

B.—Modes of the Verb.

INDICATIVE.

129. The indicative is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, except in the cases to be stated below.

a. The indicative appears in object-clauses after an affirmative verb: thus, **savez-vous qui je suis** *do you know who I am?* **je vous ai dit que j'y étais** *I told you that I was there.* The subjunctive of indirect statement is not a French construction.

b. After **si** *if*, only the indicative is used except in the pluperfect tense: see § **138***a*.

c. The conditional has been treated under the head of Tenses (above, § **125–6**); there remain, then, only the subjunctive and imperative to be considered.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

130. The subjunctive is the mode of contingency, anticipation, expectation, requirement. It belongs for the most part to dependent clauses, and is usually introduced by the conjunction **que** *that.*

a. Hence, in giving the forms of the verb, it is customary to prefix **que** to the subjunctive through its whole inflection: see VIII. 7*b*.

131. The subjunctive is used in independent clauses, or without **que** *that*, in the following cases:

a. In **sache** *know*, used negatively in the 1st sing.: thus, **je ne sache pas** *I hardly know;* also after **que** meaning *so far as:* thus, **que je sache** *so far as I know* (but **que je crois** etc.).

Some regard this as an old or irregular indicative form. As to **vive**, in **qui vive** *who is there?* see above, XXXVIII. 4*b* (p. 176, bottom).

b. Sometimes, in wishes or requirements—that is, in an optative or imperative sense: thus, **ainsi soit-il** *so be it*, **puissiez-**

vous réussir *may you (be able to) succeed*, **plût à Dieu que . . .** *might it please God that . . .*

This is rare, except with the present subjunctives **sois, puisse, veuille, garde, vive, périsse,** and **plaise,** and with the imperfects **plût** and **dût.** Hence the use of **soit . . . soit** as conjunctions (XXXIV. 3).

c. Hence also sometimes in a concessive or a conditional sense (giving the meaning of *if*) : thus, **vienne qui voudra, je resterai** *come who will, I shall stay,* **eût-il été plus fort** *had he been* (or *if he had been*) *stronger.*

Note in these uses the inverted order of verb and subject. In the same senses, **que** is also often used before the subjunctive: see § **142.**

d. The pluperfect subjunctive may stand (instead of the conditional : § 125*c*) in a hypothetical sentence, in the clause expressing conclusion or result, and even when the other clause is implied only : thus, **sa main l'eût sauvée** (for **l'aurait sauvée**), **si elle eût pu être sauvée** *his hand had saved her, if it had been possible to save her,* **il eût été embarrassé dans une telle conversation** *he would have been embarrassed in such a conversation.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XIX. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses.

(§ 131.) [1] Je ne sache pas qu'on ait[a] jamais appelé duel ce qui se passait entre Louis XVI. et le bourreau. (*Chat.*) [2] Il s'agit de Dorante; avez-vous sujet de vous plaindre[b] de lui ?— Non, que je sache. (*Mar.*) [3] On dit que celui qui le gardera à Pignerol est un fort honnête homme; Dieu le veuille ! ou, pour mieux dire, Dieu le garde ! (*de Sév.*) [4] Dieu soit béni ! vous voilà vivant. (*de Mu.*) [5] Dieu sauve la reine Élisabeth ! Ainsi périssent tous ses ennemis ! ajouta le docteur Fletcher. (*Mignet.*) [6] Loué soit Dieu, dit-elle, de[c] la nouvelle que vous m'apportez. (*Mignet.*) [7] Hélas ! fasse le ciel qu'elle ne vous brûle pas ! (*de Vi.*) [8] Plût aux dieux que ce fût le dernier de ses crimes. (*Rac.*) [9] Dût cela vous fâcher encore, il faut que j'en convienne. (*Meilhac.*) [10] Le grand Condé n'en tira aucun succès, soit que les circonstances des lieux lui fussent[d] moins favorables, soit qu'il eût[d] pris des mesures moins justes. (*Vol.*) [11] Vienne un déluge, la montagne aura disparu depuis longtemps sous les flots, que[e] les oiseaux voleront encore. (*V. Hugo.*) [12] Et quel âge as-tu ?— Neuf ans, monsieur, vienne la Toussaint.

[a] 134*c.* [b] § 185*a.* [c] § 162*c.* [d] § 137*b.* [e] § 221*c.*

(*Coppée.*) [13] Il n'est pas de démon, en effet, fût-ce même celui de la tristesse, qui ose affronter le voisinage des petits enfants. (*Ste.-B.*) [14] Oui, monsieur, mais en eût-elle vingt fois davantage, je ne l'épouserais pas. (*Mar.*) [15] S'il eût osé, il se fût mis en colère. (*La F.*) [16] La Hollande n'eût pas subsisté longtemps, si elle se fût bornée à enlever la flotte d'argent des Espagnols. (*Vol.*) [17] À me voir[f], vous n'eussiez su si j'étais mort ou vivant. (*Courier.*) [18] La princesse aurait en ce moment porté le diadème de la France, son front n'eût pas été plus imposant qu'il l'était sous le beau diadème de ses cheveux. (*Bal.*)

132. Subjunctives in dependent clauses (usually after **que** *that*) may be best classified under the heads of 1. Subjunctives in substantive clauses, or those used as subject or object of a verb; 2. Subjunctives in adjective clauses, or those used to qualify a noun; 3. Subjunctives in adverbial clauses, or those used to qualify a verb.

133. The subjunctive occurs in a clause used as logical subject of an impersonal verb—that is, of one having the grammatical subject **il** or **ce** (XI. 2)—whenever anticipation, expectation, requirement, or the like, is implied.

The commonest of such impersonal verbs are **il faut** *it is necessary* (XXX. 6), **il convient** *it is suitable*, **il suffit** *it is enough*, **il vaut mieux** *it is better*, **il importe** *it matters*, **il se peut** *it is possible*, **il semble** *it seems*, **il est facile** or **difficile** or **nécessaire** or **possible** or **rare** or **faux** or **singulier** *it is easy* or *hard* or *necessary* or *possible* or *rare* or *false* or *singular*, and the like: thus, **il faut qu'il soit ici** *he must be here*, **il suffit qu'elle ait avoué sa faute** *it is enough that she has confessed her fault*, **il est possible que nous revenions** *it is possible that we come back*, **c'est dommage que je l'aie perdu** *it is a pity that I lost it.*

a. But the indicative is used if the clause is the distinct statement of a fact; so especially with **il est vrai** or **sûr** or **clair** *it is true* or *sure* or *clear*, **il paraît** *it appears*, **il arrive** *it happens*, **il résulte** *it follows*, and the like: thus, **il est vrai qu'il n'est pas encore arrivé** *it is true that he has not yet arrived*, **il paraît que vous avez raison** *it appears that you are right.*

[f] § 182*k*.

b. In some cases, either mode is admissible, according to the degree of actuality implied or of the subject's responsibility for it. And the use of the subjunctive is more decidedly suggested if the principal clause is negative or interrogative: thus, **est-il vrai qu'il soit arrivé** *is it true that he has arrived?* **il ne paraît pas qu'il ait tort** *it does not appear that he is wrong.* The subjunctive is also required if its clause precedes: thus, **qu'il soit arrivé, et qu'il ait été reçu avec joie, tout cela est vrai** *that he has come, and has been received with joy, is all true.*

c. Sometimes the grammatical subject is omitted, or the principal clause is otherwise incomplete: thus, **mieux vaudrait qu'il fût ailleurs** *it would be better that he were elsewhere,* **quelle honte qu'il se soit sauvé** *what a shame that he has run away!* **non que j'éprouvasse du plaisir** *not that I felt any pleasure.*

134. The subjunctive stands in a clause which is used as the object of certain verbs: namely—

a. Of verbs that signify wishing, requiring, approving, permitting, forbidding, expecting, deserving, and the like.

Thus, **il veut que nous disions la vérité** *he wishes that we tell the truth,* **je défends qu'on sorte d'ici** *I forbid any one to go out from here.* Verbs of preventing take further **a ne** before the subjunctive: see § **170***a*.

b. Of verbs that signify regarding with such and such a feeling, as admiration, joy, grief, apprehension, doubt, indignation, and the like.

Thus, **je m'étonne qu'il ne nous voie pas** *I am astonished that he does not* (or *should not*) *see us,* **il se réjouit que vous fussiez de retour** *he was glad that you were back again.* Verbs of apprehending and doubting require further **a ne** before the subjunctive (see § **170***a*): thus, **je crains qu'il ne vienne** *I fear that* (or *lest*) *he is coming,* **doutez-vous que cela ne soit vrai** *do you doubt that this is true?*

c. Of verbs that signify thinking, viewing, supposing, and representing or stating—but usually only if the sentence is negative or interrogative or conditional.

Thus, **je ne crois pas qu'il soit déjà arrivé** *I do not believe that he has already arrived,* **espérez-vous encore qu'il vienne** *do you still hope that he is coming?* **s'il affirme que ce soit ainsi** *if he affirms that it is so.*

d. Under these heads, there are various exceptions. The sub-

junctive is not used when a distinct fact is intended to be implied; nor after verbs expressing decision or resolve (which take the future or conditional); nor after verbs expressive of regarding with a certain feeling, if **de ce** is introduced before **que**: thus, **se plaindre de ce qu'il est ici** *lament that he is here.* Verbs of doubting, denying, and the like, are treated as if negative. If the objective clause is put first, it requires the subjunctive (cf. § **133***b*, end).

e. There are various phrases composed of **être** or **avoir** with following adjective or noun respectively, which are treated as if simple verbs in regard to requiring the subjunctive. Such are especially **être heureux** or **ravi** or **triste** or **fâché** or **surpris** *be happy* or *charmed* or *sad* or *sorry* or *surprised*, and the like, and **avoir honte** or **peur** *be ashamed* or *afraid*, and the like: thus, **je suis ravi que vous ayez besoin de moi** *I am delighted that you have need of me*, **j'ai peur qu'il ne vienne pas** *I fear he will not come.* Even after such nouns as **peur** and **crainte** in other constructions the subjunctive is used: thus, **de peur qu'il ne vienne pas** *for fear that he may not come.*

f. For the subjunctive in a substantive clause really governed by a preposition, see below, § **136***a*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XX. Subjunctive in Subject and Object Clauses.

(§ 133.) [1] Il faudrait que vous vinssiez vous-même proposer ce mariage à mon père. (*de Mu.*) [2] Il fallait que la mère et la fille eussent vécu loin du monde. (*About.*) [3] Ce n'est pas que la puissance et les événements personnels soient comparables. (*Vol.*) [4] Il n'est pas étonnant que Rome ait accordé cette bulle; mais il l'est que des personnes toutes-puissantes en aient besoin. (*Vol.*) [5] Cela ne m'étonne pas, dit-il, qu'il soit mort. (*de Mu.*) [6] Cela me fait soupçonner qu'il se pourrait[a] bien que les âmes des méchants fussent anéanties à leur mort. (*Rouss.*) [7] Il semble que l'on ne puisse rire que des choses ridicules. (*La Br.*) [8] Il serait pourtant singulier qu'il partît, après tout ce que j'ai fait. (*Mar.*) [9] C'est fini; il paraît que décidément je suis un homme de génie. (*Scribe.*) [10] Mais il me semble que nous le savons déjà. (*Ste.-B.*) [11] Qu'une chose aussi visible qu'est la vanité du monde soit si peu connue, cela est admirable! (*Pasc.*) [12] Il est bien rare qu'on s'établisse en paix dans cette façon d'être sèche et bornée. (*de Staël.*) [13] Quel malheur, dit-il, que cette fièvre ne soit pas échue à

[a] § XXV. 8*f*.

son oncle ; elle l'aurait guéri ! (*About.*) [14] Plût au ciel que je fusse de l'avis de mes amis sur mes ouvrages ! (*Béranger.*) [15] Qu'importe[a] à l'État qu'Ergaste soit riche, qu'il ait des chiens qui arrêtent bien? (*La Br.*) [16] Non pas que je veuille enlever à[b] d'habiles ministres, à de grands négociateurs, la gloire qui leur appartient. (*Scribe.*)

(§ 134.) [1] Voulez-vous qu'on dise du bien de vous ? n'en dites point. (*Pasc.*) [2] Condé et Turenne voulaient qu'on démolît la plupart des places hollandaises. (*Vol.*) [3] Enfin, il parla de sa valise, priant fort qu'on en eût grand soin, qu'on la mît au chevet de son lit. (*Courier.*) [4] Charles-Quint demanda que l'expédition fût ajournée. (*Mignet.*) [5] Enfin, il ne put empêcher que l'empereur, l'empire, et l'Espagne ne[c] s'alliassent avec la Hollande. (*Vol.*) [6] Nous verrons, répondit M. Auvray; attends que la fièvre soit passée. (*About.*) [7] En vérité, ne mériteriez-vous que je les prisse ? (*Mar.*) [8] Les Hollandais eussent bien mieux aimé qu'il eût rendu la Flandre. (*Vol.*) [9] Je crains qu'il ne[a] vous vienne à l'esprit que c'est pour moi que je parle. (*de Vi.*) [10] On ne croirait pas que les souverains eussent obligation aux philosophes. (*Vol.*) [11] Je suppose que les hommes soient éternels sur la terre. (*La Br.*) [12] Je nie donc en principe qu'elle n'ait[a] fait du tort pour le plaisir de nuire. (*About.*) [13] Je suis fâché que tu puisses croire une pareille vilenie de ma part. (*G. Sand.*) [14] Je n'aurais pas besoin qu'on reportât mon cœur dans ma patrie ; il n'en est jamais sorti. (*Rouss.*) [15] Nous avons peur que tu n'aies[a] pas tout dit a madame. (*Mar.*) [16] La princesse Marie s'était d'abord jetée en arrière, de peur que l'on ne[a] distinguât les larmes de ses yeux. (*de Vi.*)

Theme 11.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT AND IN SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

[1] I hardly know anything more beautiful than this picture. [2] It is not a portrait, so far as I know. [3] He is dead ! the will of Heaven be done ! may we find a successor who is worthy of him ! [4] Long live the men who wish well to the country ! [5] Would to God that he arrive safe to day !

[a] § 148*b*. [b] § 161*c*. [c] § 170*a*.

[6] Would to God, say I, that he had never gone away! [7] Come what will, we have done our whole duty. [8] Had he been here, we should not have had to seek another. [9] Were it my own son, I could not love him better. [10] If they had listened to us, this misfortune would not have befallen them. [11] They had hidden themselves, as if they had been afraid of being seen.

[12] Must the boy come back, as soon as he has carried the letters to the post? [13] Yes, it is important that he be here before four o'clock. [14] It is a pity that he is to go so far; who knows whether we find him at the appointed time? [15] What a misfortune that we have not sent him sooner! [16] I wish her to come and bring me the books that I lent her. [17] Have you not permitted that your friend read them before bringing them back? [18] Yes, but I should prefer that she read them more promptly; I fear that she may have lost them. [19] I do not think that they are lost; I assure you that she has them still, and that she will send them back; she is waiting probably that you ask for them. [20] My teacher permits that we go into his garden, but he does not wish us to carry away anything; he would be angry if (que) we should do so. [21] We are astonished that you have got up so early. [22] I got up early for fear that you should not find me ready.

135. The subjunctive is used in adjective clauses—that is, such as are introduced by a relative pronoun and qualify a noun—in the following cases:

a. When the noun qualified stands in a construction implying anticipation—as demand, expectation, purpose, and the like.

Thus, **je cherche une retraite où je sois tranquille** *I seek a nook in which I may be quiet*, **envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui me rende ce service** *send me some one who may do me this service.* In these cases the English also generally has a potential or conditional phrase.

b. After a superlative, or a numeral word having a sense akin to the superlative.

Thus, **c'est le meilleur homme que je connaisse** *he is the best man I know*, **le premier qui soit arrivé jusqu'ici** *the first that has yet arrived.* In the same manner, after **seul, unique,** or the like: thus, **le seul roi qui ait régné si longtemps** *the only king that has reigned so long.*

c. Often, after a negative or an interrogative or a conditional clause.

Thus, **il n'y a personne qui ne soit venu** *there is no one who has not come*, **à quoi sert un roi qui soit injuste** *of what use is a king that is unjust?* **s'il a un couteau qui soit bon** *if he has a knife that is good.* So after **peu** in the sense of *but few, not many:* thus, **il y a peu de rois qui sachent gouverner** *there are few kings that know how to govern.*

d. In all these cases, the indicative is used when greater actuality or objectiveness is implied.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXI. Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses.

(§ 135.) [1] Ayez l'esprit de[a] lui dire quelque chose qui la persuade. (*G. Sand.*) [2] Je cherchai la solitude, et, à défaut d'âmes qui pussent me comprendre, je me plaignis à Dieu. (*Dum.*) [3] Il semble qu'un père et qu'une mère soient de ces êtres qu'on ne puisse trop louer, ou du moins trop aimer. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] Vous me dites que votre amitié, telle qu'elle est, subsistera toujours pour moi, tel que je sois. (*Rouss.*) [5] L'homme est un étrange animal: je ne suis pas le premier qui l'ait dit. (*About.*) [6] On envoya chercher un carrosse de louage, le plus beau qui fût dans toute la ville. (*de Mu.*) [7] Le dernier barde qu'on ait ouï dans ces déserts me chanta les poèmes dont un héros consolait jadis sa vieillesse. (*Chat.*) [8] Il n'y a que le bon Dieu qui puisse gouverner les choses et les hommes. (*G. Sand.*) [9] Pas un talent, pas une vertu, pas une distinction qu'elle n'aimât à connaître, à convier, à obliger. (*Ste.-B.*) [10] Il n'y a guère de défauts qui ne soient plus pardonnables que les moyens dont on se sert pour les cacher. (*La R.*) [11] Il n'y a personne qui nous vaille pour l'ordre, l'économie, et les confitures. (*About.*) [12] Jamais ce nom ne sera pour un homme qui soit ou le vainqueur ou l'esclave de Rome. (*Corn.*) [13] S'il y avait un pays d'Amazones qui se procurassent une colonie de petits garçons

pour les élever comme on élève les femmes, bientôt les hommes prendraient la première place. (*de Maistre.*)

136. The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses—that is, such as limit or qualify the action of a verb—in many cases, where a looking forward, anticipation, contingency is implied.

a. The cases falling under this rule are in great part really those of substantive clauses introduced by **que** *that*, and having various constructions: thus, especially, governed by a preposition, as in **avant que, pour que, sans que**, etc.; or appositional to or dependent on a noun, as in **afin que, en cas que, de manière que**, etc.; or in absolute construction with an adjective, as in **loin que, supposé que, pourvu que**, etc.; or in more elliptical phrases, as **à moins que, bien que, encore que** (and **quoique**, though written as one word), etc. But it is convenient and usual to treat the **que** as forming along with the preceding word or phrase a compound conjunction or conjunction-phrase (XXXIV. 5), and so to regard the clause introduced by it as directly adverbial.

137. Adverbial clauses having the subjunctive may be classified as follows:

a. Temporal clauses, expressing time before or up to which anything happens.

The conjunctions are **avant que** *before*, **en attendant que** *until*, **jusqu'à ce que** *until*, **tant que** *so long as*. Thus, **sortons avant qu'il soit trop tard** *let us go out before it is too late*, **je resterai en attendant qu'il vienne** *I will stay until he comes*. But the indicative is used sometimes, when an actual past fact is signified: thus, **il résista tant qu'il pouvait** *he resisted as long as he could*.

b. Concessive and hypothetical clauses, expressing a supposition (whether accepted or refused).

The conjunctions are: **supposé que** or **en** (or **au**) **cas que** etc. *supposing*, **pourvu que** *provided*, **soit que** *whether*, **quoique** or **bien que** or **encore que** *although*, **à moins que** *unless*, **sans que** or **hors que** *without* or *unless*, **malgré que** or **nonobstant que** *notwithstanding that*, **non que** *not that*, **loin que** *far from its being the case that*, and a few others less common. Thus, **au cas qu'il vienne** *in case he comes*, **quoiqu'il ne soit pas coupable** *although he is not guilty*, **malgré que je ne veuille pas** *notwithstanding that I am unwilling*, **soit qu'il en ait ou qu'il n'en ait pas** *whether he has any or not*, **loin qu'il soit pauvre, il**

devient toujours plus riche *far from being poor, he grows all the time richer.*

As to **si**, and **que** by itself, see below, § **138**.

c. Clauses introduced by **que** after a relative pronoun or adjective or adverb, to be rendered in English by *whoever* or *whatever* or *however*, or other equivalent phrases.

These are special cases of the hypothetical clause. The usual combinations are **qui que, quoi que, quel . . . que, quelque . . . que** : see above, § **104, 107***c, d;* much more rarely, **où que, comme que,** and the like : thus, **où qu'il soit** *wherever he may be.* Less commonly, other combinations than with the relative are used in this sense and construction : as, **si . . . que, pour . . . que, tel . . . que** : thus, **si haut qu'il parlât** *however loudly he spoke*, **pour peu que vous donniez** *however little you may give.* **Tout . . . que** in a similar use takes the subjunctive when understood hypothetically : thus, **tout aimable qu'elle soit** *however amiable she may be.*

d. Final and consecutive clauses, or those expressing purpose and result.

The conjunctions are **afin que** or **pour que** *in order that*, **de manière que** or **de sorte que** *so that*, **si . . . que** *so . . . that ;* and **que** alone often stands in the sense of **pour que** : thus, **afin que** (or **pour que** or simply **que**) **vous le sachiez** *in order that you may know it*, **faites de** (or **en**) **sorte que je puisse la voir** *manage so that I may see her.* But when the result is not one of anticipation, the subjunctive is not taken : thus, **il fit de sorte que je la vis** *he managed so that I saw her.*

138. Certain special cases are as follows :

a. **Si** *if* may be followed by the subjunctive pluperfect ; otherwise, only by the indicative present or imperfect (XXXIV. **1***b*), or by their compounds, the perfect or pluperfect.

Exceptions, showing other subjunctive tenses after **si** *if*, are very rare, but not entirely unknown. And occasional instances occur of a conditional so used.

b. If a **si** in one clause is repeated by **que** in a following clause (§ **221***b*), the latter has the subjunctive : thus, **s'il n'a qu'un million, et qu'il en ait besoin de deux** *if he has only one million, and wants two.*

c. A **que** followed by **ne**, and used in the sense of *without, unless, until*, takes the subjunctive : thus, **il n'a jamais rien fait qu'il ne m'ait consulté** *he has never done anything without consulting me* (or *till he has consulted me*).

d. For **que** used imperatively with the subjunctive, see below, § **142.**

139. The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause is in general governed by that of the principal clause, being past (impf. or plupf.) if the latter is past or conditional, and present (or perfect) if the latter is present or future.

Thus, **je veux qu'il vienne** *I wish him to come*, **je voulais** (or **voulus** or **ai voulu**) **qu'il vînt** *I wanted him to come*, **j'avais voulu qu'il vînt** *I had wanted him to come*, **je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu** *I do not believe that he has come*, **je ne croyais pas qu'il fût venu** *I did not believe that he had come*, **j'attendrai qu'il vienne** or **qu'il soit venu** *I will wait till he comes* or *till he has come*, **j'attendrais qu'il vînt** or **qu'il fût venu** *I should wait till he came* or *till he had come.*

a. There are exceptions to this rule of sequence. Sometimes a past subjunctive is used by a logical necessity, as in **je ne crois pas que les Romains parlassent ainsi** *I do not believe that the Romans used to speak thus.* After a perfect (as being a kind of present ; also, when used instead of a preterit : § **121***b*, *c*) a present subjunctive is frequently used : thus, **Dieu nous a donné la raison afin que nous nous en servions** *God has given us reason in order that we may make use of it.* Other more irregular cases occasionally occur. In familiar speech, especially, the use of an imperfect subjunctive is mainly avoided, by various devices, and in part by putting the present in its place : thus, **il faudrait qu'il s'en aille sur-le-champ** *he would have to go directly.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXII. Subjunctive in Adverb-Clauses.**

(§ 137.) [1] Elle lut avec une grande ferveur les prières des agonisants. Avant qu'elle les eût achevées, on vint heurter à la porte. (*Mignet.*) [2] Elle me restera fidèle jusqu'à ce que je puisse l'épouser. (*de Mu.*) [3] Oui, vous êtes mon oncle, quoique vous l'ayez oublié ce matin. (*About.*) [4] J'avais affaire à un ennemi qui savait mieux se battre que moi, bien que j'eusse deux ans de salle. (*Le Sage.*) [5] Je ne l'ai pas, à moins qu'il ne soit dans mon lit. (*About.*) [6] Ils l'aidèrent à poser sa tête sur le billot, sans qu'elle cessât de prier. (*Mignet.*) [7] Voyons, cher beau-père, à quoi puis-je vous être bon ?—si tant est que je puisse être bon à quelque chose. (*Augier.*) [8] Quand ce fort n'eût arrêté l'armée qu'un seul jour, elle serait morte de faim et de fatigue. (*Vol.*) [9] Quelque rare que soit le véritable amour, il l'est

moins que la véritable amitié. (*La R.*) [10] Quoi qu'il en soit, que m'importe ce que seront les méchants? (*Rouss.*) [11] Hélas! où que vous soyez, vous êtes mort pour moi. (*Rouss.*) [12] Combien que les malhonnêtes gens prospèrent, ne pensez pas qu'ils soient heureux. (*Marmontel.*) [13] Lisette, quelque éloignement que tu aies pour moi, je suis forcé de te parler. (*Mar.*) [14] Si honnête homme et si peu intéressé que soit un paysan, on ne peut pas dire que la vue de l'argent lui fasse de la peine. (*G. Sand.*) [15] La liberté doit vaincre à tel prix que ce soit. (*Mignet.*) [16] Pour peu qu'elles remuassent, le bâtiment tremblait. (*St. Simon.*) [17] Pour grands que soient les rois, ils sont ce que nous sommes. (*Corn.*) [18] Tout auteur que je sois, je ne suis pas jaloux. (*Regnard.*) [19] Monsieur, il faut me dire votre nom, afin que je sache à qui je parle. (*de Sév.*) [20] Seigneur Oluf, reculez-vous, pour que je passe, dit le chevalier à la visière baissée. (*Gautier.*) [21] Mais la tristesse avait pris trop impérieusement possession de lui pour qu'il se déshabituât de souffrir. (*Blanc.*) [22] Reviens, que je te revoie. (*Dum.*) [23] Cachez-vous dans votre chambre, qu'on vous croie sorti. (*V. Hugo.*) [24] Placez-le de manière qu'il soit bien ferme. (*Guizot.*)

(§ 138.) [1] Je ne me serais pas consolé si monsieur le comte eût succombé. (*Bouilly.*) [2] Ou, si d'un sang trop vil ta main serait trempée, au défaut de ton bras, prête-moi ton épée. (*Rac.*) [3] Si j'étais riche, d'une condition honnête, et que je t'aimasse autant que je t'aime, ton cœur n'aurait point de répugnance pour moi? (*Mar.*) [4] Il ne courut plus par le monde de chansons ni de vaudevilles qu'on ne les lui prêtât. (*Ste.-B.*)

IMPERATIVE.

140. The imperative has in general the same uses in French as in English (see VII. **9**, VIII. **7***c*).

a. With the proper imperative persons (2d sing., and 1st and 2d pl.), no subject is ever expressed.

b. In the absence of a first person singular, the first plural is sometimes used with that value: thus, **soyons homme, m'écriai-je** *let me play the man, cried I to myself.*

c. Some imperatives are used interjectionally; the commonest are **allons** *come, come on*, **tiens** or **tenez** *hold! stop a moment, see here, take notice*, and the like, **voyons** *let's see, see here*, **va** *go!* i.e. *pshaw, nonsense*, and the like.

[6] Would to God, say I, that he had never gone away! [7] Come what will, we have done our whole duty. [8] Had he been here, we should not have had to seek another. [9] Were it my own son, I could not love him better. [10] If they had listened to us, this misfortune would not have befallen them. [11] They had hidden themselves, as if they had been afraid of being seen.

[12] Must the boy come back, as soon as he has carried the letters to the post? [13] Yes, it is important that he be here before four o'clock. [14] It is a pity that he is to go so far; who knows whether we find him at the appointed time? [15] What a misfortune that we have not sent him sooner! [16] I wish her to come and bring me the books that I lent her. [17] Have you not permitted that your friend read them before bringing them back? [18] Yes, but I should prefer that she read them more promptly; I fear that she may have lost them. [19] I do not think that they are lost; I assure you that she has them still, and that she will send them back; she is waiting probably that you ask for them. [20] My teacher permits that we go into his garden, but he does not wish us to carry away anything; he would be angry if (que) we should do so. [21] We are astonished that you have got up so early. [22] I got up early for fear that you should not find me ready.

135. The subjunctive is used in adjective clauses—that is, such as are introduced by a relative pronoun and qualify a noun—in the following cases:

a. When the noun qualified stands in a construction implying anticipation—as demand, expectation, purpose, and the like.

Thus, **je cherche une retraite où je sois tranquille** *I seek a nook in which I may be quiet*, **envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui me rende ce service** *send me some one who may do me this service.* In these cases the English also generally has a potential or conditional phrase.

b. After a superlative, or a numeral word having a sense akin to the superlative.

Thus, **c'est le meilleur homme que je connaisse** *he is the best man I know*, **le premier qui soit arrivé jusqu'ici** *the first that has yet arrived.* In the same manner, after **seul, unique,** or the like: thus, **le seul roi qui ait régné si longtemps** *the only king that has reigned so long.*

c. Often, after a negative or an interrogative or a conditional clause.

Thus, **il n'y a personne qui ne soit venu** *there is no one who has not come*, **à quoi sert un roi qui soit injuste** *of what use is a king that is unjust?* **s'il a un couteau qui soit bon** *if he has a knife that is good.* So after **peu** in the sense of *but few, not many:* thus, **il y a peu de rois qui sachent gouverner** *there are few kings that know how to govern.*

d. In all these cases, the indicative is used when greater actuality or objectiveness is implied.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXI. Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses.

(§ 135.) [1] Ayez l'esprit de[a] lui dire quelque chose qui la persuade. (*G. Sand.*) [2] Je cherchai la solitude, et, à défaut d'âmes qui pussent me comprendre, je me plaignis à Dieu. (*Dum.*) [3] Il semble qu'un père et qu'une mère soient de ces êtres qu'on ne puisse trop louer, ou du moins trop aimer. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] Vous me dites que votre amitié, telle qu'elle est, subsistera toujours pour moi, tel que je sois. (*Rouss.*) [5] L'homme est un étrange animal: je ne suis pas le premier qui l'ait dit. (*About.*) [6] On envoya chercher un carrosse de louage, le plus beau qui fût dans toute la ville. (*de Mu.*) [7] Le dernier barde qu'on ait ouï dans ces déserts me chanta les poèmes dont un héros consolait jadis sa vieillesse. (*Chat.*) [8] Il n'y a que le bon Dieu qui puisse gouverner les choses et les hommes. (*G. Sand.*) [9] Pas un talent, pas une vertu, pas une distinction qu'elle n'aimât à connaître, à convier, à obliger. (*Ste.-B.*) [10] Il n'y a guère de défauts qui ne soient plus pardonnables que les moyens dont on se sert pour les cacher. (*La R.*) [11] Il n'y a personne qui nous vaille pour l'ordre, l'économie, et les confitures. (*About.*) [12] Jamais ce nom ne sera pour un homme qui soit ou le vainqueur ou l'esclave de Rome. (*Corn.*) [13] S'il y avait un pays d'Amazones qui se procurassent une colonie de petits garçons

[a] § 185*a*.

pour les élever comme on élève les femmes, bientôt les hommes prendraient la première place. (*de Maistre.*)

136. The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses—that is, such as limit or qualify the action of a verb—in many cases, where a looking forward, anticipation, contingency is implied.

a. The cases falling under this rule are in great part really those of substantive clauses introduced by **que** *that*, and having various constructions: thus, especially, governed by a preposition, as in **avant que, pour que, sans que,** etc.; or appositional to or dependent on a noun, as in **afin que, en cas que, de manière que,** etc.; or in absolute construction with an adjective, as in **loin que, supposé que, pourvu que,** etc.; or in more elliptical phrases, as **à moins que, bien que, encore que** (and **quoique,** though written as one word), etc. But it is convenient and usual to treat the **que** as forming along with the preceding word or phrase a compound conjunction or conjunction-phrase (XXXIV. 5), and so to regard the clause introduced by it as directly adverbial.

137. Adverbial clauses having the subjunctive may be classified as follows:

a. Temporal clauses, expressing time before or up to which anything happens.

The conjunctions are **avant que** *before*, **en attendant que** *until*, **jusqu'à ce que** *until*, **tant que** *so long as.* Thus, **sortons avant qu'il soit trop tard** *let us go out before it is too late*, **je resterai en attendant qu'il vienne** *I will stay until he comes.* But the indicative is used sometimes, when an actual past fact is signified: thus, **il résista tant qu'il pouvait** *he resisted as long as he could.*

b. Concessive and hypothetical clauses, expressing a supposition (whether accepted or refused).

The conjunctions are: **supposé que** or **en** (or **au**) **cas que** etc. *supposing*, **pourvu que** *provided*, **soit que** *whether*, **quoique** or **bien que** or **encore que** *although*, **à moins que** *unless*, **sans que** or **hors que** *without* or *unless*, **malgré que** or **nonobstant que** *notwithstanding that*, **non que** *not that*, **loin que** *far from its being the case that*, and a few others less common. Thus, **au cas qu'il vienne** *in case he comes*, **quoiqu'il ne soit pas coupable** *although he is not guilty*, **malgré que je ne veuille pas** *notwithstanding that I am unwilling*, **soit qu'il en ait ou qu'il n'en ait pas** *whether he has any or not*, **loin qu'il soit pauvre, il**

devient toujours plus riche *far from being poor, he grows all the time richer.*

As to **si**, and **que** by itself, see below, § **138**.

c. Clauses introduced by **que** after a relative pronoun or adjective or adverb, to be rendered in English by *whoever* or *whatever* or *however*, or other equivalent phrases.

These are special cases of the hypothetical clause. The usual combinations are **qui que, quoi que, quel . . . que, quelque . . . que** : see above, § **104, 107***c, d;* much more rarely, **où que, comme que,** and the like : thus, **où qu'il soit** *wherever he may be.* Less commonly, other combinations than with the relative are used in this sense and construction : as, **si . . . que, pour . . . que, tel . . . que** : thus, **si haut qu'il parlât** *however loudly he spoke*, **pour peu que vous donniez** *however little you may give.* **Tout . . . que** in a similar use takes the subjunctive when understood hypothetically : thus, **tout aimable qu'elle soit** *however amiable she may be.*

d. Final and consecutive clauses, or those expressing purpose and result.

The conjunctions are **afin que** or **pour que** *in order that*, **de manière que** or **de sorte que** *so that*, **si . . . que** *so . . . that ;* and **que** alone often stands in the sense of **pour que** : thus, **afin que** (or **pour que** or simply **que**) **vous le sachiez** *in order that you may know it*, **faites de** (or **en**) **sorte que je puisse la voir** *manage so that I may see her.* But when the result is not one of anticipation, the subjunctive is not taken : thus, **il fit de sortc que je la vis** *he managed so that I saw her.*

138. Certain special cases are as follows :

a. **Si** *if* may be followed by the subjunctive pluperfect ; otherwise, only by the indicative present or imperfect (XXXIV. **1***b*), or by their compounds, the perfect or pluperfect.

Exceptions, showing other subjunctive tenses after **si** *if*, are very rare, but not entirely unknown. And occasional instances occur of a conditional so used.

b. If a **si** in one clause is repeated by **que** in a following clause (§ **221***b*), the latter has the subjunctive : thus, **s'il n'a qu'un million, et qu'il en ait besoin de deux** *if he has only one million, and wants two.*

c. A **que** followed by **ne**, and used in the sense of *without, unless, until*, takes the subjunctive : thus, **il n'a jamais rien fait qu'il ne m'ait consulté** *he has never done anything without consulting me* (or *till he has consulted me*).

d. For **que** used imperatively with the subjunctive, see below, § **142.**

139. The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause is in general governed by that of the principal clause, being past (impf. or plupf.) if the latter is past or conditional, and present (or perfect) if the latter is present or future.

Thus, **je veux qu'il vienne** *I wish him to come*, **je voulais** (or **voulus** or **ai voulu**) **qu'il vînt** *I wanted him to come*, **j'avais voulu qu'il vînt** *I had wanted him to come*, **je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu** *I do not believe that he has come*, **je ne croyais pas qu'il fût venu** *I did not believe that he had come*, **j'attendrai qu'il vienne** or **qu'il soit venu** *I will wait till he comes* or *till he has come*, **j'attendrais qu'il vînt** or **qu'il fût venu** *I should wait till he came* or *till he had come.*

a. There are exceptions to this rule of sequence. Sometimes a past subjunctive is used by a logical necessity, as in **je ne crois pas que les Romains parlassent ainsi** *I do not believe that the Romans used to speak thus.* After a perfect (as being a kind of present ; also, when used instead of a preterit : § **121***b*, *c*) a present subjunctive is frequently used : thus, **Dieu nous a donné la raison afin que nous nous en servions** *God has given us reason in order that we may make use of it.* Other more irregular cases occasionally occur. In familiar speech, especially, the use of an imperfect subjunctive is mainly avoided, by various devices, and in part by putting the present in its place : thus, **il faudrait qu'il s'en aille sur-le-champ** *he would have to go directly.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXII. Subjunctive in Adverb-Clauses.**

(§ 137.) [1] Elle lut avec une grande ferveur les prières des agonisants. Avant qu'elle les eût achevées, on vint heurter à la porte. (*Mignet.*) [2] Elle me restera fidèle jusqu'à ce que je puisse l'épouser. (*de Mu.*) [3] Oui, vous êtes mon oncle, quoique vous l'ayez oublié ce matin. (*About.*) [4] J'avais affaire à un ennemi qui savait mieux se battre que moi, bien que j'eusse deux ans de salle. (*Le Sage.*) [5] Je ne l'ai pas, à moins qu'il ne soit dans mon lit. (*About.*) [6] Ils l'aidèrent à poser sa tête sur le billot, sans qu'elle cessât de prier. (*Mignet.*) [7] Voyons, cher beau-père, à quoi puis-je vous être bon ?—si tant est que je puisse être bon à quelque chose. (*Augier.*) [8] Quand ce fort n'eût arrêté l'armée qu'un seul jour, elle serait morte de faim et de fatigue. (*Vol.*) [9] Quelque rare que soit le véritable amour, il l'est

moins que la véritable amitié. (*La R.*) [10] Quoi qu'il en soit, que m'importe ce que seront les méchants? (*Rouss.*) [11] Hélas! où que vous soyez, vous êtes mort pour moi. (*Rouss.*) [12] Combien que les malhonnêtes gens prospèrent, ne pensez pas qu'ils soient heureux. (*Marmontel.*) [13] Lisette, quelque éloignement que tu aies pour moi, je suis forcé de te parler. (*Mar.*) [14] Si honnête homme et si peu intéressé que soit un paysan, on ne peut pas dire que la vue de l'argent lui fasse de la peine. (*G. Sand.*) [15] La liberté doit vaincre à tel prix que ce soit. (*Mignet.*) [16] Pour peu qu'elles remuassent, le bâtiment tremblait. (*St. Simon.*) [17] Pour grands que soient les rois, ils sont ce que nous sommes. (*Corn.*) [18] Tout auteur que je sois, je ne suis pas jaloux. (*Regnard.*) [19] Monsieur, il faut me dire votre nom, afin que je sache à qui je parle. (*de Sév.*) [20] Seigneur Oluf, reculez-vous, pour que je passe, dit le chevalier à la visière baissée. (*Gautier.*) [21] Mais la tristesse avait pris trop impérieusement possession de lui pour qu'il se déshabituât de souffrir. (*Blanc.*) [22] Reviens, que je te revoie. (*Dum.*) [23] Cachez-vous dans votre chambre, qu'on vous croie sorti. (*V. Hugo.*) [24] Placez-le de manière qu'il soit bien ferme. (*Guizot.*)

(§ 138.) [1] Je ne me serais pas consolé si monsieur le comte eût succombé. (*Bouilly.*) [2] Ou, si d'un sang trop vil ta main serait trempée, au défaut de ton bras, prête-moi ton épée. (*Rac.*) [3] Si j'étais riche, d'une condition honnête, et que je t'aimasse autant que je t'aime, ton cœur n'aurait point de répugnance pour moi? (*Mar.*) [4] Il ne courut plus par le monde de chansons ni de vaudevilles qu'on ne les lui prêtât. (*Ste.-B.*)

IMPERATIVE.

140. The imperative has in general the same uses in French as in English (see VII. **9**, VIII. **7***c*).

a. With the proper imperative persons (2d sing., and 1st and 2d pl.), no subject is ever expressed.

b. In the absence of a first person singular, the first plural is sometimes used with that value: thus, **soyons homme, m'écriai-je** *let me play the man, cried I to myself.*

c. Some imperatives are used interjectionally; the commonest are **allons** *come, come on*, **tiens** or **tenez** *hold! stop a moment, see here, take notice*, and the like, **voyons** *let's see, see here*, **va** *go!* i.e. *pshaw, nonsense*, and the like.

d. In rare cases, a perfect imperative is found: thus, **ayez abandonné la ville quand l'ennemi y entrera** *have the city abandoned when the enemy enters it.*

141. For the lacking third persons of the imperative are used the third persons of the present subjunctive.

Thus, **qu'il soit, qu'ils soient** *let him be, let them be* (lit'ly, *that he may be*, etc.). The case is properly that of a subjunctive after verbs of wishing or requiring (**134***a*), but with the verb omitted on which the subjunctive should depend; as if **je veux qu'il soit** *I wish that he be*, **j'exige qu'ils soient** *I require that they be*, or the like.

a. The same paraphrase is sometimes found also for other persons of the imperative, especially the first singular: thus, **que je te retrouve ici** *let me find thee here again.*

142. The imperative (both the proper imperative and the paraphrase with **que**) not seldom has a concessive or hypothetical meaning.

Thus, **avoue-le, et je te le pardonne** *confess it, and I pardon thee for it* (i.e. *if thou confessest it, I will* etc.), **qu'il parle, tout se tait** *let him speak* (i.e. *if he speaks*), *every one is silent*, **qu'il parle ou qu'il se taise, peu m'importe** *I care little whether he speaks or holds his peace.*

a. For the infinitive used in the sense of an imperative, see below, § **176***g*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXIII. Imperative.**

(§ 140.) [1] Surtout ne perds pas la lettre! songe que tu as deux cent mille francs sur toi! (*V. Hugo.*) [2] Ne disputons point; car je ne changerai jamais. (*Mar.*) [3] Hâtez-vous, et que l'on donne le mot à toute la maison. (*Mar.*) [4] Feignons de sortir, afin qu'il m'arrête. (*Mar.*) [5] Voilà fort à propos ce fripon de Saint Jean; commençons par me débarrasser de lui. (*Scribe.*) [6] Allons, Fanchette; dis donc adieu à Marguerite. (*G. Sand.*) [7] Va, le mal n'est pas grand; consolons-nous. (*Mar.*) [8] Je disais donc qu'il me restait un tableau précieux. Tenez, monsieur, voyez. (*V. Hugo.*) [9] Ayez fini votre tâche à l'heure indiquée ou ne l'ayez point fini; on ne vous en témoignera ni plus ni moins de satisfaction. (*de Sacy.*)

(§ 141.) [1] Guéris-le bien, cher père, mais pas trop; qu'il reste assez fou pour m'aimer comme je l'aime. (*About.*) [2] Il y a pourtant un Dieu; que sa volonté soit faite! (*de Sév.*)

[3] Que je sauve la France et que je sois flétrie ; la honte soit pour moi, le fruit pour ma patrie. (*Ponsard.*)

(§ 142.) [1] Va-t-en, reviens ; tout cela doit m'être indifférent. (*Mar.*) [2] Laissez-lui le temps, et tout s'arrangera. (*de Mu.*) [3] A tous vos cavaliers je demande sa tête ; oui, qu'un d'eux me l'apporte, et je suis sa conquête. (*Corn.*) [4] Mais que ce sauveur impatiemment attendu donne tout à coup signe d'existence, l'instinct national le discerne et l'appelle. (*Napoléon.*)

THEME 12.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB-CLAUSES, AND IMPERATIVE.

[1] Send me a book that I can read without being bored. [2] She wanted to buy a present that was pretty and did not cost much. [3] Show me a road that leads me to the city. [4] I insist that you go away immediately. [5] We cannot wait till she comes from the city. [6] That is the handsomest picture that one has seen at the exhibition for several years, and the only one that I wish to buy. [7] I will tell you a story, the most extraordinary that you can imagine. [8] There are but few stories that I have not already heard. [9] I have met no one who is more sincerely attached to you. [10] We have done nothing to him of which we repent. [11] If you find a book that I ought to read, send it to me by the post. [12] I will be your companion until you find a better. [13] We will not leave you before you have arrived at your destination. [14] Provided that you love me, we will never part. [15] In case he tells me interesting news, I will write you everything. [16] Far from my being his friend, he had hated me since I had known him. [17] I shall not be able to visit you unless it is fine weather. [18] Whatever riches he may possess, however learned he may be, whatever he may have done, it is the character that makes the man. [19] Whatever may be your faults, you can correct them. [20] Whoever he may be, I do not fear him. [21] Wherever one goes, one

carries with him the manners of his country. [22] However great heroes may be, they are after all men. [23] Amiable as she is, I cannot love her. [24] Give me that book, that I may read it while I await her coming. [25] We must always speak so that others understand us. [26] If you admire this picture, and if you have means to buy it, why do you hesitate? [27] What must he do? [28] Your friend will be obliged to stay with you until it is fine weather. [29] She would not get up, although I called her three times. [30] I ran away, in order that she might not see me. [31] I did not think that you were so cowardly. [32] I know some one who would be willing to accompany me.

[33] Let me remember what she said to me. [34] If I must die, let me die. [35] Come, let us seek them everywhere, and perhaps we shall find them again. [36] Let him stay here, without stirring, and we at least shall not lose him.

C.—Adjuncts of the Verb.

143. The adjuncts of the verb are these: the subject, the predicate noun or adjective, the object, whether direct or indirect, the prepositional case-phrase, and the adverb.

SUBJECT.

144. In general, the verb has a single subject, expressed or implied, which determines or "governs" it in respect to number and person.

But the following points require notice:

a. The imperatively used exclamation **vive** *long live!* sometimes takes a plural subject: thus, **vive les jeunes gens** *hurrah for the young!* **Vivent,** however, is in such a case more usual and preferable.

b. After **ce** (not **il**) as grammatical subject (indefinite or impersonal), the verb agrees in number with the following predicate

noun ; also with the following pronoun, if it is of the 3d person (XI. 2*b*): thus, **ce sont nos amis** *it is our friends*, **ce sont eux** *it is they ;* but **c'est vous** *it is you.*

Very rarely, the verb remains singular before a plural noun. Rarely, too, the same agreement is made after another subject than **ce**: thus, **sa nourriture ordinaire sont des fruits** *its usual food is fruits.* (Buffon.)

c. With a collective subject, the verb is, as in English, sometimes singular and sometimes plural, according as the collection, or the individuals composing it, are the leading idea—more usually plural, if the noun is followed by **de** and a plural : thus, **une troupe de soldats marchaient** *a troop of soldiers were marching*, **la troupe vient** *the troop is coming*, **beaucoup d'hommes y sont** *many men are there.*

d. After the relative **qui** (as was pointed out above : see XXVI. 2*c*), the verb is of the person as well as number of the antecedent of **qui.**

e. More special cases are : a singular verb usual after **plus d'un**: thus, **plus d'un soldat a péri** *more than one soldier has fallen ;* either singular or plural after **un de** (with plural) . . . **qui** : thus, **une des plus belles actions qui soit** or **soient** . . . *one of the noblest acts that have . . .*

145. If a verb has more than one subject of the same person, it is regularly plural.

a. But the verb is oftener singular if to one noun is added another as its equivalent or emphatic repetition or explanation : thus, **son courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves** *his courage, his intrepidity astonish the bravest*, **la beauté et la grandeur de ce spectacle me frappa** *the beauty and grandeur of this spectacle struck me.*

b. The verb also often agrees with the nearest noun, the others being, as it were, lost from view ; so especially where there is a climax, or where the verb precedes the subjects : thus, **un mot, un soupir, un coup d'œil, nous trahit** *a word, a sigh, a glance betrays us*, **tombe Argos et ses murs** *down go Argos and its walls.*

c. A list of subjects is often summed up by **tout** *all* or *each*, **chacun** *each*, or the like ; then, of course, the verb is singular : thus, **hommes, dieux, animaux, tout y fait quelque rôle** *men, gods, animals—everything plays some part in it.*

d. Along with two subjects that are connected by **ou** *or* or **ni** *nor*, the plural as well as the singular is sometimes found used : thus, **le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes** *time or death is our remedy*, **Ulysse ni Calchas n'ont point encore parlé** *neither*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXIV. Verb and Subject.

(§ 144.) [1] Vive les jeunes gens ! tout est feu ; tout est grâce. (*Bret.*) [2] Ce sont trente ans gagnés sans peine. (*Pasc.*) [3] C'étaient des vieux soldats, pleins de santé et de vigueur. (*Thiers.*) [4] Joindrette remarqua que l'œil de M. Leblanc s'attachait à ces hommes. C'est des amis ! (*V. Hugo.*) [5] Il est des visages de femme qui trompent la science et déroutent l'observation par leur calme et par leur finesse. (*Bal.*) [6] Et comment aurait-il de la répugnance à revoir ceux qui l'ont soigné ? C'est nous ! (*About.*) [7] Un petit nombre de choses anciennes sont restées debout en France à travers nos révolutions périodiques. (*Ste.-B.*) [8] Une foule d'écrits utiles et instructifs se répandent. (*de Barante.*) [9] La plupart des poètes se sont livrés sans contrôle et sans frein à tous les instincts de leur nature. (*Ste.-B.*) [10] Le peu de bons ouvrages dont je me suis pénétré depuis que j'existe a développé le peu de bonnes qualités que j'ai. (*G. Sand.*) [11] Et c'est moi qui ai combiné, qui ai conduit tout cela, qui suis la cause de tous ces grands événements. (*Scribe.*) [12] Nous qui n'y étions pas, nous ne pouvons parler qu'avec une extrême réserve de cette époque. (*Ste.-B.*) [13] J'étais alors un des plus beaux enfants qui aient jamais foulé de leurs pieds nus les pierres de nos montagnes. (*Lam.*)

(§ 145.) [1] Tout l'intérêt et toute l'action du roman se passent dans ce voyage. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] Il souriait doucement et regardait doucement, et pourtant ce regard et ce sourire vous glaçaient de terreur. (*Gautier.*) [3] Un soupir, un regard, une simple rougeur, un silence est assez pour expliquer un cœur. (*Mol.*) [4] L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit aujourd'hui. (*Corn.*) [5] Ce courage si grand, cette âme si divine, n'est plus digne du jour ni digne de Pauline. (*Corn.*) [6] Quand le crime d'État se mêle au sacrilège, le sang ni l'amitié n'ont plus de privilège. (*Corn.*) [7] Le ciel, tout l'univers est plein de mes aïeux. (*Rac.*) [8] L'habileté, la prudence, le bon goût, tout conseillait ce dernier parti. (*Ste.-B.*) [9] Ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont su ce qu'ils faisaient. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 146.) [1] Ah ! te voilà, Bourguignon ! Mon portemanteau et toi, avez-vous été bien reçus ? (*Mar.*) [2] C'est heureux que ni toi ni moi n'ayons pris le mal de ce pauvre frère. (*Dau.*) [3] Dorante et moi, nous sommes destinés l'un à l'autre. (*Mar.*) [4] Hélas ! non, nous serons tous tristes, vous, moi, les magistrats . . . et le public. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 147.) [1] Quel sens cela avait-il? (*V. Hugo.*) [2] La crise terrible qu'elle avait provoquée sans le savoir, guérirait-elle le malade? (*About.*) [3] Mais, à propos de tes adieux, il me reste encore une chose à savoir. (*Mar.*) [4] S'il court de méchants bruits, c'est qu'on le calomnie. (*Ponsard.*) [5] Il est difficile d'aimer ceux que nous n'estimons point. (*La R.*) [6] Il me sera impossible de retenir mes larmes; cependant il faut s'en aller pour revenir. (*de Sév.*) [7] Ce n'est pas un petit objet que deux cent mille francs. (*Mar.*) [8] Ah! les sottes gens que nos gens! (*Mar.*) [9] Mais c'est une satisfaction bien rare pour les esprits sérieux et judicieux que celle de lire une suite de volumes si aisés et si pleins. (*Ste.-B.*) [10] Qui est-ce qui me dédommagera de votre perte? (*Mar.*) [11] Devenir amoureuse d'un jeune homme sur son reflet: n'est-ce pas une folie? (*Gautier.*) [12] La plus véritable marque d'être né avec de grandes qualités, c'est d'être né sans envie. (*La R.*) [13] Moi, je n'ai pas rêvé. (*About.*) [14] Il regarde si je retourne la tête, et je ne saurais le rappeler, moi. (*Mar.*) [15] Peut-être mes efforts en ce sens n'ont-ils pas été tout-à-fait vains. (*Guizot.*)

(§ 148.) [1] Soit, ma fille, je te permets le déguisement. (*Mar.*) [2] Mais peu nous importe; et le poète a eu, dans sa vie, bien d'autres oublis plus graves. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] Plût à Dieu que je fusse mort en effet, si je me trompe, et si ce regard n'était pas pour moi. (*de Mu.*)

Theme 13.

VERB AND SUBJECT.

[1] Is it you who wish to see me? [2] No, it is our friends, who come from the country. [3] Here are your sisters; it was they who were looking for us. [4] Which are the four cardinal points? They are the north, south, east, and west. [5] Most men are ambitious. [6] I went to meet him; a score of his friends surrounded him, and a company of soldiers marched behind him. [7] A band of thieves had introduced itself into the house, and was pillaging the rooms. [8] Their noise was heard by a few neighbors, who gathered and attacked them suddenly. [9] More than one escaped, but the remainder were killed or taken. [10] It was one of the most

successful affairs of the kind that have happened in our village. [11] The courage, the dash of our friends was admirable; the confusion and flight of the thieves were pitiable. [12] Thou who art still so young, listen to me who am thy friend. [13] It is we ourselves who wish to aid you. [14] Astronomy is one of the sciences that do most honor to the human mind. [15] My brother or I will go to see and encourage him. [16] His ruin or his salvation depends on (de) his reception of us. [17] He and I have been good friends the past twenty years. [18] There has happened to him a great misfortune. [19] It will be impossible for him to recover from it. [20] It would be a great pleasure to me to see him again. [21] Yours is a very handsome watch. [22] What we wish is to see you happy. [23] It matters little to you whether they go or stay.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

150. A predicate adjective or noun agrees in general, in gender and number, with the word which, through the verb, it is made to qualify.

But there are differences in this respect between the adjective and the noun, and the agreement of the noun is more restricted.

151. A predicate adjective, not less than an attributive, agrees in gender and number with the noun (or pronoun) which it qualifies, and is plural if it qualifies two or more.

Thus, **sa fortune était grande** *his fortune was great*, **la sœur et la tante furent charmées** *the sister and aunt were charmed.*

a. If the two words qualified are of different genders, the adjective is ordinarily masculine; but it is sometimes made to agree only with the nearer or the more important noun: thus, **le mérite et la vertu sont estimés** *merit and virtue are esteemed*, **le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête** *the steel, the bandage, the flame are all ready.*

b. A predicate adjective qualifying a personal or interrogative or relative pronoun that does not distinguish gender (or either gender or number, as **qui**) is varied in form to agree with the noun represented by the pronoun: thus, **nous (hommes) sommes**

heureux *we (men) are happy*, **vous (femmes) êtes heureuses** *you (women) are happy*, **ceux** or **celles qui sont heureux** or **heureuses** *those who are happy.*

The indefinite **on** is sometimes treated in the same way: thus, **quand on est mariée** *when one (a woman) is married.*

c. **Vous** and (more rarely) **nous,** when used with the value of singulars, take a predicate in the singular (though the verb remains plural): thus, **êtes-vous heureux** or **heureuse** *are you* (sing.) *happy?* **nous sommes heureuse** *we are happy* (said by a queen).

d. Words used adjectively without variation of form (§ **53***d*, **54***c*) are of course invariable when predicative.

152. A predicate noun agrees with that which it describes only so far as its own variations of form and the logical meaning admit.

Thus, **il est acteur, elle est actrice** *he is an actor, she is an actress*, **elle est auteur et musicienne** *she is an author and musician*, **il en a été la dupe** *he has been the dupe of it*, **il fut les délices de toute la ville** *he was the delight of the whole city.* See §§ **15***c*, **16.**

a. For the forms of the pronouns when used predicatively, see XXIII. **3***d*, XXV. **4***a*, XXVI. **2***a*. Examples are: **c'est moi** *it is I*, **elle est belle et le sera encore longtemps** *she is handsome, and will long continue so*, **êtes-vous les trois frères? nous les sommes** *are you the three brothers? we are they*, **qu'êtes-vous** *what are you?* **fou que je suis** *fool that I am!*

153. The predicate is often a prepositional phrase, with **de, à, en,** etc., or an adverb.

Thus, **cette epée est de fer** *this sword is of iron*, **il était à genoux** *he was on his knees*, **les blés sont en fleur** *the wheat is in flower*, **il est bien** *he is well off.*

154. Verbs of making, conceiving, declaring, and the like, are followed by an objective predicate, qualifying the direct object, and agreeing with it in the same manner as the ordinary predicate with the subject.

Thus, **je la déclare innocente** *I declare her innocent*, **ils se firent capucins** *they made themselves capuchins*, **il les soupçonnait morts** *he imagined them dead.*

a. But **pour** *for* or **comme** *as* is ordinarily used after many verbs before the predicate word: thus, **ils le choisirent pour général** *they chose him for general*, **il les considérait comme ses ennemis** *he considered them as his enemies.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXV. Verb and Predicate.

(§ 151.) [1] La science et la médecine sont bonnes. (*Rouss.*) [2] Paul et Virginie étaient ignorants. (*St. Pierre.*) [3] Sa bonté, son pouvoir, sa justice est immense. (*Corn.*) [4] Non, non ; par ces soupçons je suis trop offensée. (*Mol.*) [5] Vous, madame ! Eh ! n'êtes-vous pas exceptée ? (*Mar.*) [6] Mais les frais de voyage, quand on est orpheline ? (*Scribe.*)

(§ 152.) [1] J'étais son ennemie, et je ne la suis plus. (*Mar.*) [2] La mère est le premier instituteur de son enfant. (*St. Pierre.*) [3] Mon maître en Palestine était une abeille. (*Chat.*) [4] Mlle. de Schurmann . . . était peintre, musicienne, graveur, sculpteur, philosophe, géomètre, théologienne même. (*Biogr. Univ.*)

(§ 153.) [1] Les culottes sont de tricot, les bas de soie, et les souliers de satin. (*Dum.*)

(§ 154.) [1] Je vous ai promis d'avance de le faire capitaine dans mes gardes, dit le prince. (*de Vi.*) [2] Je ne croyais pas la Madelon si menteuse et si perfide. (*G. Sand.*) [3] Est-ce que tu prétends soutenir cette pièce ?—Parbleu ! je la garantis détestable. (*Mol.*) [4] Je savais déjà que je le trouverais grand ; mais je ne savais pas si je le trouverais simple. (*Dum.*) [5] Quand je les verrai heureux ensemble, j'irai mourir en paix loin d'eux. (*G. Sand.*) [6] J'aime la compagnie, je l'avoue.— Je l'aime aussi, mais je l'aime choisie. (*Mol.*) [7] Cette scène effrayante, et plus encore la crainte de la voir se renouveler, la tinrent longtemps éveillée. (*de Maistre.*) [8] Toute âme grande et forte, aux moments où elle s'anime, peut se dire maîtresse de la parole. (*Ste.-B.*) [9] Cette rudesse le rendit de fer. (*de Vi.*) [10] Puissé-je de mes yeux y voir tomber ce foudre, voir ses maisons en cendre et ses lauriers en poudre. (*Corn.*) [11] À son regard si doux, pour un ange il l'a prise. (*G. Sand.*)

OBJECT.

155. The object of a verb is a noun, or something having the value of a noun—as a pronoun, an adjective used substantively, an infinitive, a phrase, or a clause.

a. A partitive noun (§ **35**), or one preceded by **de**, with or without the article, having the sense of *some* or *any*, is to be regarded as immediately related to the verb (whether as subject or predicate or object), like a simple noun. So also with a noun preceded by **jusqu'à** *clear to*, in the sense of *not excepting* or *even :* thus,

il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis *he loves even his enemies;* or preceded by **près de** *nearly, about;* and so on.

156. The object of a verb is either direct or indirect.

The direct object corresponds to the usual English objective or Latin accusative; the indirect, to the English objective with *to*, or the Latin dative.

a. The pronouns are the only words in the language that have a different form as subject and as object (XXII. etc.). No noun has a special object-form.

b. The personal pronoun of the third person (XXII. **5, 6***c*) is the only word in the language that has a special form for the indirect object as distinguished from the direct.

c. No noun is used as indirect object immediately dependent on the verb. A noun as indirect object is always preceded by **à** *to:* thus, **je donne le livre à mon ami** *I give my friend the book;* but, **je lui donne le livre** *I give him the book.*

d. If a noun is connected with a verb by the preposition **à**, it may usually be represented by an indirect object-pronoun, whatever the logical relation: see § **161***g*.

e. For the indirect object-pronoun in the sense of a possessive, see § **88***b*.

f. The indirect object-pronoun is used as a so-called "ethical dative"—i.e. to express some one indefinitely concerned in the action: thus, **bats-moi cet homme-là** *beat me that man.*

157. Verbs are called "transitive" or "intransitive" according as they do or do not admit a direct object.

a. Some verbs which in English are used as transitives are in French only intransitive—and *vice versâ:* thus, **j'obéis aux lois** *I obey the laws,* **il approche** (or **s'approche**) **du but** *he approaches the goal;* **il sonne le domestique** *he rings for the servant:* see below, § **161***b*, **162***f*.

b. A few verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object when used factitively (i.e. in the sense of making or showing by means of a certain action): thus, **tout y respire la joie** *everything there breathes joy,* **cet or sent le sang** *this gold smells of blood.* Other intransitives do so in certain phrases: thus, **courir risque** *run a risk,* **parler une langue** *talk a language,* **causer littérature** *converse about literature.* A so-called cognate accusative is very little used in French; the noun generally takes **de** before it: thus, **mourir d'une mort naturelle** *die a natural death,* **dormir d'un bon sommeil** *sleep a good sleep.*

158. A verb in French does not take two direct objects, but only a direct and an indirect together.

a. An only apparent exception is the second noun that is taken as predicate to the object of a verb, or as objective predicate: thus, **ils le firent roi** *they made him king:* see above, § **154.**

b. The prohibition of two direct objects is extended to those compound verb-phrases in which an infinitive is directly (i.e. without **de** or **à**) dependent on another verb, especially **faire** *make, cause.* If the infinitive has a direct object, the logical object of the other verb has to be made indirect. Thus, *I have made him say it* is **je le lui ai fait dire,** *I have made my friend read your letter* is **j'ai fait lire votre lettre à mon ami;** and so **je lui ferai voir ce que je suis** *I will let him see what I am.* In all these cases, the **faire** and following infinitive are treated as forming a kind of unitary verb-phrase, a causative verb, taking both its objects, if pronouns, together before it. The same construction is also generally required with an infinitive after **laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr**: thus, **je leur ai entendu dire ces paroles** *I heard them say these words,* **je le lui ai vu essayer** *I have seen him try it.*

An exception is now and then met with: thus, **je les ai laissés boire mon vin** *I let them drink my wine;* and always if the object of the infinitive is reflexive: thus, **je l'ai laissé s'égarer** *I let him lose himself.* On the other hand, the object of **faire** is sometimes made indirect when the infinitive has not a direct object: thus, **ces chants firent changer de visage à Atala** *these songs made Atala change countenance.* (Chat.)

159. A noun is often added to a verb directly, or without a preposition, to express measure or extent, time when, or (rarely) place where.

Such a noun is not properly an object of the verb, but is rather used adverbially; though its value shades into that of an object. It may be called an ADVERBIAL OBJECT. For examples, see above, § **28***a–c.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXVI. Verb and Object.

(§ 155.) [1] Il avait du bon sens; le reste vient ensuite. (*La F.*) [2] Il a de la gaieté dans l'esprit; il a du léger et du plaisant. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] Faut-il tout sacrifier, jusqu'à l'opinion de la postérité? (*de Vi.*) [4] Il mena près de trois cents gentilshommes à Candie à ses dépens, quoiqu'il ne fût pas riche. (*Vol.*)

(§ 156.) [1] Cette fête coûta cent mille livres à M. de Vendôme. (*Chaulieu.*) [2] Il faut montrer aux Allemands la beauté, la grandeur de notre scène tragique. (*Thiers.*) [3] Qu'on me l'égorge, qu'on me lui fasse griller les pieds,

qu'on me le mette dans l'eau bouillante. (*Mol.*) [4] Regarde Bernard : ça n'a pas encore vingt-huit ans ; eh bien, ça vous a déjà un bout de ruban à la boutonnière. (*Sandeau.*)

(§ 157.) [1] En le suivant, M. Saint-Marc Girardin obéissait de plus à sa nature. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] Nous pardonnons aisément à nos amis les défauts qui ne nous regardent pas. (*La R.*) [3] Imaginez-vous qu'elle l'a querellé de ce qu'il était bien fait. (*Mar.*) [4] Il ne faut pas courir deux lièvres à la fois. (*Proverb.*) [5] Que tout respire ici luxe et magnificence ! (*Duval.*) [6] Tous les membres de cette famille parlaient l'italien, le français, l'espagnol, l'anglais, et l'allemand. (*Bal.*) [7] Me parlerait-il poésie ou farine, académie ou agriculture, publication ou récolte ? (*Dum.*) [8] Mars rit aussi d'un rire amer. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 158.) [1] Rien que la mort n'était capable d'expier son forfait ; on le lui fit bien voir. (*La F.*) [2] Les mêmes gens de bien entreprirent de lui faire voir M. de Noailles. (*de Sév.*) [3] Le plus grand effort de l'amitié n'est pas de montrer nos défauts à un ami ; c'est de lui faire voir les siens. (*La R.*) [4] Les occasions nous font connaître aux autres, et encore plus à nous-mêmes. (*La R.*) [5] Il faut se laisser emporter au torrent. (*Chaulieu.*) [6] On peut préférer de lui telle ou telle manière, mais il est curieux de les lui voir essayer toutes. (*Ste.-B.*) [7] Le gentilhomme de M. de Turenne . . . dit qu'il a vu faire des actions héroïques au chevalier de Grignan. (*de Sév.*) [8] Des paroles singulières qu'on lui a entendu dire sur la religion, sur la cour de Rome, nous ont été répétées par des témoins dignes de foi. (*Thiers.*) [9] Je lui laissai sans fruit consumer sa tendresse. (*Rac.*) [10] Un sentiment d'orgueil lui a fait applaudir à tout ce qui aplanissait la route des honneurs. (*Campan.*)

Theme 14.

VERB WITH PREDICATE AND OBJECT.

[1] His virtue and constancy are great. [2] The arm and hand are made in order to execute the will. [3] He and she will be absent when you return. [4] You are our friend, and we are yours, said the queen to him. [5] This wine pleases me, but that other seems to me better. [6] She is a dancer, and her sister is a musician ; their brother is a painter ;

they are all able artists. [7] We were bold; but experience has rendered us more cautious. [8] God has not made life too hard to bear. [9] You think her sincere; I have found her false and mendacious. [10] We know them (to be) rich and happy. [11] Can one call courageous an action so rash and foolish? [12] I like to see people happy about me. [13] We regard it as certain that they will be here. [14] He had taken me for another.

[15] She likes everything in him, even his faults and weaknesses. [16] We have seen to-day nearly a hundred pictures, and not one of them has pleased us. [17] He has fought the good fight; let him sleep now a long and deep sleep. [18] I have made her write the letter of which I was speaking to you; and now I shall ring for my servant, to carry it to the post. [19] We have heard them tell this story many times. [20] Have you not seen her give her hand to your rival? [21] Do not let him forget himself. [22] This cloth is worth only ten francs a yard, but it has cost me twelve francs, and I have had to run about the streets three hours in order to find it.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE.

160. A verb is extremely often qualified by a prepositional phrase—that is, by a noun or other word or phrase having substantive value, and joined to it by a preposition.

All the prepositions are used to connect the nouns they govern with verbs, thus qualifying or limiting the latter's meaning. Some of these constructions need no explanation, being perfectly simple and like English constructions; some will be treated under Prepositions (§ 202 etc.); a few, involving the commonest prepositions, **à** and **de**, may best be stated here, as being most closely analogous with the relations ordinarily expressed by cases, the dative and genitive.

161. A noun with **à** *to* is used after a verb datively, or in the manner of an indirect object.

Hence it is representable by an indirect object-pronoun: name-

ly, **lui** and **leur** for persons, and **y** for things (but sometimes also for persons): see XXII. 5, 6; XXIII. 5, 6.

a. The uses of **à** as connecting a noun with a verb come from its original value as meaning both *to* and *at*, and it often has to be rendered by *at* or *about*, and not seldom by other prepositions, as *on*, *by*, *with*, etc. Sometimes, too, it is required where in English the verb takes a direct object. The principal peculiarities of its use are noticed here.

b. Some verbs which in English are transitive require in French **à** before their object.

Such are especially **conseiller à** *advise*, **nuire à** *harm*, *injure*, **obéir à** *obey*, **plaire à** *please*, **renoncer à** *renounce*, **ressembler à** *resemble*, **résister à** *resist*, **survivre à** *outlive*, *survive:* thus, **obéissez à vos parents** *obey your parents*. Other verbs may take **à**, or take it in certain senses or certain phrases: thus, **aider** or **aider à** *aid*, *help*, **atteindre à** *attain*, **assister à** *be present at*, **commander à**, **ordonner à** *command*, *order*, and **persuader à** *persuade*, *urge*, with a person, when the thing commanded or urged is also expressed, **croire à** *believe in*, **satisfaire à** *satisfy* as a general rule or obligation, **toucher à** *come in contact with*, *be close to*, **suppléer à** *make up* as a deficiency. In a case or two the whole construction is different from English: thus, **reprocher à quelqu'un sa faute** *reproach any one for his fault* (lit'ly, *reproach to any one his fault*).

c. A few verbs take **à** where we should expect **de**, as meaning *from* or *of*. These are **arracher** *snatch*, *extort*, **ôter** and **enlever** *take away*, **soutirer** *withdraw*, **échapper** *escape*, **demander** *ask*, **emprunter** *borrow*, **acheter** *buy* (and sometimes **gagner** *gain*, **prendre** *take*): thus, **arracher quelque chose à quelqu'un** *snatch something from somebody*, **je demande pardon à cet homme** *I ask pardon of this man*, **il a emprunté de l'argent à un banquier** *he has borrowed money of a banker*. Also **penser à**, **songer à**, in the sense of *think upon*, *turn one's thoughts to:* thus, **pensez à moi** *think of me*.

These verbs (but not **demander**) take also sometimes **de** instead of **à**, for the most part with little difference of sense; but **pensez de** means *have an opinion of:* thus, **que pensez-vous de moi** *what do you think of me?*

d. In many phrases, a noun with **à** is added to a verb to express the manner or instrument of the action: thus, **il voyage à cheval** *he travels on horseback* (*by horse*), **il parle à haute voix** *he talks in a loud voice*, **aller à voiles** *go by sail*, **fouler aux pieds** *trample under foot:* compare § **36.**

e. In some combinations, **à** with a noun has the sense of *belonging to:* so especially with **être**: thus, **cette maison est à**

moi *this house is mine;* and similarly with **trouver, supposer, connaître,** and **croire** *credit:* thus, **je lui trouve un cœur excellent** *I find him to possess an excellent heart,* **il leur croit assez de bon sens** *he credits them good sense enough.*

Related with this is the not infrequent use of the dative, especially of a pronoun, instead of a possessive adjective: thus, **je lui prends la main** *I take her hand,* **il s'est cassé le bras** *he has broken his arm.*

f. Of special cases may be mentioned the reflexive phrases **s'attendre à** *expect, be prepared for,* **s'attaquer à** *pick a quarrel with,* **se mêler à** (or **de**) *meddle with;* also **faire la guerre à** *make war upon,* **avoir affaire à** *have a difficulty with,* **en vouloir à** *bear a grudge against,* **tenir à** *depend upon* (compare XXIX. 7*b*).

g. Examples of the use of an indirect object-pronoun to represent a noun requiring **à** after the verb are as follows: **je lui obéis** *I obey him,* **il faut y renoncer** *one must renounce it,* **il leur demande leurs noms** *he asks them their names,* **nous y pensons toujours** *we think of it all the time,* **je lui en veux** *I have a grudge against him.* But the noun of manner or instrument, and that following **être** in the sense of *belong* cannot be so replaced.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXVII. Verb and Case-phrase with *à*.**

(§ 161.) [1] Votre ingénieuse critique n'obéit pas seulement à une nécessité, elle se livre à un goût et à un plaisir. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] Il ressemblait à un fantôme, mais à celui d'un martyr. (*de Vi.*) [3] On touche encore à son temps, et très fort, même quand on le repousse. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] Racontant l'emprisonnement de son père pendant la Terreur, M. de Lamartine nous fait assister à des scènes tant soit peu romanesques. (*Ste.-B.*) [5] Il[a] reproche à Byron de l'avoir imité sans le nommer et sans lui en faire honneur. (*Ste.-B.*) [6] Sa piété était si vive, son effusion si touchante, son courage si admirable, qu'elle arrachait les larmes à tous les assistants. (*Mignet.*) [7] Je demande à Votre Majesté la permission de me retirer à Cîteaux. (*de Vi.*) [8] C'est Marie qui a pensé à ce cantonnier; Marie pense à tout, s'avise de tout. (*Ste.-B.*) [9] Songe au fleuve de sang où ton bras s'est baigné. (*Corn.*) [10] Dupont, lancé en[b] flèche dans l'Andalousie révoltée, est bientôt obligé de se rabattre et de songer à une retraite; mais il y songe trop tard. (*Ste.-B.*) [11] La Madelon, qui n'avait jamais pensé bien sérieusement

[a] i.e. Lamartine. [b] § 207*e*.

à Landry, se mit à y penser beaucoup. (*G. Sand.*) [12] Ce n'est rien, monsieur le marquis ; c'est une folle qui est arrivée à pied ici cette nuit. (*de Vi.*) [13] Il a parlé de rappeler la reine-mère, dit le capucin à voix basse. (*de Vi.*) [14] À l'œuvre on connaît l'artisan. (*La F.*) [15] J'ai nommé M. de Balzac ; ce romancier original a trouvé, je l'ai dit, une veine qui est bien à lui. (*Ste.-B.*) [16] Vous me croyez plus de qualités que je n'en ai. (*Mar.*) [17] Je ne vous soupçonnais pas les talents et l'habileté que vous avez déployés aujourd'hui. (*Scribe.*) [18] Il a l'esprit, le cœur naturellement modérés, et je ne lui ai jamais vu de passion. (*Ste.-B.*) [19] Je leur ai pardonné du fond du cœur. (*Guizot.*) [20] Vous lui avez peut-être arraché enfin cet aveu ; vous avez bien fait. (*G. Sand.*)

162. A noun with **de** *of, from* is used after a verb in the manner of a genitive case, and may be represented in pronoun-form by the genitive pronoun **en** (XXIII. 5).

a. The uses of **de** as connecting a noun with a verb come in great part from its original value as meaning *from*. It often stands where English requires a different preposition, especially *with, by, because of*, and the like, and sometimes where the verb in English takes a direct object. The principal cases are noticed here.

b. A **de** stands after verbs of proceeding or removing, in every variety; after those of taking and the like; after those of depending; and so on.

Thus, **il arrive de Paris** *he comes from Paris*, **je l'ai reçu de mon père** *I have received it from my father*, **cela dépend de vous** *that depends on* (lit'ly, *from*) *you.*

c. A **de** is very often used after a verb to mark that from which anything proceeds as cause, motive, occasion; and hence also agent and means or instrument—where in English *by* or *with* is used.

Thus, **il est mort de faim** *he has died of hunger*, **il se repent de sa conduite** *he repents of his conduct*, **je les punis de leur faute** *I punish them for their fault ;* and **ils la louent d'une voix** *they praise her with one voice*, **il est armé d'une épée** *he is armed with a sword ;* and **elle joue du piano** *she plays on* (lit'ly, *with*) *the piano.*

Hence the frequent use of **de** (alternately with **par**) with a pas-

sive to denote the agent: thus, **il est aimé de tout le monde** *he is loved by everybody:* see the First Part, XXVIII. **3.**

d. It stands before a noun expressing material, content, and the like: thus, **il l'a fait de bois** *he made it of wood*, **remplir d'eau** *fill with water:* compare § **33.**

e. It not seldom expresses manner: thus, **ramener de force** *bring back by force*, **agir de bonne foi** *act in good faith*, **parler de la sorte** *talk in that fashion.*

f. Some verbs that are transitive in English require in French a **de** before their object.

Such verbs are especially **jouir** *enjoy*, **user** *use*, **abuser** *abuse;* also **décider** *decide* and **juger** *judge* (sometimes intransitive in English); also **redoubler** *redouble* in certain phrases; and **changer** when it signifies the exchange by the subject of one thing for another of the same kind: thus, **il change d'opinion** *he changes his opinion*, **il redoubla d'efforts** *he redoubled his efforts*, **je jouis de sa faveur** *I enjoy his favor*, **ils abusent de ma bonté** *they abuse my kindness.* Also sometimes **hériter** *inherit:* thus, **hériter d'une maison** *inherit a house.* More special cases are: **de** after **approcher** or **s'approcher** *approach:* thus, **il s'approcha du feu** *he approached the fire;* after certain reflexive verbs, as **s'apercevoir** *perceive*, **se défier** *distrust*, **se douter** *suspect*, **se passer** *do without*, **se servir** *make use*, and so on (compare XXIX. 7*b*): thus, **je m'aperçois de cela** *I perceive that.*

g. After **traiter** and **qualifier** with an object, and after **servir**, **de** is used to mean *in character of* or *as:* thus, **je l'ai traité de prince** *I have treated him as a prince*, **il me sert de modèle** *he serves me as model.*

h. Examples of the use of the genitive pronoun **en** in these various constructions (except to express manner) are: **il était à la campagne; il en revient aujourd'hui** *he was in the country, he returns from it to-day*, **il en est déjà mort** *he has already died of it*, **on l'en a armé** *they have armed him with it*, **il les aime, et il en est aimé** *he loves them and is loved by them*, **usez-en, mais n'en abusez pas** *use it, but do not abuse it*, **le voyant, il s'en approcha** *seeing it, he approached it.*

i. For a few verbs taking both **de** and **à**, see § **183.**

j. For the partitive noun with **de**, used like a simple noun as the object of a verb as well as in other constructions, see § **35.**

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXVIII. Verb and Case-phrase with *de*.

(§ 162.) [1] Ceux qui ne sortent pas d'eux-mêmes sont tout d'une pièce. (*Girardin.*) [2] Bien; vous allez partir de Madrid tout à l'heure. (*V. Hugo.*) [3] Il revient de la Grèce

et de Jérusalem ; il aborde en Égypte. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] Il ne vit que de lait, ne descend jamais à la salle à manger. (*Dau.*) [5] Elle se retira ensuite à part, et écrivit de sa main, pendant plusieurs heures, des lettres et son testament. (*Mignet.*) [6] Le bourreau lui-même était ému, et la frappa d'une main mal assurée. (*Mignet.*) [7] Le commissionnaire la renverse d'un coup de chaise ; la gouvernante la foule aux pieds. (*Thiers.*) [8] Soudain ses traits se contractèrent comme de l'espoir du triomphe. (*Saintine.*) [9] Je me sens piqué de ce discours étrange. (*Mol.*) [10] Je le connais de vue, mais je ne sais pas son nom. (*Mar.*) [11] La lune brillait de tout son éclat. (*Napoléon.*) [12] Et il continue de la sorte de donner cours à un enthousiasme sévère. (*Ste.-B.*) [13] Allons, Zambo, chantait-il d'un ton furieux et comique ; tourne le robinet pour Massa. (*Lab.*) [14] Il a été frappé à première vue des défauts, des travers, des ridicules du temps. (*Ste.-B.*) [15] De l'heure fugitive, hâtons-nous, jouissons. (*Lam.*) [16] Vous croyez qu'abusant de mon autorité, je prétends attenter à votre liberté. (*Rac.*) [17] En changeant de nom, tu n'as pas changé de visage. (*Mar.*) [18] Je leur écris qu'Achille a changé de pensée. (*Rac.*) [19] Peuple sauvage ! m'écriai-je en approchant du feu. (*Lab.*) [20] Un ignorant hérita d'un manuscrit, qu'il porta chez son voisin le libraire. (*La F.*) [21] Madame de Vaubert avait servi de mère à Hélène. (*Sandeau.*) [22] L'enthousiasme nous sert aussi d'asile à nous-mêmes contre les peines les plus amères. (*de Staël.*) [23] Et j'ai traité cela de pure bagatelle. (*Mol.*) [24] Tu me traites de méchante sans que j'aie jamais fait de mal. (*G. Sand.*) [25] Charlotte Corday est condamnée à la peine de mort ; son beau visage n'en paraît pas ému. (*Thiers.*) [26] J'étais allé à Claye, à quelques lieues de Paris. Je m'en revenais à pied. (*V. Hugo.*) [27] J'ai trop d'avantage, et, en ennemi généreux, je ne veux pas en profiter. (*Scribe.*) [28] Profite de tes biens, George.—J'en use sans plaisir, et les tiens en mépris. (*Ponsard.*) [29] N'êtes-vous jamais passé sur une tombe sans vous en douter ? (*Dum.*) [30] Laissez-moi, l'abbé, laissez-moi, je vous en prie. (*G. Sand.*)

THEME 15.

VERB AND CASE-PHRASE, WITH à OR de.

[1] The boy ought to obey his parents ; the man, the law and God. [2] He who loves his parents will obey them ; he

verb, the other word usually associated with it in a negative phrase may itself be used in the negative sense.

Thus, **point** may stand by itself for *not at all;* **pas** not alone, but with another word, e.g. **pas moi** *not I*, **pas du tout** *not at all*, **pourquoi pas** *why not?;* **rien** as *nothing*, **jamais** as *never*, **personne** as *nobody*, **aucun** as *no, none*, **plus** as *no longer*. But **que** and **guère** do not stand thus (unless in very rare cases).

a. **Rien que** *nothing* [*else*] *than*, is used elliptically with a following infinitive in the sense of *merely by:* thus, **rien qu'à y penser** *merely by thinking of it.*

169. The negative word **non** is especially used as direct answer to a question, meaning *no.*

In this, as in most of its other uses, it may be followed by the second negative **pas** (or rarely by **point**): thus, **voulez-vous le faire? non** (or **non pas**) *will you do it? no.*

a. It also stands, in incomplete expression, for an omitted negative verb or clause: thus, **je gage que non** *I wager that it is not so*, **si l'on souffre ou non** *whether one suffer or not* (i.e. *or do not suffer*), **non que je le croie** *not* (i.e. *it is not the case*) *that I believe it.*

b. It is used to negative a particular member of a sentence which is not a verb: thus, **il demeure à la campagne, non loin d'ici** *he lives in the country, not far from here*, **il périt, non sans gloire** *he perished, not without glory.* Especially, with a negative alternative opposed to a positive: thus, **nous voulons un maître et non** (or **non pas**) **une maîtresse** *we want a master, and not a mistress*, **je le ferai non seulement pour lui, mais aussi pour ses enfants** *I shall do it not only for him, but also for his children.*

c. **Non plus** *not any more, not any sooner*, stands after a negative verb or after **ni** *nor*, and is often best rendered by *either:* thus, **je ne le ferai pas non plus** *I shall not do it either* (lit'ly, *any more than he* or *than you*, or the like); **ni moi non plus** *nor I either.*

d. **Non** had formerly the office of directly making a verb negative, and is sometimes still found so used, in antiquated style: thus, **non ferai-je** *I shall not do it.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXIX. Negative Expression.**

(§ 165.) [1] Je ne vous réponds pas des volontés d'un père, mais je ne serai point à d'autre qu'à Valère. (*Mol.*) [2] Il est capable de ne pas me croire; et s'il me croit, c'est encore pis. (*Scribe.*) [3] C'est pourtant triste de ne jamais danser, dit Landry. (*G. Sand.*) [4] Dans les pièces sérieuses.

much mistaken. "He always treated me as a child. "That will serve us as example for what we have to do.

ADVERBS; NEGATIVE EXPRESSION.

163. The verb is very often qualified by an adverb.

a. For the formation and use of adverbs in general, see XXXI., XXXII., and below, § **196** etc. Here only certain special matters call for treatment.

b. As to the use of the adverbs **y** and **en** as pronominal objects of verbs, see XXIII. **5–8**, and § **85**. As to the pronominal uses also of **dont** and **où**, see XXVI. **7, 8.**

164. A verb is made negative by prefixing the negative adverb **ne**; and the verb of a sentence containing a negation always has **ne** before it.

See Lesson XII. Much of what was said in the Lessons is unavoidably repeated here.

a. The **ne** is always placed after the subject, but before an object-pronoun; nothing but an object-pronoun ever stands between the negative adverb and the verb negated by it.

b. For the very rare omission of the **ne**, see below, § **165***e*.

165. But usually, in expressing simple negation, an auxiliary word, **pas** or **point**, is added after the verb.

a. **Pas** and **point** are in reality adverbially-used nouns, making distinct or strengthening the negation; **pas** is literally *pace, step*, and **point** is *point*. **Point** makes a stronger or more emphatic negation than **pas**, like *not at all, by no means*, or the like.

b. **Pas** and **point**, if the verb is compound, are put after the auxiliary and before the participle. With an infinitive, they are usually (not always) made to precede: thus, **ne pas dire** or **ne dire pas** *not to say*. And the object-pronoun of such an infinitive may be placed either between or after the two negative particles: thus, **ne pas vous dire** or **ne vous pas dire** (or **ne vous dire pas**) *not to tell you:* the first is most usual.

c. **Point** is not used before **plus** nor before an adjective numeral. In a question, **pas** is used if an affirmative reply is expected: thus, **n'est-ce pas vous qui me l'avez dit** means *it is you, is it not? that told me*, but **n'est-ce point vous** etc. means *it surely is not you, is it? that* etc.

d. Quite rarely, **mie** (lit'ly, *a crumb*) is used instead of **point** thus, **ne les écoutez mie** *do not listen to them at all.*

e. Very rarely, **ne** is omitted, and the negation expressed by

pas or **point** alone: thus, **l'ai-je pas dit** *didn't I say so?* This hardly occurs except in low or vulgar style.

166. In certain cases, **ne** is used alone, without added **pas** or **point**, to negative the verb.

The principal and most usual cases are those stated below. But the omission of the second negative is sometimes made at the arbitrary option of an author.

a. With the verbs **savoir, pouvoir, oser,** and **cesser, pas** or **point** is usually omitted, especially when an infinitive follows, and when the negation is not emphatic.

Thus, **je ne sais ce que c'est** *I don't know what it is,* **il ne peut tarder** *he cannot delay,* **elle n'oserait revenir** *she would not dare to come back,* **vous ne cessez de rire** *you do not stop laughing.* Less common cases are such as **je ne bougerai d'ici** *I shall not stir (budge) from here.* **Saurais** in the sense of *can* (XXXIV. 7*b*) always has **ne** only: thus, **je ne saurais le dire** *I cannot say;* also usually **puis**: thus, **je ne puis** *I cannot* (but **je ne peux pas**).

b. **Ne** is often used alone after **si,** after rhetorical questions introduced by **qui,** after **que** in the sense of *why?* or *unless,* with a perfect after **depuis que** and **il y a . . . que,** and in a negative clause depending on one that is negative or impliedly so: thus, **si ce n'est vous** *if it is not you,* **qui de nous n'a ses défauts** *who of us has not his faults?* **que ne se corrige-t-il** *why does he not correct himself?* **il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai vu** *I have not seen him these three months,* **vous n'avez pas un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien** *you have not a friend who is not also mine,* and **avez-vous un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien** *have you* (i.e. *surely you have not) a friend who is not also mine?*

c. **Ne** is used without **pas** or **point** in certain special phrases: thus, **n'importe** *no matter,* **n'avoir garde de** *take care not to,* **n'avoir que faire** *not have anything to do,* **ne plaise** or **ne déplaise** *may it not please* or *displease,* and a few others: thus, **à Dieu ne plaise** *God forbid,* **je n'ai garde de désavouer ma faute** *I take care not to disavow my fault.*

167. **Ne** is also used without second negative particle along with certain words which are regarded as forming with it a compound negative phrase, often to be rendered in English by a single negative word.

a. These negative phrases are especially **ne . . . rien** *nothing,* **ne . . . jamais** *never,* **ne . . . personne** *nobody,* **ne . . . aucun** *not*

any, *none*, *no*, **ne ... plus** *no longer*, *no more* (in sense of continuance of time), **ne ... que** *only* (lit'ly, *not* [*else* or *other*] *than*), **ne ... guère**, *hardly*, *scarcely*.

b. Of the words thus used, **rien** and **jamais** and **aucun** and **guère**, though in themselves properly positive, occur almost only in negative phrases and with negative value. Exceptions are occasionally met with, especially in clauses that have a negative implication: thus, **personne a-t-il jamais rien vu de pareil** *has any one ever seen anything like it?* (i.e. *no one, surely, has ever seen* etc.).

c. Instead of **rien** *thing*, are found sometimes in special phrases **mie** *crumb*, **goutte** *drop*, **brin** *mote*, **mot** *word*; instead of **jamais** *ever*, are found the obsolete **onc** or **onques** *ever*, also **de ma vie** *in my life*, and other similar expressions; instead of **personne** or **aucun** *any one*, *any*, are found **qui que ce soit** or **quelconque** *any one* or *any whatever*, and the like.

d. Of **ne ... que**, meaning *only*, the **que** stands where *than* would stand if the expression were filled out: thus, **je ne verrai qu'elle** *I shall see only her*, **je ne la verrai que demain** *I shall see her only to-morrow*, **je ne la verrai demain qu'après le dîner** *I shall see her only after the dinner to-morrow*. If the *only* qualifies the verb itself, a paraphrase is made with **faire** *do*: thus, **elle ne fait que pleurer** *she merely cries*, or **elle ne fait autre chose que pleurer** *she does nothing else than cry*. **Autre** *other* is not seldom used with **ne** alone: thus, **le droit n'est autre chose que la raison même** *right is nothing but reason itself*.

e. Not seldom, more than one second negative belongs with the same **ne**: thus, **je ne lui ai jamais rien donné** *I have never given him anything*, **je n'en dirai jamais rien à personne** *I will never say anything to any one about it*. This is especially frequent along with **que**, and then the rendering *only* must be changed to something else: thus, **je n'ai jamais aimé que lui** *I have never loved any one but him*, or the like.

f. **Nul** *none*, *not any* (also its adverb **nullement** *in no wise*), and **ni** *nor*, though themselves negative, require also **ne** before the verb: thus, **ni vous ni moi ne le pouvons** *neither you nor I can do it*, **je ne le puis, ni ne le veux** *I neither can nor will do it*, **nul ne le saura** *none will know it*. The same is the case with **non plus** *not any more*: thus, **elle ne l'aime non plus que moi** *she doesn't like it any more than I*.

But **nul** used appositively or predicatively to mean *null*, *of no account*, does not require **ne**.

168. **Ne** can never be used except directly with a verb expressed; if it is omitted, because of the absence of the

verb, the other word usually associated with it in a negative phrase may itself be used in the negative sense.

Thus, **point** may stand by itself for *not at all;* **pas** not alone, but with another word, e.g. **pas moi** *not I*, **pas du tout** *not at all*, **pourquoi pas** *why not? ;* **rien** as *nothing*, **jamais** as *never*, **personne** as *nobody*, **aucun** as *no, none*, **plus** as *no longer*. But **que** and **guère** do not stand thus (unless in very rare cases).

a. **Rien que** *nothing [else] than*, is used elliptically with a following infinitive in the sense of *merely by:* thus, **rien qu'à y penser** *merely by thinking of it.*

169. The negative word **non** is especially used as direct answer to a question, meaning *no.*

In this, as in most of its other uses, it may be followed by the second negative **pas** (or rarely by **point**): thus, **voulez-vous le faire? non** (or **non pas**) *will you do it? no.*

a. It also stands, in incomplete expression, for an omitted negative verb or clause: thus, **je gage que non** *I wager that it is not so*, **si l'on souffre ou non** *whether one suffer or not* (i.e. *or do not suffer*), **non que je le croie** *not* (i.e. *it is not the case*) *that I believe it.*

b. It is used to negative a particular member of a sentence which is not a verb: thus, **il demeure à la campagne, non loin d'ici** *he lives in the country, not far from here*, **il périt, non sans gloire** *he perished, not without glory.* Especially, with a negative alternative opposed to a positive: thus, **nous voulons un maître et non** (or **non pas**) **une maîtresse** *we want a master, and not a mistress*, **je le ferai non seulement pour lui, mais aussi pour ses enfants** *I shall do it not only for him, but also for his children.*

c. **Non plus** *not any more, not any sooner*, stands after a negative verb or after **ni** *nor*, and is often best rendered by *either:* thus, **je ne le ferai pas non plus** *I shall not do it either* (lit'ly, *any more than he* or *than you*, or the like); **ni moi non plus** *nor I either.*

d. **Non** had formerly the office of directly making a verb negative, and is sometimes still found so used, in antiquated style: thus, **non ferai-je** *I shall not do it.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXIX. Negative Expression.**

(§ 165.) [1] Je ne vous réponds pas des volontés d'un père, mais je ne serai point à d'autre qu'à Valère. (*Mol.*) [2] Il est capable de ne pas me croire ; et s'il me croit, c'est encore pis. (*Scribe.*) [3] C'est pourtant triste de ne jamais danser, dit Landry. (*G. Sand.*) [4] Dans les pièces sérieuses.

il suffit, pour n'être point blâmé, de dire des choses qui soient de bon sens et bien écrites. (*Mol.*) [5] Je ferai tout pour ne vous pas déplaire. (*Rac.*) [6] Hé bien ! l'ai-je pas dit ? (*Rac.*) [7] Voyez-vous pas s'enfuir les hôtes du bocage ? (*Delille.*) [8] Je parie que tu n'as pas encore . . . le consentement de tes parents ?—Ça ne sera pas long; j'en ai pas. (*Scribe.*)

(§ 166.) [1] Certes, il est bien malheureux, mais il ne peut être cruel ; il entendrait la vérité.—Oui, mais il n'oserait la faire triompher. (*de Vi.*) [2] Je ne sais si le marquis me pardonnerait. (*Sandeau.*) [3] On ne savait que lui dire; tout le monde pleurait. (*de Sév.*) [4] Il y a quelques centaines d'années que je n'avais revu votre petit monde. (*G. Sand.*) [5] Il n'y a pas de méchanceté qu'elle n'invente. (*Ségur.*) [6] Je n'aurais jamais cru chose pareille, si je n'avais vu de mes yeux, et entendu de mes oreilles. (*Ségur.*) [7] Qui de nous, monsieur, n'est sujet à l'erreur ? (*Scribe.*) [8] Mme. Humblot et sa fille n'eurent garde de manquer au rendez-vous. (*About.*) [9] En te reprochant ta faute, je n'ai garde de désavouer la mienne. (*Fén.*) [10] N'importe ; au milieu de ces sentiers tortueux, j'en veux prendre un nouveau. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 167.) [1] Si je n'ai plus de fils, que m'importe un empire ? (*Vol.*) [2] Mais il était trop tard pour la Bichonne ; elle ne vivait déjà plus. (*Nodier.*) [3] Mais ce bel horizon ne nous tient guère chez nous. (*Dau.*) [4] Il n'y a que ce valet qui soit suspect ici ; Dorante n'a qu'à le chasser. (*Mar.*) [5] Tous ceux qui la virent en ce moment crurent mieux que jamais que c'était chose venue de la part de Dieu. (*Michelet.*) [6] Il serait difficile d'imaginer rien de plus beau. (*Chat.*) [7] Elles me font peur, encore que je n'y comprenne goutte. (*G. Sand.*) [8] Eh bien ! c'est un homme qui ne dit mot, qui ne rit ni qui ne gronde. (*Mar.*) [9] J'en approuve l'esprit ; s'il pensait autrement, je ne le verrais de ma vie. (*Mar.*) [10] Il ne faisait à Paris que des voyages courts et rares. (*St. Simon.*) [11] En toute affaire ils ne font que songer au moyen d'exercer leur langue. (*La F.*) [12] Il m'a fait souvenir que mon fils est dans l'armée du roi, laquelle n'a eu nulle part à cette expédition. (*de Sév.*) [13] Je n'ai plus rien à vous apprendre. (*Scribe.*) [14] Je n'ai jamais rien vu qui imprime tant de terreur. (*Chaulieu.*)

(§ 168.) [1] Vous n'auriez pas perdu la tête, par hasard ?—Pas que je sache. (*About.*) [2] Dans la rue, des gens affai-

rés . . . point de bruit, point de cris, point de flâneurs . . . et, aussi loin que portait ma vue, pas un sergent de ville, pas un gendarme. (*Lab.*) [2] Vous croyez qu'on l'accueille, qu'on la soulage, qu'on la console?—Point. (*G. Sand.*) [3] Quoi, cousine! personne ne t'est venu rendre visite?—Personne. (*Mol.*) [4] Vous avez reçu quelque éducation, au moins?—Aucune. (*Dum.*) [5] Plus d'amour! partant, plus de joie! (*La F.*) [6] Puis rien, pas même une plainte, ne succéda au cri de Guillaume. (*Dum.*) [7] Les légions romaines, que vous avez imitées, mais pas encore égalées, combattaient Carthage . . . sur cette même mer. (*Napoléon.*) [8] Non, jamais mes professeurs ne m'ont donné le centième de l'instruction que je hume de là, rien qu'à regarder dans la rue. (*Töpfer.*)

(§ 169.) [1] Non, non; je me trahis moi-même d'y penser. (*Corn.*) [2] Elle a raison!—Ma foi, j'ai soutenu que non. (*V. Hugo.*) [3] Que notre impérieux cardinal veuille ou non, la veuve de Henri-le-Grand ne restera pas plus longtemps exilée. (*de Vi.*) [4] Il a travaillé pour le moment, et non pour l'avenir. (*de Vi.*) [5] J'aime votre personne, et non votre fortune. (*Corn.*) [6] Nous y entrâmes, non sans soupçon; mais comment faire? (*Courier.*) [7] Non seulement le cœur ne s'attache à rien dans ces gîtes, mais l'esprit y est inquiet. (*About.*) [8] Pour moi, je n'ai pas grand'chose à dire.—Ni moi non plus. (*Mol.*)

170. In dependent clauses, **ne** is not seldom found used with a verb expletively, or where no negation is really implied.

Such a **ne** is never accompanied by a second negative, **pas** or **point**. It is inserted by reason of a confusion of two constructions, a positive and a negative being both had in mind at once. The special cases are as follows:

a. After verbs of fear or apprehension, of hindering, of doubt or denial; also, after nouns and adjectives of like meaning: thus, **je crains qu'il ne vienne** *I fear he may come*, **empêchez qu'il ne vienne** *prevent his coming*, **évitez qu'il ne vous parle** *avoid his speaking to you*, **je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne** *I do not doubt that he is coming*, **de peur qu'il ne vienne** *for fear that he is coming*, **point de doute que cela ne soit** *no doubt that is so*, **il est dangereux que la vanité n'étouffe la reconnaissance** *it is to be feared that vanity may stifle gratitude.*

In such cases, the verb of the dependent clause is always sub-

junctive; and the **que** with following **ne** may often be best rendered in English by *lest: I fear lest he may come*, and so on.

But there are also many exceptions: thus, **ne** is not inserted after an expression of fear or apprehension that is negative or implies a negation; nor, in modern style, after **défendre** *forbid;* nor unless the expression of doubt or denial is negative or implies negation; nor, generally, before an infinitive—and other more irregular cases occur. The illogical intrusion of the negative is coming to be more and more neglected.

b. After the expressions of time **il y a . . . que, depuis que,** and **avant que,** a superfluous **ne** is sometimes inserted: thus, **depuis que je ne vous ai vu** *since I saw you,* **je serai sorti avant qu'il n'entre** *I shall have gone out before he comes in.* Also after **il s'en faut** *there is lacking,* with negative implication: thus, **il ne s'en faut pas beaucoup qu'il n'ait perdu la raison** *he came very near losing his reason.*

c. A **ne** is inserted before a verb following and depending on a comparative: thus, **c'est plus vrai que vous ne le croyez** *it is truer than you think.* So also after **autre** (and **autrement**): thus, **cela est autrement que vous ne croyez** *that is otherwise than as you suppose.*

d. A **ne** is inserted before the subjunctive after **à moins que** *unless:* thus, **à moins que vous ne veniez** *unless you come;* also often after **sans que** *without:* thus, **sans que cela ne paraisse** *without its appearing.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXX. Expletive Negative.**

(§ 170.) [1] On craignait que l'on n'eût touché au trésor public. (*Vol.*) [2] Parce que nous avions peur qu'elle ne nous grondât. (*Ségur.*) [3] Il est abîmé, mais il est content; et l'on ne doute pas qu'il n'aille à la Trappe. (*de Sév.*) [4] J'irai vous voir avant que vous ne preniez aucune résolution. (*de Sév.*) [5] Depuis que je ne vous ai vu, il s'est passé de bien grandes choses. (*Acad.*) [6] Peu s'en faut que Mathan ne m'ait nommé son père. (*Rac.*) [7] Ah, maman! le bon Dieu est cent fois meilleur qu'on ne le dit. (*About.*) [8] Oh! tu m'ennuies; qu'ai-je besoin d'être mieux que je ne suis? (*Mar.*) [9] Je ne l'ai pas, à moins qu'il ne soit dans mon lit. (*About.*) [10] Toutes les cérémonies furent accomplies, sans qu'il y manquât rien. (*Michelet.*) [11] Elles s'attachèrent plus que pas une à leur nouvelle directrice. (*St. Simon.*)

Theme 16.

NEGATIVE EXPRESSION.

[1] He loves her too much (**pour**) not to tell her the truth. [2] Please not speak to me while I am listening to the music. [3] I cannot understand you, if you speak to me so softly. [4] I cannot describe to you all the beautiful things that I saw. [5] We will not stir from here, since you require it. [6] The child did not dare to answer, but it did not cease to weep. [7] We shall not take a walk, if she does not come to accompany us. [8] I know no one who does not sometimes commit faults. [9] It is very long that his friends have not seen him. [10] Have I anything that is not at his service? [11] God forbid that she should love him and not me! [12] Take care not to be absent when one calls you. [13] A man is only good so far as he does his duty. [14] I never heard anything so horrible. [15] Say nothing of it to anybody, or I will never tell you anything. [16] Neither wealth nor fame makes a man truly happy. [17] I neither admire nor love her. [18] You give him everything and us nothing. [19] One should trust his heart, and never his mind. [20] That laugh is a sign of despair, not of joy. [21] Shall I take this pen? No, if you please; take this one, not that one. [22] He does not want it, nor you either.

[23] We fear lest he should come before the appointed time. [24] Nothing can prevent his appearing to-day. [25] If he comes, avoid his seeing you before you are ready to receive him. [26] I do not doubt that he is at home at present. [27] Who can deny that it is so? [28] Speak low, for fear that some one hear us. [29] It is ten days since I saw her. [30] I should like to speak to him before he goes to bed. [31] No one would dare wake her before she has rung. [32] Since I have been there, great things have been done. [33] Their condition was more dangerous than they had supposed [34] The weather is better to-day than it was yesterday. [35] He

acts otherwise than he speaks. [36] We will take a walk this afternoon, unless it is bad weather. [37] He never sees misfortunes without his heart's being touched by them.

D.—The Infinitive.

171. So far as concerns its dependent adjuncts and modifiers—object, predicate, prepositional phrase, and adverb—the infinitive is treated in the same manner as the personal parts of the verb to which it belongs.

a. As to phrases analogous with the Latin accusative subject of an infinitive, see below, § **176***d*.

172. So far as concerns its own construction in the sentence, the infinitive has in general the value of a noun.

a. Thus, it is subject or predicate or object of a verb; it is governed by prepositions, especially **de** and **à**; and it is sometimes preceded by the article.

b. Like *to* in English, the prepositions **de** and **à** are to a considerable extent used in French as standing accompaniments or "signs" of the infinitive, in constructions where they do not have their proper meaning, and would not be used with an ordinary noun.

Hence, under every construction, it is necessary to define when the infinitive is used alone, and when along with preceding **de**, or with preceding **à**.

c. A few infinitives, with preceding article or possessive, are used quite as ordinary nouns; the commonest of them are these: **le boire** *drink*, **le manger** *food*, **le parler** *talk*, **le dire** *assertion*, **le savoir** *knowledge*, **le savoir-faire** *knowledge of conduct*, **le rire** *laughter*, **le vouloir** *will*; others are so used occasionally, or in special phrases. Further, a certain number of ordinary nouns are infinitives by origin: such are **souvenir** *remembrance*, **pouvoir** *power*, **devoir** *duty*, **être** *being*, **souper** *supper*, and so on.

173. The infinitive is used as subject of a verb, either alone or with its sign **de** (very rarely **à**).

a. It may be used as subject without **de** especially when it stands at the head of the clause or precedes its verb; but also when it follows, if the sentence is one requiring the inverted

order: thus, **parler est imprudent** *to speak is imprudent*, **à quoi sert parler** *of what use is it to speak?*

b. An infinitive as logical subject is often anticipated, as in English, by **il** or **ce** as grammatical subject; in that case, it regularly takes **de**, except after the verbs **il faut** *it is necessary*, **il vaut autant** or **mieux** *it is as well* or *better*, **il semble** *it seems*, **il fait bon** or **beau** *it is pleasant* or *looks well*. Thus, **il est facile de faire cela** *it is easy to do that*, **il me plaît d'obliger un ami** *it pleases me to oblige a friend*, **c'est à vous de parler** *it belongs to you to speak*; but **il faut parler** *it is necessary to speak*, **il fait bon vous revoir** *it does one good to see you again*. But **à** is sometimes used instead of **de** when the sense is future; i.e. when an action to follow is indicated: thus, **c'est à vous à parler** *you have now to speak*.

c. Where, after such a verb, there is a comparison, the second infinitive, preceded by **que** *than*, *as*, regularly has **de**: thus, **il vaut mieux se taire que de parler** *it is better to be silent than to speak*.

d. An infinitive as subject (like an ordinary noun: § **147***b*) is liable to be repeated by a following **ce**; thus, **s'entretenir avec son ami, c'est penser tout haut** *to talk with one's friend is to think aloud*, **te voir c'est t'aimer** *to see thee is to love thee*.

e. After **ce**, an infinitive (like a noun in general: § **147***b*) is sometimes preceded by **que**: thus, **ce n'est point cruauté que de punir les coupables** *it is not cruelty to punish the guilty;* and **que** is necessary after a predicate infinitive: thus, **c'est mériter la mort que de l'attendre d'autrui** *to await death from others is to deserve it*. In this case, the **de** may also be omitted: thus, **que l'attendre** etc.

174. The infinitive is sometimes used as a predicate.

a. It is so used, without sign, after **c'est**, after **sembler** and **paraître** *seem* or *appear*, after **se trouver** *find one's self*, *chance*, and after **être censé** or **supposé** *be supposed or reckoned:* thus, **végéter c'est mourir** *to vegetate is to die*, **il paraît arriver** *it seems to happen*, **il est censé être mort** *he is reckoned as dead*. Rarely, a **de** is found before the infinitive in such a use.

b. In other predicative uses, the infinitive has the sign **de**: thus, **son premier commandement est d'aimer Dieu** *his first commandment is, to love God*.

c. After **être**, etc., an infinitive preceded by **à** has the value of a predicate adjective (compare § **182***c*): thus, **cette maison est à acheter** *this house is purchasable*, **elle est à vendre** *it is for sale* or *to be sold*, **elle est à louer** *it is to let*, **ce thème est à refaire** *this exercise is to be done over again*, **nous sommes à plaindre** *we are pitiable* or *to be pitied*. As the examples show, the corresponding English expression is various, and in part identical with the French.

d. The infinitive without sign is sometimes used as a noun in apposition: thus, **il me reste deux partis à prendre: combattre ou m'enfuir** *there are left me two courses to take: fight or run away.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXXI. Infinitive as Subject and as Predicate.**

(§ 172.) [1] J'ai tout son être, et jusqu'à son nom même, en haine. (*de Vi.*) [2] La Madelon s'étonna aussi pour sa part du joli parler de la petite Fadette. (*G. Sand.*) [3] Je ne puis me fier qu'à vous pour me dire si je suis riche ou pauvre, et pour savoir au juste le compte de mon avoir. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 173.) [1] Attendre est impossible, agir ne l'est pas moins. (*Delavigne.*) [2] À quoi bon vouloir sauver ma vie? (*V. Hugo.*) [3] C'est manquer de respect à la reine. (*Scribe.*) [4] Oh! doucement; s'aimer, c'est une autre affaire. (*Mar.*) [5] Louer les princes des vertus qu'ils n'ont pas, c'est leur dire impunément des injures. (*La R.*) [6] Sauter à bas du lit, courir à la fenêtre, me toucher les bras et la tête, ce fut l'affaire d'un instant. (*Lab.*) [7] Plutôt souffrir que mourir: c'est la devise des hommes. (*La F.*) [8] Il faut ne plus nous voir; c'est le monde qui le veut ainsi. (*Sandeau.*) [9] Il me semble avoir vu remuer cette porte. (*Dum.*) [10] Que sert de se flatter? (*Rac.*) [11] Je n'ai fait qu'une faute: c'est de n'être pas parti dès que je t'ai vue. (*Mar.*) [12] C'est à Monseigneur . . . à lui faire oublier le pays qu'elle quitte avec tant de joie. (*de Sév.*) [13] De vous dire pourquoi, cela serait long. (*Courier.*) [14] Cela donne de la tristesse, de voir tant de morts autour de soi. (*de Sév.*) [15] Rien ne rafraîchit les idées comme de se faire la barbe. (*Lab.*) [16] Quand on ne trouve pas son repos en soi-même, il est inutile de le chercher ailleurs. (*La R.*) [17] Eh! monsieur, de quelle conséquence est-il de vous justifier auprès de moi? (*Mar.*) [18] C'est en quelque sorte se donner part aux belles actions, que de les louer de bon cœur. (*La R.*) [19] Ce n'est point outrager le marquis que de chercher sous ces ombrages les souvenirs qu'il y a laissés. (*Sandeau.*)

(§ 174.) [1] Épargner l'ennemi qui cède ou qui supplie, c'est user du pouvoir, c'est agir en vainqueur. (*Arnault.*) [2] Le plus grand bienfait qu'il retira de ces relations fut de recouvrer l'estime de lui-même. (*Sandeau.*) [3] Ah! jeunesse! jeunesse! que votre âge est à plaindre! (*Courier.*) [4] Il n'y

a plus qu'un pas à franchir. (*Guizot.*) [9] Il n'y a pour l'homme que trois événements : naître, vivre, et mourir. (*La Br.*)

THEME 17.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE INFINITIVE.

[1] To live is hard ; to die is yet harder. [2] But to die is better than to live in disgrace. [3] For her to show herself was to please ; for me to see her was to love her. [4] To hear you praised makes me happy. [5] It makes him proud to hear himself praised. [6] It is hard to live with a bad conscience. [7] There are many occasions when it is as well to be silent as to speak. [8] It ought to suffice you to know that I shall return next week. [9] It is a fine thing to keep a secret. [10] It seems to me that I saw you yesterday. [11] If he appears to hesitate, he will be thought to be afraid. [12] To speak is to express one's thoughts by words. [13] He finds himself to be the last of all the company to arrive. [14] He is to be pitied who has no friends. [15] It is to be hoped that he will soon go where enemies will no longer be to be feared. [16] This is what one calls being happy. [17] I have two things to do : go to school and go to walk with my friend.

175. The infinitive is especially used as object of, or dependent on, a verb. In this construction, it appears either without a sign, or with **de** or with **à**.

Sometimes more than one of these constructions is permissible with the same verb ; but in general, the governing verb determines the matter : compare § **183.**

176. The simple infinitive, or infinitive without preceding sign, appears in the following cases :

a. After the quasi-auxiliaries **vouloir, pouvoir, devoir, faire, laisser** : thus, **voulez-vous venir** *will you come?* **pouvez-vous le faire** *can you do it?* **je dois partir à cinq heures** *I am to set out at five o'clock*, **je le ferai appeler** *I will have him called* (lit'ly, *I will cause to call him*), **vous l'avez laissé tomber** *you have let it fall.*

But **devoir** in the sense of *owe*, having an indirect object, re-

quires **de** (§ 179*d*); also **faire plus que** *do more than:* thus, **on lui doit de l'aimer** *it is one's duty to love him.*

b. After **oser** *dare*, **daigner** *deign*, **savoir** *know how*, and certain verbs of desiring, hoping, intending, and the like, as **désirer, souhaiter, préférer, aimer autant** or **mieux, espérer, prétendre, compter, penser**: thus, **nous n'osons rien dire** *we dare not say anything*, **elle ne sait pas nager** *she does not know how to swim*, **désire-t-il nous parler** *does he want to speak to us?* **nous espérons vous voir demain** *we hope to see you to-morrow*, **je compte y être à l'heure dite** *I count on being there at the appointed hour;* also after **aimer** in the conditional: thus, **aimeriez-vous le voir** *would you like to see him?*

But after **désirer, souhaiter, préférer, espérer**, and **compter, de** is sometimes taken; and after **aimer autant** and **penser**, sometimes **à**. A second infinitive following **que** *than, as* regularly requires **de**: thus, **j'aime mieux partir que de rester** *I would rather go than stay.*

c. After certain verbs of believing, declaring, and the like, if their subject is also the subject of the action expressed by the infinitive. Such verbs are **croire, s'imaginer, penser, affirmer, assurer, avouer, déclarer, jurer, nier**: thus, **ils croient avoir raison** *they think they are right* (literally, *believe* [*themselves*] *to be right*), **il assure ne l'avoir jamais vue** *he declares that he never saw her*, **il nie être malade** *he denies that he is ill.* As the examples show, the English usually expresses the subject of the second verb.

Some of these verbs in special constructions take **de** or **à** before the infinitive: thus, **je jure d'y être** *I swear to be there.*

d. After verbs of perceiving, and sometimes (in relative clauses) of declaring, having a direct object which is the subject of the action expressed by the infinitive: thus, **je le vois venir** *I see him come*, **il l'a entendue parler** *he has heard her speak*, **je le trouve peser trois livres** *I find it to weigh three pounds*, **un pays qu'on m'avait dit être très agréable** *a country which they had declared to me to be very pleasant.* But the participle is often used instead of the infinitive after such a verb: thus, **on l'a vu courant** *he was seen running;* or a relative clause (§ **189***g*): thus, **le voici qui vient** *here he comes.*

Such a construction (with these verbs and with **laisser, faire, envoyer, mener**) is the nearest approach made in French to the Latin construction of an accusative as subject of an infinitive.

If the infinitive itself has a direct object, the object of the governing verb is regularly changed to indirect: see above, § **158.**

The object of the governing verb is often omitted when indefinite: thus, **j'entends sonner** *I hear* [*some one*] *ring* (i.e. *I hear a ringing*).

e. After certain verbs of motion and of causation of motion, especially **aller** *go*, **envoyer** *send*, also **mener** *conduct*, **mettre** *set*, **venir** *come*, **revenir** and **retourner** *return*, **rentrer** *come back in*, **courir** and **accourir** *run*, **être** (in past tenses) in the sense of *go*, etc.: thus, **ils sont allés demeurer à Paris**, *they have gone to live at Paris*, **envoyez le trouver** *send to find him*, **elle viendra me visiter demain** *she will come to visit me to-morrow*, **il a été trouver le roi** *he has been to find the king.* The English often coördinates the two verbs, with *and:* thus, *go and see him*, *send and find him*, and the like.

Hence certain common combinations, which are used almost as if simple verbs: thus, **aller** or **venir chercher** *fetch* (lit'ly, *go* or *come to look for*), **envoyer chercher** *send for*, **aller voir** *visit.* Also, the present and imperfect of **aller** are used with an infinitive to form a sort of tense of the immediate future (see XXVII. **8***c*): thus, **je vais le faire** *I am going to do it*, **il allait partir** *he was going to leave.*

Venir is followed by **à** before the infinitive when it means *happen:* thus **s'il venait à tomber** *if he happened to fall.* It also takes **de** before an infinitive to form a sort of tense of the immediate past (see XXXI. **11***b*): thus, **je viens de le faire** *I have just done it.*

f. Special cases are: often after **faillir** and **manquer** in the sense of *just miss*, and always after **avoir beau** in the sense of *try in vain:* thus, **vous avez failli tomber** *you came within an ace of falling*, **vous avez beau résister** *it is of no use for you to resist* (or *resist as you will*).

g. The infinitive without sign is often found in incomplete and exclamatory expression, where the verb on which it would depend is omitted: thus, **que faire** *what* [*is one*] *to do?* **moi, vous abandonner** *I, abandon you?* **plutôt mille fois mourir** *rather die a thousand times*, **on ne sait que faire ou à qui s'adresser** *one does not know what to do or to whom to address one's self*, **donnez-moi de quoi écrire** *give me wherewith to write.*

An infinitive standing occasionally in the sense of an imperative is of this character: thus, **voir les affiches** [*one may*] *see the advertisements.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXXII. Object-infinitive without Sign.**

(§ 176.) [1] Non seulement je ne le ferai pas jeter à la porte par mes laquais, mais encore je devrai l'héberger! (*Sandeau.*) [2] J'ai fait parler le loup et répondre l'agneau. (*La F.*) [3] Sait-elle coudre, savonner, faire de la soupe? demanda-t-il brusquement. (*Coppée.*) [4] Elles ont daigné me seconder. (*Scribe.*) [5] Il aimait mieux ne rien faire que de

travailler. (*Gautier.*) [6] Dans ce récit je prétends faire voir d'un certain sot la remontrance vaine. (*La F.*) [7] Mais croyez-vous avoir tué tous les Marats? (*Thiers.*) [8] Chacun dans ce miroir pense voir son image. (*Boileau.*) [9] Il disait venir du fond de la Bohême. (*Gautier.*) [10] Viens voir mourir ta sœur dans les bras de ton père. (*Corn.*) [11] Je frissonne encore de ce que je lui ai entendu dire. (*Mar.*) [12] J'entends frapper à la porte. J'ouvre; bon Dieu! c'était lui. (*Béranger.*) [13] On m'a voulu mener voir Mme. la Dauphine. (*de Sév.*) [14] Je ne peux pas vous donner cent mille francs, mais je m'en vais manger votre dîner. (*Feuillet.*) [15] Allons donc l'affranchir de ces frivoles craintes. (*Corn.*) [16] La nouvelle que je viens t'annoncer te fera-t-elle plaisir? (*Mar.*) [17] Vous aurez beau vous mutiner, vous ne changerez rien aux faits accomplis. (*Sandeau.*) [18] Madame d'Étampes, qui a failli perdre la France. (*Dum.*) [19] Quoi! condamner la victime, et épargner l'assassin? (*V. Hugo.*) [20] Quel parti prendre? Votre situation est neuve, assurément. (*Mar.*) [21] Ne pas comprendre mon enthousiasme pour cet homme? (*Soulié.*) [22] Défendez-vous, Horace.—À quoi bon me défendre? (*Corn.*)

Theme 18.

OBJECT-INFINITIVE WITHOUT SIGN.

[1] Can you come to our house to-day? [2] I should like to come; but I am to go elsewhere with my father. [3] Then I shall hope to see you to-morrow. [4] You owe it to me to visit me at least three times a week. [5] He knows how to read and to profit by what he reads. [6] He likes better to read than to play. [7] He declares he was not at the theatre yesterday, but I think I saw him there with my own eyes. [8] He does not deny having been out of the house all the evening. [9] He imagines himself to be very cunning; but if he thinks to deceive me, he is much mistaken. [10] Have you not heard it said that we are going to have a great war in Europe? [11] I had not reckoned to see it come in our time. [12] Go find my servant, and send him to look for my book. [13] I will run and find him at once. [14] We have

been to visit our friends, but we did not see them; they had gone to take a walk. " Where can my shoes be? some one has perhaps set them to dry at the fire. " Look for them as you will, you will not find them.

177. Many verbs are followed by a dependent infinitive preceded by the preposition **de**.

a. The number of such verbs is very large, **de** being in French more common than **à** before the infinitive. In a majority of cases, the **de** has more or less clearly its proper prepositional value, as meaning *from*, *of*, *on account of*, *in respect to*, and the construction of the infinitive is quite analogous with that of a noun following the same verb and requiring **de** before it; but in nearly as many cases it is not so, but the **de** is mere "sign" of the infinitive.

178. Verbs requiring **de** before an infinitive-object in the same manner as before a noun-object may be classified as follows:

a. Verbs after which **de** has nearly the sense of *from:* thus, **s'abstenir** *abstain*, **se garder** *keep one's self*, *beware*, (**le** or **se**) **désaccoutumer** or **déshabituer** *disaccustom*, *wean*, (**le** or **se**) **dispenser** or **excuser** *let off*, *excuse*, (**le**) **dissuader** *dissuade*, (**le** or **se**) **empêcher** *prevent*, *hinder*, **venir** *be coming* (§ **176***e*), etc.

b. Verbs after which **de** has the meaning *of*, or, much more often, *on account of*, *in respect to*, and the like. Thus, of intransitives, **convenir** *agree*, **désespérer** *despair*, **douter** *doubt*, **éclater** etc. (**de rire**) *burst* etc. (*with laughing*), **enrager** *be in a fury to* or *at*, **frémir** *shudder*, **gémir** *groan*, **mourir** in the sense of *long*, **parler** *talk*, **rire** *laugh*, **rougir** *blush*, **souffrir** *suffer*, and **brûler** in the sense of *burn with desire*. Further, of transitives taking a reflexive or other object, or both: (**le**) **accuser** *accuse*, (**le**) **avertir** *notify*, (**se**) **repentir** *repent*, (**le**) **soupçonner** *suspect;* (**le**) **blâmer** *blame*, (**se**) **vanter** *boast*, (**le** or **se**) **plaindre** *pity*, (**se**) **réjouir** *rejoice*, (**le**) **remercier** *thank*, **s'étonner** *be astonished*, and so on (the verbs are too numerous to give in full).

c. More obscure cases are: (**le** or **se**) **charger** *charge*, (**se**) **dépêcher** or **hâter** *hasten*, (**se**) **ingérer** or **mêler** *meddle*, (**se**) **presser** *be eager*, **se passer** *do without*, and the impersonal **il s'agit** *the question* or *matter in hand is*.

179. Verbs requiring **de** as sign before an infinitive object may be classified as follows:

a. Verbs taking a direct object which is subject of the action of the infinitive : such are (**le**) **conjurer** *conjure*, **persuader** *persuade*, **prier** *pray*, **sommer** *summon*, **supplier** *beg*, and **défier** *defy, challenge.*

b. Verbs taking the infinitive with **de** as direct object, along with an indirect object (sometimes reflexive) which is subject of the action of the infinitive : thus, (**lui**) **commander** *command*, **conseiller** *advise*, **crier** *cry*, **défendre** *forbid*, **demander** *ask (of any one)*, **dire** *tell*, **écrire** *write*, **enjoindre** *enjoin*, **imputer** *impute*, **inspirer** *put into the mind*, **mander** *order*, **ordonner** *order*, **pardonner** *pardon*, **permettre** *permit*, **persuader** *persuade*, **prescrire** *prescribe*, **proposer** *propose*, **recommander** *recommend*, **reprocher** *reproach for*, **souffrir** *suffer*, **suggérer** *suggest.*

c. Verbs taking the infinitive with **de** as direct object, the subject of the action of verb and infinitive being the same : thus, **achever** *complete*, **affecter** *affect*, **ambitionner** *be ambitious* or *eager*, **appréhender** *apprehend*, **cesser** *cease* (or this belongs under **178***a*), **choisir** *choose*, **continuer** *continue* (also with **à**), **craindre** *fear*, **dédaigner** *disdain*, **différer** *defer*, **discontinuer** *cease*, **entreprendre** *undertake*, **éviter** *shun*, **feindre** *feign*, **finir** *finish*, **garder** *keep*, **hasarder** *risk*, **méditer** *meditate*, **mériter** *deserve*, **négliger** *neglect*, **obtenir** *get permission*, **omettre** *omit*, **oublier** *forget*, **présumer** *presume*, **regretter** *regret*, **risquer** *risk*, **tenter** *try*, and some others.

d. A few such verbs take or may take in addition an indirect object : thus, **devoir** *owe* (which without indirect object takes the simple infinitive : § **176***a*), **jurer** *swear*, **menacer** *threaten*, **promettre** *promise*, **proposer** *propose*, **rappeler** (especially reflexive) *recall.*

e. In certain phrases, the infinitive with **de** is taken by a verb as direct object, along with an adjective as objective predicate : such are **trouver bon** *think [it] well*, **juger nécessaire** or **convenable** *regard as necessary* or *suitable*, **faire bien** or **mieux** *do well* or *better*, and some others.

f. It was pointed out above (§ **176***b*) that after a few verbs **de** may be either taken or omitted : such are **désirer** *desire*, **souhaiter** *wish*, **espérer** *hope*, **détester** *detest*, **nier** *deny.* For the verbs that are followed by either **de** or **à**, see below, § **183.**

g. The infinitive with **de** is used elliptically, without governing verb expressed, in the sense of *begin to* or the like : thus, **ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs d'applaudir** *thus spoke the fox ; and his flatterers took to applauding* (La F.). Also, at the head of a sentence, to emphasize or put in due connection a following statement : thus, **de recourir à Louise, je ne l'aime plus** *to recur to Louisa, I no longer love her* (compare § **182***h*).

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXIII. Object-infinitive with *de*.

(§ 178.) [1] Le souvenir du dernier de ses crimes auquel j'assistai m'a empêché de lui parler. (*de Vi.*) [2] Je viens de l'apprendre tout à l'heure. (*Mar.*) [3] Ils convinrent de s'en rapporter au jugement du peuple romain. (*Bossuet.*) [4] Ne me fais plus rougir d'entendre tes soupirs. (*Corn.*) [5] Votre père souffre de vous voir en proie à un si violent désespoir. (*Girardin.*) [6] Je te plains de tomber dans ses mains redoutables. (*Rac.*) [7] On ne devrait s'étonner que de pouvoir encore s'étonner. (*La R.*) [8] L'enfant éclata de rire à cette ridicule menace. (*Mérimée.*) [9] C'est parmi eux qu'il s'agit pour nous de se créer des amis fidèles, sincères. (*Ste.-B.*) [10] Le roi se mêle, depuis quelque temps, de faire des vers. (*de Sév.*)

(§ 179.) [1] Je vous prie de monter à cheval et de sortir de la ville. (*de Vi.*) [2] Il commande au soleil d'animer la nature. (*Rac.*) [3] Il n'eût point pardonné à son frère d'être venu voir la Fadette et non pas lui. (*G. Sand.*) [4] Je vous défends, mademoiselle, de danser avec lui. (*Scribe.*) [5] Répondez donc; je ne demande pas mieux que de me tromper. (*Mar.*) [6] Grand roi, cesse de vaincre, ou je cesse d'écrire. (*Boileau.*) [7] Vous avez omis de me demander ce que je viens faire à Paris. (*Augier.*) [8] Sur les pas d'un banni craignez-vous de marcher? (*Rac.*) [9] Je vous promets de ne pas oublier votre numéro aujourd'hui. (*Scribe.*) [10] Au lieu de les interrompre, nous ferons mieux d'observer et d'écouter. (*Scribe.*) [11] Le voilà donc de courir jusqu'à la demeurance de la mère Fadet, et de lui conter sa peine. (*G. Sand.*) [12] Un étranger m'a jeté ce secret à la face, et chaque électeur alors de dire: c'est vrai. (*Dum.*) [13] De recourir à Blanche; elle avait trop d'intérêt à déguiser la vérité. (*Le Sage.*)

THEME 19.

OBJECT-INFINITIVE WITH de.

[1] Beware of falling into the water, if you cannot swim. [2] He has just fallen into the water, and that prevents him from coming to school. [3] He ought to blush at being absent for such a cause. [4] We agreed to meet here, and I was aston-

ished not to find him already arrived ; but now I despair of seeing him to-day. [5] I rejoice to hear you say that you love me still. [6] I beg you to remain an hour with me. [7] He advised me to go home and to busy myself with my own affairs. [8] Allow me to tell you that your conduct does not please me. [9] I forbid you to behave thus any longer. [10] She continued to write him, and to reproach him for his bad conduct ; but he refused to answer her. [11] If you put off starting, you will deserve to be abandoned by the others. [12] I regret to make them wait ; but it is impossible for me to do otherwise. [13] I must risk offending them, for I have promised my father to stay here till he comes. [14] I judged proper to let him see that he had offended me. [15] He finds it better to conceal his evil designs in my presence.

180. Many verbs are followed by a dependent infinitive having before it the preposition **à**.

a. Here also (as with **de**: § **177***a*), in a majority of cases, the preposition has more or less its own value, as meaning *to*, *unto*, *at*, or the like, and the construction of the infinitive is analogous with that of a noun following the same verb, and requiring **à** before it ; but in part the **à** is a more arbitrary " sign" of the infinitive.

181. Verbs requiring **à** before an infinitive-object in the same manner as before a noun-object may be classified as follows :

a. Intransitive verbs are : **aboutir** *come (to, as result)*, **aspirer** *aspire*, **attendre** *wait, defer*, **concourir** *concur*, **condescendre** *condescend*, **consenter** *consent*, **conspirer** *conspire*, **contribuer** *contribute*, **incliner**, *incline*, **parvenir** *attain*, **pencher** *incline*, **penser** *think*, **renoncer** *renounce*, **répugner** *feel repugnance*, **réussir** *succeed*, **servir** *serve*, **songer** *think*, **suffire** *suffice*, **tendre** *tend*, **tenir** in the sense of *hold on, insist, be eager*, **viser** *aim*.

b. Transitive verbs, with reflexive or other object, or with both : **abaisser** *lower*, **accorder** *cause to agree*, **accoutumer** *accustom*, **admettre** *admit*, **aguerrir** *harden*, **aider** *aid*, **amener** *bring*, **animer** *animate*, **appeler** *call*, **appliquer** *apply*, **apprêter** *prepare*, **assigner** *assign*, **assujettir** *subject*, **attacher** *attach*, **attendre** *keep waiting*, **avilir** *debase*, **borner** *limit*, **complaire** *acquiesce*, **condamner** *condemn*, **disposer** *dispose*, **encourager** *encour-*

age, **exciter** *excite*, **exercer** *exercise*, **exhorter** *exhort*, **exposer** *expose*, **habituer** *habituate*, **induire** *induce*, **intéresser** *interest*, **inviter** *invite*, **mettre** *set* (**se mettre** is frequent in the sense of *begin*), **plaire** *please*, **porter** *lead*, **pousser** *urge*, **préparer** *prepare*, **provoquer** *provoke*, **réduire** *reduce*, **résigner** *resign*, **vouer** *devote*.

182. Verbs requiring as sign **à** before a dependent infinitive may be classified as follows:

a. Many verbs take an infinitive preceded by **à** in the sense of *at, about, in reference to:* such are the intransitives **balancer** *waver*, **exceller** *excel*, **persévérer** *persevere*, **persister** *persist*, **tarder** *be slow, delay*, **travailler** *labor*, **triompher** *triumph;* the reflexives **s'acharner** *be eager*, **s'amuser** *amuse one's self*, **se consumer** *wear one's self out*, **se divertir** *be diverted*, **s'entendre** *have sconce*, **s'épuiser** *exhaust one's self*, **s'essayer** *try one's hand*, **s'étudier** *apply one's self*, **s'obstiner** and **s'opiniâtrer** *be obstinate*, **se plaire** *take pleasure;* and the transitives **employer** *employ*, **passer** *pass* (*one's time* etc.), **surprendre** *catch*. With them may be mentioned the phrases **prendre soin** *take care*, **prendre plaisir** or **avoir du plaisir** *take pleasure*, **il y a plaisir** *one has pleasure*. Other verbs than these are found taking the same construction, it being a current and extensible one.

b. More peculiar cases are **consister** *consist*, and **gagner** *gain* (where we should expect rather **de**).

c. After certain verbs, **à** is used before an infinitive (much as *to* after the same verbs in English) in a sort of future sense, pointing forward to the action expressed by the infinitive as something anticipated or obligatory: thus, after **avoir, j'ai cela à faire** or **j'ai à faire cela** *I have this to do* or *I have to do this;* and in like manner after **donner** *give*, **chercher** *seek*, **laisser** in the sense of *leave*, **trouver** *find*. Hence also in the same sense predicatively after **être** (see above, § **174***c*): thus, **cela est à faire** *this is* [*a thing*] *to do* or *to be done* (and then also attributively **une chose à faire** *a thing to do* or *to be done*); and after **rester** *remain, be left*, and the like: thus, **il me reste à faire** *it is left me to do*, **combien coûte un cheval à nourrir** *how much does a horse cost to keep?*

d. The infinitive with **à** is used as direct object after certain verbs, the subject of the action of the infinitive being the same with that of the verb: thus, **aimer** *love, like* (except in conditional: § **176***b*), **apprendre** *learn*, **chercher** *seek*, **désapprendre** *unlearn*.

e. The infinitive with **à** is used as direct object after a few verbs that take an indirect object which is subject of the action expressed by the infinitive: thus, (**lui**) **aider** *help*, (**lui**) **enseigner** or **apprendre** *teach*, (**lui**) **montrer** *show*.

f. The infinitive with **à** follows a few verbs taking a direct object which is subject of the action expressed by the infinitive: thus, (**le**) **instruire** or **apprendre** *teach*, (**le**) **autoriser** *authorize.*

g. After a few verbs, **à** may either be taken or omitted: such are **prétendre** *intend, claim*, (**lui**) **plaire** *please.* For verbs followed by either **de** or **à**, see below, § **183.**

h. The infinitive with **à** is often used elliptically, or without governing verb expressed, usually at the head of a sentence, to signify (as in English) a condition of what follows: thus, **à vous entendre, on croirait** . . . *to hear you, one would think* . . . (i.e. *if one heard you*). Also sometimes to express result, and hence degree: thus, **il sent le vin à faire horreur** *he smells of wine* [*enough*] *to frighten one.*

183. Some verbs admit either de or à before a following dependent infinitive.

Sometimes the choice depends on a difference in the meaning of the verb, or in its construction; sometimes it is a matter of indifference, or nearly so, being governed by no rule that is distinctly statable and consistently followed.

a. The verbs **accoutumer** *accustom* (in compound tenses), **décider** *decide*, **déterminer** *determine*, **hasarder** *venture*, **offrir** *offer*, **refuser** *refuse*, **résoudre** *resolve*, regularly and usually take **de** when the infinitive is their direct object, but **à** when they have another direct object, reflexive or otherwise: thus, **j'ai résolu de partir** *I have resolved to leave*, but **je me suis résolu à partir**; and **je l'ai décidé à partir** *I have decided him* (i.e. *made him decide*) *to leave.* Some other verbs take **à** after their reflexive forms, but **de** in other constructions.

b. More special cases are: **haïr** *hate* takes **à** when affirmative, but **de** when negative; **prendre garde** *beware* takes **de** before an affirmative infinitive, but **à** before a negative; **demander** takes **de** when it has an indirect object, the subject of the infinitive action: thus, **je lui demande de se taire** *I ask him to hold his peace;* **laisser**, which in the sense of *let* or *cause* is followed by the simple infinitive (§ **176***a*), takes **à** in the sense of *leave to*, and **de** in that of *leave off from, fail:* thus, **je vous laisse à penser** *I leave to you to imagine*, **elle ne laisse pas de plaire** *she does not cease to please.*

c. Verbs that take either **de** or **à** in senses but little or not at all distinguished from one another are: the verbs of endeavor **essayer** and **tâcher** *try*, **s'efforcer** and **s'empresser** *endeavor*, **s'occuper** *be busy;* the verbs of constraint (with direct object, as subject of the infinitive action) **contraindre, forcer, obliger**; and a number of others: **commencer** *begin*, **continuer** *continue*, **con-**

tentir *consent*, **manquer** *fail*, **oublier** *forget*, **hésiter** and **trembler** *hesitate;* and, with direct objects (subjects of the infinitive action) **convier** *invite*, **engager** *engage*, **enhardir** *inure*.

d. There are many other verbs which in antiquated or in loose style, or in occasional cases, take another preposition before a following infinitive than the one usually met with.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXIV. Object-infinitive with **à**.

(§ 181.) [1] Après une vigoureuse défense, il était parvenu a faire sa retraite. (*Mérimée.*) [2] Tout m'afflige et me nuit et conspire à me nuire. (*Rac.*) [3] L'erreur ne réussit qu'à établir avec plus d'éclat la vérité. (*Massillon.*) [4] C'était la première fois, depuis son retour, qu'elle se décidait à toucher cette rive. (*Sandeau.*) [5] Elle l'amena doucement à parler de son fils, et parut s'intéresser à tous ses discours. (*Sandeau.*) [6] Il voulait accoutumer aussi ses Moscovites à ne pas connaître de saison. (*Vol.*) [7] Qui pardonne aisément, invite à l'offenser. (*Corn.*) [8] Elle les exhorta à demeurer fermes dans la religion catholique. (*Mignet.*)

(§ 182.) [1] Il excelle à conduire un char dans la carrière. (*Rac.*) [2] Le public révolté s'obstine à l'admirer. (*Boileau.*) [3] Tu passes la nuit à rêver ou à écrire ; mais, je t'en avertis, tu ne réussiras à rien, si ce n'est à maigrir, à être moins belle, et à n'être pas reine. (*de Vi.*) [4] La poésie ne consiste pas à tout dire, mais à tout faire rêver. (*Ste.-B.*) [5] Deux hommes si adroits n'ont rien à gagner à se tromper l'un l'autre. (*V. Hugo.*) [6] Après cela, je n'ai plus rien à vous dire. (*Mar.*) [7] J'ai une famille et le nom français à soutenir. (*Lab.*) [8] Mais, à propos de tes adieux, il me reste encore une chose à savoir. (*Mar.*) [9] Arrête donc, Lisette ; j'ai à te parler pour la dernière fois. (*Mar.*) [10] On apporte à manger ; on sert un déjeûner fort propre. (*Courier.*) [11] Elle apprend à chanter, à danser ; elle lit, elle travaille. (*de Sév.*) [12] Je ferai justice ; j'aime à la rendre à tous, à toute heure, en tout lieu. (*Corn.*) [13] Aide-moi à oublier que je suis roi. (*Dum.*) [14] A vous entendre, on croit que vous avez raison. (*d'Harleville.*) [15] A vouloir le contraire, Dieu lui-même perdrait sa puissance. (*Sandeau.*) [16] A me voir, vous n'eussiez su si j'étais mort ou vivant. (*Courier.*) [17] Mais elle va à ravir, continua-t-il ; on la croirait faite pour madame la princesse. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 183.) [1] Franchement, je ne haïrais pas de lui plaire

sous le personnage que je joue. (*Mar.*) [2] Le public français ne laisse pas d'être singulier quelquefois dans ses jugements sur la poésie. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] Mais Paul et Virginie ! à peine a-t-il commencé à le leur traduire, qu'à l'instant la scène change. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] J'avais commencé d'écrire, et je m'arrêtai. (*Mont.*)

THEME 20.

OBJECT-INFINITIVE WITH **à**.

[1] Do you consent to see her? [2] He aspires to win my approbation. [3] Everything conspires to aid him, and he will perhaps succeed in attaining his end. [4] I have led him to confess his crime, and have condemned him to suffer its punishment. [5] This girl excels at playing the piano. [6] They are slow to come when one calls them. [7] They were pleased to say that they had amused themselves with taking a walk, and that they had not heard [any one] call. [8] Let us get ready to depart, for the light is beginning to appear, and we have a long journey to make. [9] I like to see the sun rise. [10] If you employ your mornings at studying French, you will soon learn to read it, and you will even come at last to speak it well. [11] I always do well what I have learned to do. [12] Help me, I beg you, to read this difficult passage. [13] I will teach you to understand it. [14] To see you study, one would think that you like better to play.

[15] He has tried to injure me, and I am trying to restrain my indignation. [16] He does not hate to do me an injustice, but he hates to see me afterward. [17] The law will constrain him to do what he had consented to do. [18] Take care not to approach too near, and beware of falling. [19] Do you ask to drink? then ask some one to give you a glass of water. [20] One must resolve to drink only water here.

184. Many adjectives are followed by a dependent infinitive having **de** or **à** as its sign.

Usually, the proper value of the preposition is to be seen in such constructions.

a. An infinitive preceded by **de** is used especially after adjectives expressing a condition or movement of the mind. The **de** here means *of* or *by reason of* (though sometimes other prepositions, or *to* as infinitive-sign, are preferred in English), and the construction of the infinitive is the same with that of a noun following the adjective. Such adjectives are: **bien aise** *very glad*, **digne** *worthy*, **capable** *capable*, **charmé** *charmed*, **content** *pleased*, **curieux** *curious*, **désireux** *desirous*, **enchanté** *enchanted*, **étonné** *astonished*, **fâché** *sorry, angry*, **fier** *proud*, **heureux** *happy*, **honteux** *ashamed*, **inconsolable** *inconsolable*, **jaloux** *jealous*, **las** *weary*, **mécontent** *dissatisfied*, **satisfait** *satisfied*, **sûr** *sure*, **surpris** *surprised*, and many others of kindred meaning. Examples are **heureux de le voir** *happy to see him* (i.e. on account of seeing him), **curieux d'apprendre** *curious to learn*, **las de la chercher** *weary of looking for her*. Also after **être** followed by an adjective, especially **bon**, in such phrases as **vous êtes bien bon de venir si tôt** *you are very good to come so soon*, **qu'il est hardi de le risquer** *how daring he is to risk it!* Also in the second term of a comparison: thus, **si injuste que de nous punir** *so unjust as to punish us*. A few adverbs, having the value of predicate adjectives, are followed in like manner by an infinitive with **de**: thus, **loin de vous aimer** *far from loving you*.

b. An infinitive with **à** is used in general after adjectives which would admit a noun with the same construction, the preposition having its proper value of *to, at, in regard to, for*. Such adjectives are especially **adroit** *skilful*, **aisé** *easy*, **beau** *fine*, **bon** *good*, **curieux** *remarkable*, **difficile** *hard*, **disposé** *disposed*, **enclin** *inclined*, **facile** *easy*, **habile** *skilled*, **impossible** *impossible*, **lent** *slow*, **prêt** *ready*, **prompt** *prompt*, **propre** *suited*, **triste** *sad*, **utile** *useful*. Examples are **bon à manger** *good to eat*, **difficile à faire** *hard to do*, **prêt à partir** *ready to leave*. An infinitive with **à** is also common after an ordinal used substantively, especially **le premier** and **le dernier**, and after **le seul**: thus, **le premier à venir, le seul à rester** *the first to come, the only one to stay*.

The cases must be carefully noted where the infinitive is logical subject (§ **173***b*), since it then takes **de**: thus, **cela est difficile à faire** *that is hard to do*, but **il est difficile de faire cela** *it is hard to do that*.

185. A noun often takes a dependent infinitive preceded by **de** or **à**.

a. The infinitive with **de** after a noun corresponds in general to the English infinitive in *-ing* preceded by *of* (though often capable also of being rendered otherwise): thus, **l'art d'écrire** *the art of writing*, **l'occasion de parler** *the occasion of speaking*.

Often, a verb and noun together form a sort of verb-phrase, much used with a following infinitive: thus, **avoir peur** or **crainte** *be afraid*, **avoir envie** *desire*, **avoir soin** *take care*, **prendre garde** *beware*, **faire semblant** *pretend*, **rendre grâce** *return thanks:* for example, **j'ai peur d'y aller** *I am afraid to go there (have fear of going).*

b. An infinitive with **à** after a noun is used attributively in the same sense as predicatively after **être** (§ **174***c*): thus, **un appartement à louer** *an apartment to rent;* or also, where **à** might be rendered by *calculated to, of a sort to:* thus, **un spectacle à ravir** *a spectacle to delight one*, **un conte à faire peur** *a story [of a kind] to frighten one.*

Not seldom, such an infinitive with **à** is used elliptically, and forms a sort of compound noun, the infinitive being used like an ordinary noun of characteristic (§ **36**) with **à**: thus, **une chambre à coucher** *a bedroom* (i.e. *chamber to sleep [in]*), **la salle à manger** *the dining-room.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—**XXXV. Infinitive dependent on an Adjective or a Noun.**

(§ 184.) [1] Regardez-moi donc comme incapable de prononcer un discours de réception, en supposant que je sois capable de le faire. (*Béranger.*) [2] Je ne serais pas fâché de subjuguer sa raison, de l'étourdir un peu. (*Mar.*) [3] Je serai charmé de triompher, mais il faut que j'arrache ma victoire. (*Mar.*) [4] Il était habitué à nous sermonner, et il sent qu'il ne trouverait plus d'élève si docile à l'écouter et à l'applaudir. (*de Vi.*) [5] Elle est bien hardie d'oser avoir une femme de chambre comme toi. (*Mar.*) [6] Lisette s'habille, et, devant son miroir, nous trouve très imprudents de lui livrer Dorante. (*Mar.*) [7] Dieu n'est pas si injuste que de nous marquer pour un mauvais sort avant notre naissance. (*G. Sand.*)

(§ 185.) [1] Tu n'a pas besoin d'ordonner pour être servie. (*Mar.*) [2] Eh bien ! l'honneur de lui plaire ne me sera pas inutile. (*Mar.*) [3] Vous avez raison de plaindre M. de Pomponne quand il va dans ce pays-là. (*de Sév.*) [4] Il est homme à profiter de cette faveur ; il a de l'esprit. (*Scribe.*) [5] Au milieu était un beefsteak d'une mine à faire honte à un beefsteak anglais. (*Dum.*) [6] La scène . . . est d'une magnificence à faire envie à Jean-Jacques et à Buffon. (*Ste.-B.*)

THEME 21.

INFINITIVE DEPENDENT ON AN ADJECTIVE OR A NOUN.

[1] I am very glad to see you, but sorry to learn that you have been so ill. [2] They were curious to know whether she was there still. [3] If he were capable of committing such a crime, he would be unworthy to continue in our society. [4] I am more ambitious to serve you than to please you. [5] We are sure to start at five o'clock, but we are by no means certain of coming back before to-morrow. [6] Far from believing his story, they were on the point of having him cast into prison as a cheat. [7] All that is born is liable to die. [8] He is equally inclined to acquire and to keep. [9] That is a man very skilful in handling the pencil. [10] A thing easy enough to say, but very hard to do. [11] He would be the last to deny what he was the first to say.

[12] If I found an opportunity to serve you, I should be ashamed not to avail myself of it. [13] Take care to walk straight, and beware of falling. [14] The problem to solve was very simple. [15] All men, born and to be born, count upon a life to come. [16] He came down from his bedroom to the dining-room.

186. Certain adverbs and adverbial phrases are followed before an infinitive by **de** or **à**, forming a sort of preposition-phrase governing the infinitive.

a. Those formed with **de** are especially **avant de** *before*, **près de** *near*, **plutôt que de** *rather than*, **hors de** *apart from*, **loin de** *far from*, **afin de** *for the purpose of*, *in order to*, **à force de** *by dint of*, **à moins de** *short of*, **à condition de** *on condition of*, **faute de** *for lack of* (see XXXIII. 5): thus, **avant de partir** *before setting out*, **à moins d'être attentif** *short of being attentive* (i.e. *unless one is attentive*), **plutôt que d'étudier, il s'amuse** *rather than study, he amuses himself.*

b. Those formed with **à** are especially **de manière** or **façon à** *in a way to*, **jusqu'à** *so far as to*: thus, **il est allé jusqu'à la frapper** *he went so far as to strike her.* Less common are phrases with the adjectives **sauf** *safe* and **quitte** *quits*, used elliptically: thus, **sauf à changer** *reserving the right to change*, **quitte à être grondé** *getting off with a scolding.*

187. A few other prepositions, besides **de** and **à**, govern the infinitive directly, having before it their own proper value, as before a noun.

a. **Pour** is very common before an infinitive, with the sense of *for, in order to:* thus, **il est ici pour jouer** *he is here in order to play* (or *for playing*, or simply *to play*); and in this sense it is especially frequent after **assez, trop,** and the like: thus, **trop jeune pour marier** *too young to marry.* Also sometimes in the sense of *for, on account of:* thus, **il est puni pour avoir volé** *he is punished for having stolen.*

Verbs admitting **de** or **à** before an infinitive sometimes take **pour** instead, when the sense is made plainer by it.

b. **Par** *by* now governs the infinitive directly only after verbs of beginning and ending: thus, **il commence par écrire** *he begins with writing.*

c. **Après** *after* is properly used only before the compound infinitive: thus, **après avoir parlé** *after having spoken.*

d. **Sans** *without:* thus, **sans parler mot** *without saying a word.*

e. **Entre** *between:* thus, **il balance entre aller et rester** *he wavers between going and staying.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXVI. **Infinitive after other Prepositions.**

(§ 186.) [1] Il n'osait tirer, de peur de tuer Guillaume, s'il n'était pas mort. (*Dum.*) [2] Avant de se mettre à table, il pria Mlle. le Couvreur de réciter quelque morceau. (*Ste.-B.*) [3] Je vais jusqu'à former des vœux contre moi-même. (*Delavigne.*) [4] Avant deux jours, je le confondrai de manière à ne lui laisser rien à répondre. (*Picard.*)

(§ 187.) [1] Je viens pour épouser, et ils m'attendent pour être mariés; cela est convenu. (*Mar.*) [2] Je ne suis plus gourmand, pour trop l'avoir été; et, pour avoir trop ri, je n'ai plus de gaîté. (*Augier.*) [3] Vous m'avez prédit, milord, qu'un jour nous finirons par nous aimer. (*Scribe.*) [4] Après m'être rasé, je me trouvai un tout autre homme. (*Lab.*) [5] Je m'éloigne sans me plaindre et sans murmurer. (*Sandeau.*)

THEME 22.

INFINITIVE AFTER OTHER PREPOSITIONS.

[1] Before finding us, he was near despairing of his life. For lack of having been notified, he did not know where

to seek us. [3] Instead of running and seeking, she stands still and weeps. [4] It is not possible to reason thus, short of being crazy. [5] Conduct yourself in a manner to be loved. [6] No one is ever too old to learn. [7] I want a pen and some paper, to write a letter to my mother. [8] He is sick now, for having eaten too much yesterday. [9] This man began by being simple soldier; I think he will end by becoming general. [10] We have returned, after having been three years absent. [11] He had to depart without seeing her. [12] There is a great difference between promising and keeping word.

E.—The Participles and Gerund.

188. The present participle has both a participial and an ordinary adjective use; the gerund agrees with it in form (not in origin or construction: see X. 3*c*, *d*).

189. *a.* The present participle, in its participial use, is not varied for gender and number to agree with the noun to which it relates.

b. The present participle used adjectively is varied like any other adjective to agree with its noun.

c. The participle is left unvaried when it takes an object, reflexive or other; and, in general, when it has the adjuncts that are distinctive of a verb: thus, **deux hommes parlant ensemble** *two men talking together*, **des preuves convainquant tout le monde** *proofs convincing everybody*, **une mère consolant sa fille** *a mother consoling her daughter*. Hence **soi-disant** is invariable: thus, **des soi-disant amis** *self-styled friends*. **Ayant** and **étant** are never varied.

d. The participle is varied when it has only the ordinary adjuncts of an adjective, and the construction of one: thus, **l'homme est une créature parlante** *man is a speaking creature*, **ces preuves sont bien convaincantes** *these proofs are very convincing*, **des paroles consolantes** *consoling words*.

e. Many common adjectives are by origin present participles: thus, **charmant** *charming*, **intéressant** *interesting*. Some are such participles with a somewhat changed spelling: thus, **fatiguant** *fatiguing*, **fatigant** *tiresome;* **excellant** *excelling*, **excel-**

lent *excellent;* **violant** *violating,* **violent** *violent;* **convainquant, convaincant** *convincing.*

f. The distinctions between the participial and adjectival uses of the participle are not always strictly maintained, and they are less regarded in older style.

g. Often, where we should use in English a present participle, the French has a relative clause: thus, **je le vois qui vient** *I see him coming.*

190. The gerund, having always the same form as the present participle, is used only after the preposition **en**, and signifies accompanying action, or means.

Thus, **en lisant** *in [the act of] reading, while reading, on reading,* or simply *reading.*

a. The simultaneousness of the action is often made more emphatic by prefixing the adverb **tout** *altogether:* thus, **tout en lisant** *in the very act of reading, even while reading.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXVII. Present Participle and Gerund.

(§ 189.) [1] Se sentant un peu fatiguée, et voulant conserver ou reprendre ses forces pour le dernier moment, elle se mit au lit. (*Mignet.*) [2] Nous voilà mangeant et buvant. (*Courier.*) [3] Tous deux partent, Germain rêvant à sa défunte plus qu'à sa future, et Marie pleurant de quitter sa mère et le pays. (*Ste.-B.*) [4] Les bœufs mugissants et les brebis bêlantes venaient en foule, quittant les gras pâturages. (*Fén.*) [5] Maman, toujours projetante et toujours agissante, ne nous laissait guère oisifs ni l'un ni l'autre. (*Rouss.*) [6] Il ne bouge non plus qu'une pauvre pierre, et voilà l'orage qui vient. (*G. Sand.*) [7] Mais voici un char qui passe, un chien qui aboie, ou rien du tout: il faut voir ce que c'est. (*Tœpfer.*)

(§ 190.) [1] C'est ton fils, lui dit-elle d'une voix tremblante, en attachant ses yeux noirs sur ceux de son mari. (*Mérimée.*) [2] Ne lisez pas cela en vous couchant; vous en rêveriez. (*Courier.*) [3] C'est en méconnaissant ce but qu'on blasphème et qu'on est malheureux; c'est en le comprenant ou en l'acceptant qu'on est homme. (*Jouffroy.*) [4] Louis XVI., tout en condamnant la conduite des émigrés, ne voulut pas donner son adhésion aux mesures prises contre eux. (*Mignet.*) [5] Tout en écrivant cela, elle s'acheminait vers Paris. (*Thiers.*)

THEME 23.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND.

[1] Our friendship, triumphing over jealousy, will endure eternally. [2] Thus he spoke, with a triumphant voice. [3] They (f.) took my book, knowing that it was mine? [4] His words, striking my ear, attracted all my attention. [5] He addressed to them a few striking words of consolation and encouragement. [6] He is a very tiresome man. [7] This woman, suffering all that a woman can suffer, appeals to our compassion. [8] Help her; she appears [to be] suffering. [9] I saw her playing at cards an hour ago. [10] We walked slowly, stopping often to listen. [11] Night came to part the combatants. [12] He grew pale while reading the letter which I handed him. [13] Saying these words, the tears came to his eyes. [14] Even while speaking to us, she trembled and fainted.

191. The past participle is more distinctly and exclusively an adjective than the present participle; and its constructions are in the main those of an ordinary adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the noun to which it relates.

a. It has a peculiar treatment, calling for special rules, only when combined with the auxiliaries **avoir** and **être** to make the compound forms of a verb: see XXVIII. **5-8.**

b. The past participle, being passive in its character, does not take an object; but it admits the other various modifiers of a verb.

c. For certain participles which are unvaried before the nouns which they qualify, see § **56***a*.

192. As regards the use of the participle with auxiliaries to make the compound forms of a verb, the following principles are to be noted:

a. When used with **être** in intransitive and passive verbs (but not in reflexives), the participle has the value of a predicate adjective qualifying the subject of the verb, and with this it accordingly always agrees in gender and number. Thus, **elle est allée** *she is gone*, **ils sont aimés** *they are loved*, **les lettres furent**

écrites *the letters were written*, **nous serons partis** *we shall be* (or *have*) *gone*.

b. When used with **avoir** in transitive verbs, the participle has originally and really the value of an objective predicate qualifying the direct object. Thus, in **il a retrouvé ses livres perdus** *he has found again his lost books*, it is the books that are found again, and not the finder. Hence it is not with the subject, but with the direct object, that the participle ought to agree. In the present condition of the language, however, it is made so to agree when the object stands before the verb, and not otherwise: thus, **quels livres avez-vous trouvés** *what books have you found?* **je les ai trouvés** *I have found them*, **les livres que j'ai trouvés** *the books which I have found;* but **j'ai trouvé les livres** *I have found the books*.

c. In every verb used reflexively, the auxiliary **être** (by a very strange and anomalous substitution) is taken instead of **avoir**. In the compound forms of such verbs, the participle has the same form as if **avoir** were used: that is, it agrees with the preceding reflexive object if that object is a direct one, but not otherwise. Thus, **elle s'est trouvée** *she has found herself* (like **elle l'a trouvée** *she has found her*), **ils se sont trouvés** *they have found one another* (like **ils les ont trouvés** *they have found them*); but, on the contrary, **elle s'est trouvé des livres** *she has found for herself some books;* and again, **quels livres s'est-elle trouvés** *what books has she found for herself?*—where the participle agrees with the direct object **livres**, and not with either the indirect **se** or the subject **elle**.

d. Many intransitive verbs now take, or take sometimes, the auxiliary **avoir** instead of **être**. In these, the participle (though it may logically qualify the subject as much as in the verbs taking **être**) is never made to agree with the subject, but remains unvaried. Thus, **elle a sorti** *she has gone out* (but **elle est sortie**), **ils avaient descendu** *they had descended* (but **ils étaient descendus**), **ils ont été** *they have been*.

193. Hence we have the following practical rules:

a. When used with **être**, the participle, except in reflexive verbs, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

b. When used with **avoir**, and also with **être** in reflexive verbs, the participle never agrees with the subject; but it agrees with the direct object, in case that object precedes the verb.

c. The three cases in which a direct object may precede the

verb, and so may have the participle agree with it, are those illustrated above (§ **192***b*): namely, when it is interrogative (or exclamatory), when it is a personal pronoun (hence always in reflexive verbs), and when it is the relative **que** (when the participle agrees with the word which **que** represents).

194. Certain exceptional or apparently exceptional cases require to be noticed, as follows:

a. The participle of an impersonal verb, or of a verb used impersonally, is unvaried: thus, **les pluies qu'il y a eu** *the rains that there have been*, **quelle chaleur excessive a-t-il fait** *what excessive heat there has been!*

b. The participle does not agree with an adverbial object, a specification of measure or the like (§ **28***c*): thus, **les années qu'elle a duré** *the years that it has lasted*, **les trois lieues que j'ai marché** *the three leagues that I have walked.* But of **coûter** *cost*, **courir** *run*, and **valoir** *be worth*, the participle is sometimes made to agree with such an object; and, in certain phrases, even that of **vivre** *live.*

c. With **en** *of it, some*, etc. (XXIII. **5-7**), as an indirect object, the participle of course does not agree; but after an indefinite word of quantity, like **combien**, it is sometimes made to agree with the noun that is logically implied: thus **combien en avez-vous vus** *how many of them have you seen?* **que de choses j'ai vues** *how many things I have seen!*

d. An apparent object of a verb is sometimes really governed by a following dependent verb or infinitive, and the participle of the former has no occasion to agree with it: thus, **les livres que j'ai cru qu'elle me donnerait** *the books which I thought she would give me*, **ces tableaux, je les ai vu peindre** *I have seen these pictures painted* (lit'ly, *have seen* [*some one*] *paint them*), **je les ai laissé porter autre part** *I have had them carried elsewhere* (in these phrases, the **les** is really object of **donnerait, peindre,** and **porter** respectively). But if the object is logically subject instead of object of the following infinitive, the participle of the former is made to agree with it: thus, **je l'ai vue peindre** (or **peindre les tableaux**) *I have seen her paint* (or *paint the pictures*), **je les ai laissés manger quelque chose** *I have let them eat something*, **les larmes qu'il nous a vus verser** *the tears which he has seen us shed.*

e. But the participle of **faire** *make, cause*, when used with a dependent infinitive, never agrees with the object (**faire** being viewed as forming with the infinitive a sort of compound verb-form, of causative meaning, and its object, if the infinitive also has an object, taking the indirect form: § **158***b*): thus, **je les ai fait manger** *I made them eat*, **il nous avait fait sortir** *he had made us go out.*

f. A governing infinitive is sometimes understood rather than expressed: thus, **je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai dû** (or **pu**, or **voulu**) *I have done him all the services that I ought* (or *could*, or *chose*)—that is, *to do him.*

g. After **avoir** etc. (§ **182***c*), followed by an infinitive with **à**, usage is varying, according as the object is viewed as belonging more to the verb or to the infinitive: thus, **la peine qu'il a eu** (or **eue**) **à souffrir** *the pain which he has had to suffer.*

195. The participles, both present and past, are (as in English) often used absolutely, along with a noun or pronoun.

Thus, **cela fait** (or **cela étant fait**), **il partit** *that done* (or *that being done*), *he departed*, **lui mort, tu mourras aussi** *he dead, thou shalt die also.*

a. The noun or pronoun is sometimes expressed afterward: thus, **étant rentré, il me dit** *having come in again, he said to me.*

b. Certain participles are used in absolute construction in an idiomatic manner, with a value like that of prepositions or conjunctions: thus, **excepté cette femme** *except this woman*, **eu égard à sa jeunesse** *considering* (lit'ly, *regard being had to*) *his youth*, **attendu son âge** *in view of his age.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXVIII. Past Participle.

(§ 191.) [1] Que de palais détruits, de trônes renversés! (*Rac.*) [2] Le fer est émoussé, les bûchers sont éteints. (*Vol.*) [3] Et quel temps fut jamais si fertile en miracles? L'impie Achab détruit, et de son sang trempé le champ que par le meurtre il avait usurpé; près de ce fatal champ Jézabel immolée, sous les pieds des chevaux cette reine foulée, de son sang inhumain les chiens désaltérés, et de son corps hideux les membres déchirés; des prophètes menteurs la troupe confondue, et la flamme du ciel sur l'autel descendue. (*Rac.*) [4] Je vois aux flammes éternelles nos rois précipités sans fin. (*Béranger.*)

(§ 192–3.) [1] Ceux de ces amis qui sont montés trop haut pour moi, je m'en tiens éloigné. (*Béranger.*) [2] Quelle triste économie que celle de l'âme! elle nous a été donnée pour être développée, perfectionnée, prodiguée même dans un noble but. (*de Staël.*) [3] Que sont devenus ces personnages qui firent tant de bruit? Le temps a fait un pas, et la face de la terre a été renouvelée. (*Chat.*) [4] Tu me demandes en cela la raison d'une chose qui n'existe pas, et que je n'ai

jamais dite : les femmes ne sont nullement condamnées à la médiocrité. (*de Maistre.*) [8] Je cesserai pour eux de paraître affligée, et j'oublierai leur mort, que vous avez vengée. (*Corn.*) [9] Je ne sais s'il nous a reconnues. (*Dau.*) [7] Si le temps ne sillonnait pas leurs traits, quelles traces auraient-ils gardées de son passage ? (*de Staël.*) [8] Leurs vêtements et leurs armes, qu'on n'avait jamais vus, excitaient la curiosité et la surprise. (*Michaud.*) [9] Elles avaient un air si étrange que Prascovie éprouvait une certaine crainte, et se repentait de s'être arrêtée chez elles. (*de Maistre.*) [10] Dans la dernière moitié du XVIII[e] siècle, deux puissances s'étaient élevées dans le Nord, la Prusse et la Russie. (*Mignet.*) [11] Les cavaliers qui sont tombés sous vos coups se sont attiré eux-mêmes ce malheur. (*Le Sage.*) [12] Vous savez la piètre idée que je me suis faite de mon mérite littéraire. (*Béranger.*) [13] Nos regards parcouraient avec plaisir les nombreuses demeures que les habitants de la campagne se sont construites sur ces hauteurs (*Barthélemy.*)

(§ 194.) [1] Que de maux il en est déjà résulté ! (*Bescher.*) [2] C'est une des idées les plus utiles qu'il y ait jamais eu. (*Thomas.*) [3] Je regrette les nombreuses années que j'ai vécu sans pouvoir m'instruire. (*Rouss.*) [4] Le premier volume... est assurément fort intéressant ; la préface nous donne une idée des recherches qu'il a coûtées. (*Rémusat.*) Mes manuscrits raturés, barbouillés, et presque indéchiffrables, attestent la peine qu'ils m'ont coûtée. (*Rouss.*) [6] On peut juger des embarras sans nombre que lui avait valus cette double parenté. (*V. Hugo.*) [7] Mais je ne les ai pas vécues, ces années de ma vie. (*Sardou.*) [8] Tout le monde m'a offert des services, et personne ne m'en a rendu. (*de Maint.*) [9] Pendant ces derniers temps, combien en a-t-on vus qui du soir au matin sont pauvres devenus ! (*La F.*) [10] Tous les soldats s'étaient laissé prendre. (*Vol.*) [11] A peine l'avons-nous entendue parler. (*Vol.*) [12] O Julie ! si le destin t'eût laissée vivre ! (*Rouss.*) [13] Voilà le sujet des larmes que tu m'as vue verser ! (*Florian.*) [14] Elle s'est fait aimer ; elle m'a fait haïr. (*Corn.*) [15] Il a été libre de mettre à cet abandon la condition qu'il a voulu. (*Serey.*)

(§ 195.) [1] Mais le combat fini, c'est alors qu'il se montre. (*Ponsard.*) [2] Eux punis, nous pourrons faire admirer au monde . . . la liberté. (*Ponsard.*) [3] Il ne sera pas dit que, moi parti, vous rirez. (*Dum.*) [4] Nous avons plus d'une pièce

qui, étant corrigées, pourraient aller à la postérité. (*Vol.*) [8] Le cas échéant, je suis homme à retarder mon départ. (*Dum.*) [9] Ces généralités étant adoptées, l'assemblée s'occupa de l'organisation du pouvoir législatif. (*Mignet.*) [7] Peu de gens de nos jours se sont tués, eu égard à tous ceux qui ont songé à le faire. (*Ste.-B.*)

THEME 24.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

[1] If we do not hurry, they will have gone before we have arrived. [2] Virtue is loved by all the good, and only hated by those who have addicted themselves to evil habits. [3] Too many tears have been shed over her sorrows. [4] I have not yet received the letter that my father has sent me. [5] What books have you already read? [6] I have read only those which you had recommended to me. [7] You are mistaken; I have not recommended them to you. [8] The few inhabitants whom war has left in this town are too poor and weak to be feared. [9] How many misfortunes have we not seen in our time! [10] I thank you for the trouble which you have given yourself in order to come. [11] My sister has bought herself some beautiful dresses. [12] The dresses which she had bought for herself are not yet brought to the house. [13] What a beautiful evening it was yesterday! [14] That was perhaps the prettiest festival that there has ever been. [15] Where has he borrowed the 10,000 francs that this house has cost him? [16] All the days that this chimney has smoked have been rainy. [17] I have found beautiful flowers in the meadow, and I have gathered some; but I have given them all to my mother. [18] Have you not given any to your sisters? [19] No, they have gathered some for themselves. [20] Those are actions which I have thought that you would approve. [21] The story which I have begun to read is very interesting. [22] The letter which I have promised to write for her is not yet begun. [23] I heard her

speak of the news which had just arrived, and I let her finish without interrupting her. "I saw her buy the picture which we had seen painted last year. "They have made all the excuses which their conscience has permitted them. "I pity him for all the trouble which he has had to take. "The dinner finished, he went away without saying farewell.

VIII.—ADVERBS.

196. The rules respecting adverbs and their use have for the most part been already given.

Thus, as to the formation of adverbs from adjectives, XXXI. **1-6, 9**; as to the comparison of adverbs, XXXI. **7, 8**; as to negative adverbs and adverbial expressions, especially § **164** etc.; as to words construed now as adjectives and now as adverbs, §§ **56, 116***c*, *d*; as to adverbs used in the manner of pronouns, § **85**; as to adverbs of quantity with following nouns, V. **3, 4**; as to various adverbs, XXXII. **1-6**; as to the usual place of adverbs, XXXII. **7.**

197. Adverbs are sometimes used in the manner of adjectives or nouns. Thus:

a. As predicative adjectives: thus, **il est bien maintenant** *he is well now*, **cela n'est pas ainsi** *that is not so.*

b. Rarely, as attributive adjectives: thus, **le temps jadis** *the time of old*, **la page ci-contre** *the page opposite*, **la presque éternité** *almost eternity.*

c. Governed by a preposition, like nouns: thus, **d'où** *from where, whence*, **les jambes de devant** *the fore-legs* (lit'ly, *legs of in front*), **la pluie d'hier** *the rain of yesterday*, **de trop** *in excess, superfluous*, **par trop** *too much, quite too*, **jusqu'à demain** *until to-morrow*, **dès longtemps** *since long ago.*

d. Quite rarely, in other noun constructions.

198. Sometimes an adverb in English is represented in French by an adjective: thus, **il est arrivé le premier** *he arrived first.*

Compare the cases in which the same expression is treated now as an adverb and now as an adjective, § **56.**

199. An adverb of degree is often separated from the adjective which it qualifies. Thus:

a. **Comme** (with **combien**) and **que**, always, in exclamatory expressions: thus, **comme il est heureux** *how happy he is!* **que vous êtes gentille** *how pretty you are!*

b. **Plus** and **moins** in the sense of *the more, the less;* thus, **plus vous êtes vertueux, plus vous serez heureux,** *the more virtuous you are, the happier you will be.*

c. Sometimes other adverbs: thus, **tant il est vrai** *so true is it.*

200. The responsives **oui** *yes* and **non** *no* are a sort of elliptical adverb, used to represent a sentence.

a. They are sometimes preceded by **que** when used as representing a sentence which is the object of a verb: thus, **je crois que oui** *I believe yes* (or *I believe so*), **je te dis que non** *I tell you no* (or *that it is not so*).

b. In answer to a negative question implying a negative statement, **si** is used instead of **oui**: thus, **vous n'y étiez pas** *you were not there, were you?* **si** *yes, I was.*

201. Voici and **voilà** are also abbreviated sentences (from **vois ici** and **vois là**), and they retain some of the constructions belonging to the verb which really forms a part of them.

a. Thus, they often take a pronoun-object, which (contrary to the rule for an imperative affirmative: XXII. 7) is placed before them: thus, **les voilà** *there they are,* **m'y voici** *here I am,* **vous voulez de l'argent? en voilà** *you want money? there is some;* more rarely, they are preceded by the relative object **que**: thus, **ce monsieur que voici** *this gentleman here* (lit'ly, *whom behold here*).

IX.—PREPOSITIONS.

202. Most of what relates to the prepositions and their uses has been already stated; what needs further to be added will be given here.

203. The two prepositions **de** *of, from,* and **à** *to, at* are those of which the uses are most various, depart most widely from the simple original meaning of the words, and are most analogous with inflectional endings, of genitive and dative respectively; they have been, therefore, most fully treated above.

a. Thus, the uses of **de** as connecting one noun with another in the manner of a genitive are stated in §§ **29-34**; as making a partitive noun, § **35**; as connecting a noun with an adjective, § **61**; as denoting material and measure, V. **1-4**; after a verb, § **162**; as preceding an infinitive, §§ **177-9, 183-5**; and so on.

b. In like manner, the uses of **à** between two nouns, at §§ **36-7**; between an adjective and noun, § **61**; between a verb and noun, § **161**; before an infinitive, § **180** etc.; and so on.

204. Further uses of **de** may be noted, as follows:

a. With the noun **côté** *side* (and sometimes with **part** *part*), **de** loses altogether its sense of removal, and signifies *on* or *at:* thus, **de ce côté** *on this side*, **ils se rangent des deux côtés de la salle** *they draw up on both sides of the hall*, **de toutes parts** *on every side*, **de côté** (or **part**) **et d'autre** *on the one side and the other.*

b. In like manner, **de** means *at* or the like in a few expressions of time: thus, **du matin** *at morning, in the morning* (= *of a morning*), **de bonne heure** *in good time* or *early*, **de nos jours** *in our day*, **de ma vie** *in my life*, **du vivant de ce roi** *in the lifetime of this king.*

c. After **plus** *more* or **moins** *less*, **de** is used in the sense of *than* before a numeral, when the meaning is a greater or less quantity than what is expressed by that numeral: thus, **plus de deux ans** *more than two years* (i.e. *a number of years greater than two*), **en moins de vingt minutes** *in less than twenty minutes:* but, **quatre yeux voient plus que deux** *four eyes see more than two* [*can see*], and so on. The words **midi** *midday* and **minuit** *midnight* (as being equivalent to **douze heures** *twelve o'clock*), also **demi** *half*, **quart** *a quarter*, and **à demi** or **à moitié** *by half*, are treated as numerals in respect to this construction: thus, **plus de minuit** *after midnight*, **plus d'à demi ruiné** *more than half ruined.*

205. Further uses of **à** may be noted, as follows:

a. The preposition **à** is used elliptically in the sense of *at the distance of*, *at the age of*, *at the rate of*, in connections that point out sufficiently what is intended: thus, **à trente lieues de Paris** *at thirty leagues from Paris*, **il est mort à vingt ans** *he died at twenty*, **vendre à la livre** *sell by the pound.*

b. While **en** is in general used with the name of a country to mean either *to* or *in* (VI. **4**), **à**, with the article, stands instead before a plural name, and also before certain names of distant countries, and of ancient provinces of France: thus, **aux États-Unis** *to* (or *in*) *the United States*, **au Japon** *in Japan*, **au Mexique** *in Mexico*, **au Poitou** *to Poitou.* With **partir** *set out*, *start*, and in one or two similar phrases, is used **pour**: thus, **partant pour la Syrie** *leaving for Syria.*

c. **À** is used in such phrases as **c'est bien à vous** *that is good of you* (or *in you*), **c'était folie à lui** *that was folly in him* (or *foolish of him*).

d. It occurs in many elliptical phrases: as, **à moi** or **au secours**

help! (i.e. *come to me, come for help*), **au revoir** [*good-bye*] *till we meet again*, **à nous deux** *between ourselves.*

206. The other prepositions have in a much higher degree each its own meaning or range of nearly related meanings, corresponding in a general way (though with not infrequent exceptions) to certain prepositions in English ; and hence they call for only brief treatment here.

207. **Dans** and **en** *in, into*, etc. Of these two prepositions, having nearly the same sense, **dans** is more definite, **en** more general and vague, in the relation designated.

a. **Dans** (except with proper names) is almost always followed by a limiting word, an article or possessive or demonstrative, before the noun it governs ; **en**, on the other hand, rarely stands before such a limiting word, especially the definite article (never before **le** or **les**, rarely before **l'**).

b. Instead of **en** (VI. 4), **dans** is used before the name of a country when accompanied by an adjective : thus, **dans la France méridionale** *in southern France*, **dans toute l'Angleterre** *in all England.* Also, both with the name of a country and of a town, when the meaning is *within, inside of.*

c. In expressions of time, **en** is used to mean *in the year, in the month, in the season :* thus, **en mil huit cent trente, en été, en juillet** *in* 1830, *in summer, in July* (but, by exception, **au printemps** *in spring*) ; but **dans la même année** *in the same year*, and the like. In expressions for a certain length of time, **en** means rather *in the course of*, but **dans** *at* or *by the end of :* thus, **je finirai ce travail en une semaine** *I shall finish this work in a week*, but **je l'aurai fini dans une semaine** *I shall have it finished in a week.*

d. **En** is used in many adverbial phrases of manner, means, material, form, and the like : thus, **en secret** *in secret*, **en anglais** *in English*, **en or** *in gold*, **en blanc** *in white.*

e. **En** is used elliptically to signify *in the character of*, also translatable as *like* or *as :* thus, **agir en honnête homme** *act like an honest man*, **parler en maître** *speak as master.*

f. **En** and **les** are contracted to **ès** in certain learned titles : thus, **docteur ès sciences** *doctor of science.*

208. **Avec** *with.* This preposition usually signifies simply accompaniment. But it also, like *with* in English, not infrequently designates instrument and manner, exchanging in these senses with **de** (§ **162**), often with a hardly definable variation of meaning : thus, **tuer avec une épée** *slay with a sword*, **écrire avec une plume** *write with a pen*, **couvrir avec** (or **d'**) **un manteau** *cover with a cloak*, and the like.

209. **Par** *by.* This preposition also often designates manner

or motive, exchangeably with **de** (§ **162**) : thus, **par** or **de crainte** *for fear*. Alternately with **de** (XXVIII. **3**), it is used along with a passive verb to signify the performer of the action, especially if the action is an external or physical one : thus, **il est frappé par quelqu'un** *he is struck by somebody*. But **de** and **par** can to a great extent be used after the same verb : **de** then expressing a more general or habitual action ; **par**, one that is more special or exceptional.

210. Sans *without*. This preposition is peculiar in being treated in some respects as a negative word (since it so distinctly implies a negation of accompaniment): thus, **sans rien dire** *without saying anything*, **sans or ni argent** *without gold or silver*, **sans nul doute** *without any doubt*. After it, the partitive sense of a noun is regularly left unexpressed : thus, **avec de l'or mais sans argent** *with gold but without silver*.

211. Depuis, *from, since*. **Depuis** marks a starting-point, in space or in time, especially the latter : thus, **depuis les Alpes jusqu'à l'océan** *from the Alps to the ocean*, **depuis cinq heures jusqu'à six** *from five to six o'clock*. But with a perfect or pluperfect, or a present or imperfect (§§ **118***d*, **119***c*) in the sense of such, it means *since, ever since, during . . . past* or *for, ago*, and the like. Thus, **je ne l'ai pas vu depuis son retour** *I have not seen him since his return*, **il y rêve depuis trois jours** *he has been dreaming of it during three days past* (or *for three days*), **elle est arrivée depuis peu de temps** *she arrived a little while ago*.

212. *a*. A large number of preposition-phrases or compound prepositions are made by adding **de** to an adjective or adverb. The commonest of these were given at XXXIII. **3**. They call for no further remark or explanation here.

b. The prepositions that govern the infinitive were given above, at § **187**. The preposition **en**, governing the gerund, was treated above, at § **190**.

213. The required repetition of **de** and **à** before each noun governed by them was pointed out at III. **5**. Excepted are especially a word added to another in apposition or as equivalent to it, and a numeral added to another with **ou** *or :* thus, **évêque à Londres, capitale des Saxons** *bishop at London, the Saxon capital*, **de deux ou trois** *of two or three*.

a. The repetition also of **en** is nearly as strictly required. As to the other prepositions, they may be repeated or omitted before successive nouns, much as in English : thus, **malgré les erreurs et les fautes** *in spite of errors and faults*, **dans la paix et dans la guerre** *in peace and in war*.

X.—CONJUNCTIONS.

214. The conjunctions in French, as in other languages, may be divided into coördinating and subordinating.

a. This distinction is much less important in French than in German, because nothing in the arrangement of the sentence depends upon it; it is only a part of general logical grammar, of the analysis of the sentence or period into its constituent parts, which may be carried on in much the same way in French as in English.

215. The commonest coördinating conjunctions are **et** *and*, **mais** *but*, **ou** *or*, **ni** *nor*, **aussi** *also*, **car** *for*, **donc** *then*, **or** *now*, **ainsi** *thus*.

a. Both . . . and is expressed by **et . . . et**; and of nearly the same value are the correlative pairs **tant . . . que**, **non-seulement . . . mais encore**. *Either . . . or* is **ou . . . ou**, also **soit . . . ou**, and **soit . . . soit**. Compare XXXIV. 3.

216. Subordinating conjunctions are such as give to the clause introduced by them a subordinate character, as entering into the structure of another clause with the value of a single part of speech—namely, of a noun or substantive, of an adjective, or of an adverb.

217. Substantive clauses are introduced almost only by the conjunction **que** *that*.

Thus, as subject, **qu'elle soit belle n'est pas à nier** *that she is beautiful is not to be denied;* as object, **on ne peut pas nier qu'elle soit belle** *one cannot deny that she is beautiful;* as governed by a preposition, **malgré qu'elle soit belle, je ne l'admire pas** *in spite of her being beautiful, I do not admire her.*

a. But in such cases as the last, it is usual (see § **136***a*) to regard **malgré que** as a compound conjunction or conjunction-phrase, introducing an adverb-clause.

b. A subject-clause is much more usually, as in English, anticipated or followed by a pronoun as grammatical subject, with which then the clause is to be regarded as standing in apposition: thus, **ce n'est pas à nier qu'elle soit belle** *it is not to be denied that she is beautiful.*

c. Substantive clauses are also introduced by compound relative pronouns and adverbs (that is, such as are used with the value of antecedent and relative at once); also by **si** in the sense of *whether:* thus, **qui veut être aimé doit être aimable** *whoever* (or *he who*) *wants to be loved should be lovable*, **aimez qui vous aime** *love (him) who loves you*, **je ne sais s'il vient** *I don't know whether he is coming.*

218. Adjective clauses are for the most part introduced by relative pronouns, but also by relative adverbs, which may then be regarded as conjunctions.

Thus, **la table où je l'ai mis** *the table where* (or *on which*) *I laid it*, **le livre qui est sur la table** *the book which is on the table*, and so on.

219. Most conjunctions and conjunction-phrases introduce adverbial clauses, or such as qualify verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, by adding limitations of time, manner, degree, condition, supposition, cause, purpose, and the like.

Thus, **je partais lorsqu'il entra** *I was going away when he came in*, **elle est si aimable qu'on ne peut que l'aimer** *she is so lovable that one cannot but love her*, **si vous y restez, j'y resterai aussi** *if you stay here, I shall stay also*, **quoiqu'il soit pauvre, il est content** *though he is poor, he is happy*, **venez que je vous voie** *come, that I may see you.*

220. It is explained above, under the head of Subjunctive (§ **132** etc.), in what cases the verb of the dependent clause is made subjunctive.

221. The conjunction having the greatest frequency and variety of uses is **que** *that*, and its employment as conjunction shades off into that as relative pronoun, meaning *that* or *which*, so that in some cases they are not easy to distinguish from one another. The Index will give references to the passages where the various uses are explained.

a. While *that*, both as pronoun and as conjunction, is often omitted in English, it must always be expressed in French: thus, *the friends I have* is **les amis que j'ai**, *I know he is here* is **je sais qu'il est ici**; and so in all other cases.

b. When the conjunctions and conjunction-phrases containing **que**—as **lorsque, puisque, quoique, pendant que, tandis que, parce que, tant que, dès que**—are to be repeated, they are generally repeated by **que** alone; and **que** is likewise used in repetition instead of **quand, comme,** and **si**: thus, **lorsque l'empereur**

fut revenu et qu'il eut visité le camp *when the emperor had returned and when he had visited the camp*, **s'il n'a que peu d'argent et qu'il veuille en avoir plus** *if he has only a little money and wants more.*

c. Especially in familiar language, **que** is sometimes used instead of **lorsque, avant que, depuis que, jusqu'à ce que,** and **que . . . ne** instead of **sans que**: thus, **à peine était-il sorti que la maison s'écroula** *he had hardly gone out, when the house fell in*, **je n'y irai point que tout ne soit prêt** *I shall not go there unless* (or *till* or *before*) *everything is ready.*

XI.—INTERJECTIONS.

222. The simple or pure interjections in French are in part the same as in English.

a. Those most used are **ah** *ah* (in various senses), **ô** or **oh** *oh*, **eh** *eh*, **hélas** *alas*, **aïe** *oh* (pain), **fi** *fie*, **bah** *pooh*, **holà** *hello*, **chut** *sh*, **hein** *hey*, **parbleu** *zounds*, and so on.

b. Many words and brief phrases are used elliptically in the manner of interjections. Examples are: **bon** *good*, **silence** *be still*, **peste** *plague take it*, **allons** *come*, **tiens** or **tenez** *hold, see here*, **gare** *look out*, **par exemple** *indeed*, **à la bonne heure** *very well*, **en avant** *forward, go ahead*, **à moi** *help*—and so on.

c. The interrogative pronouns and adverbs are often employed in an interjectional or exclamatory way. The usage in regard to them is very much as it is in English. The same is true of the abbreviation of sentences brought about by their use in exclamation.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XXXIX. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions.

(§ 197.) [1] Elle a quitté sa belle robe ; eh bien ! elle n'est pas plus mal pour cela ; au contraire. (*Scribe.*) [2] Le grand-vizir ne s'avise pas de s'informer s'il est bien ou mal dans ses affaires. (*Le Sage.*) [3] Par des récits d'autrefois, mère, abrégez notre veille. (*Béranger.*) [4] J'étudiais de loin, en silence, ce talent précoce et grandissant. (*Ste.-B.*) [5] Et depuis quand as-tu cette idée ? (*Dum.*) [6] Ce moment pour jamais a fixé mon destin. (*Girardin.*) [7] D'ici à un an, je promets de revêtir la robe blanche du baptême. (*Souvestre.*) [8] Puis il saisit ses deux pattes de derrière avec ses deux pattes de devant, et, comme satisfait de cette attitude

classique, il se remit à me contempler. (*V. Hugo.*) [9] J'abuse, cher ami, de ton trop d'amitié. (*Rac.*) [10] Ce n'est qu'un effet de leur peu de lumières, qui les empêche de connaître la grandeur de leur mal. (*La R.*)

(§ 198.) [1] Tranquille je m'endors, et tranquille je veille. (*Chénier.*) [2] Les rares moments passent si rapides! (*Dum.*)

(§ 199.) [1] Ah! mon Dieu! que je suis malheureuse! (*Scribe.*) [2] Plus leur cause m'est chère et plus l'effet m'en blesse. (*Corn.*) [3] Plus j'y réfléchis, et moins je trouve cette scène naturelle. (*Vol.*)

(§ 200.) [1] Mais non, maman! y pensez-vous?—Mais si, mademoiselle, je le veux. (*Scribe.*)

(§ 201.) [1] Il s'assied où me voilà, s'écriant: Ah! quelle guerre! (*Béranger.*) [2] Mon jeune homme ne se fit pas prier; nous voilà mangeant et buvant, lui du moins. (*Courier.*) [3] Tremblez, tremblez, méchants; voici venir la foudre. (*Corn.*) [4] Pourquoi m'en donneriez-vous la peine puisque vous voilà? (*Mar.*) [5] Me voilà bien avancé.—Ne le voilà-t-il pas bien reculé? (*Mar.*)

(§ 204.) [1] J'avais de mon côté quelque chose à te dire; mais tu m'as fait perdre mes idées. (*Mar.*) [2] Voyez-vous Londres de l'autre côté de l'eau? (*V. Hugo.*) [3] De toutes parts l'on ne voyait que champs cultivés. (*Volney.*) [4] Le roi arriva, la tête haute, promenant de tous côtés ses regards, et cherchant le peuple pour lui parler. (*Guizot.*) [5] Il me semble que de mon temps on n'était pas comme cela. (*Scribe.*) [6] Du temps de l'architecture, elle se faisait montagne, et s'emparait puissamment d'un siècle et d'un lieu. (*V. Hugo.*) [7] Il se jeta d'abord sur l'omelette avec tant d'avidité qu'il semblait n'avoir mangé de trois jours. (*Le Sage.*) [8] En moins de deux ans Gustave Vasa rendit la Suède luthérienne. (*Vol.*) [9] Il était alors plus de minuit. (*de Vi.*)

(§ 205.) [1] C'est une veuve assez riche, qui demeure à quelques lieues de là. (*Ste.-B.*) [2] A quelques jours de là, ella gagna la rive droite du Clain. (*Sandeau.*) [3] Mon plus long séjour fut au Pérou. (*Feuillet.*) [4] N'importe, madame; c'est bien mal à vous. (*Scribe.*) [5] Elle frappe Marat au flanc gauche, et enfonce le fer jusqu'au cœur. A moi! s'écria-t-il. (*Thiers.*)

(§ 207.) [1] Le bœuf était absolument inconnu dans l'Amérique méridionale. (*Buffon.*) [2] Je suis donc enfin dans

Moscou, dans l'antique pays des czars, dans le Kremlin! (*Ségur.*) [3] Dans quelques jours nous pourrons à loisir poursuivre ce discours. (*Delavigne.*) [4] Enfin, qu'as-tu fait en trente ans de dévouement pour tes chers semblables? Rien du tout. (*Feuillet.*) [5] Quand mon mari combat en bon soldat de Rome, je dois agir en femme ainsi qu'il fait en homme. (*Ponsard.*) [6] Il ressemble à une statue de jardin habillée en monsieur. (*Méry.*)

(§ 210.) [1] Sans songer qu'à me plaire, exécutez mes lois. (*Corn.*) [2] Sans jeter d'alarmes, à tous mes Tyriens faites prendre les armes. (*Rac.*) [3] Ils se condamnent à cette froideur de sentiments qui laisse passer les jours sans en tirer ni fruits, ni progrès, ni souvenirs. (*de Staël.*)

(§ 211.) [1] Comment, cousine! depuis trois ans, voilà deux fois que vous m'écrivez! (*Courier.*) [2] En orient, en occident, depuis plus de deux mille ans on ne parle que d'Alexandre. (*Bossuet.*) [3] Les pluies qu'il fait depuis trois jours me mettent au désespoir. (*de Sév.*) [4] Il était absent depuis plusieurs heures, et le petit Fortunato était tranquillement étendu au soleil. (*Mérimée.*) [5] Je comprends l'étonnement où vous avez été de tout ce qui s'est passé depuis le 15 jusqu'au 20 de ce mois. (*de Sév.*)

(§ 221.) [1] Lorsqu'on est sans fortune, et qu'on épouse quelqu'un qui en a beaucoup, songez que de qualités il faut lui apporter en dot! (*Scribe.*) [2] C'est la division Legrand qui se trouvait le plus en danger, parce qu'elle était placée près du Danube, et que, pour ce motif, l'ennemi voulait l'accabler. (*Thiers.*) [3] En tout cas, si je l'épouse, et qu'il veuille en mettre un autre ici à votre place, vous n'y perdrez point. (*Mar.*) [4] A peine, en effet, est-il expiré qu'on voit éclater tous les désordres qui fermentaient depuis quelques années. (*Barante.*) [5] Vous le feriez officier de la Légion d'honneur qu'il ne serait pas plus superbe. (*Janin.*) [6] La vie s'achève que l'on a à peine ébauché son ouvrage. (*La B.*)

THEME 25.

PREPOSITIONS.

[1] Do you wish that I pass on the other side? [2] I found these flowers on both sides of the river. [3] You got up quite early this morning. [4] I shall not see him again in eight

days. [8] It was a little more than midnight. [9] He will come in less than half an hour. [7] I gave him more than half of what he asked. [8] He sells beer by the pot, butter by the pound, cloth by the yard, and eggs by the dozen. [9] It was wise of him to go to the United States, rather than to Mexico. [10] He will stay a year in South America before returning. [11] I shall go to find him in three days, and we shall finish our journey together within a month. [12] He lives like a man of property. [13] I can speak of it only with pain and regret. [14] One must bear her loss with fortitude. [15] You came in by the door; you will go out by the window. [16] Without money, without friends, what can one do? [17] I had to leave without seeing any one. [18] She speaks without committing faults. [19] For the last fifty years they have talked only of Napoleon. [20] He had not seen them for five days.

XII.—ARRANGEMENT OF THE SENTENCE.

223. The arrangement of the sentence in French corresponds in a general way to that in English.

a. That is to say, especially, those very frequent and necessary changes of order, consisting in inversion or putting the verb before its subject, and transposition or removing the verb to the end of the sentence, which are characteristic of German, are mainly wanting in French, as they are in English.

b. Minor matters regarding the position of words—such as putting the adjective more usually after the noun, putting an object-pronoun before the verb that governs it, and the like—have been already disposed of above, under the different classes of words.

c. It remains here only to give a few rules respecting cases of inversion, or putting the subject after the verb, which also in general are like English cases, yet with some differences.

224. In questions, the rule for inversion is in general the same as in English: that is, the subject is put after the verb, except when the subject is itself the interroga-

tive element (either an interrogative pronoun, or containing an interrogative word).

Thus, **êtes-vous ici** *are you here?* but **qui est ici** *who is here?* **quel homme était ici** *what man was here?* **combien d'hommes seront ici demain** *how many men will be here to-morrow?*

a. But it is only the conjunctive subject-pronouns, and also **on** and **ce**, that may without restriction follow the verb in questions. If, on the other hand, the subject is any other pronoun than these, or a noun, the subject is usually required to be stated first, and then the question asked about it by means of a conjunctive pronoun (see I. **11**).

b. When, however, the sentence begins with certain interrogative words (XXV. 6), even a noun is allowed to be put after the verb, unless the verb has a direct object. Thus, **qu'a cet homme** (or **cet homme qu'a-t-il**) *what is the matter with this man?* **où est votre frère** (or **où votre frère est-il**) *where is your brother?* **combien vaut cela** (or **combien cela vaut-il**) *how much is that worth?* but only **comment votre frère supporte-t-il son malheur** *how does your brother bear his misfortune?*

c. Interrogative inversion with a noun as subject is very often avoided by using the paraphrase **est-ce que** *is it true that*, or *is it the case that:* thus, **est-ce que votre frère est ici** *is your brother here?* And the same paraphrase is also common even with a pronoun-subject: thus, **est-ce qu'il est venu** *has he come?* —especially in the 1st sing., with a verb-form ending in **e**: thus, **est-ce que j'aime** (only rarely **aimé-je**) *do I love?*

225. Interjected phrases, marking a quotation as made in the words of the one who uttered them, are inverted in French, just as in English.

Thus, **venez, m'a-t-il dit** *come, said he to me*, **quoi! m'écriai-je** *what! cried I.*

226. In optative phrases, or those expressing a wish (sometimes having also an imperative or exclamatory sense), the inverted arrangement is sometimes used, with a subjunctive (see § **131***b*).

This is not common, a **que**, in the sense of *would that*, being generally used instead. Examples are: **vive la reine** *long live the queen!* **puisse-t-il** (or **qu'il puisse**) **revenir bientôt** *may he soon return!* **plût à Dieu** *might it please God!*

227. Quite rarely, inversion is used with a subjunctive

(usually past) to give a conditional sense—that is, one that would be fully expressed with *if* or *though* (see § 131*c*).

Thus, **dût-il m'en coûter la vie** *should it* (i.e. *though it should*) *cost me my life*, **fussiez-vous homme ou démon** *were you* (i.e. *whether you were*) *man or demon*, **ils auraient résisté, n'eût été le canon** *they would have resisted, but for the cannon* (lit'ly, *had the cannon not been*).

228. Not seldom, the sentence is inverted when some other member of it than the subject is placed at its head.

Such another member may be a predicate adjective, an object, an adverb or adverbial phrase of place or time or other accompanying circumstance, and so on. The inversion is nowhere required, but only more or less common. Some of the cases may be more specially described as follows:

a. After certain adverbs and adverbial phrases—especially **à peine** *scarcely*, **en vain** *in vain*, **aussi** *accordingly*, **toujours** *ever*, **encore** *besides*, **au moins** or **du moins** *at least*, **peut-être** *perhaps*, **tout au plus** *at the utmost*—a pronoun-subject is commonly made to follow the verb: thus, **à peine étais-je entré** *hardly had I come in*, **en vain** (or **vainement**) **l'a-t-il essayé** *in vain did he attempt it*, **ce sont de belles étoffes, aussi coûtent-elles cher** *they are handsome stuffs, and correspondingly dear*, **peut-être vous attend-elle** *perhaps she is waiting for you.* In corresponding cases, a noun-subject also is sometimes treated as in asking a question: thus, **à peine cet homme était-il entré** *hardly had this man entered.*

b. After a predicate adjective, with **être**, a noun-subject sometimes follows the verb. This is especially common with **tel**: thus, **telle était sa condition** *such was his condition;* other examples are: **humbles furent d'abord les pouvoirs** *humble were at first the powers*, **autres sont les temps de Moïse** *different are the times of Moses.*

c. Likewise, after various specifications of time, place, and circumstance: thus, **ainsi dit le renard** *thus said the fox*, **ici était jadis une ville** *here was formerly a city*, **alors commença une lutte terrible** *then began a terrible struggle*, **à côté de notre ami était sa femme** *beside our friend was his wife*, **au milieu de la foule se trouvait un petit garçon** *in the midst of the crowd was found a little boy*, **à cette condition fut ajoutée une autre** *to this condition was added another.*

d. Likewise, in a relative clause, after **quel, que, où**, and the like: thus, **on vit quelle était sa situation** *one saw what his situation was*, **le plaisir que lui donne la vue d'un ami** *the pleasure which the sight of a friend gives him*, **c'est là qu'est né ce grand**

homme *it is there that this great man was born*, **la place où était dressé l'échafaud** *the place where was erected the scaffold.*

e. These inversions with a noun-subject take place especially where the subject is a complex one, or accompanied by adjuncts which connect with following clauses. They can also hardly occur if the verb has additional adjuncts, especially objects that follow it.

229. In rare cases, the verb itself stands at the beginning of an affirmative sentence.

Thus, **vient un autre** (*along*) *comes another.*

230. In poetry, many of the ordinary rules for the arrangement of the members of a sentence are liable to be violated.

Illustrations of all the various cases of inversion are to be seen among the sentences already given above. A few more are added here.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.—XL. Inverted Arrangement.

(§ 224.) [1] Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes antiques bontés? (*Rac.*) [2] D'où vient donc la cérémonie que vous faites? (*Mar.*) [3] Quel est ce principe? quels en sont les éléments? (*Guizot.*) [4] Et que dira mon père, si je te cache sans sa permission? (*Mérimée.*) [5] À quoi prétend une religion, messieurs, quelle qu'elle soit? (*Guizot.*) [6] À qui va cette lettre? (*Regnard.*)

(§ 226.) [1] Puissé-je raffermir ta haine qui chancelle; puisse une juste horreur te saisir comme moi! (*Delavigne.*) [2] Sois-je du ciel écrasé si je mens! (*Mol.*) [3] Plût à Dieu que le sacrifice de ma vie pût sauver la sienne! (*Guizot.*)

(§ 227.) [1] Eût-il été bien plus fort et bien plus habile, eût-il été Richelieu ou Sully, il fût tombé de même. (*Mignet.*) [2] Coûtât-il tout le sang qu'Hélène a fait répandre, dussé-je après dix ans voir mon palais en cendre, je ne balance point. (*Rac.*)

(§ 228.) [1] Comme la mode fait l'agrément, aussi fait-elle la justice. (*Pasc.*) [2] Si cela pouvait lui donner les sentiments d'un homme qui va paraître devant Dieu, encore serait-ce quelque chose. (*de Sév.*) [3] Du moins, en tout cas, ne la connaît-on point comme on connaît le chevalier. (*Mar.*) [4] Peut-être traverse-t-il encore quelques rues solitaires. (*Girardin.*) [5] Combien les lunettes nous ont-elles découvert

d'êtres qui n'étaient point pour nos philosophes d'auparavant ! (*Pasc.*) [8] Aussi la mort de cet homme ne contrasta-t-elle point avec sa vie. (*Bal.*) [9] En Espagne, au milieu du règne de Philippe II., éclate la révolution des Provinces-Unies. (*Guizot.*) [10] Maintenant est fait le plaisir de Dieu. (*Michelet.*) [11] Ainsi s'est écoulé le dix-huitième siècle. (*Barante.*) [12] Aux lettres de pierre d'Orphée vont succéder les lettres de plomb de Guttemberg. (*V. Hugo.*) [13] Au-dessous du gros poirier qui touche au mur de la grange était assis, sur le banc de pierre, mon père adoptif. (*Sue.*) [14] Enfin arrivèrent les jours d'agonie. (*Bal.*) [15] Voici la maison où demeure Reboul. (*Dum.*) [16] Tout homme peut faire ce qu'a fait Mahomet. (*Pasc.*) [17] C'est là que se ravive l'âme desséchée sur les bouquins. (*Tœpfer.*) [18] J'essaierai d'arriver ainsi à comprendre quel a été dans son ensemble, et d'une manière complète, le développement de notre glorieuse patrie. (*Guizot.*) [19] Je commençais à me faire à ce tête-à-tête lorsque survint un incident. (*V. Hugo*).

(§ 229.) [1] Viennent ensuite les députés de la Grèce. (*Le Bas.*)

XIII.—FRENCH VERSIFICATION.

231. Since any one who reads French poetry ought to know, at least in a general way, how it is constructed, the following brief statements are added here.

232. Since in French there is (12) no marked distinction of long and short vowels, and also (11) only a weak accent, resting on the final syllable of each word, and unaccompanied by a secondary accent on any of the preceding syllables, there can be in French verse no proper metrical movement, either of quantity or of accent: a French line of verse is only a certain number of successive syllables, with a rhyme at the end. There is and can be no French verse without rhyme.

233. *a.* In making out the proper number of syllables for a line, the silent syllables, or those containing a mute

e (18), count in general, as much as those which have a full pronunciation in prose.

Thus, there are six syllables in

Il re- | garde | toujours;

and seven in

Une | perle | qu'il don- | na;

and eight in

Pauvre | mère, | ton fils | est mort;

and twelve in

Ouvrent | des im- | mortels | les bien- | faisan- | tes mains;

and thirteen in

Tu la | troubles! | reprit | cette | bête | cruel- | le.

b. But if a final e mute comes to stand before an initial vowel of a following word, it is lost, the two vowels forming together only one syllable.

Thus, there are six syllables in

Le ri- | che‿et le | puissant;

and seven in

Il lan- | ce‿un fou- | dre‿à l'in- | stant;

and eight in

Et l'an- | née‿ex- | pire‿à | sa voix;

and nine in

Un pas | en-co- | re‿en-co- | re‿une‿heu- | re;

and twelve in

Oh! l'es- | time | publi- | que,‿elle‿est | vers les | écus!

and thirteen in

Il est | pauvre‿i- | nuti- | le‿et cha- | cun le | délais- | se.

c. Certain special rules will be given farther on.

234. Rhyme is of two kinds, called respectively masculine and feminine.

a. Feminine rhyme is that between words having a mute syllable after those whose accordance makes the rhyme.

Thus, feminine rhyme is that between **mûre** and **pure**, **contente** and **récente**, **dis-je** and **fis-je**, **est-ce** and **messe**, **glorifie** and **fortifie**, **due** and **vue**, **chimères** and **amères**, **journées** and **années**, **irritent** and **habitent**, **prient** and **fient**, and the like.

b. Masculine rhyme is that between words which end with a fully pronounced syllable.

Thus, **mûr** and **pur, content** and **récent, dis** and **fis, dû** and **vu, berceaux** and **tombeaux, passé** and **versé, lui** and **nui.**

c. The names masculine and feminine are evidently given because the two kinds of rhyme are such as subsist between the masculine and the feminine forms of adjectives respectively: thus **pur mûr** and **pure mûre; contents récents** and **contentes récentes.**

235. In French verse, masculine and feminine rhymes are required always to alternate.

This may be line by line, or couplet by couplet, or one couplet within another—or yet otherwise, if more than two lines are made to rhyme together. Examples are:

Rien ne pèse tant qu'un secret;
Le porter loin est difficile aux femmes;
Et je sais même sur ce fait
Bon nombre d'hommes qui sont femmes. (*La F.*)

Oui, je viens dans son temple adorer l'Éternel;
Je viens, selon l'usage antique et solennel,
Célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée
Où sur le mont Sina la loi nous fut donnée. (*Rac.*)

On parlera de sa gloire
Sous le chaume bien longtemps;
L'humble toit, dans cinquante ans,
Ne connaîtra plus d'autre histoire. (*Béranger.*)

236. Rhymes, to be allowed, must have more than the mere sound in common; there must also be a certain correspondence of written form—so far, especially, that the finals would carry on or link (**84** etc.) alike.

a. Thus, **mûr** and **purs** are never allowed to rhyme, nor **content** and **récents,** nor **bleu** and **peux,** nor **ai** and **nez,** and so on; nor would **banc** and **quand** or **camp** rhyme; nor **plier** and **flé or fiez.** But words ending in the different sibilants, **as eux** and **bleus,** or **fais** and **paix** and **nez,** or **crevés** and **devez,** may rhyme; also **d** and **t,** as **attend** and **autant**; or **c** and **g, as banc** and **rang**; also cases like **passe** and **grâce, honte** and **prompte, même** and **thème** and **aime, gants** and **temps,** and so on.

b. The first singular of a verb is sometimes used in rhyme with-

out its final **s**: thus, **j'averti** with **votre parti**, **je vien** with **bien**, **je croi** with **emploi**, and so on.

This is because the final **s** of this person is only a recent addition to it: see § 5*c*.

c. Some words have in verse two different forms, either of which may be used: thus, **encor** beside **encore**, **avecque** beside **avec**, **jusques** beside **jusque**, and so on.

d. Rarely, the liberty is taken of rhyming words generally forbidden to rhyme; and then the spelling is sometimes changed to correspond: thus, **circonspec** (for **-spect**) and **coups de bec** (*La F.*).

237. Words in which a mute syllable (**-e** or **-es** or **-ent**) follows a vowel—thus, **crée crées créent**, **fie fies fient**, and the like—are of very restricted use in verse, the combinations being never allowed to count as two syllables in the middle of a line. Those in final **e** may be used there before an initial vowel, where their **e** is lost (§ 233*b*): thus,

Mais bientôt à ma vue on l'a fait disparaître.
Son maître le rappelle, et crie, et se tourmente.
Que ne suis-je restée aux bords où j'ai fleuri?

But those in **es** and **ent** are only allowed at the end of a line, where they make a feminine rhyme.

a. But the ending **aient** of imperfect and conditional (also **soient**, **aies**, **aient**) is arbitrarily reckoned as a single syllable: thus,

Erraient au gré du vent, de leur sort incertains.
. . . que les rois
Le soient aussi; c'est l'indulgence.

238. An **i** and another following vowel often form together only one syllable, while in other cases they make two syllables: thus, **rien**, but **li-en**; **fier** adj., but **fi-er** v.; **lieux**, but **glo-ri-eux**; and so on.

a. For the most part, such combinations have in the same word always the same value, as one syllable or as two; but there are a few words in which they are allowed to be treated either way: thus, **an-cien** or **an-ci-en**, **hier** or **hi-er**. The endings **ions** and **iez** (of impf. indic., conditional, and pres. and impf. subj.) are in general one syllable; but they are two in the conditional if a mute precedes the **r**: thus, **é-tions é-tiez**, **se-rions se-riez**, **don-nions don-niez**, **fus-sions fus-siez**; but **vou-dri-ons vou-dri-ez**.

b. The distinction between these two classes of cases has to be learned principally by practice. But it may be pointed out that where the combination corresponds to a single vowel in Latin, it is one syllable in French: thus, **rien** *rem*, **fiel** *fel*, **bien** *ben-e*,

pied ped-em, fier fer-um, lieu loc-um. On the other hand, the **i** makes a separate syllable in the forms and derivatives of verbs in **ier**: thus, **li-er, li-ons, li-ez, li-ant, li-eur, li-en.**

239. The same difference of value is found, much less often, in combinations of **u** with a following vowel; and, quite rarely, in those of **ou.**

Thus, **ru-i-ne,** but **plui-e**; **nu-a-ge,** but **i-gua-ne**; **ouais,** but **jou-ais**; and so on.

a. A **u** after **q** or **g** is in general only an orthographic sign, and has no separate value in making syllables. But in **ar-gu-er** it is pronounced, and makes a syllable throughout, as in other verbs in **uer,** like **re-mu-er, flu-er.**

b. Many otherwise doubtful cases are settled by the use of the diæresis or of an accent.

240. Those pupils who are to learn to scan the lines of French verse may best be practised in dividing off the syllables two by two—in writing, in some such manner as is done above, in § **233**; and also in reading them with the same division. In ordinary reading of French poetry, of course, no such artificial division should be made.

VOCABULARIES.

I.—FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj.	adjective.	*irr.*	irregular (the list-no. added).
adv.	adverb.	It.	Italian.
art.	article.	L.	Latin.
conj.	conjunction.	LL.	Low or late Latin.
f.	feminine noun.	*num.*	numeral.
F.	French.	*m.*	masculine noun.
fr.	from, derived from.	OF.	Old French.
G.	German, Germanic.	*pple.*	participle.
Gr.	Greek.	*prep.*	preposition.
impers.	impersonal.	*pron.*	pronoun.
inf.	infinitive.	*refl.*	reflexive.
interj.	interjection.	*v.*	verb.

Words irregularly pronounced have * prefixed, and reference to the Rules of Pronunciation added immediately after them.

A ' before initial h shows it to be aspirate (64*a–d*).

References are made in the same manner as above in the text (see p. 202).

Phrases are given and explained under their principal words.

à *prep.* (§ 203*b*, 205) to, toward, unto; at, in; of, for, with, etc. (characterized by); about, in respect *or* reference to; on, by; from (§ 161*c*); belonging to (§ 161*e*). [L. *ad.*]

abandon *m.* abandonment, renunciation. [à and **bandon**, fr. G. *ban*].

abandonner *v.* abandon, give up. [fr. **abandon.**]

abattre *v.* (XX. 3*c*) beat *or* knock down, strike off. [a for L. *ab*, and **battre.**]

abbé *m.* abbé (name and title of a clerical person of a certain grade). [L. *abbatem.*]

abeille *f.* bee. [L. *apiculam.*]

abîmer *v.* sink, overwhelm, swallow up. [**abîme**, abyss; fr. Gr.]

abord *m.* access, arrival, attack; **d'abord**, from the start, at first, first. [à and **bord**, side, edge.]

aborder *v.* arrive, land. [fr. **abord.**]

aboyer *v.* bark. [L. *ad-baubari.*]

abréger *v.* abridge, shorten (*hence*, cause to seem shorter, make to pass pleasantly). [L. *abbreviare*, fr. *brevis*, short.]

absent *adj.* absent. [L.]

absolument *adv.* absolutely. [fr. **absolu**, L. *absolutus.*]

abuser *v.* make wrong use of (**de**: § 162*f*), abuse. [fr. **abus**, L. *abusus.*]

académie *f.* academy, institution of learning (*hence*, learning and its interests). [L., fr. Gr.]

accabler *v.* overwhelm, crush. [fr. OF. **caable**, engine of war.]

accepter *v.* accept, submit *or* resign one's self to. [L. *acceptare.*]

accompagner *v.* accompany. [fr. **compagne**, companion.]
accomplir *v.* accomplish, complete: **fait accompli**, thing done and finished. [L. *ad-complere*, fill.]
accorder *v.* accord, grant. [LL. *accordare*, fr. *cor*, heart.]
accoutumer *v.* accustom, inure. [fr. **coutume**, custom.]
***accroc** (58*g*) *m.* hook, hitch, tear. [fr. **croc**, fr. G., =*crook* etc.]
accueillir *v.* (*irr.* 46) receive, welcome. [L. *ad-colligere.*]
acheminer *v.* despatch : **s'...**, set out, proceed. [**à** and **chemin**, on the road.]
acheter *v.* buy, purchase. [LL. *ad-captare.*]
achever *v.* achieve, bring to completion, finish. [**à chef**, to a head.]
acquérir *v.* (*irr.* 63) acquire, gain. [L. *acquirere.*]
actif *adj.* active, brisk. [L. *activum.*]
action *f.* action, movement, play, deed. [L. *actionem.*]
adhésion *f.* adhesion, concurrence. [L. *adhæsionem.*]
adieu *m.* adieu, farewell, good-by. [**à Dieu**, (I commend you) to God.]
administrer *v.* administer, manage. [L. *administrare.*]
admirable *adj.* admirable, wonderful, amazing. [L. *admirabilem.*]
admiration *f.* admiration. [L. *admirationem.*]
admirer *v.* admire. [L. *admirare.*]
adopter *v.* adopt. [L. *adoptare.*]
adoptif *adj.* adoptive, by adoption. [L. *adoptivum.*]
adoucissement *m.* softening, mitigation, alleviation. [fr. **adoucir**, fr. **doux**, soft.]
adresser *v.* address : **s'...**, address one's self, apply, appeal. [fr. L. *ad-dirigere*, direct.]
adroit *adj.* adroit, dexterous, skilful, clever. [fr. L. *ad-directum.*]
affaire *f.* affair, concern, business: **votre affaire**, the thing for you, what you want ; **avoir affaire à**, have to deal with. [**à faire** (a thing) to do.]
affairé *adj.* (*as if pple of* **affairer**) busy, occupied. [fr. **affaire.**]
affaissement *m.* being weighed down, depression, giving way. [fr. **affaisser**, fr. **faix**, burden, L. *fascem.*]
affliger *v.* afflict, grieve, vex. [L. *affligere.*]
affranchir *v.* free, liberate, enfranchise. [fr. **franc**, G., free.]
affronter *v.* stand in front of, face, meet, brave. [fr. **front**, L. *frontem*, front.]
afin *adv.* to end : **afin de**, for the purpose of, in order to, to ; **afin que** (§ 137*d*), in order that, that. [**à fin.**]
âge *m.* age. [L. *ætaticum.*]
âgé *adj.* (*as if pple of* **âger**) aged, old, on in years. [fr. **âge.**]
agir *v.* act, behave, proceed, exert one's self : **s'agir de** *impers.* concern, be question of, be the matter in hand. [L. *agere.*]
agneau *m.* lamb. [L. *agnellum.*]
agonie *f.* agony, death-struggle. [L. *agoniam*, fr. Gr.]
agoniser *v.* be at the point of death. [L., fr. Gr.]
agréable *adj.* agreeable, pleasant. [fr. **agréer**, fr. **à gré**, L. *ad gratum.*]
agrément *m.* agreeableness, pleasingness, gratification, charm. [fr. **agréer**, fr. **à gré.**]
agriculture f. agriculture (crops and their interests). [L. *agri-culturam.*]
aide *m.f.* (§ 15*a*) aid, help, helper. [fr. **aider.**]
aider *v.* aid, help : **aider à** (§ 161*b*), give help to *or* about, assist. [L. *adjutare.*]
aïeul *m.* (§ 22*c*) grand-parent, ancestor. [LL. *aviolum*, fr. L. *avus.*]
aigle *m.f.* (§ 15*a*) eagle, standard. [L. *aquilam.*]

***aiguille** (62*f*) *f.* needle, spire. [L. *acuculam.*]
***aiguiser** (62*f*) *v.* sharpen. [fr. **aigu**, L. *acutum*, sharp.]
ail *m.* (§ 21*a*) garlic. [L. *allium.*]
ailleurs *adv.* elsewhere, some *or* anywhere else: **d'ailleurs**, otherwise, besides, moreover. [L. *aliorsum.*]
aimable *adj.* amiable, lovable, lovely. [fr. **aimer.**]
aimer *v.* love, like, be fond of *or* attached to: **aimer mieux**, like better, prefer. [L. *amare.*]
ainsi *adv.* thus, so, in this *or* that way, likewise: **ainsi que**, as, so as, as well as, as also. [L. *æque sic* or *in sic.*]
air *m.* air (atmosphere); air, look, mien, aspect: **avoir l'air**, have the look *or* aspect; (*with adj.*: § 56*b*) appear, seem to be. [L. *aerem.*]
aise *adj.* pleased, glad, happy. [?]
aisé *adj.* easy, not difficult. [fr. **aise.**]
aisément *adv.* easily, readily. [fr. **aisé.**]
ajourner *v.* adjourn, defer, put off. [**à** and **jour**, day.]
ajouter *v.* add; rejoin. [L., fr. *ad* and *juxta*, near.]
alarme *f.* alarm, fright. [fr. **à l'arme**, to arms!]
alarmer *v.* alarm, frighten, terrify. [fr. **alarme.**]
***album** (51*b*) *m.* album. [L., white.]
alentour *adv.* around, roundabout. [**à l'entour**, in the neighborhood.]
allemand *adj.* German. [OG. *aleman*, Allemanni.]
aller *v.* (*irr.* 82; p. 128) go, be going: **allons**, come, come on; **s'en aller** (XXIX. 7*c*), go off *or* away, be going; **y aller de** *impers.* concern. [?]
allier *v.* ally, join. [L. *alligare.*]
***almanach** (59*b*) *m.* almanac. [Arabic.]
***aloès** (74*d*) *m.* aloes. [Arabic.]
alors *adv.* then, at that time; in that case: **alors que**, at the time that, when. [L. *ad illam horam*, at that hour.]
alternative *f.* alternative. [fr. L. *alternare.*]
ambassadeur *m.* ambassador. [fr. G.]
ambitieux *adj.* ambitious: *as noun* ambitious person. [L. *ambitiosum.*]
âme *f.* soul, spirit. [L. *animam.*]
***amen** (54*d*), amen. [Gr.]
amener *v.* bring, lead; draw on. induce. [fr. **mener.**]
***amer** (73*b*) *adj.* bitter, sharp [L. *amarum.*]
amertume *f.* bitterness, vexation. [fr. **amer.**]
ameublement *m.* furniture. [fr. **meubles**, movables, fr. L. *mobilia.*]
ami *m.*, **amie** *f.* (§ 16) friend. [L. *amicum*, *amicam.*]
amitié *f.* friendship. [L. *amicitiam.*]
amollir *v.* soften: **s'** . . ., be mollified *or* softened, grow soft. [fr. **mol**, soft.]
amour *m. f.* (§ 15*c*) love: **amour propre**, self-love. [L. *amorem.*]
amoureux *adj.* amorous, enamoured, in love (with, **de**). [fr. **amour.**]
amuser *v.* amuse, divert, entertain. [**à** and **muser**, stare.]
an *m.* year (esp'ly in definitions of length of time). [L. *annum.*]
ancêtre *m.* ancestor. [L. *antecessor*, preceder.]
ancien *adj.* ancient, old, former. [LL. *antianum.*]
anciennement *adv.* anciently, of old. [fr. **ancien.**]
anéantir *v.* reduce to nonentity, annihilate. [**à** and **néant** (L. *neens*), nothingness.]
ange *m.* angel. [L. *angelum*, fr. Gr.]
anglais *adj.* English. [fr. *angli*, Angles.]

animal *m.* animal, living being. [L. *animal.*]
animer *v.* animate, enliven, excite. [L. *animare.*]
année *f.* year (esp'ly as a continuous space of time). [fr. **an.**]
annoncer *v.* announce, make known. [L. *annuntiare.*]
***antichrist** (76*a*) *m.* antichrist. [Gr.]
antique *adj.* antique, ancient, of former times. [L. *antiquum.*]
***août** (14) *m.* August. [L. *augustum.*]
***aoûteron** (14) *m.* harvestman, reaper. [fr. **août.**]
apercevoir *v.* (*irr.* 65) perceive, notice, observe. [L. *ad-percipere.*]
aplanir *v.* make plane *or* even, smooth. [fr. **plan,** L. *planum.*]
appartenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) appertain, belong. [L. *ad-pertinere.*]
appeler *v.* (XXI. 3*c*) call, summon, appeal to. [L. *appellare.*]
***appendice** (50*e*) *m.* appendix. [L.]
applaudir *v.* applaud, cheer: . . . **à,** give applause to, applaud. [L. *applaudere.*]
apporter *v.* bring, convey, procure. [L. *apportare.*]
apprendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) apprehend, learn; teach, make known, inform. [L. *apprehendere.*]
approcher *v.* bring near (to, **de**: § 162*f*); draw near, approach (to, **de**); **s'** . . ., approach, draw near (to, **de**). [fr. **proche,** near.]
approuver *v.* pprove, approve of. [L. *approbare.*]
appuyer *v.* support; lean, rest. [fr. **appui, à** and OF. *pui,* height.]
après *prep.* after, next following. *adv.* afterward, later; further, proceed: **d'après,** according to; **après que,** after that, after (*conj.*). [L. *ad-pressum.*]
après-demain *adv.* day after tomorrow.
après-midi *f.* or *m.* afternoon.
arbre *m.* (§ 12*c*) tree. [L. *arborem.*]
arc *m.* bow. [L. *arcum.*]
archiduc *m.* arch-duke. [**archi-,** fr. Gr., and **duc,** L. *ducem,* leader.]
architecture *f.* architecture. [L.]
argent *m.* silver; money, treasure. [L. *argentum.*]
***arguer** (62*f*) *v.* argue. [L. *arguere.*]
arme *f.* (§ 12*b*) arm, weapon. [L. *arma.*]
armée *f.* army. [L. *armatam.*]
arracher *v.* take away *or* obtain by force, wrest, extort, snatch, force (from, **à**: § 161*c*). [L. *ab-radicari.*]
arranger *v.* arrange: **s'** . . ., arrange itself, come out all right. [fr. **rang,** rank.]
arrêter *v.* arrest, bring to rest, stop, check; stay, (*of a dog*) point, set: **s'** . . ., arrest one's self, stop, stay. [fr. **rester,** stay.]
arrière *adv.* in the rear, backward, behind: **en arrière,** backward, back, into the background. [L. *ad retro.*]
arriver *v.* arrive: **arrivé,** person arrived, arrival. [L. *ad-ripare,* fr. *ad ripam,* to the shore.]
arrivée *f.* arrival. [fr. **arriver.**]
arsenal *m.* arsenal. [fr. Arabic.]
art *m.* (§ 12*c*) art. [L. *artem.*]
artifice *m.* artifice, deceit, trick. [L. *artificium.*]
artisan *m.* artisan, workman. [fr. **art.**]
***as** (74*d*) *m.* ace. [L. *as.*]
asile *m.* asylum, refuge. [L., fr. Gr.]
***aspect** (76*a*) *m.* aspect, appearance. [L. *aspectum.*]
assassin *m.* assassin. [fr. Arabic.]
assassinat *m.* assassination. [fr. **assassin.**]
assemblée *f.* assembly. [fr. **assembler.**]
assembler *v.* assemble: **s'** . . ., gather, come together, assemble. [fr. L. *simul,* together.]
asseoir *v.* (*irr.* 78) sit down, take a seat: **s'** . . ., sit down. [L. *ad-sidere.*]

asservir *v.* reduce to servitude, subjugate, enslave : **asservi**, slavish. [fr. **serf**, serf, slave.]

assez *adv.* (V. 4*a*) enough, sufficiently; tolerably, fairly, rather. [L. *ad satis.*]

assiette *f.* plate. [fr. L. *ad* and *situs*, site.]

assister *v.* assist, aid, succor ; be present (at, **à** : § 161*b*), be a witness (of, **à**) : **assistant**, one present, bystander, spectator. [L. *ad-sistere.*]

assurer *v.* assure, make certain : **assuré**, sure, secure, certain, steady. [L. *assecurare.*]

assurément *adv.* assuredly, certainly. [fr. **assuré.**]

atelier *m.* workshop, studio. [LL. *hastellarium* (?).]

attacher *v.* attach, fasten, bind, tie, join, fix : **s'** . . ., attach one's self, be attached *or* fastened *or* fixed ; apply one's self. [fr. **tache**, tack, nail ; prob. Celtic.]

attaque *f.* attack. [fr. **attaquer.**]

attaquer *v.* attack : **s'** . . . **à**, fall upon, pick a quarrel with. [same as **attacher.**]

atteindre *v.* (*irr.* 16) attain : . . . **à**, attain to, attain. [L. *attingere.*]

attendre *v.* wait for, await ; wait, stay : **s'** . . . **à**, await, expect, be prepared for; **en attendant**, while waiting, meanwhile, in the mean time. [L. *attendere.*]

attenter *v.* attempt : . . . **à**, make an attempt upon, assail, plot against. [L. *attentare.*]

attention *f.* attention ; mark of attention *or* regard *or* consideration, considerate notice. [L.]

attester *v.* attest, bear witness to. [L. *attestari.*]

attirer *v.* draw down, attract : **s'** . . ., bring upon one's self, incur. [**à** and **tirer**, draw.]

attitude *f.* attitude. [L. *aptitudinem.*]

auberge *f.* inn, tavern. [fr. G. *herberge*, camp.]

aucun *pron.* (*with* **ne** : § 111, 167) not any, none, no. [L. *aliquem unum.*]

au-delà *adv.* beyond : . . . **de**, beyond (*prep.*). [**au** (**à le**), **de**, and **là.**]

au-dessous *adv.* below : . . . **de**, below, beneath (*prep.*). [**au** (**à le**), **de**, and **sous.**]

au-dessus *adv.* above : . . . **de**, above (*prep.*). [**au** (**à le**), **de**, and **sus**, **sur.**]

aujourd'hui *adv.* to-day, nowadays. [**au** (**à le**) **jour**, **de**, and **hui**, L. *hodie*, to-day.]

***aulx** (67*a*) *pl.* of **ail** (§ 21*a*).

auparavant *adv.* before, formerly, previously, beforehand. [**au** (**à le**), **par**, and **avant.**]

auprès *adv.* near, at hand : . . . **de**, near to, in presence of, in the eyes of, before. [**au** (**à le**) and **près**, near.]

aurore *f.* dawn, aurora ; gold color, of gold color (§ 53*d*). [L. *auroram.*]

auspice *m.* auspice. [L. *auspicium.*]

aussi *adv.* also, too ; as ; as much, equally; accordingly. [L. *aliud sic*, else so.]

aussitôt *adv.* as soon : . . . **que**, as soon as (*conj.*). [**aussi** and **tôt**, soon.]

autant *adv.* as much *or* many : . . . **que**, as much as (*conj.*). [L. *aliud tantum.*]

autel *m.* altar. [L. *altare.*]

auteur *m.* author. [L. *autorem.*]

***automne** (69*a*) *m.* autumn. [L.]

autorité *f.* authority. [L.]

autour *adv.* around, roundabout : . . . **de**, around, about (*prep.*). [**au** (**à le**) and **tour**, turn.]

autre *pron.* other (XXVII. 6, 7 ; § 115). [L. *alterum.*]

autrefois *adv.* formerly, of old. [**autre** and **fois**, time.]

autrement *adv.* otherwise, differently. [fr. **autre.**]

autrui *pron.* others than one's self, other people. [fr. **autre.**]

avance *f.* advance, advantage :

d'avance, in advance, beforehand. [*f.* **avancer**.]
avancer *v.* advance, put forward, push on, prefer, benefit. [fr. **avant**.]
avant *prep.* before, previous to: . . . **de** (*with inf.*), before; . . . **que**, before that, before (*conj.*: § 137*a*). [L. *ab ante*.]
avantage *m.* advantage, odds on one's side, superiority. [fr. **avant**.]
avant-hier *adv.* day before yesterday.
avec *prep.* with, along with, by: **d'avec**, from with, from. [L. *apud hoc*.]
avenir *m.* time to come, future. [**à venir**, to come.]
avertir *v.* advertise, give notice, inform, warn. [L. *advertere*.]
aveu *m.* avowal, confession, acknowledgment. [fr. **avouer**.]
aveugle *adj.* blind. [LL. *aboculum*.]
aveuglément *adv.* blindly. [fr. **aveugle**.]
avidité *f.* avidity, greediness. [L. *aviditatem*.]
avis *m.* advice, opinion, way of thinking. [L. *advisum*.]
aviser *v.* advise, inform: **s'** . . ., bethink one's self, be thoughtful, take notice, have come into one's head. [fr. **avis**.]
avoir *v.* (*irr.* 80; p. 58) have: **y avoir** (XXX. 4), there is, etc.; **en avoir à**, have to deal with; *as auxil., see* XXVIII. 5–7; *for phrases. see the nouns used: cf.* XIII. 6. [L. *habere*.]
avoir *m.* what one has *or* possesses, property. [inf. of **avoir**.]
avouer *v.* avow, acknowledge, confess. [LL. *advotare*, *ad* and *votum*, vow.]
***avril** (68*d*) *m.* April. [L. *aprilem*.]

bagatelle *f.* bagatelle, trifle. [fr. It.]
baigner *v.* bathe, steep, drench. [fr. **bain**, bath, L. *balneum*.]
baisser *v.* lower, drop, decline, fall off, ebb. [fr. **bas**.]
bal *m.* ball, dance. [fr. L. *ballare*, dance.]
balancer *v.* balance, waver, hesitate. [fr. L. *bilancem*, balance.]
***balsamique** (74*b*) *adj.* balsamic, balmy. [fr. Gr.]
balustrade *f.* balustrade, railing. [fr. **balustre**, baluster, fr. Gr.]
banc *m.* bench, seat. [fr. G.]
bannir *v.* banish. [fr. **ban**, fr. G.]
banqueroutier *m.* bankrupt. [fr. It. *banco rotto*, bench broken.]
***baptême** (71*a*) *m.* baptism. [fr. Gr.]
***baptiser** (71*a*) *v.* baptize. [fr. Gr.]
barbe *f.* beard: **faire la** . . ., put one's beard in order, shave. [L. *barbam*.]
barbouiller *v.* smear, blot. [?]
barde *m.* bard. [L., fr. Celtic.]
***baril** (68*c*) *m.* barrel. [LL. *barillum*.]
baron *m.* baron. [LL. *baronem*.]
baronne *f.* baroness. [fr. **baron**.]
bas *adj.* low, base, mean: **à bas**, downward, down; **en bas**, below, down-stairs. [LL. *bassum*]
bas *adv.* (XXXI. 9) low, in a low tone.
bas *m.* stocking, hose. [fr. **bas** *adj.*]
basse-cour *f.* poultry-yard. [lit'ly lower yard.]
bateau *m.* boat: . . . **à vapeur**, steamboat, steamer; . . . **à voiles**, sailboat, sailing vessel. [LL. *batum*, fr. G.]
bâtiment *m.* building. [fr. **bâtir**.]
bâtir *v.* build. [fr. **bât**, LL. *bastum*.]
battre *v.* (XX. 3*c*) beat, strike: **se** . . ., fight, fence. [L. *batuere*.]
beau, bel (VII. 7) *adj.* beautiful, handsome, fine: **avoir beau** (§ 176*f*), do *or* try in vain, make useless effort to. [L. *bellum*.]
beaucoup *adv.* (V. 4) much, a good deal, many; very much, very. [**beau** and **coup**, stroke.]

beau-frère *m.* brother-in-law. [**beau** and **frère.**]
beau-père *m.* father-in-law.
beauté *f.* beauty. [fr. **beau.**]
beefsteak *m.* beefsteak. [English word.]
bel, *see* **beau.**
bêler *v.* bleat. [L. *balare.*]
belle-sœur *f.* sister-in-law.
bénin *adj.* (§ **53***c*) benignant, benign. [L. *benignum.*]
bénir *v.* bless. [L. *benedicere.*]
berger *m.* shepherd. [LL. *berbicarium,* fr. *berbex,* ram.]
besoin *m* need, necessity, requirement: **avoir besoin,** have need, be in need *or* want, need. [?]
bêtail, bestiaux *m.* (§ **21***a*) cattle. [L. *bestiale.*]
bête *f.* beast, animal, brute, creature: **bête noire,** special aversion. [L. *bestiam.*]
beurre *m.* butter. [L. *butyrum,* fr. Gr.]
bibliothèque *f.* library. [Gr.]
bien *adv.* well, rightly; all right, very well; quite, indeed, truly, surely; very; much, many (V. **4***b*): **bien que,** though, although (§ **137***b*). [L. *bene.*]
bien *m.* what is well *or* good, good thing, good; wealth, fortune: **homme** (*or* **femme** *or* **gens**) **de bien,** honest *or* excellent person. [= **bien** adv.]
bien-être *m.* well-being, welfare. [**bien** and **être.**]
bienfait *m.* benefit, good office, kindness. [**bien** and **fait,** deed.]
bientôt *adv.* very soon, soon. [**bien** and **tôt,** soon.]
billot *m.* block. [fr. Celtic.]
bis** (**74d*) *adv.* twice. [L. *bis.*]
blâmer *v.* blame. [L. *blasphemare,* fr. Gr.: § **9.**]
blanc *adj.* (VII. **6***b*) white. [fr. G.]
blasphémer *v.* blaspheme. [L. *blasphemare,* fr. Gr.: § **9.**]
blesser *v.* wound. [?]
bleu *adj.* blue. [fr. G.]
bocage *m.* woods, grove, boskage. [LL. *boscum,* fr. G.]
bœuf *m.* (***bœufs** *pl.* **61***a*) ox. [L. *bovem.*]
boire *v.* (*irr.* 27) drink. [L. *bibere.*]
bois *m.* wood, timber; wood, forest. [LL. *boscum,* fr. G.]
bon *adj.* good (for, **à**), excellent; right; kind: **à quoi bon,** good for what? of what use? what avails it? **de bonne heure,** in good time, early; **à bon marché, bon marché,** cheap. [L. *bonum.*]
bonheur *m.* happiness, good fortune, felicity, blessing. [L. *bonum augurium.*]
bonjour *m.* good day, good morning, one's greeting *or* compliments. [**bon** and **jour,** day.]
bonté *f.* kindness, goodness; act of kindness, favor. [L. *bonitatem.*]
borner *v.* bound, limit, confine, narrow, stint. [?]
botte *f.* boot. [fr. G.]
bouche *f.* mouth. [L. *buccam.*]
bouger *v.* budge, stir, move. [fr. G.]
bouillir *v.* (*irr.* 64) boil. [L. *bullire.*]
boulanger *m.* baker. [fr. **boule,** ball, loaf.]
bouquin *m.* old book, musty old volume. [Dutch *boeken,* books.]
bourreau *m.* executioner. [?]
bout *m.* end, tip, bit, small piece. [fr. **bouter,** push, fr. G.]
bouteille *f.* bottle. [L. *buticulam.*]
boutonnière *f.* button-hole. [fr. **bouton,** button, fr. **bout.**]
bras *m.* arm. [L. *brachium.*]
brave *adj.* brave, gallant, excellent, worthy (§ **60***b*). [?]
braver *v.* brave, face bravely, defy. [fr. **brave.**]
brebis *f.* sheep. [L. *berbicem.*]
brèche *f.* breach, gap. [fr. G.]
breuvage *m.* drink, beverage. [fr. L. *bibere,* drink.]
brillant *adj.* brilliant, shining. [pple of **briller.**]
briller *v.* shine, be brilliant. [LL. *beryllare,* fr. *beryllus,* beryl.]
brin *m.* blade, bit, jot, mote. [?]
broc** (**58g*) *m.* jug. [?]

brosse *f.* brush. [fr. G.]
bruit *m.* noise, bustle, ado; rumor, report. [fr. **bruire**, L. *rugire* (?).]
brûler *v.* burn, scorch, consume, set on fire. [fr. L. *per-ustum* (?), burnt up.]
brun *adj.* brown. [fr. G.]
brusquement *adv.* bluntly, abruptly, roughly. [fr. **brusque** adj., fr. Italian.]
***brut** (76*a*) *adj.* crude, raw. [L. *brutum.*]
bûcher *m.* pile, funeral pile. [fr. LL. *busca*, fr. G.]
bulle *f.* bull, papal edict. [L. *bullam*, boss, seal.]
bureau *m.* bureau, desk. [fr. **bure**, woolen stuff.]
but (76*a*) *m.* butt, mark; end; aim, purpose. [same as **bout.**]

ça *pron.* (XXIV. 3; § 93) that, that thing (*or* person). [fr. **cela.**]
cacher *v.* conceal, hide. [fr. L. *coactum*, crowded together.]
cadeau *m.* gift, present. [L. *catellum*, chainlet.]
cadre *m.* frame, framework, border. [L. *quadrum.*]
café *m.* coffee. [fr. Arabic.]
calamité *f.* calamity. [L. *calamitatem.*]
calme *adj.* calm: *as noun*, calmness, tranquillity, serenity. [fr. LL. *cauma* (?).]
calmer *v.* calm, quiet, tranquillize. [fr. **calme.**]
calomnier *v.* calumniate, slander, libel. [L. *calumniari.*]
campagne *f.* field; fields, country (as distinguished from city). [LL. *campaniam*, fr. *campus.*]
***cancer** (73*b*) *m.* cancer. [L., crab.]
canon *m.* cannon: **poudre à . . .**, gunpowder. [fr. **canne**, cane.]
cantonnier *m.* roadsman, gatekeeper. [fr. **canton**, canton.]
***caoutchouc** (58*g*) *m.* caoutchouc, india-rubber. [West Indian word.]
***cap** (71*a*) *m.* cape, headland. [L. *caput.*]
capable *adj.* capable; just the one *or* the thing to (**de**). [fr. L. *capax.*]
capitaine *m.* captain. [LL. *capitanus.*]
capital *m.* capital, invested funds. [L. *capitale.*]
capucin *m.* capuchin (monk). [fr. **capuce**, cape.]
car *conj.* for. [L. *quare.*]
caractère *m.* character. [L., fr. Gr.]
cardinal *m.* cardinal. [L.]
carrière *f.* career, race-course. [fr. L. *carrum*, chariot.]
carrosse *m.* carriage. [fr. It., fr. *carrum.*]
cas *m.* case, hap, event: **en tout cas**, in any case, at any rate; **en** *or* **au cas que** (*conj.*: § 137*b*), in case that, supposing. [L. *casum.*]
casser *v.* break; quash. [fr. L. *cassus.*]
catholique *adj.* catholic. [Gr.]
cauchemar *m.* nightmare. [OF. **caucher** (L. *calcare*, tread) and G. *mar.*]
cause *f.* cause, reason, matter, case: **à cause de**, by reason of. [L.]
causer *v.* talk, converse, discuss matters. [L. *causari.*]
cavalier *m.* horseman, cavalier, knight. [fr. L. *caballus*, horse.]
ce, cet *pron.* (XI. 2; XIII. 2, 3; XXIV.; § 147*b*) this, that; it (they, these, those): **ce qui** *or* **que**, that which, what; **jusqu'à ce que**, until, till. [fr. L. *ecce hoc, ecce istum.*]
ceci *pron.* this. [**ce** and **ci.**]
céder *v.* yield, cede, give up: **le céder** (§ 82*b*), give way. [L. *cedere.*]
cela *pron.* that. [**ce** and **là**: XXIV. 3.]
celui, celle, etc. (XXIV. 4; § 92) this *or* that one. [L. *ecce illum*, etc.]
cendre *f.* ashes, cinder. [L. *cinerem.*]

***cens** (74*d*) *m.* franchise; census. [L. *censum.*]
cent *num.* hundred (XV.; § 64). [L. *centum.*]
centaine *f.* century, five score, a hundred or so. [fr. **cent.**]
centième *num.* hundredth, hundredth part. [fr. **cent.**]
centre *m.* centre. [L. *centrum.*]
cependant *adv.* pending *or* during this, meanwhile; however, nevertheless. [**ce** and **pendant.**]
cérémonie *f.* ceremony; ceremoniousness. [L *cærimonium.*]
***cerf** (61*a*) *m.* stag. [L. *cervum.*]
cerise, *f.* cherry. [fr. L. *cerasum.*]
certain *adj.* certain, sure; certain, some, sundry (VIII. 5*c*; § 60*b*). [fr. L. *certus.*]
certainement *adv.* certainly, surely. [fr. **certain.**]
certes *adv.* certainly, assuredly. [L. *certe.*]
cesser *v.* cease, refrain from, stop. [L. *cessare.*]
cet, *see* **ce.**
chacun *pron.* (§ 109) each one, each, every one. [L. *quemque unum.*]
chaise *f.* chair, seat. [L. *cathedram,* fr. Gr.]
chaleur *f.* warmth, heat. [L. *calorem.*]
chambre *f.* chamber, room: **femme de chambre,** lady's maid. [L. *cameram* (§ 2*e*).]
champ *m.* field: **sur le champ,** on the spot, at once, directly. [L. *campum.*]
chanceler *v.* (XXI. 3*c*) stagger, waver, falter. [L. *cancellare.*]
changer *v.* change, alter: **changer de** (§ 162*f*), make a change in regard to, shift, change. [L. *cambiare.*]
chanson *f.* song, ditty. [L. *cantionem.*]
chanter *v.* sing. [L. *cantare.*]
chanteur *m.* singer. [fr. **chanter.**]
chapeau *m.* hat. [fr. OF. **chape, cape,** cape.]
chapitre *m.* chapter. [L. *capitulum.*]
chaque *pron.* (XIV. 6; § 109) each, every. [abbrvn. of **chacun.**]
char *m.* car, chariot, cart. [L. *carrum.*]
charmer *v.* charm, delight. [fr. **charme,** L. *carmen.*]
chasse *f.* chase, hunt, sport. [fr. **chasser.**]
chasser *v.* chase, hunt; chase away, drive off, expel; dismiss (as a servant). [L. *captare.*]
chat *m.* cat. [L. *cattum.*]
châtain *adj.* (§ 53*d*) chestnut-colored, auburn. [L. *castaneum.*]
château *m.* castle, chateau. [L. *castellum.*]
chaud *adj.* warm: **avoir chaud** (XIII. 6), be warm, feel warm (of persons); **faire chaud** (XXXII. 9*a*), be warm (of weather). [L. *calidum.*]
chef *m.* head, chief: ***chef-d'œuvre** (61*a*), masterpiece. [L. *caput.*]
chemin *m.* road, way: **chemin de fer,** railroad, railway. [LL. *caminum,* fr. Celtic?]
cheminée *f.* chimney; fireplace; chimney-piece. [fr. **chemin.**]
***chenil** (68*c*) *m.* kennel. [fr. **chien.**]
cher *adj.* (VIII. 5*c*; § 60*b*) dear, costly, precious, loved, valued [L. *carum.*]
chercher *v.* seek, look for, try to find: **aller chercher,** go for, fetch. [L. *circare,* run about.]
chèrement *adv.* dearly, at much cost, at a high price. [fr. **cher.**]
chérir *v.* cherish, treat with affection, hold dear. [fr. **cher.**]
cheval *m.* horse: **à cheval,** on horseback. [L. *caballum.*]
chevalerie *f.* chivalry. [fr. **cheval.**]
chevalier *m.* chevalier, knight. [fr. **cheval.**]
chevelure *f.* head of hair, hair. [fr. **cheveu.**]
chevet *m.* head of a bed, bolster, pillow. [fr. **chef.**]
cheveu *m.* (*gen'ly pl.*) hair. [L. *capillum.*]
chez *prep.* at *or* to the house of,

where (one) lives, with, among. [L. *casa*, in the house.]
chien *m.* dog. [L. *canem.*]
choir *r.* (*irr.* 70) fall. [L. *cadere.*]
choisir *v.* choose, select, cull: **choisi**, select. [fr. G.]
chose *f.* thing, object, matter, affair: **quelque chose**, something; **toute chose**, everything; **autre chose**, some *or* any thing else. [L. *causam.*]
***Christ** (76*a*) *m.* Christ. [Gr.]
***chut** (76*a*) *interj.* hush. [imitative.]
ci *adv.* (XIII. 3, XXIV.; § 91) here. [L. *ecce hic.*]
ciel *m.* (II. 5; § 22*a*) heaven, sky, clime; canopy, awning; Heaven. [L. *cælum.*]
ci-inclus, ci-joint, § 56*a*.
***cinq** (72*c*) *num.* five. [L. *quinque.*]
cinquante *num.* fifty. [L. *quinquaginta.*]
cinquième *num.* fifth. [fr. **cinq.**]
circonstance *f.* circumstance. [L.]
citadelle *f.* citadel. [fr. It.]
citoyen *m.* citizen. [fr. **cité**, city.]
***civil** (68*d*) *adj.* civil. [L. *civilem.*]
classique *adj.* classic, classical. [L. *classicum.*]
***clef** (61*a*) *f.* key. [L. *clavem.*]
clouer *v.* nail, rivet, fix. [fr. **clou**, nail, L. *clavum.*]
***club** (57*a*) *m.* club. [English.]
cœur *m.* heart; courage, resolution: **à cœur ouvert**, with open heart, openly, frankly; **de bon cœur**, with all one's heart, heartily, sincerely. [L. *cor.*]
col *m.* collar. [L. *collum*, neck.]
colère *f.* choler, anger, rage, wrath. [L. *choleram*, fr. Gr.]
collègue *m.* colleague. [L. *collegam.*]
colonie *f.* colony. [L.]
combat *m.* combat, struggle, fight. [fr. **combattre.**]
combattre *v.* (XX. 3*c*) combat, fight; fight *or* struggle against, contend with. [**con** and **battre.**]
combien *adv.* how much *or* many? how much *or* many (*relative*), how, in what measure *or* degree: **combien que**, however much. [**comme** and **bien.**]
combiner *v.* combine, contrive. [L. *combinare.*]
comédie *f.* comedy; **Comédie française**, name of a certain company of actors at Paris. [L., fr. Gr.]
comique *adj.* comic, comical. [L.]
commander *v.* command, order; . . . **à**, give in charge to, give command *or* order to, direct. [L. *commendare.*]
comme *adv. conj.* as, just as, like; in character of, as being. [L. *quomodo.*]
commencer *v.* commence, begin. [L. *cum-initiare.*]
comment *adv* how? how! how (*relative*). [fr. **comme** (**-ment**, XXXI. 2).]
commentaire *m.* commentary. [L.]
commettre *v.* (*irr.* 31) commit. [L. *committere.*]
commissionnaire *m.* messenger, errand-man, porter. [fr. **commission**, errand.]
communication *f.* communication. [L.]
compagnie *f.* company, society, fellowship; troop, band. [fr. **compagne**, companion.]
comparable *adj.* comparable, admitting comparison, commensurable. [L. *comparabilem.*]
complet *adj.* complete, entire. [L. *completum.*]
complètement *adv.* completely, entirely. [fr. **complet.**]
comprendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) comprehend, include; understand: **y compris**, being included, with inclusion of (§ 56*a*). [L. *comprehendere.*]
***compte** (71*a*) *m.* account, computation, reckoning. [fr. **compter.**]
***compter** (71*a*) *v.* compute, count, reckon. [L. *computare.*]
computer *v.* compute. [L.; § 9.]
comte *m.* count, earl. [L. *comitem.*]
comtesse *f.* countess. [fr. **comte.**]

concevoir *v.* (*irr.* 65) conceive, form a conception *or* idea of. [L. *concipere.*]
conclure *v.* (*irr.* 29) conclude; infer. [L. *concludere.*]
***condamner** (69*a*) *v.* condemn. [L. *condemnare.*]
condition *f.* condition, state, rank in life. [L. *conditionem.*]
conduire *v.* (*irr.* 1) conduct, lead, guide, manage, drive. [L. *conducere.*]
conduite *f.* conduct. [fr. **conduire.**]
confiance *f.* confidence, trust. [L. *confidentiam.*]
confidence *f* confidence, trustful communication: **faire confidence de,** confide, disclose. [L. *confidentiam.*]
confiture *f.* sweetmeat, preserve, jam. [fr. **confire,** L. *conficere,* put together.]
confondre *v.* confound, confuse, perplex, baffle. [L. *confundere.*]
connaître *v.* (*irr.* 18) know, have knowledge of, be acquainted with, be informed of, have cognizance of. [L. *cognoscere.*]
conquérir *v.* (*irr.* 63) conquer. [L. *conquirere.*]
conquête *f.* conquest. [L. *conquisitam.*]
conscience *f.* conscience; consciousness, inner sense. [L.]
conseil *m.* counsel, advice. [L. *consilium.*]
conseiller *v.* counsel, advise (something); . . . **à,** advise (some one). [L. *consiliari.*]
consentement *m.* consent. [fr. **consentir,** L. *consentire,* consent.]
conséquence *f.* consequence, importance. [L. *consequentiam.*]
conserver *v.* preserve, keep, retain. [L. *conservare.*]
considérablement *adv.* considerably. [fr. **considérable,** fr. **considérer.**]
considérer *v.* consider, regard, esteem. [L. *considerare.*]
consister *v.* consist, be composed *or* made up (§ 182*b*). [L. *consistere.*]
consoler *v.* console, comfort, soothe. [L. *consolari.*]
consolation *f.* consolation. [L.]
conspirer *v.* conspire, combine. [L. *conspirare.*]
constitutionnel *adj.* constitutional. [fr. **constitution,** L.]
constamment *adv.* constantly. [fr. **constant,** L. (XXXI. 4*a*).]
construire *v.* (*irr.* 2) construct, build. [L. *construere.*]
consumer *v.* consume, waste. [L. *consumere.*]
conte *m.* story, tale. [fr. **conter.**]
contempler *v.* contemplate, regard, gaze at. [L. *contemplari.*]
contenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) contain, hold, include. [L. *continere.*]
content *adj.* content, satisfied, glad, happy. [L. *contentum.*]
contentement *m.* contentment, satisfaction, happiness. [fr. **contenter,** fr. **content.**]
conter *v.* tell, relate. [same as **compter, computer:** § 9]
continuellement *adv.* continually. [fr. **continuel,** fr. **continuer.**]
continuer *v.* continue, keep on with; keep on, last; go on. [L. *continuare.*]
contracter *v.* contract, draw together. [L. *contractare.*]
contraire *adj.* contrary, opposite: **au contraire,** on the contrary; quite otherwise. [L. *contrarium.*]
contraster *v.* contrast, be opposed. [fr. Italian, fr. L. *contra,* against.]
contre *prep.* against, in opposition to; in exchange for. [L. *contra.*]
contrôle *m.* control, restraint. [fr. **contre-rôle,** counter-roll.]
convenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) come together, accord, agree; suit, be suitable *or* proper: **convenir de,** agree upon, assent to, acknowledge, own. [L. *convenire.*]
convention *f.* convention, assembly. [L.]
convier *v.* invite, incite, quicken. [LL. *convitare.*]

coq (72*c*) *m.* cock. [imitative.]
coquin *m.* **coquine** *f.* (§ 16*c*) rogue, knave, scamp. [?]
cordonnier *m.* shoemaker. [lit'ly, worker in Cordovan leather.]
corps *m.* body; corpse. [L. *corpus.*]
corriger *v.* correct, amend; chastise. [L. *corrigere.*]
corrompre *v.* (XX. 3*b*) corrupt, vitiate, spoil. [L. *corrumpere.*]
côté *m.* side, part (**de**, on: § 204*a*). [fr. L. *costa*, rib.]
coucher *v.* lay down, put to rest *or* to bed: **se . . .**, retire to rest, go to bed. [L. *collocare.*]
coude *m.* elbow. [L. *cubitum.*]
coudre *v.* (*irr.* 34) sew. [L. *consuere.*]
couler *v.* flow on, glide by, pass away. [L. *colare*, filter.]
coup *m.* blow, stroke, hit; discharge, shot: **tout-à-coup**, suddenly, all at once; **à coup sûr**, assuredly, to a certainty, without fail; **coup d'œil**, glance, sudden look; *and compare* **beaucoup.** [L. *colaphus*, fr. Gr.]
coupable *adj.* culpable, guilty. [L. *culpabilem.*]
couple *m. f.* (§ 15*a*) couple, pair, brace. [L. *copulam.*]
cour *f.* court; courtyard, yard. [L. *chortem.*]
courage *m.* courage. [fr. **cœur.**]
courant *m.* current, stream: **au courant**, abreast of the stream, not behindhand, up with the times, well posted. [pple of **courir.**]
courir *v.* (*irr.* 52) run; be current, circulate; run after, hunt (§ 157*b*). [L. *currere.*]
couronne *f.* crown. [L. *coronam.*]
cours *m.* course, run, vent: **donner cours à**, give free course *or* vent to, allow to go on unchecked. [L. *cursum.*]
court *adj.* short, brief, curt. [L. *curtum.*]
courtisan *m.* courtier, courtling. [fr. It., fr. *corte* = **cour.**]
cousin *m.* **cousine** *f.* (§ 16*c*) cousin. [L. *consobrinum.*]
couteau *m.* knife. [L. *cultellum*]
coûter *v.* cost. [L. *constare*, stand in.]
***coutil** (68*c*, *m.* ticking. [L. *culcitam.*]
couturière *f.* seamstress, dressmaker. [fr. **couture**, L. *consuturam*, sewing.]
couvent *m.* convent, monastery. [L. *conventum.*]
couvert *m.* cover, plate etc. for eating, seat at table. [pple of **couvrir.**]
couvrir *v.* (*irr.* 56) cover, envelop; fill. [L. *cooperi e.*]
craindre *v.* (*irr.* 15) fear, be afraid; be afraid of, dread. [L. *tremere*, tremble.]
crainte *f.* fear, terror, dread: **de crainte que**, for fear that *or* lest (XXXIV. 5*c*; § 134*e*). [fr. **craindre.**]
crasse *adj. f.* (§ 53*d*) crass, gross. [L. *crassam.*]
crayon *m.* pencil. [fr. L. *cretam*, chalk.]
créer *v.* create. [L. *creare.*]
cri *m.* cry, street-cry. [fr. **crier**, cry, L. *quiritare.*]
***cric** (58*g*) *m.* jack, lifter. [imitative.]
crime *m.* crime. [L. *crimen.*]
crise *f.* crisis. [L., fr. Gr.]
critique *f.* criticism, review. [L. *criticam*, fr. Gr.]
***croc** (58*g*) *m.* hook. [fr. G.,= crook.]
croire *v.* (*irr.* 26) believe, think, be of opinion, suppose; believe to belong (§ 161*e*), credit; *with infin.* (§ 176*c*), think one's self. [L. *credere.*]
croître *v.* (*irr.* 19) grow, increase. [L. *crescere.*]
croix *f.* cross. [L. *crucem.*]
cruel *adj.* cruel. [L. *crudelem.*]
cruellement *adv.* cruelly. [fr **cruel.**]
cueillir *v.* (*irr.* 46) collect, gather, pick, cull. [L. *colligere.*]

***cuiller** (73*b*) *f.* spoon. [L. *cochleare.*]
cuirassier *m.* cuirassier. [fr. **cuirasse**, fr. **cuir**, leather, L. *corium.*]
cuisine *f.* kitchen. [L. *coquinam.*]
cuisinière *f.* cook. [fr. **cuisine.**]
culotte *f.* (*gen'lly pl.*) trousers, pantaloons. [fr. **cul**, L. *culum.*]
culte *m.* veneration, adoration, worship. [L. *cultum.*]
cultiver *v.* cultivate, improve by exercise. [LL. *cultivare.*]
curieux *adj.* curious, peculiar, queer. [L. *curiosum.*]
curiosité *f.* curiosity. [L. *curiositatem.*]
czar *m.* czar, Russian emperor. [Russian.]

daigner *v* deign, think worthy, vouchsafe. [L. *dignari.*]
dame *f.* lady. [L. *dominam.*]
***damner** (69*a*) *v.* damn. [L. *damnare.*]
danger *m.* danger. [LL. *dominiarium*, fr. *dominus*, lord.]
dangereux *adj.* dangerous, attended with danger. [fr. **danger.**]
dans *prep.* (§ **207**) in, into, to. [L. *de intus.*]
danser *v.* dance [fr. G.]
davantage *adv.* yet more, more, further, in addition. [**de** and **avantage.**]
de *prep.* (III.–V.; § **203***a*, **204**) of; from; about, respecting; out of, because of, on account of, for; with, by, through; at, in, on; to (§ **172***b*); some *or* any (IV.; § **35**); than (XV. **9**); as (§ **162***g*). [L. *de.*]
débarrasser *v.* disembarrass, disencumber, rid. [fr. **barras**, fr. **barre**, bar, obstacle.]
debout *adv.* on end, in upright position, erect, standing, not thrown down. [**de** and **bout**, end.]
décéder *v.* decease, depart this life. [L. *decedere.*]
décembre *m.* December. [L.]
déception *f.* deception. [L. *deceptionem.*]
déchirer *v.* tear asunder, lacerate, mangle. [probably fr. G.]
déchoir *v.* (*irr.* 70) fall, sink, decay. [L. *decidere.*]
décidément *adv.* decidedly. [fr. **décidé**, pple of **décider.**]
décider *v.* decide, settle, determine: . . . **de**, decide about, settle; **se** . . ., make up one's mind, resolve. [L. *decidere.*]
déclarer *v.* declare, state, proclaim. [L. *declarare.*]
découper *v.* cut up, cut. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **couper**, cut.]
découvrir *v.* (*irr.* 56) discover, uncover, disclose. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **couvrir.**]
dedans *adv.* within. [**de** and **dans.**]
dédommager *v.* indemnify, compensate, make up (for, **de**). [fr. **dé-** (L. *dis*) and **dommage**, damage.]
déesse *f.* goddess. [fr. L. *dea.*]
défaite *f.* defeat. [fr. **défaire**, undo.]
défaut *m.* defect, deficiency, fault, blemish: **au** *or* **à défaut de**, in default of, in the absence of, failing. [fr. **défaillir**, be wanting.]
défendre *v.* ward off, keep away: forbid, prohibit; defend, protect. [L. *defendere.*]
défense *f.* defense; prohibition. [L. *defensam.*]
défenseur *m.* defender. [L. *defensorem.*]
***déficit** (76*a*) *m.* deficit. [L.]
défier *v.* defy: **se . . . de**, distrust, doubt. [L. *diffidere.*]
défunt *adj.* defunct, deceased. [L. *defunctum.*]
dégager *v.* disengage, extricate, free, relieve of obligation, discharge, redeem. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **gager**, fr. **gage**, pledge.]
dégeler *v.* thaw, melt. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **geler.**]
dégoût *m.* disgust, dislike, aver-

sion, vexation, mortification. [dé- (L. *dis*) and **goût**, taste.]

dégoûter *v.* disgust, sicken, weary. [fr. **dégoût**.]

degré *m.* degree. [L. *de-gradum*.]

déguiser *v.* disguise, hide. [fr. **dé-** (L. *dis*) and **guise**, guise.]

déguisement *m.* disguise. [fr. **déguiser**.]

dehors *adv.* without, outside. [**de** and **hors**, without.]

déjà *adv.* already. [**dès** and **jà**, L. *jam*, now.]

déjeuner *m.* breakfast. [LL. *disjejunare*, relieve of hunger.]

délicatesse *f.* delicacy. [fr. **délicat**, delicate, L. *delicatum*.]

délice *m. f.* (§ **15***c*) delight; *pl.* delight, darling. [L. *delicias*.]

déluge *m.* deluge, flood. [L. *diluvium*.]

demander *v.* ask, request (of, **à**: § **161***c*). [L. *demandare*.]

demain *adv.* to-morrow: **après-demain**, day after to-morrow. [L. *de* and *mane*, in the morning.]

demeurance *f.* dwelling, abode. [provincial, fr. **demeurer**.]

demeure *f.* dwelling, abode. [fr. **demeurer**.]

demeurer *v.* continue, abide, dwell, live. [L. *demorari*.]

demi *adj.* (§ **56***a*) half: **demi-heure**, half-hour; **demi-savant**, half-learned, sciolist. [L. *dimidium*.]

démolir *v.* demolish, unbuild, pull to pieces. [L. *demoliri*.]

démon *m.* demon, devil, evil spirit. [L., fr. Gr.]

dent *f.* (§ **12***c*) tooth. [L. *dentem*.]

départ *m.* departure, setting out. [fr. **départir**, depart.]

dépêcher *v* despatch: **se . . .**, make haste, hasten. [LL. *dispedicare*, dis-impede.]

dépens *m. pl.* (§ **24**) expense, cost. [L. *dispensum*.]

dépense *f.* expense, outlay. [fr. **dépenser**, pay out, fr. L. *dispensum*.]

dépit *m.* spite, vexation. [L. *despectum*.]

déplaire *v.* (*irr.* 24) displease, be disagreeable to. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **plaire**.]

déployer *v.* unfold, develop, display, put in action, exert. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **ployer**, L. *plicare*, fold.]

depuis *prep.* (§ **211**) from, since, during . . . past, for, ago: **depuis que**, since (*conj.*). [**de** and **puis**, then.]

député *m.* deputy. [pple of **députer**, depute.]

dernier *adj.* (VIII. **5***c*; § **60***b*) last, concluding; last past, next preceding the present. [fr. OF. **derrain**, fr. L. *de retro*.]

dernièrement *adv* lastly; lately, recently. [fr. **dernier**.]

dérouter *v.* throw off the track, lead astray, bewilder, baffle. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **route**, track.]

derrière *prep.* behind. [fr. L. *de retro*.]

dès *prep.* from, starting from, beginning with, since: **dès que**, from the time that, as soon as (§ **122***a*). [L. *de ex* ?]

désaltérer *v.* relieve of thirst, refresh. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **altérer**, alter, make thirsty.]

désavouer *v.* disavow, disown, refuse to acknowledge. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **avouer**.]

descendre *v.* descend, come down, fall. [L. *descendere*.]

désert *m.* desert. [L. *desertum*.]

déserteur *m.* deserter. [fr. **déserter**, fr. L. *desertus*.]

désespérer *v.* despair: **se . . .**, give way to despair, be in despair. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **espérer**, hope.]

désespoir *m.* despair. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **espoir**, hope.]

désir *m.* desire, wish. [fr. **désirer**.]

désirer *v.* desire, wish. [L. *desiderare*.]

déshabituer *v.* disaccustom, wean. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **habituer**, habituate.]

désordre *m.* disorder, tumult. [**des** (L. *dis*) and **ordre**.]

désormais *adv.* henceforth. [L. *de ipsa hora magis.*]
dessécher *v.* dry up, wither. [L. *desiccare*, fr. *siccus*, dry.]
dessous** (**18d*) *adv. prep.* under, beneath. [**de** and **sous**, L. *subtus.*]
dessus** (**18d*) *adv. prep.* above, upon, on. [**de** and **sus**, L. *susum.*]
destin *m.* destiny, fate. [fr. **destiner.**]
destiner *v.* destine, intend by fate. [L. *destinare.*]
détestable *adj.* detestable, abominable. [fr. **détester**, L. *detestari.*]
détourner *v.* turn away, avert, divert. [**dé-** (L. *dis*) and **tourner**, turn.]
détruire *v.* (*irr.* 2) destroy, ruin, demolish. [L. *destruere.*]
dette *f.* debt. [L. *debita.*]
deux *num.* two. [L. *duo.*]
deuxième (**81***c*) *num.* second. [fr. **deux.**]
devant *prep. adv.* before, in front of, in front: **au-devant de**, to the front of, so as to meet, to meet. [**de** and **avant** (L. *ab ante*).]
développer *v.* develop, unfold, evolve. [?]
développement *m.* development, evolution. [fr. **développer.**]
devenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) become, come to be, turn. [L. *devenire.*]
devise *f.* device, motto. [fr. **deviser**, fr. L. *divisum.*]
devoir *v.* (*irr.* 66) owe (§ **179***d*), be under obligation, be required, have to, be appointed *or* intended *or* destined, be to (*with infin.*: XXVI. **12***f*); be sure to. [L. *debere.*]
devoir *m.* duty. [inf. of **devoir.**]
dévot *adj.* (§ **53***a*) devoted, devout, pious. [L. *devotum.*]
dévouement *m.* devotion. [fr. **dévouer**, L. *devotare.*]
diable *m.* devil. [L. *diabolum*, fr. Gr.]
diadème *m.* diadem, crown. [L., fr. Gr.]
diamant *m.* diamond. [L. *adamantem.*]
Dieu *m.* God. [L. *deum.*]
différent *adj.* (**60***b*) different, diverse; various, sundry. [L. *differentem.*]
difficile *adj.* difficult, hard. [L. *difficilem.*]
difficulté *f.* difficulty. [L. *difficultatem.*]
difformité *f.* deformity. [L. *deformitatem.*]
digne *adj.* worthy, deserving. [L. *dignum.*]
dimanche *m.* Lord's day, Sunday. [L. *dominicam*, of the Lord.]
dîner *v.* dine. [?]
dîner *m.* dinner. [inf. of **dîner.**]
diplomate *m.* diplomatist. [fr. **diplôme**, diploma, fr. Gr.]
dire *v.* (*irr.* 9; p. 155) say, tell; name, appoint. [L. *dicere.*]
directrice *f.* directress, female superintendent. [fem. of **directeur** (§ **16***a*), fr. L. *dirigere.*]
discerner *v.* discern, descry. [L. *discernere.*]
discours *m.* discourse, speech, address, talk, words. [L. *discursum.*]
disparaître *v.* (*irr.* 18) disappear, vanish. [**dis** and **paraître.**]
disperser *v.* disperse, scatter. [fr. L. *dispersum.*]
dispos *m.* (§ **53***d*) in lusty health, hale and hearty. [L. *dispositum.*]
dispute *f.* dispute, controversy. [fr. **disputer.**]
disputer *v.* dispute, contend, argue: **le . . .** (§ **82***b*), contest, vie (with, **à**). [L. *disputare.*]
distiller** (**68f*) *v.* distil. [L. *distillare.*]
distinction *f.* distinction. [L.]
distinguer *v.* distinguish, discern, notice. [L. *distinguere.*]
distrait *adj.* distracted, absorbed, unheeding. [pple of **distraire**, L. *distrahere.*]
divers *adj.* (§ **60***b*) diverse, different, various. [L. *diversum,*]

divin *adj.* divine. [L. *divinum.*]
division *f.* division, corps (of an army). [L. *divisionem.*]
***dix** (81*b*, 85*c*) *num.* ten. [L. *decem.*]
***dix-huit** (81*b*) *num.* eighteen. [**dix** and **huit.**]
***dix-huitième** (81*b*) *num.* eighteenth. [fr. **dix-huit.**]
***dixième** (81*c*) *num.* tenth. [fr. **dix.**]
***dix-neuf** (81*b*) *num.* nineteen. [**dix** and **neuf.**]
***dix-sept** (81*b*) *num.* seventeen. [**dix** and **sept.**]
docile *adj.* docile. [L.]
docteur *m.* doctor. [L. *doctorem.*]
domestique *adj.* domestic: *as noun,* domestic, servant. [L. *domesticum.*]
***dompter** (71*a*) *v.* subdue. [L. *domitare.*]
don *m.* gift. [L. *donum.*]
donc *adv.* then; therefore, consequently; pray, do (*with impv.*). [L. *ad tunc.*]
donner *v.* donate, give, bestow. [L. *donare.*]
dont *adv. pron.* (XXVI. 7; § 102) whence; of whom, whose. [L. *de unde.*]
dormir *v.* (*irr.* 43) sleep. [L. *dormire.*]
***dot** (76*a*) *f.* dowry, marriage-portion. [L. *dotem.*]
double *adj.* double. [L. *duplum.*]
doucement *adv.* sweetly, softly, mildly. [fr. **doux.**]
douillettement *adv.* softly, delicately. [fr. **douillet,** fr. L. *ductilem.*]
douleur *f.* pain, grief. [L. *dolorem.*]
douter *v.* doubt, question (about, **de**): **se . . . de,** suspect. [L. *dubitare.*]
doux *adj.* (VII. 8) sweet, soft, pleasant. [L. *dulcem.*]
douzaine *f.* dozen, twelve or so (§ 67). [fr. **douze.**]
douze *num.* twelve. [L. *duodecim.*]
douzième *num.* twelfth. [fr. **douze.**]
***drachme** (59*b*) *f.* drachm, dram. [Gr.]
dragon *m.* dragoon. [L. *draconem.*]
drap *m.* cloth. [?]
droit *adj.* direct, straight, right: *adv.* (XXXI. 9) straight, directly. [L. *directum.*]
droit *m.* right. [L. *directum.*]
duc *m.* duke. [L. *ducem,* leader.]
duel *m.* duel. [L. *duellum.*]
durant *prep.* during, pending. [pple of **durer.**]
durer *v.* endure, last, continue in being. [L. *durare.*]

eau *f.* water. [L. *aquam.*]
ébaucher *v.* sketch, outline, roughhew. [?]
ébranler *v.* shake, disturb, unsettle. [fr. **brandir** (?), brandish, fr. G.]
écarter *v.* discard, remove: **s' . . .,** turn away, swerve, deviate. [**fr. e** (L. *ex*) and **carte,** card.]
échapper *v.* escape (from, **à**: § 161*c*). [fr. OF. **cape,** cape, envelop.]
échauffer *v.* warm, heat: **s' . . .,** become warm *or* hot, grow excited. [fr. L. *calefacere.*]
échoir *v.* (*irr.* 70) fall, befall, occur: **le cas échéant,** the case occurring, if it so happens. [L. *ex cadere.*]
éclat *m.* burst, outburst, flash, splendor, brilliancy, brightness, glory, renown. [fr. **éclater.**]
éclater *v.* break out, burst forth; shine out, come to light, appear: . . . **de rire,** burst out laughing. [fr. G.?]
éclore *v.* (*irr.* 28) unclose, open, bud, hatch. [L. *ex* and *claudere.*]
école *f.* school. [L. *scholam,* fr. Gr.]
écolier *m.* **écolière** *f.* (§ 16) scholar, pupil. [L. *scholarem.*]
économie *f.* economy, saving; stinting, stinginess. [L. *œconomiam,* fr. Gr.]
écouler *v.* **s' . . .,** flow *or* pass away, run by, elapse. [**e-** (L. *ex*) and **couler.**]

écouter *v.* listen to, hear. [L. *auscultare.*]
écraser *v.* crush. [prob. fr. G.]
écrier *v.* **s'**..., cry out, exclaim. [**e-** (L. *ex*) and **crier**, cry.]
écrire *v.* (*irr.* 12) write. [L. *scribere.*]
écrit *m.* writing, written work. [pple of **écrire.**]
écrivain *m.* writer, author. [fr. LL. *scribanum.*]
écrouler *v.* **s'**..., crumble, fall in pieces, go to ruin. [fr. L. *coroiulare*, roll together.]
éducation *f.* education. [L.]
effet *m.* effect, result: **en effet**, in fact, indeed, really, to be sure. [L. *effectum.*]
effort *m.* effort. [fr. **efforcer**, fr. **force.**]
effrayer *v.* make afraid, frighten, alarm, startle. [L. *ex-frigidare*?]
effusion *f.* effusion, outpour of feeling, expression of emotion. [L. *effusionem.*]
égaler *v.* equal. [fr. **égal**, L. *æqualem.*]
égard *m.* regard, consideration, considerate *or* respectful attention: **eu**... **à**, regard being had to, considering. [**é-** (L. *ex*) and **garder**, keep.]
égarer *v.* mislead: **s'**..., go astray, get lost. [**é-** (L. *ex*) and **garer**, keep, fr. G.]
église *f.* church. [L. *ecclesiam*, fr. Gr.]
égorger *v.* cut the throat of, slaughter. [fr. **gorge**, throat.]
eh *interj.* ah: **eh bien**, well.
électeur *m.* elector, voter. [L.]
élément *m.* element. [L. *elementum.*]
éléphant *m.* elephant. [L.]
élève *m.* one brought up, pupil. [fr. **élever.**]
élever *v.* raise, elevate; bring up, educate: **s'**..., rise, arise, go up. [L. *elevare.*]
elle *pron.* she; it. [L. *illam.*]
éloignement *m.* removal, distance, estrangement, aversion. [fr. **éloigner.**]
éloigner *v.* put to a distance, remove, withdraw: **s'**..., go to a distance, retire, withdraw. [fr. **loin**, far.]
embarras *m.* embarrassment, hindrance, difficulty. [fr. **barre**, bar.]
embaucher *v.* involve, engage, enlist. [fr. **bauche**, workshop.]
émigrer *v.* emigrate: **émigré**, noble emigrated from France during the Revolution. [L. *emigrare.*]
***emmener** (53*a*) *v.* lead away, carry off. [**en** (L. *inde*: 85*b*) and **mener.**]
***-emment** (26*a*) *adv. ending.*
émousser *v.* dull, blunt, deaden. [fr. **mousse**, dull, fr. G.]
émouvoir *v.* (*irr.* 76) touch with emotion, move, agitate. [L. *emovere.*]
emparer *v.* **s'**..., possess one's self, take possession, seize, master. [L. *in* and *parare*, prepare.]
empêcher *v.* prevent, hinder (170*a*). [LL. *impedicare*, fetter.]
empereur *m.* emperor. [L. *imperatorem.*]
empire *m.* empire. [L. *imperium.*]
employer *v.* employ. [L. *implicare.*]
emporter *v.* carry off *or* away: **s'**..., be carried away with passion; **emporté**, passionate, violent; **l'emporter**, carry it off, get the better. [**en** (L. *inde*) and **porter**, carry.]
emprisonnement *m.* imprisonment. [fr. *emprisonner*, fr. **en prison**, in prison.]
emprunter *v.* borrow (from, **à**: § 161*c.*) [fr. L. *in promutuum.*]
en *adv. pron.* (XXIII. 5–8; § 85) thence, away; of it, of them, of him *or* her; its, their (§ 88*b*); in respect to *or* about it *or* them; some *or* any (XXIII. 7); one *or* ones. [L. *inde.*]
en *prep.* (VI. 1*a*; § 207) in, at, on; to, into; in the act *or* course of,

while (X. 3*c*; § 190); in character of, as, like (§ 207*e*). [L. *in.*]

enchaîner *v.* enchain, chain up, fetter, restrain. [**en chaîne** (L. *catenam*), in chains.]

encore (*or* **encor**: § 236*c*) *adv.* to this time, yet, still; further, in addition, besides, more, again: **encore que** (§ 137*b*), although, even though. [L. *hanc horam.*]

encre *f.* ink. [L. *encaustum*, encaustic, fr. Gr.]

endormir *v.* (*irr.* 43) put to sleep: **s'...**, fall asleep, go to sleep. [L. *indormire.*]

endurcir *v.* harden, inure. [**en** and **durcir**, fr. **dur**, hard.]

enfant *m.* (*and f.*: § 15*e*) child. [L. *infantem*, infant.]

***enfer** (73*b*) *m.* hell. [L. *infernum.*]

enfermer *v.* shut up, lock up, confine. [**en** and **fermer**, shut, L. *firmare.*]

enfin *adv.* in fine, at the end, at last, finally. [**en** and **fin.**]

enfoncer *v.* sink, plunge, bury, drive in. [fr. **en** and **fond** (L. *fundum*), bottom.]

enfuir *v.* (*irr.* 47) **s'...**, flee, run away, take flight. [**en** adv. and **fuir**, flee.]

engager *v.* engage, induce, lead: **s'...**, become engaged *or* occupied. [**en** prep. and **gage**, pledge.]

***enivrer** (52*a*) *v.* intoxicate, inebriate. [fr. **en** prep. and **ivre** (L. *ebrium*), drunk.]

enlever *v.* carry off, take away, remove (from, **à**: § 161*c*). [**en** and **lever.**]

ennemi *m.* **ennemie** *f.* (§ 16) enemy. [L. *inimicum.*]

***ennoblir** (53*a*) *v.* ennoble, raise to high rank. [fr. **en** prep. and **noble**, L. *nobilem*, noble.]

***ennui** (53*a*) *m.* ennui, weariness. [fr. L. *in odio*, in odium.]

***ennuyer** (53*a*) *v.* weary, bore: **s'...**, be wearied *or* bored *or* tired. [fr. **ennui.**]

***ennuyeux** (53*a*) *adj.* wearisome, tedious. [fr. **ennui.**]

***enorgueillir** (53*a*) *v.* make proud. [**en** prep. and **orgueil**, pride.]

énorme *adj.* enormous, immense. [L. *enormem.*]

enrichir *v.* enrich, make wealthy. [fr. **en** prep. and **riche**, rich.]

ensanglanter *v.* bloody, cover with blood. [fr. **en** prep. and **sanglant**, fr. **sang**, L. *sanguinem*, blood.]

enseigne *m. f.* (§ 15*a*) sign, mark; ensign. [L. *insignia.*]

ensemble *adv.* together, at the same time, in company *or* union. [L. *in simul.*]

ensemble *m.* entirety, whole taken together, general effect. [same as **ensemble** adv.]

ensuite *adv.* in the next place, next, afterward, then. [**en** and **suite**, succession.]

entendre *v.* hear; attend to, understand: **s'... à**, understand about, be a judge of. [L. *intendere.*]

enthousiasme *m.* enthusiasm. [L. fr. Gr.]

entier *adj.* entire, whole, complete. [L. *integrum.*]

entre *prep.* between, among: **d'entre**, from among. [L. *inter.*]

entreprendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) undertake. [**entre** and **prendre**, take.]

entrer *v.* enter, go in. [L. *intrare.*]

envers *prep.* toward. [**en** and **vers**, toward.]

envie *f.* envy; inclination, desire. [L. *invidiam.*]

environ *adv. prep.* about, somewhere nearly, not far from. [**en** and **viron**, circuit, fr. **virer**, turn (?).]

envoyer *v.* (*irr.* 81) send, despatch. [L. *inviare.*]

épais *adj.* thick. [L. *spissum.*]

épargner *v.* spare, save. [?]

épaule *f.* shoulder. [L. *spatulam.*]

épée *f.* sword. [L. *spatham.*]

éploré *adj.* tearful, red with weep-

ing. [as if pple of **éplorer**, L. *plorare*, weep.]
éponge *f.* sponge. [L. *spongiam*, fr. Gr.]
époque *f.* epoch, age, period (of time). [Gr.]
époux *m.*, **épouse** *f.* (§ **16**) spouse, husband *or* wife. [L. *sponsum.*]
épouser *v.* espouse, marry. [fr. **époux.**]
éprouver *v.* make proof of, experience, go through. [L. *ex-probare.*]
***équateur** (72*b*) *m.* equator. [L.]
***équestre** (72*b*) *adj.* equestrian. [L.]
équivoque *adj.* equivocal, of doubtful *or* questionable character. [L. *æquivocum.*]
erreur *f.* error. [L. *errorem.*]
ès, in the. [**en** and **les**: § **207** *f.*]
escadron *m.* squadron. [fr. It., fr. L. *ex-quadrare*, form square]
esclave *m. f.* (§ **15***e*) slave. [fr. G.]
espace *m.* space, extent. [L. *spatium.*]
espagnol *adj.* Spanish : *as noun*, Spaniard. [L. *hispaniolum.*]
espèce *f.* species, kind, sort. [L. *speciem.*]
espérance *f.* hope. [fr. **espérer.**]
espérer *v.* hope. [L. *sperare.*]
espoir *m.* hope. [fr. **espérer.**]
esprit *m.* spirit, soul ; mind, intellect ; wit, cleverness, brightness. [L. *spiritum.*]
esquisse *f.* sketch, outline, rough drawing. [fr. It., fr. L. *schedium*, fr. Gr.]
essaim *m.* swarm. [L. *examen.*]
essayer *v.* try, make trial *or* essay of, attempt. [fr. **essai**, L. *exagium.*]
***est** (76*a*) *m.* east. [G.]
estime *f.* esteem, good opinion. [fr. **estimer.**]
estimer *v.* esteem, regard with respect, value. [L. *æstimare.*]
***estomac** (58*g*) *m.* stomach. [L., fr. Gr.]
et (86*a*) *conj.* and : **et . . . et**, both . . . and. [L. *et.*]
établir *v.* establish, fix, settle. [L. *stabilire.*]
état *m.* state, condition, position in life ; State, commonwealth, country; estate : **Etats Généraux**, States General, assembly of orders for legislation. [L. *statum.*]
etc. (**et cætera**) and so forth. [L.]
été *m.* summer. [L. *æstatem.*]
éteindre *v.* (*irr.* 16) extinguish. [L. *exstinguere.*]
étendard *m.* standard, banner. [G.]
étendre *v.* extend, stretch out. [L. *extendere.*]
éternel *adj.* eternal, everlasting. [L. *æternalem.*]
étonner *v.* astonish, astound : **s'. . .**, be astonished *or* surprised. [L. *ex-tonare.*]
étonnement *m.* astonishment. [fr. **étonner.**]
étourdir *v.* stun, daze, bewilder, cause to lose self-possession. [fr. L. *torpidus*, torpid (?).]
étrange *adj.* strange. [L. *extraneum.*]
étranger *m.* stranger. [fr. **étrange.**]
être *v.* (*irr.*, p. 62) be ; *as auxil.*, be, have (XXVIII. 6-8); go (§ **176***e*): **c'est que**, the thing *or* fact *or* reason is ; **être à**, belong to (§ **161***e*); **y être**, be up to anything, understand ; **en être**, be with respect to things, be at a point. [L. *stare, esse.*]
être *m.* being, creature ; existence ; essence, characteristic. [inf. of **être.**]
étroit *adj.* strait, narrow, limited. [L. *strictum.*]
étudier *v.* study, examine, investigate. [fr. **étude**, study, L. *studium.*]
évanouir *v.* vanish, fade away. [L. *ex-vanescere.*]
éveiller *v.* wake up, waken : **s'. . .**, wake up, be awake. [L. *ex-vigilare.*]
événement *m.* event, occurrence. [fr. L. *evenire.*]
éviter *v.* shun, avoid, escape. [L. *evitare.*]

***examen** (50*c*) *m.* examination, inquiry. [L.]
exceller *v.* excel. [L. *excellere.*]
excellent *adj.* excellent. [fr. **exceller** : § 189*c*.]
excepté *pple.* (§ 56*a*) excepted, excepting, save. [fr. **excepter.**]
excepter *v.* except, leave out, remove. [L. *ex-ceptare.*]
excessif *adj.* excessive. [fr. **excès,** excess, L. *excessum.*]
exciter *v.* excite, arouse, stir up. [L. *excitare.*]
excuse *f.* excuse, apology. [fr. **excuser.**]
excuser *v.* excuse, pardon. [L. *excusare.*]
exécuter *v.* execute, carry out. [fr. L. *exsecutum.*]
exemple *m.* example, instance. [L. *exemplum.*]
***exempter** (71*a*) *v.* exempt. [fr. L. *exemptum.*]
exercer *v.* exercise, practise. [L. *exercere.*]
exercice *m.* exercise. [L. *exercitium.*]
exhaler *v.* exhale, blow off, give vent to. [L. *exhalare.*]
exhorter *v.* exhort, admonish. [L. *exhortari.*]
***exil** (68*d*) *m.* exile, banishment. [L. *exilium.*]
exiler *v.* exile, banish. [fr. **exil.**]
existence *f.* existence. [fr. **exister.**]
exister *v.* exist, be in life *or* being, live. [L. *existere.*]
expéditif *adj.* expeditious, expediting [fr. **expédier,** L. *expedire.*]
expédition *f.* expedition. [L.]
expérience *f.* experience; experiment, trial. [L. *experientiam.*]
expier *v.* expiate, atone for. [L. *expiare.*]
expirer *v.* expire, pass away, die. [L. *exspirare.*]
explication *f.* explication, explanation. [L.]
expliquer *v.* explain, make intelligible. [L. *explicare,* unfold.]
expression *f.* expression. [L.]
exprimer *v.* express, render. [L. *exprimere*]
extraordinaire *adj.* extraordinary. [L.]
extrême *adj.* extreme. [L.]
extrêmement *adv.* extremely. [fr. **extrême.**]

fabricant *m.* manufacturer, maker. [pple of **fabriquer** (§ 189*e*), L. *fabricari*]
fabrique *f.* factory. [L. *fabricam,* workshop.]
face *f.* face, front: **jeter à la face,** cast in the teeth; **en face de,** in front of, before. [L. *faciem.*]
fâcher *v.* offend, disturb, fash, anger: **se . . .,** be offended *or* disturbed, be angry. [fr. L. *fastidium,* aversion.]
facile *adj.* easy. [L. *facilem.*]
facilement *adv.* easily. [fr. **facile.**]
façon *f.* fashion, manner, way: . . . **d'être,** way, habit, habitual manner. [L. *factionem,* make.]
faculté *f.* faculty, capacity, power. [L.]
fadeur *f.* flatness, insipidity, tameness. [fr. **fade,** flat, L. *vapidum.*]
faible *adj.* feeble, weak. [L. *flebilem,* pitiful.]
faiblesse *f.* weakness, feebleness. [fr. **faible.**]
faillir *v.* (*irr.* 50) fail, come short; come just short, be close upon *or* near to, just miss of (§ 176*f*). [L. *fallere,* deceive.]
faim *f.* hunger, famine: **avoir faim,** be hungry (XIII. 6). [L. *famem.*]
faire *v.* (*irr.* 23, p. 150) make, do, act; cause, make (XXXII. 9*b*; §158*b*, 194*e*); be (*of weather*) (XXXII. 9*a*); put in order, fix: **se . . . à,** accustom *or* reconcile one's self to; **en être fait,** be all over (§ 85*b*); **bien fait,** well shaped, shapely, of good figure; **faire grâce,** *see* **grâce**; **faire voir,** show, exhibit. [L. *facere.*]
***faisance** (39*c*) *f.* extra dues. [fr. **faire.**]

***faiseur** (39*c*) *m.* maker, jobber. [fr. **faire.**]
fait (76*a*) *m.* feat, deed, action, exploit. [pple of **faire.**]
falloir *v.* (*irr.* 74, p. 141) *impers.* be obliged, must, have to; be lacking, need, want: **peu s'en faut,** there is little lacking. [L. *fallere,* deceive.]
fameux *adj.* famous. [L. *famosum.*]
famille *f.* family. [L. *familiam*]
famine *f.* famine. [fr. **faim.**]
fantôme *m.* phantom, ghost, spectre. [L. *fantasma,* fr. Gr.]
***faon** (31*a*) *m.* fawn, whelp. [fr. L. *fœtum.*]
farine *f.* flour. [L. *farinam.*]
***fat** (76*a*) *m.* fop, dude; *adj.* (§ 53*d*) foppish. [L. *fatuum,* foolish.]
fatal *adj.* fatal. [L. *fatalem.*]
fatigue *f.* fatigue, weariness. [fr. **fatiguer.**]
fatiguer *v.* fatigue, tire, weary: **se . . .,** be tired *or* weary. [L. *fatigare.*]
faute *f.* lack, deficiency, fault: **faute de,** for lack of, in default of. [fr. **faillir.**]
faveur *f.* favor: **en faveur de,** in favor of, on behalf *or* account of. [L. *favorem.*]
favorable *adj.* favorable. [L.]
fée *f.* fay, fairy. [L. *fata,* fate.]
feindre *v.* (*irr.* 16) feign, make believe. [L. *fingere.*]
***femme** (26*a*) *f.* woman, wife: . . . **de chambre,** *see* **chambre.** [L. *feminam.*]
fenêtre *f.* window. [L. *fenestram.*]
fente *f.* split, crack. [fr. **fendre,** L. *findere,* split.]
fer *m.* iron, steel; weapon. [L. *ferrum.*]
ferme *adj.* firm, strong. [L. *firmum.*]
ferme *f.* farm. [fr. **fermer.**]
fermenter *v.* ferment, work. [L. *fermentare*]
fermer *v.* make fast, shut up, close. [L. *firmare,* make firm.]
fermeté *f.* firmness, vigor, strength. [fr. **ferme.**]
fermier *m.* **fermière** *f.* (§ 16) farmer. [fr. **ferme,** noun.]
ferrer *v.* furnish *or* equip with iron: **voie ferrée,** railway. [fr. **fer.**]
fertile *adj.* fertile, fruitful. [L. *fertilem.*]
ferveur *f.* fervor. [L.]
fête *f.* festival, feast, fête. [L. *festa.*]
fêter *v.* celebrate; observe as holiday; keep the festival *or* holiday of. [fr. **fête.**]
feu *m.* fire. [L. *focum.*]
feu *adj.* (§ 54*a*, 56*a*) lately deceased, late. [L. *fuit,* he was (?).]
feuille *f.* leaf, sheet. [L. *folia,* leaves.]
février *m.* February. [L.]
fidèle *adj.* faithful, true, exact. [L. *fidelem.*]
fier *v.* confide: **se . . . à,** trust one's self to, trust. [L. *fidere.*]
fièvre *f.* fever. [L. *febrem.*]
figure *f.* figure, shape, form; face. [L. *figuram.*]
***fil** (68*d*) *m.* thread. [L. *filum.*]
fille *f.* daughter, girl. [L. *filiam.*]
fillette *f.* girl, lass. [fr. **fille.**]
***fils** (68*c*, 74*d*) *m.* son. [L. *filius* (§ 4*c*).]
fin *f.* end, finis: **à la fin,** in the end, at length; **sans fin,** without end, to all eternity; **afin,** *see the word.* [L. *finem.*]
fin *adj.* fine, delicate, elegant. [L. *finitum,* finished.]
finance *f.* finance. [fr. **fin,** end (settlement).]
finesse *f.* fineness, subtlety, art, artifice, finesse. [fr. **fin,** adj.]
finir *v.* finish, bring to an end: **en finir,** make a finish *or* close (§ 85*b*). [L. *finire.*]
fixer *v.* fix, determine. [fr. **fixe,** L. *fixum,* fixed.]
fixement *adv.* fixedly, steadily. [fr. **fixe,** fixed.]
flamme *f.* flame. [L.]

flanc *m.* flank, side. [L. *flaccum*, lax (?).]
flâner *v.* lounge, idle. [?]
flânerie *f.* lounging, idleness. [fr. **flâner**.]
flâneur *m.* lounger, idler. [fr. **flâner**.]
flatter *v.* flatter. [?]
flatteur *m.* flatterer. [fr. **flatter**.]
flèche *f.* arrow. [fr. G.]
flétrir *v.* wither; sully, dishonor, disgrace. [L. *flaccere*.]
fleur *f.* flower. [L. *florem*.]
fleurir *v.* (XIX. 3*b*) flourish. [fr. **fleur**.]
fleuve *m.* river. [L. *fluvium*.]
flot *m.* wave, flood. [L. *fluctum*.]
flotte *f.* fleet, navy. [fr. **flotter**, float, fr. **flot**.]
foi *f.* faith; plighted word. [L. *fidem*.]
fois *f.* time (successive), turn in succession (§§ **68**, **69**): **à la fois**, at the same time, at once. [L. *vicem*.]
fol, *see* **fou**.
folie *f.* folly, foolishness. [fr. **fou**.]
fonctionnaire *m.* functionary, official. [fr. **fonction**, L. *functionem*.]
fond *m.* bottom, depth, base. [L. *fundum*.]
fonder *v.* found, base, establish. [L. *fundare*.]
fondre *v.* melt, dissolve. [L. *fundere*.]
force *f.* force, strength, might, power: **à force de**, by dint *or* means of. [L. *fortia*, strong.]
forcer *v.* force, compel. [fr. **force**.]
forfait *m.* misdeed. [fr. **forfaire**, L. *foris facere*, misdo.]
former *v.* form, shape, make, constitute. [L. *formare*.]
fort *adj.* strong.—*adv.* strongly, greatly, much, very much, very. [L. *fortem*.]
fort *m.* strong place, fort. [**fort** adj.]
fortune *f.* fortune; lot in life, fate; wealth. [L. *fortunam*.]
fossé *m.* fosse, ditch, trench. [L. *fossam*, dug.]
fou, fol *adj.* (VII. 7) foolish, mad, insane, crazy. [?]
foudre *f.* thunderbolt, lightning. [L. *fulgur*.]
foule *f.* crowd, multitude, great quantity. [fr. **fouler**.]
fouler *v.* crowd, press, trample, tread: . . . **aux pieds**, tread under foot. [L. *fullare*, in *fullo*, fuller.]
fourchette *f.* fork. [fr. L. *furca*.]
fournil** (**68c*) *m.* bake-house. [fr. L. *furnus*, oven.]
fragile *adj.* fragile. [L. *fragilem* (§ 9).]
frais, fraiche (VII. 8) *adj.* fresh: **frais cueilli** (§ **56***d*), fresh-picked. [fr. G.]
frais *m. pl.* (§ **24**) expense. [L. *fractum* (?).]
franc, franche (VII. 6*b*) *adj.* frank, free; prepaid (§ **56***a*). [fr. G.]
franc *m.* franc (piece of money). [fr. inscription *Francorum rex*, king of the French.]
français *adj.* French. [fr. **France**, France.]
franchement *adv.* frankly. [fr. **franc**.]
franchir *v.* clear, jump *or* pass over. [fr. **franc**.]
frapper *v.* strike, deal a blow to, hit, knock; affect strongly, impress. [prob. fr. G.]
frein *m.* rein, check, curb, control. [L. *frenum*.]
frêle *adj.* frail, fragile. [L. *fragilem* (§ 9).]
frémir *v.* shiver, vibrate, thrill. [L. *fremere*.]
frère *m.* brother; holy brother, friar. [L. *fratrem*.]
fripon *m.* **friponne** *f.* (§ **16**) knave, rascal, rogue. [?]
frissonner *v.* quiver, thrill, shiver. [fr. **frisson**, L. *frictionem*.]
frivole *adj.* frivolous, trifling, vain, empty. [L. *frivolum*.]
froid *adj.* cold, cool: **avoir froid**

(XIII. 6), be cold (in, à). [L. *frigidum.*]
froideur *f.* coldness, coolness, frigidity. [fr. **froid.**]
fromage *m.* cheese. [LL. *formaticum*, shaped.]
front *m.* front, forehead, brow. [L. *frontem.*]
fruit *m.* fruit; valuable result, profit. [L. *fructum.*]
fugitif *adj.* fugitive, fleeting, transient. [L. *fugitivum.*]
fuir *v.* (*irr.* 47) flee, fly; fly from, shun. [L. *fugere.*]
funèbre *adj.* funereal, funeral. [L. *funebrem.*]
furie *f.* fury, rage, wrath, passion. [L. *furiam.*]
furieux *adj.* furious, raging, angry. [L. *furiosum.*]
fusil** (**68c*) *m.* gun, musket. [fr. L. *focus*, fire.]
futur *adj.* future, that is to be, intended. [L. *futurum.*]

gai *adj.* gay. [fr. G.]
gaieté, gaîté *f.* gayety, liveliness, fun. [fr. **gai.**]
gagner *v.* gain, win, acquire; attain, reach, arrive at. [fr. G.]
gain *m.* gain, acquisition. [fr. **gagner.**]
galant *adj.* (§ **60***b*) gallant. [fr. G.]
gant *m.* glove. [fr. G.]
garantir *v.* warrant, guarantee. [fr. G.]
garçon *m.* boy, lad, fellow, servant, waiter, bachelor. [?]
garde *f.* (§ **15***a*) guard, watch; keeping: **n'avoir garde de**, take care not to. [fr. **garder.**]
garde *m.* (§ **15***a*) guard, keeper, soldier of a certain class. [do.]
garder *v.* guard, watch; keep, keep up, maintain, preserve. [fr. G.]
gare *f.* station, terminus, depot. [fr. G. (Eng. *ware*)]
garnison *f.* garrison. [fr. **garnir**, garnish, fr. G.]
gâteau *m.* cake. [fr. G.]
gauche *adj.* awkward, clumsy; left (hand *or* side). [fr. G. (Eng. *gawk*).]
gaz** (**83a*) *m.* gas.
gazon *m.* turf, sward. [fr. G.]
geler *v.* solidify, stiffen, freeze. [L. *gelare.*]
gémir *v.* groan, moan, lament. [L. *gemere.*]
gémissement *m.* groan. [fr. **gémir.**]
gendarme *m.* man-at arms, guardsman, policeman. [**gent, de,** and **arme.**]
général *adj.* general: **en général**, in general, ordinarily. [L.]
général *m.* general officer, general. [=**général** adj.]
généralité *f.* generality. [fr. **général.**]
génération *f.* generation. [L.]
généreux *adj.* generous. [L.]
génie *m.* genius. [L. *genium.*]
genou *m.* knee. [L. *geniculum.*]
gens *f. pl.* (§ **15***d*) folks, people, persons; servants. [L. *gentem.*]
gentil** (**68c*) *adj.* nice, good, well-behaved, pretty. [L. *gentilem.*]
gentilhomme (*pl.* ***gentilshommes**, **68***c*) *m.* man of good birth *or* breeding, gentleman. [**gentil** and **homme.**]
géomètre *m.* geometer, mathematician. [Gr.]
gigantesque *adj.* gigantic. [fr. L. *gigantem.*]
gîte *m.* quarters, lodging, deposit, layer. [fr. **gésir**, L. *jacere*, lie.]
glacer *v.* turn to ice, freeze, chill. [fr. **glace**, L. *glaciem*, ice.]
gloire *f.* glory: **faire gloire de**, make one's boast, glory in. [L. *gloriam.*]
glorieux *adj.* glorious. [L.]
gonfler *v.* swell, inflate, distend. [L. *conflare*, blow up.]
gourmand *m.* gourmand, epicure. [?]
goût *m.* taste. [L. *gustum.*]
goûter *v.* taste [L. *gustare.*]
goutte *f.* (§ **167***c*) drop, particle. [L. *guttam.*]

gouvernante *f.* housekeeper. [pple of **gouverner.**]
gouvernement *m.* government. [fr. **gouverner.**]
gouverner *v.* govern, direct. [L. *gubernare.*]
grâce *f.* grace, favor; gracefulness, charm: **faire grâce à**, show favor *or* be indulgent to, excuse, pardon. [L. *gratium.*]
gracieux *adj.* gracious, obliging; graceful. [L. *gratiosum.*]
grand *adj.* great, grand, large, tall: **grand'chose** (§ 4*e*), something *or* anything great, matter of importance. [L. *grandem.*]
grandement *adv.* greatly, largely, grandly. [fr. **grand.**]
grandeur *f.* greatness, extent, grandeur. [fr. **grand.**]
grandir *v.* grow large, increase. [fr. **grand.**]
grand'mère *f.* (§ 4*e*) grandmother. [**grand** and **mère.**]
grand-père *m.* grandfather. [**grand** and **père.**]
grand-vizir *m.* grand-vizier. [**grand** and **vizir.**]
grange *f.* grange, barn. [LL. *graneam*, granary.]
gras *adj.* fat, plump, thick, rich. [L. *crassum.*]
***gratis** (74*d*) *adv.* gratis. [L.]
grave *adj.* grave, serious, important, weighty. [L. *gravem.*]
graveur *m.* engraver. [fr. **graver**, fr. G.]
grêler *v. impers.* hail. [fr. **grêle**, gravel-stone, fr. ?]
griller *v.* grill, broil. [fr. **grille**, fr. L. *craticula*, gridiron.]
gronder *v.* growl, scold, chide, find fault. [fr. L. *grunnire.*]
gros *adj.* big, stout, large. [L. *grossum.*]
grossier *adj.* coarse, rude, uncouth. [fr. **gros.**]
guère *adv.* (*with* **ne**: § 167*a*) hardly, scarcely, but little. [fr. G. *weigaro*, much.]
guérir *v.* heal, cure. [fr. G. *wahren*, protect.]
guerre *f.* war. [fr. G., = *war.*]
guide *m.f.* (§ 15*a*) guide; leading-rein. [fr. **guider**, guide, fr. ?]

habile *adj.* able, skilful, competent. [L. *habilem.*]
habileté *f.* ability, skill, cleverness. [fr. **habile.**]
habiller *v.* dress, clothe: **s'** . . ., dress one's self. [fr. **habile** (?).]
habit *m.* coat, dress. [L. *habitum.*]
habitant *m.* inhabitant. [pple of **habiter.**]
habiter *v.* live, dwell, inhabit. [L. *habitare.*]
habitude *f.* habit, custom. [L. *habitudinem.*]
habituer *v.* habituate, accustom, wont. [L. *habituare.*]
'haine *f.* hate, hatred, aversion: **avoir en haine**, regard with hate, have an aversion for. [fr. **haïr.**]
'haïr *v.* (XIX. 3*a*) hate, detest, dislike. [fr. G., =Eng. *hate.*]
'hardi *adj.* bold, daring, forward. [fr. G., =Eng. *hard.*]
'hâter *v.* **se** . . ., hurry one's self, hasten. [fr. **hâte**, haste, fr. G., =Eng. *haste.*]
'haut *adj.* high, tall, lofty, uplifted: **en haut**, on high, above, upstairs. [L. *altum.*]
'haut *adv.* (XXXI. 9) in a high *or* loud tone, aloud. [=**haut** adj.]
'hautement *adv.* highly, haughtily, boldly, loudly. [fr. **haut.**]
'hauteur *f.* height, elevation, loftiness. [fr. **haut.**]
'hasard *m.* hazard, chance: **par** . . ., by chance, perhaps, I wonder. [fr. Arabic.]
héberger *v.* shelter, entertain, receive as guest. [fr. G. = Germ. *herbergen.*]
hébreu *m.* **hébraïque** *f.* (§ 53*c*) Hebrew, Hebraic. [L. *hebræum*, *hebraicum.*]
***hélas** (74*d*) *interj.* alas! [**hé**, ah, and L. *lassum*, miserable.]
***'hennir** (26*a*) *v.* neigh. [L. *hinnire.*]

héritage *m.* heritage, inheritance. [fr. **hériter.**]
hériter *v.* (§ **162***f*) inherit. [L. *hereditare.*]
héritier *m.* **héritière** *f.* (§ **16**) inheritor, heir. [L. *hereditarium.*]
héroïne *f.* heroine. [L. *heroinam.*]
héroïque *adj.* heroic. [L. *heroicum.*]
'héros *m.* hero. [L., fr. Gr.]
heure *f.* hour; time of day, o'clock (XVII. **4**): **de bonne heure**, in good time, early; **à la bonne heure**, in good time, very well, well done; **tout à l'heure**, at this moment, immediately, just now, presently. [L. *horam.*]
heureusement *adv.* happily, luckily. [fr. **heureux.**]
heureux *adj.* happy, fortunate, lucky. [fr. **heur**, L. *augurium*, augury.]
'heurter *v.* run against, collide with, jostle, knock, rap. [?]
'hideux *adj.* hideous, horrid. [L. *hispidosum*, prickly.]
hier (**73***a*) *adv.* yesterday: **avant-hier**, day before yesterday. [L. *heri.*]
histoire *f.* history; story. [L. *historiam.*]
hiver** (**73b*) *m.* winter. [L. *hibernum.*]
'hollandais *adj.* Dutch, Netherlandish, of Holland. [fr. **Hollande.**]
homme *m.* man: **être homme à**, be the right person for, be the one to. [L. *hominem.*]
honnête *adj.* (VIII. **5***c*) honest; worthy, excellent; respectable, creditable. [L. *honestum.*]
honneur *m.* honor, respect, credit: **faire honneur à**, give the credit (**de**, of anything) to. [L. *honorem.*]
honorable *adj.* honorable. [L.]
'honte *f.* shame: **avoir honte** (XIII. **6**), feel shame, be ashamed. [fr. G., Saxon *honda*, dishonor.]
horizon *m.* horizon. [L., fr. Gr.]
hormis *prep.* except. [**hors** and **mis**, pple of **mettre**, put.]
horreur *f.* horror. [L.]
'hors *adv. prep.* out, out of, outside: **hors de**, outside of, out of. [L. *foras.*]
hôte *m.* guest, visitor; host, entertainer. [L. *hospitem.*]
huile *f.* oil. [L. *oleum.*]
'huit** (**64c*, **76***a*) *num.* eight. [L. *octo.*]
'huitième *num.* eighth. [fr. **huit.**]
humain *adj.* human; humane. [L. *humanum.*]
humanité *f.* humanity. [L.]
humer *v.* draw in, inhale, imbibe. [?]
humeur *f.* humor. [L. *humorem.*]
hymen** (**54d*) *m.* hymen. [Gr.]
hypocrite *m.* hypocrite. [Gr.]

ici *adv.* here. [L. *ecce hic.*]
idée *f.* idea. [L., fr. Gr.]
ignominie *f.* ignominy. [L.]
ignorant *adj.* ignorant, unlearned. [L.]
il, ils (**68***d*) *pron.* he, it, they; there (§ **147***b*); *as indef. subject* (XI. **2**, XXIV. **2**), it; *as impers. subject* (XXX. **1**), it. [L. *illum, illos.*]
île *f.* isle, island. [L. *insulam.*]
image *f.* image, likeness. [L. *imaginem.*]
imaginer *v.* imagine: **s'** . . ., imagine to one's self, fancy. [L. *imaginari.*]
imiter *v.* imitate. [L. *imitari.*]
immense *adj.* immense. [L.]
immoler *v.* immolate, sacrifice, slay. [L. *immolare.*]
impatient *adj.* impatient. [L.]
impatiemment** (**26a*) *adv.* impatiently. [fr. **impatient.**]
impérieusement *adv.* imperiously. [fr. **impérieux.**]
impérieux *adj.* imperious. [L. *imperiosum.*]
impétueusement *adv.* impetuously. [fr. **impétueux**, L. *impetuosum.*]
impie *adj.* impious. [L. *impium.*]
importer *v.* be important *or* of consequence, matter, signify, concern (§ **148***b*): **n'importe**, it is of

no consequence, no matter, never mind. [L. *importare.*]
imposant *adj.* imposing. [pple of **imposer**, fr. L. *imponere.*]
impossible *adj.* impossible. [L.]
imprimer *v.* impress, impart, give. [L. *imprimere.*]
imprudent *adj.* imprudent. [L.]
impunément *adv.* with impunity, unpunished. [fr. **impuni**, fr. **punir**, punish.]
incapable *adj.* incapable. [L.]
incertitude f. uncertainty. [L. *incertitudinem.*]
incident *m.* incident, occurrence. [L.]
incliner *v.* incline, bend: **s'** . . ., bow. [L. *inclinare.*]
inconnu *adj.* unknown. [**in-** and **connu.**]
indéchiffrable *adj.* undecipherable. [fr. **déchiffrer**, fr. **chiffre**, cipher, fr. Arabic.]
indemnité** (**26a*) *f.* indemnity. [L.]
indépendant *adj.* independent. [L.]
index** (**81b*) *m.* index. [L.]
indifférent *adj.* indifferent, immaterial. [**in-** and **différent.**]
indigne *adj.* unworthy. [L. *indignum.*]
industrie *f.* industry. [L.]
indiquer *v.* indicate, point out, appoint. [L. *indicare.*]
inébranlable *adj.* not to be shaken, immovable. [fr. **ébranler.**]
inestimable *adj.* inestimable. [L.]
infamer *v.* render infamous *or* disgraceful, cover with ignominy. [L. *infamare.*]
infanterie *f.* infantry. [?]
influence *f.* influence. [fr. **influer**, L. *influere*, flow in.]
informe *adj.* unformed, shapeless, crude, rough. [L. *informem.*]
informer *v.* inform, apprise: **s'** . . ., get informed, seek to know, inquire, ask. [L. *informare.*]
ingénieux *adj.* ingenious, clever. [L. *ingeniosum.*]
ingénument *adv.* ingenuously. [fr. **ingénu**, fr. L. *ingenuum.*]
inhumain *adj.* inhuman. [L.]
injure *f.* insult, abuse. [L. *injuriam.*]
injuste *adj.* unjust. [L.]
inquiet *adj.* unquiet, disturbed, restless. [L. *inquietum.*]
insolent *adj.* insolent, impertinent. [L.]
inspirer *v.* inspire. [L. *inspirare.*]
installation *f.* installation. [fr. **installer.**]
installer *v.* install. [LL., fr. **stalle**, fr. G., = Eng. *stall.*]
instant *m.* instant, moment. [L.]
instinct *m.* instinct. [L.]
instituteur *m.* instructor, teacher. [fr. L. *instituere*, establish.]
instructif *adj.* instructive. [L.]
instruction *f.* instruction. [L.]
instruire *v.* (*irr.* 2) instruct. [L. *instruere.*]
intéressant *adj.* interesting. [pple of **intéresser.**]
intéresser *v.* interest, concern. [fr. L. *interesse.*]
interêt *m.* interest, concern. [L. *interest.*]
interrompre *v.* (XX **3***b*) interrupt, break in upon. [L. *interrumpere.*]
intime *adj.* intimate, close. [L.]
inutile *adj.* useless. [L. *inutilem.*]
inventer *v.* invent, devise. [L. *inventare.*]
inviter *v.* invite. [L. *invitare.*]
italien *adj.* Italian. [L.]

jadis** (**74d*) *adv.* of old, in old times, formerly. [L. *jam diu.*]
jaloux *adj.* jealous. [L. *zelosum.*]
jamais *adv.* (*with* **ne**: § **167**) never, not ever; ever (§ **167***b*). [L. *jam magis.*]
jambe *f.* leg. [LL. *gambam.*]
janvier *m.* January. [L. *januarium.*]
jardin *m.* garden. [fr. G., = Eng. *garden.*]
je *pron.* I. [L. *ego.*]
jeter *v.* (XXI. 3*c*) throw, cast, hurl; spread. [fr. **jet**, jet, L. *jactum.*]
jeudi *m.* Thursday. [L. *Jovis diem*, Jupiter's day.]

jeune *adj.* young. [L. *juvenem.*]
jeunesse *f.* youth. [fr. **jeune.**]
joie *f.* joy. [L. *gaudium.*]
joindre *v.* (*irr.* 17) join, unite. [L. *jungere.*]
joli *adj.* pretty, nice, pleasing. [fr. G., = Eng. *jolly*]
joliment *adv.* prettily. [fr. **joli.**]
jouer *v.* play. [L. *jocari.*]
jouet *m.* plaything, toy. [fr. **jouer.**]
***joug** (62*d*) *m.* yoke. [L. *jugum.*]
jouir *v.* take pleasure (in, **de**: § 162*f*), enjoy. [L. *gaudere.*]
jouissance *f.* enjoyment, pleasure. [fr. **jouir.**]
jour *m.* day; daylight, light: **faire jour** (XXXII. 9*a*), be daylight. [L. *diurnum.*]
journal *m.* journal, daily paper, newspaper. [L. *diurna'em.*]
journée, *f.* day. [fr. L. *diurna.*]
joyeux *adj.* joyous, merry, glad. [fr. **joie.**] [***diciosum.***]
judicieux *adj.* judicious. [L. *ju-*
juge *m.* judge. [L. *judicem.*]
jugement *m.* judgment. [fr. **juger.**]
juger *v.* judge, decide. [L. *judicare.*]
juillet *m.* July. [L. *julium*]
juin *m.* June. [L. *junium.*]
jurisdiction *f.* jurisdiction. [L.]
jusque *adv.* as far as, all the way: **jusqu'à,** all the way to, as far as, clear to; **jusqu'à ce que** (§ 137*a*), until; **jusqu'où,** how far? [L. *de* and *usque.*]
juste *adj.* just, correct, suitable; exact, precise: **au juste,** precisely, exactly. [L. *justum.*]
juste *adv.* exactly, correctly, in tune. [=**juste** *adj.*: XXXI. 9.]
justice *f.* justice. [L. *justitiam.*]
justifier *v.* justify. [L. *justificare.*]

la *art. pron.* the; her, it. [L. *illam*]
là *adv.* (XIII. 3, XXIV.; § 91-2) there: **de là,** from there, thence; **par là,** that way, by that route. [L. *illac.*]
là-bas *adv.* down there, over there, yonder; in the other world. [**là** and **bas.**]
labeur *m.* labor, cultivation. [L. *laborem.*]
laborieux *adj.* laborious, industrious. [L. *laboriosum.*]
lâche *adj.* lax, slothful; cowardly, dastardly, base: *as noun,* coward, dastard. [L. *laxum.*]
***lacs** (58*g*) *m.* snare, string. [L. *laqueum.*]
là-dessus *adv.* thereupon, with regard to that, in that respect. [**là** and **dessus.**]
laid *adj.* ugly, homely. [fr. G., =Eng. *loathe.*]
laine *f.* wool. [L. *lanam.*]
laisser *v.* leave, quit, abandon; let, leave, allow, permit, cause; leave off (from, **de**), omit, fail, fall short of. [L. *laxare*]
lait *m.* milk. [L. *lac.*]
lampe *f.* lamp. [L. *lampadem.*]
lancer *v.* dart, hurl, launch, shoot forth, let loose, discharge. [fr. **lance,** lance, fr. ?]
langage *m.* language, speech, dialect. [fr. **langue.**]
langue *f.* tongue; language, speech: **tirer la langue,** thrust out the tongue, make faces *or* grimaces. [L. *linguam.*]
***laps** (74*d*) *m.* lapse. [L. *lapsum*]
laquais *m* lackey, footman, servant. [?]
largé *adj.* broad, wide, large. [L. *largum.*]
largeur *f.* breadth, width. [fr. **large**]
larme *f.* tear, tear-drop. [L. *lacrimam.*]
***larynx** (81*b*) *m.* larynx. [L., fr. Gr.]
laurier *m.* laurel, bay. [fr. L. *laurum*]
lave *f.* lava. [fr. It., fr. L. *lavare.*]
le *art. pron.* the; him, it; so (XXIII. 3*e*). [L. *illum.*]
leçon *f.* lesson. [L. *lectionem.*]
léger *adj.* light, nimble, lively; frivolous, empty. [fr. L. *levis.*]
légion *f.* legion. [L.]

législatif *adj.* legislative, lawgiving. [L.]
légume *m.* vegetable, pot-herb. [L. *legumen.*]
lendemain *m.* morrow, following day. [**le, en,** and **demain.**]
lent *adj.* slow, tardy. [L. *lentum.*]
lentement *adv.* slowly. [fr. **lent.**]
lequel *pron.* (XXV. 5, XXVI. 4-7; § 101) which one, who, that. [**le** and **quel.**]
les *art. pron.* the; them. [L. *illos, illas.*]
lettre *f.* letter. [L. *literam.*]
leur *pron.* to them; their, theirs (XIV. 1, 3, XXVII. 1). [L. *illorum.*]
lever *v.* raise, lift: **se . . .,** rise, get up. [L. *levare.*]
lèvre *f.* lip. [L. *labrum.*]
liberté *f.* liberty. [L.]
libraire *m.* bookseller. [L. *librarium.*]
libre *adj.* free, at liberty. [L. *liberum.*]
lieu *m.* place: **avoir lieu,** take place, happen; **tenir lieu de,** take the place of, serve as; **au lieu de,** instead of. [L. *locum.*]
lieue *f.* league. [L. *leucam,* fr. Celtic.]
lièvre *f.* hare. [L. *leporem.*]
ligne *f.* line. [L. *lineam.*]
limiter *v.* limit, shut in, confine. [fr. **limite,** L. *limitem.*]
***lingual** (62*f*) *adj.* lingual. [L.]
***linguiste** (62*f*) *m.* linguist. [fr. L. *lingua,* language.]
lire *v.* (*irr.* 11) read, peruse. [L. *legere.*]
***lis** (74*d*) *m.* lily. [L. *lilium.*]
lit *m.* bed, couch. [L. *lectum.*]
littéraire *adj.* literary. [L.]
littoral *m.* coast, shore. [L. *litoralem.*]
livre *m.* book. [L. *librum.*]
livre *f.* pound; livre (piece or amount of money, nearly = **franc**). [L. *libram.*]
livrer *v.* deliver, give up, make over, surrender: **se . . .,** give up *or* lend one's self; be applied *or* devoted. [L. *liberare.*]
logique *f.* logic. [L., fr. Gr.]
loi *f* law. [L. *legem.*]
loin *adv.* far, to *or* at a distance: **loin de,** far from; **loin que** (§ 137*b*), far from its being the case that. [L. *longe.*]
loisir *m.* leisure. [L. *licere,* be permitted.]
long *adj.* (VII. 6*b*) long, a long story, lengthy, tedious: **le long de,** the length of, along. [L. *longum.*]
longtemps *adv.* for a long time, for a great while, long. [**long** and **temps.**]
longuement *adv.* at length, lengthily. [fr. **long.**]
longueur *f.* length. [fr. **long.**]
lors *adv.* then: **lors de,** at the time of. [L. *illa hora,* at that hour.]
lorsque *conj.* at the time that, when, as. [**lors** and **que.**]
louage *m.* hire, letting out: **de louage,** on hire. [fr. 1 **louer.**]
1 **louer** *v.* let out, lend, hire. [L. *locare.*]
2 **louer** *v.* praise. [L. *laudare.*]
louis *m.* louis, louis d'or (piece of money, of 20 or 24 francs). [fr. **Louis,** name of king.]
loup *m.* wolf. [L. *lupum.*]
loyal *adj.* loyal. [L. *legalem.*]
loyalement *adv.* loyally, honestly, fairly. [fr. **loyal.**]
lui *pron.* him; to him *or* her. [L. *illi huic.*]
luire *v.* (*irr.* 5) shine. [L. *lucere*]
lumière *f.* light; *pl.* lights, enlightenment, intelligence and knowledge. [fr. L. *lumen,* light.]
lundi *m* Monday. [L. *lunæ diem,* moon's day.]
lune *f.* moon. [L. *lunam.*]
lunette *f.* magnifying glass; spectacles. [fr. **lune** (from the shape).]
luthérien *adj.* Lutheran, Protestant. [fr. *Luther,* proper name.]
luxe *m.* luxury. [L. *luxum.*]

madame *sing.* **mesdames** *pl.* (XIV. 4) *f.* my lady, the lady, madam, Mrs. [**ma** and **dame.**]
mademoiselle *sing.* **mesdemoiselles** *pl. f.* my young lady, the young lady, Miss. [**ma** and **demoiselle,** damsel.]
magasin *m.* magazine, store, shop. [fr. Arabic.]
***magister** (73*b*) *m.* schoolmaster, dominie. [L.]
magistrat *m.* magistrate. [L.]
magnificence *f.* magnificence. [L.]
mai *m.* May. [L. *maium.*]
maigre *adj.* meager, thin, lean. [L. *macerum.*]
maigrir *v.* grow thin *or* meager *or* lean *or* emaciated. [fr. **maigre.**]
main *f.* hand: **à la main,** in the hand; **entre les mains,** between *or* into the hands, into the charge. [L. *manum.*]
maint *pron.* (§ **113**) many a, many. [?]
maintenant *adv.* now, at present. [pple of **maintenir.**]
maintenir *v.* (*irr.* **61**) maintain, keep up. [**main** and **tenir,** keep in hand.]
mais *conj.* but. [L. *magis,* more.]
***maïs** (74*d*) *m.* maize, Indian corn. [Indian word.]
maison *f.* house, mansion: **à la maison,** in the house, at home. [L. *mansionem.*]
maître *m.* master, owner, ruler, teacher: **maître chanteur,** master *or* chief singer. [L. *magistrum.*]
maîtresse *f.* mistress, owner, director. [fem. to **maître**: § **16***b.*]
majesté *f.* majesty. [L.]
mal *adv.* badly, ill. [L *male.*]
mal *m.* evil, ill, harm, hurt, pain, disease: **avoir mal à** (XIII. **6***a*; § **37***a*), have pain *or* ache in. [L. *malum.*]
malade *adj.* sick, ill: *as noun,* sick person, patient. [L. *male aptum.*]
maladie *f.* malady, illness, disease. [fr. **malade.**]
malgré *prep.* in spite of, notwithstanding. [fr. L. *malum gratum.*]
malheur *m.* unhappiness, misfortune. [fr. L. *malum augurium.*]
malheureux *adj.* unfortunate, unhappy. [fr. **malheur.**]
malhonnête *adj.* dishonest; uncivil, rude. [**mal** and **honnête.**]
malin, maligne (§ **53***c*) *adj.* malignant, malign. [L. *malignum.*]
malle *f.* trunk, mail. [fr. G.]
maman *f.* mamma.
manche *m. f.* (§ **15***a*) handle; sleeve. [fr. L. *manus,* hand.]
manchette *f.* cuff. [fr. **manche.**]
manger *v.* eat. [L. *manducare,* chew.]
manière *f.* manner, way, method: **de manière,** in such a way, in such wise, so; **de . . . que** (§ **137***d*), so that. [fr. L. *manus,* hand.]
manifester *v.* manifest, show. [L.]
manœuvre *m. f.* (§ **15***a*) workman; manœuvre. [fr. L. *manu operari,* work with the hand.]
manquer *v.* be wanting *or* deficient (in, **de**), be lacking *or* absent, lack; fail, give way, leave in the lurch; just miss (§ **176***f*). [fr. L. *mancus,* defective.]
manteau *m.* mantel, cloak. [L. *mantellum.*]
manuel *adj.* manual, with the hand. [L. *manualem.*]
manuscrit *m.* manuscript. [L.]
maraîcher *adj.* for vegetable-raising *or* market-gardening, vegetable. [fr. **marais,** marsh, wet land.]
marchand *m.* dealer, retail merchant, shopkeeper. [fr. L. *mercari.*]
marché *m.* market: **bon marché** *or* **à bon marché,** in a favorable market, cheaply, cheap. [L. *mercatum.*]
marche *f.* march, walk: **en marche,** on the march, in motion. [fr. **marcher.**]
marcher *v.* march, walk, advance, get on, make progress. [?]

mardi *m.* Tuesday. [L. *martis diem*, day of Mars.]
maréchal *m.* marshal. [fr. G.]
maréchale *f.* (§ 16) marshal's wife. [fr. **maréchal**.]
mari *m.* husband. [L. *maritum*.]
mariage *m.* marriage. [fr. **marier**.]
marier *v.* marry, give in marriage: **se . . .**, get married, marry. [L. *maritare*.]
marque *f.* mark, sign, token. [fr. G.]
marquer *v.* mark, mark out, designate. [fr. **marque**.]
marquis *m.* marquis. [fr. G., fr. *mark*, frontier.]
marquise *f.* (§ 16*c*) marchioness. [fr. **marquis**.]
***mars** (74*d*) *m.* March. [L. *martium*.]
martyr *m.* martyr. [L., fr. Gr.]
massa *m.* massa (*negro for* master). [American word.]
***mat** (76*a*) *adj.* dull, dead; checkmated. [fr. G. *matt*.]
matelot *m.* sailor. [?]
matin *m.* morning: **de grand** *or* **bon matin**, very early. [L. *matutinum*.]
maudire *v.* (*irr.* 10) curse, accurse. [L. *maledicere*.]
mauvais *adj.* bad, evil, wicked, naughty, wrong. [?]
me *pron.* me, to me. [L. *me*.]
méchanceté *f.* wickedness, mischief, malicious act. [fr. **méchant**]
méchant *adj.* wicked, bad, evil, malicious, mischievous. [fr. **méschoir**, L. *minus cadere*, turn out ill.]
méconnaître *v.* (*irr.* 18) misunderstand, misappreciate. [**mé-**, mis-, and **connaître**, know.]
mécontent *adj.* ill-content, dissatisfied. [**mé-**, mis, and **content**.]
médecine *f.* medicine. [L.]
médiocrité *f.* mediocrity. [L.]
meilleur *adj.* (IX. 3) better. [L. *meliorem*.]
mélancolique *adj.* melancholy. [L., fr. Gr.]
mêler *v.* mix, mingle: **se . . . à**, be mixed with, mix one's self up with, meddle with, dabble in. [fr. L. *miscere*.]
melon *m.* melon. [L., fr. Gr.]
membre *m.* member, limb. [L. *membrum*.]
même *adj.* (§ 114) self, -self (XXIII. 3*c*); self-same, same, very; *as adv.* even: **de même**, in the same manner, all the same. [fr. L. *semet ipsissimum*, very own self.]
mémoire *f.* (*and m.:* § 15*a*) memory, recollection. [L. *memoriam*.]
menace *f.* menace, threat. [L. *minacias*.]
mener *v.* lead, conduct, take. [L. *minare*, drive.]
-ment *adv. ending* (XXXI. 2) = -ly. [L. *mente*, with mind.]
menteur *m.* **menteuse** *f.* (§ 16*a*) liar: *as adj.* lying, false, deceitful. [fr. **mentir**.]
mentir *v.* (*irr.* 41) lie, tell a lie, speak falsely. [L. *mentiri*.]
menton *m.* chin. [L. *mentum*.]
menu *adj.* minute;—*as noun*, minor matter, detail: **salle des menus**, hall of minor pleasures (name of a certain hall). [L. *minutum*.]
mépris *m.* contempt. [fr. **mépriser**, misprize.]
mer *f.* sea. [L. *mare*.]
merci *m.* gratitude, thanks. [L. *mercedem*, recompense.]
mercredi *m.* Wednesday. [L. *mercurii diem*, Mercury's day.]
mère *f.* mother. [L. *matrem*.]
méridional *adj.* southern. [L.]
mérite *m.* merit, desert, worth. [L. *meritum*.]
mériter *v.* merit, deserve. [L. *meritare*.]
merveille *f.* miracle, marvel, wonder. [L. *mirabilia*.]
merveilleux *adj.* marvelous, wonderful. [fr. **merveille**]
mesdames, *see* **madame**.
***messieurs**, *see* **monsieur**.

mesure *f.* measure, means, method of action. [L. *mensuram.*]
métier *m.* business, handicraft, occupation. [L. *ministerium.*]
mètre *m.* meter, (a little more than a) yard. [L. *metrum*, fr. Gr.]
mettre *v.* (*irr.* 31) put, place, set: **mettre à**, put in a state of, reduce *or* drive to; **mettre à la porte**, turn out of doors; **se . . . à**, set one's self at, begin, commence. [L. *mittere*, send.]
meurtre *m.* murder, homicide. [fr. G., =Eng. *murder.*]
midi *m.* midday, noon, twelve o'clock. [L. *medium diem.*]
mie *f.* crumb, particle, mite (§ 165*d*, 167*c*). [L. *micam.*]
mien *adj.* (XXVII. 1; § 87) mine. [fr. L. *meum.*]
mieux *adv.* (XXXI. 8) better; more: **le mieux**, best; **aimer mieux**, like better, prefer (§ 176*b*); **de son mieux**, one's best *or* utmost, the best one can. [L. *melius.*]
***mil** (68*d*), *see* **mille.**
milieu *m.* middle, midst. [L. *medium locum*, mid place.]
***mille** (68*f*), ***mil** (XV. 7; § 63) *num.* thousand. [L. *mille.*]
***mille** (68*f*) *f.* mile. [L. *millia*, thousand (paces).]
million *m.* million. [fr. **mille.**]
milord, my lord. [English words.]
mine *f.* mien, bearing, aspect, look. [fr. It.; L. *minare?*]
ministre *m.* minister. [L.]
minuit *m.* midnight, twelve o'clock at night. [fr. L. *medium noctem.*]
minute *f.* minute, moment, sixtieth of an hour. [L. *minutam*, small, minute.]
miracle *m.* miracle. [L. *miraculum.*]
miroir *m.* mirror, looking-glass. [fr. **mirer**, L. *mirari*, contemplate.]
mode *f.* mode, style, fashion. [L. *modum.*]
modérer *v.* moderate, keep within bounds, temper. [L. *moderari.*]
modérément *adv.* moderately. [fr. **modéré**, pple of **modérer.**]
moderne *adj.* modern. [L.]
modeste *adj.* modest. [L.]
modestement *adv.* modestly. [fr. **modeste.**]
***mœurs** (74*d*) *f. pl.* (§ 24) manners, morals, habits. [L. *mores.*]
moi *pron.* me, to me, I. [L. *me.*]
moindre *adj.* (IX. 3) less: **le moindre**, least. [L. *minorem*: § 2*e.*]
moins *adv.* (XXXI. 8) less, the less (XXXIV. 3): **le moins**, least; **au** *or* **du moins**, at least, at any rate; **à moins de**, short of, without; **à moins que** (§ 137*b*), unless. [L. *minus.*]
mois *m.* month. [L. *mensem.*]
moitié *f.* moiety, half. [L. *medietatem.*]
mol, *see* **mou.**
moment *m.* moment, instant. [L.]
mon, ma, mes *pron.* (XIV. 1) my. [L. *meum.*]
monde *m.* world; company, society, set, audience: **tout le monde**, everybody. [L. *mundum.*]
monseigneur *m.* my lord, his grace. [**mon** and **seigneur.**]
***monsieur** (18*d*, 73*c*) *sing.* ***messieurs** (73*c*) *pl. m.* (XIV. 4) the gentleman, sir, Mr., Messrs. [**mon** and **sieur**, L. *seniorem.*]
montagne *f.* mountain. [L. *montaneam.*]
monter *v.* mount, ascend, climb, rise; get on to (*a horse, etc.*); go upstairs. [fr. L. *montem*, mountain.]
montrer *v.* show, set forth, exhibit. [L. *monstrare.*]
moquer *v.* mock: **se . . . de**, deride, scoff, ridicule, make fun *or* game of. [?]
moral *adj.* moral. [L.]
morceau *m.* bit, morsel, small piece, extract. [fr. L. *morsum*, pple of *mordere*, bite.]
mort *f.* death. [L. *mortem.*]
mort *adj.* dead; *as noun*, dead person, corpse. [pple of **mourir.**]

mosquée *f.* mosque, Mohammedan place of worship. [fr. Arabic.]
mot *m.* word, term, expression, utterance (§ **167***c*): **donner le mot**, pass the word. [LL. *muttum*, fr. ?]
motif *m.* motive, cause, reason. [L.]
mouche *f.* fly, insect. [L. *muscam.*]
mouchoir *m.* handkerchief. [fr. **moucher**, fr. LL. *muccare*, fr. *mucus*, mucus.]
mou, mol (VII. 7) *adj.* soft, lax, weak, effeminate. [L. *mollem.*]
moulin *m.* mill. [L. *molinum*, fr. *mola*, millstone.]
mourir *v.* (*irr.* 62) die, decease. [L. *mori.*]
mousquet *m.* musket, gun. [LL. *musketa*, fr. *musca*, fly.]
mouvoir *v.* (*irr.* 76) move. [L. *movere.*]
moyen *m.* way, means. [L. *medianum.*]
moyenner *v.* mediate, bring about: **moyennant**, by means of, in consideration of. [fr. **moyen.**]
mugir *v.* low, bellow. [L. *mugire.*]
muraille *f.* wall. [L. *muralia.*]
murmurer *v.* murmur. [L.]
muséum** (**51b*) *m.* museum. [L., fr. Gr.]
musicien *m.* **musicienne** *f.* (§ **16**) musician. [fr. **musique.**]
musique *f.* music. [L., fr. Gr.]
mutiner *v.*: **se . . .**, mutiny, rebel, be refractory. [fr. **mutin**, fr. L. *motus*, moved.]
mystère *m.* mystery, secret, secrecy. [L., fr. Gr.]

naïf *adj.* simple, unaffected, artless, naïve. [L. *nativum.*]
naissance *f.* birth. [L. *nascentiam.*]
naître *v.* (*irr.* 20) be born, come into being *or* existence, spring up, arise. [L. *nasci.*]
nappe *f.* table-cloth. [L. *mappam.*]
nation *f.* nation. [L.]
national *adj.* national. [fr. **nation.**]
nature *f.* nature. [L.]
naturel *adj.* natural. [L.]
naturellement *adv.* naturally. [fr. **naturel.**]
ne *adv.* (§ **164** etc.) not: *expletive*, § **170.** [L. *non.*]
néanmoins *adv.* nevertheless. [**néant**, nothing (fr. L. *ne ens*), and **moins.**]
nécessité *f.* necessity. [L.]
négociateur *m.* negociator. [L.]
neige *f.* snow. [L. *niveam.*]
neiger *v. impers.* snow. [fr. **neige.**]
nerf *m.* (***nerfs** [**61***a*] *pl.*) nerve, sinew; string. [L. *nervum.*]
net** (**76a*) *adj.* neat, clean, fair. [L. *nitidum.*]
nettement *adv.* neatly, clearly, distinctly. [fr. **net.**]
netteté *f.* neatness, clearness, conciseness. [fr. **net.**]
nettoyer *v.* make neat *or* clean, clean, put in order. [fr. **net.**]
neuf *adj.* new, fresh. [L. *novum.*]
neuf (**61***a*, **85***c*) *num.* nine. [L. *norem.*]
neuvième *num.* ninth. [fr. **neuf** num.]
neveu *m.* nephew. [L. *nepotem.*]
nez *m.* nose. [L. *nasum.*]
ni *adv.* (XII. 5; § **167***f*) neither, nor. [L. *nec.*]
nièce *f.* niece. [L. *neptiam.*]
nier *v.* deny. [L. *negare.*]
no., *abbrev'n for* **numéro.**
noble *adj.* noble, exalted, lofty. [L. *nobilem.*]
noblesse *f.* nobility. [fr. **noble.**]
noir *adj* black. [L. *nigrum.*]
nom *m.* name; reputation, character, note. [L. *nomen*]
nombre *m.* number; great number of, many (§ **50***d*): **sans nombre**, numberless, innumerable. [L. *numerum.*]
nombreux *adj.* numerous. [L. *numerosum.*]
nombril** (**68c*) *m.* navel. [fr. L. *umbilicum.*]
nommer *v.* name, call *or* mention by name. [L. *nominare.*]
non *adv.* (§ **169, 200**) not; no: **non plus**, not any more, either (§ **169***c*). [L. *non.*]

nonante *num.* (XV. 3*a*) ninety. [L. *nonaginta.*]
nord *m.* north. [fr. G.]
notre, nos *pron.* (XIV. 1) our. [L. *nostrum.*]
nôtre pron. (XXVII. 1) ours. [L. *nostrum.*]
nourrice *f.* nurse. [L. *nutricem.*]
nourrir *v.* nourish, feed. [L. *nutrire.*]
nous *pron.* we, us, to us. [L. *nos.*]
nouveau, nouvel *adj.* (VII. 7) new, recent, novel, new-fashioned. [L. *novellum.*]
nouvelle *f.* piece of news, news. [fem. of **nouveau.**]
novembre *m.* November. [L.]
noyer *m.* walnut-tree, walnut-wood, walnut. [fr. **noix,** L. *nucem,* nut.]
nu *adj.* (§ **56***a*) naked, bare, nude. [L. *nudum.*]
nuire *v.* (*irr.* 4) injure, harm, do hurt (to, **à**: § **161***b*). [L. *nocere.*]
nuit *f.* night. [L. *noctem.*]
nul *pron.* (§ **111**) not any, none, no; no one; null, of no value *or* effect: **nulle part** (**28***a*), nowhere. [L. *nullum.*]
nullement *adv.* in no wise, not at all. [fr. **nul.**]
numéro *m.* number (in a numbered series). [L. *numero,* abl. case.]
nu-pieds (§ **56***a*) *adj.* barefoot. [**nu** and **pieds.**]

obéir *v.* be obedient (to, **à**: § **161***b*), obey. [L. *obedire.*]
objet *m.* object, matter, article, thing. [L. *objectum*]
obligation *f.* obligation: **avoir obligation,** be under obligation. [L]
obliger *v.* oblige, compel, force; lay under obligation, do favors to. [L. *obligare.*]
obscur *adj.* obscure, hidden, dark. [L.]
observation *f.* observation. [L.]
observer *v.* observe. [L. *observare*]
obstiner *v.*: **s'** . . ., be obstinate, persist, insist. [L. *obstinare.*]
obtenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) obtain. [L. *obtinere.*]
occasion *f.* occasion, opportunity. [L.]
occident *m.* occident, west. [L.]
occupation *f.* occupation. [L.]
occuper *v.* occupy: **s'** . . ., occupy *or* employ one's self, be busy (with, **de**), spend one's time (upon, **de**). [L. *occupare.*]
océane *adj. f.* (§ **53***d*) oceanic. [L.]
octante *num.* (XV. 3*a*) eighty. [L. *octaginta.*]
octobre *m.* October. [L.]
œil *m.* (**yeux** *pl.*: § **22***b*) eye. [L. *oculum.*]
œuf *m.* (***œufs** [**61***a*] *pl.*) egg. [L. *ovum.*]
œuvre *f.* work. [L. *operam.*]
offenser *v.* offend. [L. *offensare.*]
officier *m.* officer. [L. *officiarium.*]
offrir *v.* (*irr.* 53) offer, set before, present: **s'** . . ., make offer of one's self, offer. [fr. L. *offerre.*]
oh *interj.* oh! ah!
oignon** (**43a*) *m.* onion. [L. *unionem.*]
oiseau *m.* bird. [LL. *avicellum,* fr. *avis,* bird.]
oisif *adj.* idle, unoccupied. [fr. L. *otium,* idleness.]
ombrage *m.* shade, umbrage. [L. *umbraticum,* fr. *umbra,* shade.]
omelette *f.* omelet. [?]
omettre *v.* (*irr.* 31) omit, pass over, let pass. [L. *omittere.*]
omnibus** (**74d*) *m.* omnibus. [L., for all.]
on *pron.* (XXVII. **4**; § **106**) one, people, they. [OF. **hom,** L. *hominem.*]
onc, onques *adv.* (§ **167***c*) ever. [L. *unquam.*]
oncle *m.* uncle. [L. *avunculum.*]
onques, *see* **onc.**
onze (**64***f*) *num.* eleven. [L. *undecim.*]
onzième (**64***f*) *num.* eleventh. [fr. **onze**]
opinion *f.* opinion, good opinion. [L.]
opposer *v.* oppose. [fr. L. *opponere.*]

opposition *f.* opposition. [L.]
opprobre *m.* opprobrium, disgrace, shame. [L.]
or *adv. conj.* now. [L. *horam*, hour.]
or *m.* gold. [L. *aurum.*]
orage *m.* storm. [fr. L. *aura*, breeze.]
oraison *f.* oration, speech; prayer. [L. *orationem.*]
orange *m.* orange; orange color (§ 53*d*). [fr. Persian.]
ordinaire *adj.* ordinary, common, usual. [L. *ordinarium.*]
ordinairement *adv.* ordinarily, usually. [fr. **ordinaire.**]
ordonner *v.* give orders (to, **à**: § 161*b*), order. [L. *ordinare.*]
ordre *m.* order. [L. *ordinem.*]
oreille *f.* ear. [L. *auriculam.*]
orfèvre *m.* goldsmith, jeweller. [fr. L. *auri fabrum*, worker in gold.]
organisation *f.* organization. [L.]
orgue *m f.* (§ 15*c*) organ. [L. *organum.*]
orgueil *m.* pride. [fr. G.]
orient *m.* orient, east. [L. *orientem.*]
oriental *adj.* oriental, eastern. [L.]
original *adj.* original. [L.]
origine *f.* origin. [L.]
ornement *m.* ornament. [L.]
orphelin *m.* **orpheline** *f.* (§ 16) orphan, orphaned. [fr. L. *orphanus.*]
oser *v.* dare. [fr. L. *audere.*]
ôter *v.* take away (from, **à**: § 161*c*), take off, remove. [?, = Eng. *oust.*]
ou *conj.* or; **ou . . . ou**, either . . . or. [L. *aut.*]
où *adv. pron.* (XXVI. 8) where? where; to *or* at *or* in which: **d'où**, from where, whence; **par où**, by what way *or* route; **où que** (§ 137*c*), wherever. [L. *ubi.*]
oubli *m.* piece of forgetfulness, oversight, omission [fr. **oublier.**]
oublier *v.* forget. [fr. L. *oblivisci.*]
***ouest** (76*a*) *m.* west. [G.]
oui (64*f*) *adv.* (§ 200) yes. [L. *hoc illud*, that same.]
ouïr *v.* (*irr.* 49) hear. [L. *audire.*]
***ours** (74*d*) *m* **ourse** *f.* (§ 16) bear. [L. *ursum.*]
***outil** (68*c*) *m.* tool, instrument. [fr. L. *uti*, use.]
outrage *m.* insult, abuse, maltreatment, outrage. [fr. **outrer**, exceed, fr. L. *ultra.*]
outrager *v.* insult, abuse. [fr. **outrage.**]
outre *prep.* beyond; besides. [L. *ultra.*]
outrer *v.* go beyond, exceed. [fr. **outre.**]
ouvert *adj.* open; frank, free. [pple of **ouvrir.**]
ouverture *f.* opening. [fr. **ouvert.**]
ouvrage *m.* work, labor; result of labor, product, work. [fr. **ouvrer**, L. *operari.*]
ouvrier *m.* **ouvrière** *f.* (§ 16) worker, laborer, workman *or* workwoman. [L. *operarium.*]
ouvrir *v.* (*irr.* 55) open; open the door. [L. *aperire.*]

page *f.* page (of a book). [L. *paginam.*]
page *m.* page (in waiting). [Gr. *paidion*, boy.]
paillasse *f. m.* (§ 15*a*) straw-bed; clown. [fr. **paille.**]
paille *f.* straw: **chaise de paille**, straw-bottomed chair. [L. *paleam.*]
pain *m.* bread: **petit pain**, roll, biscuit. [L. *panem.*]
paisible *adj.* peaceful. [fr. **paix.**]
paix *f.* peace, quiet: **en paix**, in peace. [L. *pacem.*]
palais *m.* palace. [L. *palatium.*]
panier *m.* basket. [L. *panarium*, for bread.]
***paon** (31*a*) *m.* peacock. [L. *pavonem.*]
papier *m.* paper. [L. *papyrum.*]
pâque *m. f.* (§ 15*c*) passover, Easter. [L. *pascham*, fr. Hebrew.]
paquet *m.* packet, package, parcel. [fr. G.]

par *prep.* by, through, by means of: **par où**, by what route *or* way. [L. *per.*]

paraître *v.* (*irr.* 18) appear, be visible, show one's self; seem. [L. *parescere.*]

parbleu *interj.* zounds. [fr. **par Dieu.**]

parce que *conj.* because, for the reason that. [**par ce**, by this.]

parcourir *v.* (*irr.* 52) run through *or* over, go *or* pass through, traverse. [L. *percurrere.*]

par-dessus *adv.* above, over and above, beyond. [**par** and **dessus.**]

pardon *m.* pardon, forgiveness. [fr. **pardonner.**]

pardonnable *adj.* pardonable, worthy of forgiveness. [fr. **pardonner.**]

pardonner *v.* pardon, forgive; pardon anything (to, **à**, any one). [LL. *perdonare.*]

pareil *adj.* like, similar, such: **un pareil**, such a. [LL. *pariculum*, fr. L. *par*, equal.]

parent *m.* relative, parent. [L. *parentem.*]

parenté *f.* relationship, kindred. [fr. **parent.**]

paresseux *adj.* idle, lazy. [fr. **paresse**, L. *pigritiam*, laziness.]

parfait *adj.* perfect. [L. *perfectum.*]

parfaitement *adv.* perfectly. [fr. **parfait.**]

parier *v.* bet, wager; dare say. [L. *pariare*, balance, fr. **par.**]

parlement *m.* parliament. [fr. **parler.**]

parler *v.* speak, talk, discourse. [fr. **parole.**]

parler *m.* speech, talk, words. [inf. of **parler.**]

parloir *m.* talking-room, parlor. [fr. **parler.**]

parmi *prep.* among. [L. *per medium*, through the midst.]

parole *f.* word; speech, language. [fr. L. *parabolam*, fr. Gr.]

part *f.* part, portion, share; side; concern: **à part**, aside, apart; **de la part de**, on the part of, in the name of, on behalf of, as from; **pour ma** (etc.) **part**, for my (etc.) part, so far as I (etc.) am concerned; **autre** *or* **quelque** *or* **nulle part** (§ 28*a*), elsewhere *or* somewhere *or* nowhere; **prendre part**, take a part, share; **se donner part**, make one's self a sharer, assume a share. [L. *partem.*]

parti *m.* division, party, side; determination, resolution. [fr. **partir.**]

partant *adv.* accordingly, hence. [**par** and **tant.**]

partie *f.* part, portion, share. [fr. **partir.**]

partir *v.* (*irr.* 38) set out, start, go away, leave, depart. [L. *partire*, divide.

partout *adv.* everywhere. [**par** and **tout.**]

parvenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) arrive, attain, reach one's object, succeed. [L. *pervenire.*]

pas *m.* step, pace; footstep, track. [L. *passum.*]

pas *adv.* (*with* **ne**) not (XII.; § 165–9). [same as **pas**, noun.]

passablement *adv.* passably, tolerably, pretty well. [fr. **passable**, fr. **passer.**]

passage *m.* passage, passing. [fr. **passer.**]

passer *v.* pass, go on *or* by *or* through; spend: **se . . .**, take place, occur, happen; **se . . . de**, dispense with, do without, forego. [probably fr. **pas.**]

passion *f.* passion. [L.]

pasteur *m.* pastor, shepherd, parson. [L. *pastorem.*]

pâtre *m.* shepherd, herdsman. [L. *pastor* (§ 4*b*, *c*).]

patrie *f.* one's own country, fatherland. [L. *patriam.*]

patte *f.* paw, foot. [?]

pâturage *m.* pasturage, pasture land. [fr. **pâturer**, fr. **pâture**, L. *pasturam.*]

pauvre *adj.* (VIII. 5*c*; § 60*b*) poor,

needy, pitiful, miserable. [L. *pauperem.*]
***pays** (37*a*) *m.* country, land: **Pays-Bas**, Low Countries, Netherlands. [L. *pagensem*, fr. *pagus*, village.]
***paysage** (37*a*) *m.* landscape. [fr. **pays.**]
***paysan** (37*a*) *m.* peasant. [fr. **pays.**]
peau *f.* skin, hide, pelt. [L. *pellem.*]
pêche *f.* peach. [L. *persicum*, Persian.]
pêche *f.* fishing. [fr. **pêcher**, L. *piscari.*]
péché *m.* sin, trespass. [L. *peccatum.*]
pédantisme *m.* pedantry. [fr. **pédant**, fr. It.]
peindre *v.* (*irr.* 16) paint. [L *pingere.*]
peine *f.* pain, distress, grief, anxiety; trouble, difficulty; penalty: **à peine**, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, but just. [L. *pœnam.*]
peintre *m.* painter. [L. *pictor.*]
peinture *f.* painting. [L. *picturam.*]
pendant *prep.* during, pending: **pendant que**, during the time that, while. [pple of **pendre**, L. *pendere*, hang.]
pénétrer *v.* penetrate, permeate. [L. *penetrare.*]
pensée *f.* thought. [fr. **penser.**]
penser *v.* think: **penser à**, think on *or* of, turn one's thoughts to; **penser de**, think about, have an opinion of. [L. *pensare*, fr. *pendere*, hang.]
penseur *m.* thinker. [fr. *penser.*]
***pensum** (50*e*) *m.* task imposed. [L.]
***pentamètre** (50*e*) *m.* pentameter. [Gr.]
perdre *v.* lose; ruin, undo. [L. *perdere.*]
père *m.* father. [L. *patrem.*]
perfectionner *v.* make perfect, bring to perfection, perfect. [fr. **perfection**, L.]
perfide *adj.* perfidious, treacherous, deceitful. [L. *perfidum.*]
péril (68*d*) *m.* peril, risk, danger. [L. *periculum.*]
périodique *adj.* periodical. [fr. **période**, L., fr. Gr.]
périr *v.* perish, go to destruction. [L. *perire.*]
permettre *v.* (*irr.* 31) permit, allow. [L. *permittere.*]
permission *f.* permission. [L.]
perpétuer *v.* perpetuate. [L. *perpetuare.*]
perpétuel *adj.* perpetual, never ending. [fr. L. *perpetuus.*]
perplexité *f.* perplexity. [L.]
persan *adj.* Persian.
personnage *m.* personage; character, part. [fr. **personne.**]
personne *f.* person, individual; own self: *with* **ne** (XII. **4**: § **107***b*, **167-8**), nobody, no one, not any one. [L. *personam.*]
personnel *adj.* personal. [fr. **personne**]
persuader *v.* persuade, convince. [L.]
perte *f.* loss. [fr. **perdre.**]
petit *adj.* little, small, petty: *as noun*, little one, child, boy *or* girl. [?]
petitesse *f.* littleness, pettiness, small *or* mean action. [fr. **petit.**]
petit-fils *m.* grandson. [**petit** and **fils.**]
peu *adv.* (*and as noun, m.*) little, not much, not very; few: **peu à peu**, little by little, by degrees; **à peu près**, within a little, almost, nearly; **pour peu que**, however little (§ **137***c*); **tant soit peu**, ever so little, slightly. [L. *paucum.*]
peuple *m.* people. [L. *populum.*]
peur *f.* fear, fright, terror: **avoir peur** (XIII. **6**), feel fear, be afraid; **faire peur**, cause fear, frighten; **de peur de**, for fear of; **de peur que . . . ne** (§ **170***a*), for fear that *or* lest. [L. *pavorem.*]
peut-être *adv.* may be, perhaps. [fr. **il peut (pouvoir) être.**]

philosophe *m.* philosopher. [Gr.]
pièce *f.* piece; piece (of music, etc.), dramatic piece, drama, play: **tout d'une pièce,** all of one piece, without pliancy, stiff, monotonous. [?]
pied *m.* foot: **à pied,** on foot. [L. *pedem.*]
pierre *f.* stone. [L. *petram,* fr. Gr.]
piété *f.* piety. [L.]
piètre *adj.* poor, sorry, pitiful. [L. *pedestrem.*]
piquer *v.* pique, sting, offend. [fr. **pic,** point, fr. Celtic.]
pire *adj.* (IX. 3) worse. [L. *pejorem.*]
pis *adv.* (XXXI. 8) worse. [L. *pejus.*]
pistolet *m.* pistol. [?]
place *f.* place, room, stead; fortified place, stronghold. [L. *plateam,* fr. Gr.]
placer *v.* place, set, station, fix. [fr. **place.**]
plaindre *v.* (*irr.* 15) weep over, lament, pity: **se . . .,** complain; lament. [L. *plangere.*]
plainte *f.* plaint, lamentation, cry of grief *or* pain, groan. [fr. **plaindre.**]
plaire *v.* (*irr.* 24) please, be pleasing *or* give pleasure (to, **à**: § 161*b*): **plût à Dieu,** would to God; **à Dieu ne plaise** (§ 166*c*), God forbid. [L. *placere.*]
plaisant *adj.* pleasing, pleasant. [pple of **plaire.**]
plaisir *m.* pleasure: **faire plaisir,** cause *or* give pleasure, gratify. [old inf., =**plaire.**]
plante *f.* plant. [L. *plantam.*]
plat *m.* dish, plate. [fr. Gr., =*flat.*]
plein *adj.* full. [L. *plenum.*]
pleinement *adv.* fully. [fr. **plein.**]
pleurs *m. pl.* (§12*a*, 24) tears, cries, weeping. [fr. **pleurer.**]
pleurer *v.* lament, shed tears, weep. [L. *plorare.*]
pleuvoir *v.* (*irr.* 71) rain. [L. *pluere.*]
plier *v.* fold, bend. [L. *plicare.*]
plomb *m.* lead. [L. *plumbum.*]
plonger *v.* plunge, immerse, sink. [L. *plumbicare,* fr. *plumbum,* lead.]
pluie *f.* rain. [L. *pluviam.*]
plume *f.* feather, pen, plume. [L. *plumam.*]
plupart *f.* greater part, majority: **la plupart de** (*with art.,* V. 4*b*), most of, most. [**plus** and **part.**]
plus *adv.* (IX. 1*a*, XXXI. 8) more; the more (XXXIV. 3); (*with* **ne**: § 167–8) no longer, no further, no more; **de plus,** moreover, besides, further. [L. *plus.*]
plusieurs *pron. pl.* (§ 112) several. [fr. **plus.**]
plutôt *adv.* sooner, rather, by preference: **plutôt que de** (*with inf.*), rather than. [**plus** and **tôt.**]
poche *f.* pocket. [fr. G.]
poème *m.* poem. [L., fr. Gr.]
poésie *f.* poesy, poetry. [L., fr. Gr.]
poète *m.* poet. [L., fr. Gr.]
poing *m.* fist, clenched hand. [L. *pugnum.*]
point *m.* point, dot, spot: **à point,** at the right point, in due time; (*with* **ne**: § 165–8) not, not at all, by no means. [L. *punctum.*]
poire *f.* pear. [L. *pirum.*]
poirier *m.* pear-tree. [fr. **poire.**]
pois *m.* pea. [L. *pisum.*]
poisson *m.* fish. [fr. L. *piscem.*]
poitrine *f.* breast. [fr. L. *pectus.*]
poivre *m.* pepper. [L. *piper.*]
police *f.* police, matters of police. [L., fr. Gr.]
pommade *f.* pomade. [fr. **pomme.**]
pomme *f.* apple: **pomme de terre,** potato. [L. *pomum.*]
populeux *adj.* populous. [L.]
porcelaine *f.* porcelain, china, piece of china-ware. [fr. It.]
port *m.* port, harbor, place of refuge. [L. *portum.*]
porte *f.* door, gate. [L. *portam.*]
portée *f.* reach, compass, capacity, calibre. [fr. **porter.**]

porter *v.* carry, bear, convey; wear; reach, extend: **se . . .**, carry one's self, be (in respect to health). [L. *portare.*]
portemanteau *m.* portmanteau, valise. [**porter** and **manteau.**]
portrait *m.* portrait. [fr. L. *protrahere.*]
poser *v.* place, set, lay: **se . . .**, settle, alight. [L. *pausare.*]
posséder *v.* possess. [L. *possidere.*]
possesseur *m.* possessor. [L. *possessorem.*]
possession *f.* possession. [L.]
poste *f.* post, post-office. [fr. L. *positam.*]
postérité *f.* posterity. [L.]
pot *m.* pot. [L. *potum.*]
poterne *f.* postern. [LL. *posterulam.*]
poudre *f.* powder, dust: **poudre à canon**, gunpowder. [L. *pulverem.*]
poule *f.* fowl, hen. [L. *pullam.*]
***pouls** (67*a*) *m.* pulse. [L. *pulsum.*]
pour *prep.* for, on account of, for the sake of, in favor of; in order to, to; as (§ 154*a*): **pour que** (§ 137*d*), in order that. [L. *pro.*]
pourquoi *adv. conj.* for what, why. [**pour** and **quoi.**]
poursuivre *v.* (*irr.* 33) pursue, follow, follow out, continue. [L. *prosequi.*]
pourtant *adv.* for all that, yet, still, nevertheless. [**pour** and **tant.**]
pourvoir *v.* (*irr.* 69) provide: **pourvu que** (§ 137*b*), provided that, provided. [L. *providere.*]
pousser *v.* push, urge on. [L. *pulsare.*]
pouvoir *v.* (*irr.* 75, p. 119) be able, have power, can; may, might (XXV. 8*f*): **il se peut**, etc. (XXV. 8*f*), it is possible, etc. [L. *posse.*]
pouvoir *m.* power. [inf. of **pouvoir.**]
précéder *v.* precede. [L. *præcedere.*]
précieux *adj.* precious, valuable. [L. *pretiosum.*]
précipiter *v.* precipitate, hurl headlong. [L.]
précoce *adj.* precocious. [L. *præcocem.*]
prédire *v.* (*irr.* 9) predict, foretell. [L. *prædicere.*]
préface *f.* preface. [L. *præfationem.*]
préférer *v.* prefer. [fr. L. *præferre.*]
***préfix** (81*b*) *m.* prefix. [L.]
premier *adj.* first. [L. *primarium.*]
prendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) take, take up, seize, take hold of, capture: **s'y . . .**, set one's self about something, procced, manage; **s'en . . . à**, lay the blame on, impute, find fault with, come back upon: **prendre garde**, beware. [L. *prehendere.*]
préparer *v.* prepare, make ready. [L.]
près *adv. prep.* near, next: **près de**, near, near by, next to. [L. *pressum.*]
présence *f.* presence. [L.]
présent *adj.* present: **à présent**, at present, now. [L.]
présentement *adv.* presently, immediately. [fr. **présent.**]
présenter *v.* present, offer. [L. *præsentare.*]
presque *adv.* almost, nearly. [**près** and **que.**]
presser *v.* press, urge, crowd, hasten. [L. *pressare.*]
prêt *adj.* ready, prepared. [LL. *præstum.*]
prétendre *v.* put forth claim, claim, presume, profess, intend, pretend. [L. *prætendere.*]
prêter *v.* put forward, advance, lend; put to one's account, attribute. [L. *præstare.*]
prêtre *m.* priest. [L. *presbyterum*, fr. Gr.]
prier *v.* pray, beseech, beg, request, ask; offer prayer: **se faire prier**, wait to be urged. [L. *precari.*]

prière *f.* prayer. [fr. **prier.**]
prime *adj.* first (§ **66**). [L. *primum.*]
prince *m.* prince. [L. *principem.*]
princesse *f.* princess. [fr. **prince**: § **16.**]
principal *adj.* principal, chief. [L.]
principe *m.* principle. [L. *principium.*]
privilège *m.* privilege. [L.]
prix *m.* price, cost; prize, reward. [L. *pretium.*]
probable *adj.* probable. [L.]
probablement *adv.* probably. [fr. **probable.**]
prochain *adj.* next, next following *or* to come. [fr. **proche.**]
proche *adj.* near (to, **de**). [L. *propium.*]
procurer *v.* procure. [L. *procurare.*]
prodiguer *v.* be prodigal of, spend freely, lavish. [fr. **prodigue,** L. *prodigum.*]
profane *adj.* profane, secular. [L.]
professer *v.* profess. [fr. L. *professum.*]
professeur *m.* professor, instructor, teacher. [L.]
profession *f.* profession, occupation. [L.]
profil** (**68d*) *m.* profile. [fr. L. *filum.* thread.]
profiter *v.* profit (by, **de**), take *or* get advantage. [fr. **profit,** fr. L. *profectum.*]
profound *adj.* profound, deep. [L. *profundum.*]
profusion *f.* profusion. [L.]
progrès *m.* progress, advancement. [L.]
proie *f.* prey: **en proie à,** a prey to. [L. *prædam.*]
projet *m.* project, plan. [L. *projectum.*]
projeter *v.* project, plan. [fr. **projet.**]
promener *v.* lead forth, take *or* send about: **se . . .,** take a walk. [L. *prominare.*]
promesse *f.* promise. [LL. *promissam,* fr. *promittere.*]
promettre *v.* (*irr.* **31**) promise. [L. *promittere.*]
prompter** (**71a*) *v.* prompt. [fr. **prompt,** L. *promptum.*]
prononcer *v.* pronounce, utter, deliver; give opinion *or* judgment. [L. *pronuntiare.*]
prophète *m.* prophet. [L., fr. Gr.]
propos *m.* talk, discourse; intent, purpose: **à propos,** to the purpose, in point, appositely; **à propos de,** in connection with, as suggested by. [L. *propositum.*]
proposer *v.* propose. [fr. L. *proponere.*]
propre *adj.* (§ **60***b*) own; very; suitable; nice, clean: **amour propre,** self-love. [L. *proprium.*]
prospérer *v.* prosper. [L. *prosperare.*]
prospérité *f.* prosperity. [L.]
protéger *v.* protect. [L. *protegere.*]
prouver *v.* prove. [L. *probare.*]
province *f.* province: **Provinces-Unies,** the United Provinces (of the Netherlands). [L.]
provoquer *v.* provoke, excite. [L. *provocare,* call forth.]
prudemment** (**26i*) *adv.* prudently. [fr. **prudent.**]
prudence *f.* prudence. [L.]
prudent *adj.* prudent. [L.]
public *adj.* public. [L. *publicum.*]
public *m.* public. [same as adj.]
publication *f.* publication. [L.]
puéril** (**68d*) *adj.* puerile. [L.]
puis *adv.* then, next, thereafter. [L. *post.*]
puisque *conj.* since, because, as. [**puis** and **que.**]
puissamment *adv.* powerfully, mightily, by force. [fr. **puissant.**]
puissance *f.* power, might, dominion. [fr. **puissant.**]
puissant *adj.* powerful, mighty, puissant. [old pple of **pouvoir.**]
punir *v.* punish. [L. *punire.*]
pur *adj.* pure; mere, simple. [L. *purum.*]
pusillanime** (**68f*) *adj.* pusillanimous. [L., small-spirited.]

qualifier *v.* qualify, entitle, term (**as, de**: § **162***g*). [LL. *qualificare.*]
qualité *f.* quality. [L.]
quand *adv. conj.* when; if, supposing that. [L. *quando.*]
quant *pron.* how much *or* many: **quant à**, as for, as regards, in respect to. [L. *quantum.*]
quarantaine *f.* two score, some forty. [fr. **quarante.**]
quarante *num.* forty. [L. *quadraginta.*]
quart *num.* fourth (§ **66**): *as noun*, quarter, fourth part. [L. *quartum.*]
quatorze *num.* fourteen. [L. *quatuordecim.*]
quatre *num.* four. [L. *quatuor.*]
quatre-vingts *num.* four twenties, four-score, eighty. [**quatre** and **vingt.**]
quatrième *num.* fourth. [fr. **quatre.**]
que *pron.*: *interrog.* (XXV. **4**) what, which; *relat.* (XXVI. **2**) which, that, whom; what (§ **103***c*); *after* **qui, quoi**, *etc.* (§ **104**), ever; *expletive* (§ **98, 147***b*, **173***e*): **ce que** (XXVI. **10**), that which, what. [L. *quem, quam, quod, quid.*]
que *adv.* how, why (*interrog., relat., exclam.*). [L. *quam, quod.*]
que *conj.* that (§ **221**); *sign of subj.* (VIII. **7***b*), *subj. after*, § **132** *etc.*; *making conj. phrases*, XXXIV. **5**; § **136–8**; in order that (§ **137***d*); *repeating* **si** *etc.* § **138***b*, **221***b*; *for* **lorsque** *etc.* § **221***c*; **que . . . ne**, unless, until, § **138***c*; **que** *in comparison* (IX. **4**), than, as; *after* **quelque** *etc.* (§ **107***c*, *d*), ever: **ne . . . que** (XII. **5**; § **167**), only. [L. *quod, quam.*]
quel *pron.* (XIII. **4**) what, what a, which: **quel que** (§ **104**) whatever. [L. *qualem.*]
quelconque *pron.* (§ **108**) whatever, whatsoever. of some sort. [L. *qualemcunque.*]
quelque *pron.* (XIV. **6**; § **107**) some; about, nearly, some (§ **107***e*): **quelque chose** (§ **107***a*), something, anything; **quelque . . . que** (§ **107***c*, *d*), whatever, however; **quelque part** (§ **28***a*), somewhere. [L. *qualemquam.*]
quelquefois *adv.* sometimes. [**quelque** and **fois.**]
quelqu'un *pron.* (XXVII. **5**; § **107**) some one, somebody, some people, some. [**quelque** and **un.**]
querelle *f.* quarrel, contest. [L. *querelam.*]
quereller *v.* quarrel *or* wrangle with, scold, chide. [fr. **querelle.**]
quérir *v.* (*irr.* **63**) seek, look after. [L. *quærere.*]
qui *pron.*: *interrog.* (XXV.; § **96**) who, whom, what; *relat.* (XXVI.; § **102**) who, whom, that, which; (§ **103**) whoever, any one who, what: **qui que** (§ **104**), whoever. [L. *qui.*]
quiconque *pron.* (XXVI. **9**) whoever, any one who. [L. *quicumque.*]
quint *num.* (§ **66**) fifth; fifth part (XVI. **4***c*). [L. *quintum.*]
quinze *num.* fifteen. [L. *quindecim.*]
quinzième *num.* fifteenth. [fr. *quinze.*]
quitte *adj.* free, rid, discharged. [L. *quietum.*]
quitter *v.* quit, leave. abandon, give up. [fr. **quitte.**]
quoi *pron.*: *interrog.* (XXV.) what; *relat.* (XXVI. **6**; § **103***d*) what, which; *exclam.* (XXV.**4***c*) what! **quoi que** (§ **104**), whatever; **de quoi**, wherewith, the means (XXVI. **6***a*). [L. *quid.*]
quoique *conj.* (XXXIV. **1***a*; § **137***b*) though, although. [**quoi** and **que.**]

rabattre *v.* (XX. **3***c*) beat down: **se . . .**, fall back. [**re** and **abattre.**]
raconter *v.* recount, relate, tell. [fr. **conter.**]
radoub** (**57a*) *m.* repair. [fr. G.]

raffermir *v.* make firm *or* strong again, reënforce, confirm. [fr. **affermir**, fr. **ferme**.]
rafraîchir *v.* refresh, freshen up. [fr. **fraîchir**, fr. **frais**.]
ragoût *m.* stew, ragout. [fr. **agoûter**, fr. **goût**, taste.]
raison *f.* reason, sense; motive, cause; ratio, proportion; justice, right: **à raison**, rightly; **avoir raison** (XIII. 6*a*), be right, have the right of it. [L. *rationem*.]
rajeunir *v.* rejuvenate, renew youth, make *or* become young again. [fr. **jeune**, young.]
ramener *v.* bring back. [fr. **amener**.]
rapide *adj.* rapid, swift, fleet. [L.]
rappeler *v.* (XXI. 3*c*) recall, call back. [**re** and **appeler**.]
rapporter *v.* bring *or* carry back, refer: **s'en . . . à**, refer one's self to, leave the decision to, abide by the judgment of. [**re** and **apporter**.]
***rapt** (76*a*) *m.* rape. [L. *raptum*.]
rare *adj.* rare, unusual, uncommon. [L. *rarum*.]
raser *v.* shave. [L. *rasare*.]
rassasier *v.* satiate, satisfy, surfeit. [fr. L. *ad-satiare*, fr. *satis*, enough.]
raturer *v.* scratch out, erase, cancel. [fr. **rature**, fr. ?]
ravir *v.* ravish; enrapture, delight, charm. [L. *rapere*.]
raviver *v.* revive, bring back to life. [fr. **vif**, alive.]
réalité *f.* reality. [L.]
réception *f.* reception, entrance (into a society). [L.]
recevoir *v.* (*irr.* 65) receive. [L. *recipere*.]
recherche *f.* research, search. [fr. **rechercher**, **re** and **chercher**.]
récit *m.* recital, narrative, story, tale. [fr. **réciter**.]
réciter *v.* recite, rehearse, declaim; narrate. [L. *recitare*.]
récolte *m.* harvest, crop. [L. *recollectum*.]
reconnaître *v.* (*irr.* 18) know again, recognize. [**re** and **connaître**.]
recourir *v.* (*irr.* 52) recur, go back. [**re** and **courir**.]
recouvrer *v.* recover, regain. [L. *recuperare*.]
reculer *v.* pull *or* draw *or* throw back: **se . . .**, draw back, back, recoil.] [fr. **cul**.]
rédacteur *m.* editor. [fr. L. *redactum*, put in shape.]
redoubler *v.* (**de**: § 162*f*) redouble, make twice as much. [fr. **double**.]
redoutable *adj.* redoubtable, formidable. [fr. **redouter**, fr. **doute**, doubt.]
réduire *v.* (*irr.* 1) reduce. [L. *reducere*.]
refermer *v.* close *or* shut again, reclose. [**re** and **fermer**.]
réfléchir *v.* reflect, meditate. [L. *reflectere*.]
reflet *m.* reflection, reflected image. [fr. **refléter**, L. *reflectere*.]
réflexion *f.* reflection. [L.]
refroidir *v.* cool down, become less warm, chill *or* slacken. [fr. **froid**, cold.]
regard *m.* look, glance, notice. [fr. **regarder**.]
regarder *v.* look, look to, see; look at, gaze at, regard; have regard *or* respect to, concern. [**re** and **garder**, keep.]
régiment *m.* regiment. [L.]
règle *f.* rule. [L. *regulam*.]
règne *m.* reign. [L. *regnum*.]
régner *v.* reign, rule, govern. [L. *regnare*.]
regret *m.* regret, sorrow, concern. [fr. **regretter**.]
regretter *v.* regret. [?]
reine *f.* queen: **reine-mère**, queen-mother, king's mother. [L. *reginam*.]
rejoindre *v.* (*irr.* 17) rejoin. [**re** and **joindre**.]
relation *f.* relation, connection. [L.]
reléguer *v.* relegate, consign, exile. [L. *relegare*.]

religieux *adj.* religious: *as noun*, monk. [L. *religiosum.*]
religion *f.* religion. [L.]
remarquer *v.* remark, notice. [re and **marquer.**]
remettre *v.* (*irr.* 31) put back, put again, set again; hand over, consign: **se . . . à**, begin *or* commence again. [re and **mettre.**]
rémontrance *f.* remonstrance. [fr. **re-montrer**, show again.]
remuer *v.* move, stir. [L. *re-mutare.*]
rencontrer *v.* meet, fall in with. [re and **encontrer**, encounter, fr. **contre**, against.]
rendezvous *m.* rendezvous, appointed place of meeting. [= **rendez-vous**, betake yourself.]
rendre *v.* render, return, give back, restore; make, cause to be; give, pay, do. [L. *reddere.*]
renoncer *v.* (*with* **à**: § **78, 161***b*) renounce. [L. *renuntiare.*]
renouveler *v.* (XXI. 3*c*) make new again, renew. [fr. re and **nouveau.**]
rente *f.* rent, income. [L. *reddi-tam.*]
rentrer *v.* re-enter, go back in. [re and **entrer.**]
renverser *v.* overthrow, lay low, knock *or* throw down. [fr. L. *inversus.*]
renvoyer *v.* (*irr.* 81) send back. [re and **envoyer.**]
répandre *v.* spread abroad, scatter, diffuse, shed. [fr. L. *re-expandere.*]
repentir *v.*: **se . . .**, repent. [fr. L. *repœnitere.*]
répéter *v.* repeat. [L. *repetere.*]
répondre *v.* respond, reply, answer; . . . **de**, be answerable *or* responsible for, warrant. [L. *respondere.*]
réponse *f.* response. [L. *responsum.*]
reporter *v.* bring *or* carry back. [re and **porter.**]
repos *m.* repose, calm, rest. [fr. **reposer.**]
reposer *v.* repose, rest: **se . . .**, take rest *or* repose, rest. [fr. L. *reponere.*]
repousser *v.* push back, repulse, thrust off. [L. *re-pulsare.*]
reprendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) take again, resume, recover; begin again, go on to say. [re and **prendre.**]
représenter *v.* represent. [L.]
reprocher *v.* make a matter of reproach *or* reproof, reproach (any one, **à**: § **161***b*) for. [re and **proche**, near.]
républicain *adj.* republican. [fr. **république.**]
république *f.* republic. [L.]
répugnance *f.* repugnance, aversion. [fr. L. *repugnare.*]
réserve *f.* reserve. [fr. L. *reservare.*]
résister *v.* (*with* **à**: § **161***b*) resist. [L.]
résoudre *v.* (*irr.* 36) resolve. [L. *resolvere.*]
résolution *f.* resolution. [L.]
respect (**76***a*) *m.* respect, regard. [L.]
respirer *v.* respire, breathe; betoken. [L.]
ressemblance** (**18d*) *f.* resemblance, likeness. [fr. **ressembler.**]
ressembler** (**18d*) *v.* (*with* **à**: § **161***b*) be like, resemble. [re and **sembler.**]
ressource** (**18d*) *f.* resource. [fr. L. *resurgere.*]
restauration *f.* restoration. [fr. L. *restaurare.*]
reste *m.* rest, remainder, remnant. [fr. **rester.**]
rester *v.* remain, be left, stay, continue. [L. *restare.*]
résulter *v.* result, ensue. [L. *resultare.*]
retarder *v.* retard, delay, put off. [L.]
retenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) hold back, retain, restrain. [L. *retinere.*]
retirer *v.* draw back, draw, derive: **se . . .**, draw one's self back, withdraw, retire, retreat. [re and **tirer.**]

retour *m.* return. [fr. **retourner.**]
retourner *v.* return, turn back *or* the other way: **se . . .**, turn around *or* back; **s'en . . .**, go *or* come back, return. [**re** and **tourner.**]
retraite *f.* retreat. [fr. **retraire**, L. *re-trahere.*]
retrouver *v.* find again. [**re** and **trouver.**]
réunir *v.* reunite; unite, join, combine. [**re** and **unir.**]
réussir *v.* succeed (in, **à**). [**re** and **ussir**, L. *exire.*]
rêver *v.* dream, muse, exercise the imagination, be in a revery, rave. [fr. **rêve**, dream, fr. ?]
revenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) come back, return. [L. *revenire.*]
revêtir *v.* (*irr.* 51) put on again, clothe one's self in, put on. [**re** and **vêtir.**]
revoir *v.* (*irr.* 67) see again; review. [L. *revidere.*]
révolter *v.* revolt; rouse to rebellion *or* opposition, shock. [fr. **révolte**, L. *revolutam.*]
révolution *f.* revolution. [L.]
révolutionnaire *adj.* revolutionary; *as noun*, revolutionist. [fr. **révolution.**]
***rhum** (51*b*) *m.* rum. [fr. English.]
riche *adj.* rich. [fr. G.]
richesse *f.* riches, wealth. [fr. **riche.**]
ridicule *adj.* ridiculous. [L. *ridiculum.*]
ridicule *m.* ridiculousness, absurdity. [same as adj.]
rien *pron.* (*with* **ne**: XII. 4; § 107*b*, 167–8) not anything, nothing; anything: **rien qu'à** *or* **rien que de**, merely by, by nothing but. [L. *rem.*]
rire *v.* (*irr.* 13) laugh. [L. *ridere.*]
rire *m.* laugh. [inf. of **rire.**]
rive *f.* bank, shore. [L. *ripam.*]
robe *f.* dress, frock. [fr. G.]
robinet *m.* stop-cock, faucet. [fr. **Robin**, nickname for sheep.]
roi *m.* king. [L. *regem.*]
romain *adj.* Roman. [L. *romanum.*]
roman *m.* romance, novel. [fr. L. *romanus.*]
romancier *m.* romance writer, novelist. [fr. **romance**, fr. **roman.**]
rompre *v.* (XX. 3*b*) break, burst. [L. *rumpere.*]
rose *f.* rose. [L. *rosam.*]
rouge *adj.* red. [L. *rubeum.*]
rougeur *m.* redness, blush. [fr. **rouge.**]
rougir *v.* turn red, blush. [fr. **rouge.**]
route *f.* route, course, way, road. [L. *ruptam.*]
roux, rousse (§ 53*c*) *adj.* red, reddish. [L. *russum.*]
royal *adj.* royal. [L. *regalem.*]
royaliste *m.* royalist, of the king's party. [fr. **royal.**]
royaume *m.* kingdom, realm. [fr. **roi.**]
royauté *f.* royalty. [fr. **royal.**]
ruban *m.* ribbon. [?]
rude *adj.* rough, coarse, rude. [L. *rudem.*]
rudesse *f.* rudeness, coarseness, harshness. [fr. **rude.**]
rue *f.* street. [LL. *rugam*, furrow.]
rusé *adj.* crafty, shrewd, cunning. [fr. **ruser**, L. *recusare.*]
russe *adj.* Russian.

sacrifice *m.* sacrifice. [L.]
sacrifier *v.* sacrifice. [L. *sacrificare.*]
sacrilège *m.* sacrilege. [L.]
sage *adj.* sage, wise; well-behaved. [L. *sapium.*]
saint *adj.* holy, sacred, saintly; *as noun*, saint. [L. *sanctum.*]
saisir *v.* seize, take hold of. [LL. *sacire*, fr. G.]
saison *f.* season, time of year. [L. *sationem.*]
salle *f.* hall, room; fencing-school: **salle à manger** (§ 185*b*), dining-room. [fr. G., =Germ. *saal.*]
salon *m.* saloon, large room, parlor. [fr. **salle.**]

samedi *m.* Saturday. [L. *sabbati diem*, day of sabbath (Hebrew).]
sang *m.* blood; kindred, race. [L. *sanguinem.*]
sanglant *adj.* bloody. [L. *sanguilentum.*]
sans *prep.* (§ 210) without; apart from, but for: **sans que** *conj.* (XXXIV. 5*b*; § 137*b*) without that, without, unless. [L. *sine.*]
santé *f.* health. [L. *sanitatem.*]
satin *m.* satin. [fr. L. *seta*, silk.]
satisfaction *f.* satisfaction. [L.]
satisfaire *v.* (*irr.* 23) satisfy, make content. [L. *satisfacere.*]
sauter *v.* jump, leap. [L. *saltare.*]
sauvage *adj.* wild, barbarous, savage. [L. *silvaticum.*]
sauver *v.* save. [L. *salvare.*]
sauveur *m.* savior, deliverer. [fr. **sauver.**]
savant *adj.* knowing, wise, learned; *as noun*, scientific man, scholar. [old pple of **savoir.**]
savoir *v.* (*irr.* 77; p. 159) know; know as, know to be; (*with inf.*) know how. [L. *sapere.*]
savon *m.* soap. [L. *saponem.*]
savonner *v.* soap, lather, wash. [fr. **savon.**]
saynète *f.* saynet, little Spanish farce. [Spanish.]
scandaliser *v.* scandalize, give offense. [fr. L. *scandalum.*]
scélérat *m.* villain, scoundrel. [L. *sceleratum.*]
scène *f.* scene; stage. [L., fr. Gr.]
science *f.* science, knowledge, skill. [L.]
scrupule *m.* scruple, qualm. [L. *scrupulum.*]
***sculpter** (71*a*) *v.* sculpture, cut *or* carve in stone. [fr. L. *sculpere.*]
***sculpteur** (71*a*) *m.* sculptor. [L.]
***sculpture** (71*a*) *f.* sculpture. [L.]
se *pron.* (XXIII. 4; XXIX. 2) one's self. [L. *se.*]
séance *f.* sitting, session. [fr. **seoir**]
sec, sèche (VII. 6*b*) *adj.* dry. [L. *siccum.*]
***second** (58*f*) *num.* second. [L. *secundum.*]
***seconde** (58*f*) *f.* second, sixtieth of a minute. [same as num.]
***seconder** (58*f*) *v.* second, stand by, support. [fr. **second.**]
secours *m.* succor, aid, help. [L. *succursum.*]
secret *m.* secret. [L.]
sein *m.* bosom. [L. *sinum.*]
seize *num.* sixteen. [L. *sedecim.*]
séjour *m.* sojourn, stay, stop. [fr. L. *sub* and *diurnus.*]
sel *m.* salt. [L. *sal.*]
selon *prep.* according to, on the authority of. [L. *sub-longum*, along.]
semaine *f.* week. [L. *septimanam.*]
semblable *adj.* similar, like; *as noun*, fellow, fellow-being. [fr. **sembler.**]
sembler *v.* seem, appear. [L. *simulare.*]
***sens** (74*d*) *m.* sense, intellect, understanding; sense, meaning way, direction: **bon sens**, good sense, sensibleness. [L. *sensum.*]
sentier *m.* track, path, footway. [L. *semitarium.*]
sentiment *m.* sentiment, feeling. [fr. **sentir.**]
sentir *v.* (*irr.* 40) feel, be sensible *or* have a sense of, be conscious. [L. *sentire.*]
seoir *v.* (*irr.* 78) sit. [L. *sedere.*]
***sept** (71*a*, 76*a*) *num.* seven. [L. *septem.*]
septante *num.* (XV. 3*a*) seventy. [L. *septuaginta.*]
septembre *m.* September. [L.]
***septième** (71*a*) *num.* seventh. [fr. **sept.**]
sergent *m.* sergeant: **sergent de ville**, constable, policeman. [L. *servientem*, servant.]
sérieusement *adv.* seriously. [fr. **sérieux.**]
sérieux *adj.* serious. [fr. L. *serius.*]
sermonner *v.* preach to, lecture. [L. *sermonari.*]
service *m.* service. [L.]

serviette *f.* napkin. [fr. **servir.**]
servir *v.* (*irr.* 44) serve; be of use, avail, advantage, help; serve up, put on the table: **servir de,** serve as, take *or* fill the place of (§ **161***g*); **se servir de,** serve one's self with, make use of, employ. [L. *servire.*]
serviteur *m.* servitor, servant. [LL.]
servitude *f.* servitúde, slavery. [L.]
seuil *m.* sill, threshold. [L. *soleam.*]
seul *adj.* sole, alone, only, single. [L. *solum.*]
seulement *adv.* only, solely, simply. [fr. **seul.**]
sévère *adj.* severe, strict, stern, austere, restrained. [L.]
sexe *m.* sex. [L. *sexum.*]
si *conj.* (XXXIV. 1*b*; § 123*b*, 138*a*) if; whether. [L. *si.*]
si *adv.* so, as; yes (§ 200*b*): **si . . . que** (§ 137*c*), however. [L. *sic.*]
siècle *m.* age, century. [L. *sæculum.*]
siège *m.* seat, sitting; siege. [fr. L. *sedes.*]
sien *pron.* (XXVII. 1) his, hers, its. [L. *suum.*]
sieur *m.* master, Mr. [L. *seniorem,* older.]
signe *m.* sign. [L. *signum.*]
***signet** (63*b*) *m.* signet; mark. [fr. **signe.**]
silence *m.* silence: **garder . . .,** keep silence, be silent. [L.]
sillon *m.* furrow. [fr. **siller,** fr. G.]
sillonner *v.* furrow, groove, wrinkle. [fr. **sillon.**]
simple *adj.* simple. [L. *simplum.*]
sincère *adj.* sincere. [L.]
sincèrement *adv.* sincerely. [fr. **sincère.**]
singulier *adj.* singular, peculiar. [L.]
sinistre *adj.* sinister, inauspicious, dismal. [L.]
sire *m.* sire, sir. [L. *senior* (§ 4*b*).]
situation *f.* situation, condition. [L.]
***six** (81*b*, 85*c*) *num.* six. [L. *sex.*]
***sixaine** (81*c*) *f.* half a dozen, some six. [fr. **six** (§ 67).]
***sixième** (81*c*) *num.* sixth. [fr. **six.**]
société *f.* society. [L.]
sœur *f.* sister. [L. *soror* (§ 4*c*).]
soi *pron.* (XXIII. 4; § 84) one's self. [same as **se.**]
soi-disant *adj.* (§ 189*c*) self-styled, professed, pretended. [**soi** and **disant,** pple of **dire.**]
soie *f.* silk. [L. *setam.*]
soigner *v.* take care of, tend, nurse. [fr. **soin.**]
soin *m.* care, attention, pains: **avoir** *or* **prendre soin,** take care. [?]
soir *m.* evening, latter part of the day. [L. *serum,* late.]
soit *conj.* whether, or; be it; be it so. [subj. pres. 3d sing. of **être.**]
***soixantaine** (81*c*) *f.* three-score, some sixty. [fr. **soixante** (§ 67).]
***soixante** (81*c*) *num.* sixty. [L. *sexaginta.*]
soldat *m.* soldier. [LL. *soldatum,* paid.]
soleil *m.* sun; sunshine. [L. *soliculum,* fr. *sol,* sun.]
***solennel** (26*a*) *adj.* solemn. [fr L. *solemnis.*]
solitaire *adj.* solitary. [L.]
solitude *f.* solitude. [L.]
son, sa, ses *pron.* (XIV. 1) his, her, its. [L. *suum.*]
son *m.* sound. [L. *sonum.*]
songe *m.* dream, revery. [L. *somnium.*]
songer *v.* dream, muse, meditate, reflect, think (of, **à**: § 161*c*). [fr. **songe.**]
sonner *v.* ring, ring for. [L. *sonare.*]
sonore *adj.* sonorous, clear-sounding, loud, ringing. [L.]
sort *m.* lot, fate, destiny. [L. *sortem.*]
sorte *f.* sort, kind, species: **de la**

sorte, after that fashion, in this *or* that way. [L. *sortem.*]
sortir *v.* (*irr.* 39) come *or* go forth, issue, proceed; go out (from room, etc., **de**): **sortir de**, quit, leave, abandon. [L. *sortiri.*]
sot (76*a*) *adj* foolish, silly, stupid; *as noun*, fool, silly fellow, blockhead. [?]
sottise *f.* folly, piece of folly, silly act. [fr. **sot.**]
soudain *adj.* sudden; *as adv.* (XXXI. 9) suddenly. [L. *subitaneum.*]
souffrance *f.* suffering. [fr. **souffrir.**]
souffrir *v.* (*irr.* 54) suffer. [L. *sufferre.*]
soufre *m.* sulphur; sulphur color; of sulphur color (§ 53*d*). [L. *sulphur.*]
souhaiter *v.* wish, desire. [fr. OF. *haiter*, fr. G.?]
soûl (67*a*) *adj.* satiated, surfeited. [L. *satullum*, fr. *satur.*]
soulager *v.* solace, comfort, help. [L. *sub-leviare.*]
soulier *m.* shoe. [?]
soupçon *m.* suspicion. [L. *suspicionem.*]
soupçonner *v.* suspect, form *or* have a suspicion of. [fr. **soupçon.**]
soupe *f.* soup. [fr. G.]
soupière *f.* soup-dish, tureen. [fr. **soupe.**]
soupir *m.* sigh. [L. *suspirium.*]
***sourcil** (68*c*) *m.* eyebrow. [L. *supercilium.*]
sourd *adj.* low-toned, obscure in sound, dull; deaf. [L. *surdum.*]
sourire *v.* (*irr.* 13) smile. [L. *subridere*, laugh slightly.]
sourire *m.* smile. [inf. of **sourire.**]
sous *prep.* under, beneath, below. [L. *subtus.*]
soutenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) sustain, uphold, support, maintain, protect, favor. [L. *sustinere.*]
soutirer *v.* withdraw, subtract (from, **à**: § 161*c*). [**sous** and **tirer.**]
souvenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) come into the mind; have come into the mind, remember: **se . . .**, remember, recollect, be reminded of. [L. *sub-venire.*]
souvenir *m.* remembrance, recollection; memorial, memento, souvenir. [inf. of **souvenir.**]
souvent *adv.* often, frequently. [L. *subinde.*]
souverain *m.* sovereign. [L. *superanum.*]
***spécimen** (54*d*) *m.* specimen. [L.]
spectateur *m.* spectator. [L.]
splendide *adj.* splendid. [L.]
statue *f.* statue. [L. *statuam.*]
style *m.* style. [L., fr. Gr.]
subjuguer *v.* subjugate. [L.]
sublime *adj.* sublime. [L.]
subsister *v.* subsist, exist, continue. [L. *subsistere.*]
***subtil** (68*d*) *adj.* subtile. [L.]
succéder *v.* succeed: . . . **à**, succeed to, follow. [L. *succedere.*]
succès *m.* success. [L.]
successeur *m.* successor. [L.]
succomber *v.* succumb, give way, perish. [L. *succumbere.*]
sucre *m.* sugar. [fr. Arabic.]
***sud** (60*a*) *m.* south. [fr. G.]
suffire *v.* (*irr.* 6) suffice, be sufficient *or* enough. [L. *sufficere.*]
suite *f.* what follows, sequel, train; succession, series, suite: **tout de suite**, at once, immediately. [L. *secutam.*]
suivre *v.* (*irr.* 33) follow. [L. *sequi.*]
sujet *adj.* subject, liable. [L. *subjectum.*]
sujet *m.* subject, reason, occasion, cause. [L. *subjectum.*]
superbe *adj.* proud. [L. *superbum.*]
supplier *v.* supplicate, beseech, beg. [L. *supplicare.*]
supposer *v.* suppose, make the supposition, assume. [fr. L. *supponere.*]
sur *prep.* on, upon; over, above; about, near to; on account of, on the strength of: **sur le champ**,

on the spot, at once, immediately. [L. *super.*]
sûr *adj.* sure, secure, steady, trustworthy. [L. *securum.*]
surface *f.* surface. [L. *superficiem.*]
surprendre *v.* (*irr.* 30) take by surprise, surprise. [**sur** and **prendre.**]
surprise *f.* surprise, astonishment. [fr. **surprendre.**]
surtout *adv.* above all, especially. [**sur** and **tout.**]
survenir *v.* (*irr.* 60) supervene, come unexpectedly, befall. [L. *supervenire.*]
survivre *v.* (*irr.* 32) survive, outlive (*with* **à**: § 161*b*). [**sur** and **vivre.**]
sus *adv.* above, upon: **en *sus** (74*d*), over and above, besides. [L. *susum, sursum.*]
suspect *adj.* suspected, suspicious. [L. *suspectum.*]
système *m.* system. [L., fr. Gr.]

***tabac** (58*g*) *m.* tobacco. [Indian word.]
table *f.* table. [L. *tabulam.*]
tableau *m.* picture, painting. [fr. **table.**]
tâche *f.* task. [LL. *taxam*, fr. L. *taxare*, tax.]
tailleur *m.* tailor. [fr. **tailler**, cut, fr. L. *taleam*, cut branch.]
taire *v.* (*irr.* 25) keep secret *or* silent: **se . . .**, be silent, keep silence, hold one's peace. [L. *tacere.*]
talent *m.* talent, natural gift, ability, capacity. [L., fr. G.]
tandis que *conj.* whilst, while, whereas. [L. *tam diem quod.*]
tant *adv.* so much *or* many, as much *or* many: **si tant est que**, if so be that, supposing that; **tant soit peu**, ever so little, slightly, in some measure; **tant que** (§ 137*a*), so long as. [L. *tantum.*]
tante *f.* aunt. [**ta** and **ante**, L. *amitam.*]
tantôt *adv.* presently, soon: **tantôt . . . tantôt**, now . . . now. [**tant** and **tôt.**]
***taon** (14) *m.* gadfly. [L. *tabanum.*]
tard *adv.* late. [L. *tardum*, slow.]
tasse *f.* cup. [fr. Arabic.]
te *pron.* thee, to thee. [L. *te.*]
tel *pron.* (§ 110) such (such a, **un tel**); such a one, so and so; one, another, as . . . so: **tel que**, whatever, any soever; **telle quelle**, such as it is, in whatever condition. [L. *talem.*]
témoigner *v.* testify, attest, indicate, show. [fr. **témoin.**]
témoin *m.* witness; testimony, evidence. [L. *testimonium.*]
temps *m.* time; weather. [L. *tempus.*]
tendresse *f.* tenderness, fondness. [fr. **tendre**, L. *tenerum.*]
tenir *v.* (*irr.* 61) hold, keep: **tenez** (§ 222*b*), hold, look here, well now; **se . . .**, keep one's self, stay, stand; **tenir lieu de**, *see* **lieu**; **tenir tête à**, *see* **tête.** [L. *tenere.*]
terre *f.* earth, ground, land: **de terre**, earthen; **à terre**, on the ground. [L. *terram.*]
terreur *f.* terror, dread, fright; **la Terreur**, the Terror, the time of fear and dread during the French revolution. [L.]
terrible *adj.* terrible. [L.]
territoire *m.* territory. [L. *territorium.*]
testament *m.* testament, will. [L.]
tête *f.* head: **tenir tête à**, make head against, cope with, resist; **perdre la tête**, lose one's head *or* wits *or* presence of mind. [L. *testam*, potsherd.]
tête-à-tête *m.* private interview, tête-à-tête. [lit'ly, head to head.]
thé *m.* tea. [fr. Chinese.]
théâtre *m.* theater, stage. [L., fr. Gr.]
thème *m.* theme, exercise. [Gr.]
théologien *m.* **théologienne** *f.* (§ 16) theologian. [Gr.]
tien *pron.* thine. [L. *tuum.*]

tiers, tierce (§ **66**) *num.* third. [L. *tertium.*]
timbre *m.* bell. [L. *tympanum.*]
timide *adj.* timid, fearful. [L.]
tirer *v.* draw, pull; derive; discharge, shoot off, shoot: **tirer la langue**, *see* **langue**. [fr. G., =Eng. *tear.*]
toi *pron.* thee, to thee. [L. *te.*]
toile *f.* cloth; canvas, *hence* picture. [L. *telam.*]
tombe *f.* tomb, grave. [L., fr. Gr.]
tomber *v.* fall, tumble. [fr. G. (?)]
tome *m.* tome, volume. [L., fr. Gr.]
ton *m.* tone. [L., fr. Gr.]
ton, ta, tes *pron.* thy. [L. *tuum.*]
tonner *v. impers.* thunder. [L. *tonare.*]
torpeur *f.* torpor. [L.]
torrent *m.* torrent. [L.]
tort *m.* wrong, harm: **avoir tort** (XIII. 6*a*), be in the wrong, be wrong; **à tort**, wrongly. [L. *tortum*, twisted.]
tortueux *adj.* tortuous, involved. [L.]
tôt *adv.* soon. [L. *tostum*, burnt (?)]
toucher *v.* touch, be in contact with, be close upon, approach; lay the hand upon, handle, meddle with; touch with emotion, move: **toucher à**, be close upon *or* in contact with, meddle with. [?]
toujours *adv.* always, all the time; even now, still, yet, all the same. [fr. **tous jours**, all days.]
tour *m.* turn. [fr. **tourner.**]
tourner *v.* turn. [L. *tornare.*]
Toussaint *f.* All Saints' day. [**tous saints.**]
tout (***tous**, 74*d*) *pron.* (XIV. 6*b*; § **116**) all, every, whole; everything, everybody, the whole: *as adv.* (§ **116***c*) wholly, entirely, quite, altogether: **toute chose**, everything; **tous deux** *or* **tous les deux** (XXVII. 7*a*), both; **tout le monde** (XXVII. 7*b*), everybody; **du tout**, at all; **tout . . . que** (§ **116***d*), however; **tout à coup**, all at once, suddenly; **tout à fait**, wholly, entirely; **tout à l'heure**, just now; **tout de suite**, at once, immediately. [L. *totum.*]
toutefois *adv.* yet, however, nevertheless. [**toute fois**, every time.]
tout-puissant *adj.* (§ **56***d*) all-powerful. [**tout** and **puissant.**]
trace *f.* trace. [fr. **tracer.**]
tracer *v.* trace, draw, sketch, outline. [fr. L. *tractus.*]
traduire *v.* (*irr.* 1) translate. [L. *traducere.*]
tragédie *f.* tragedy. [L, fr. Gr.]
tragique *adj.* tragic. [L., fr. Gr.]
trahir *v.* betray, be traitor to, deceive, frustrate, abuse. [L. *tradere*, deliver.]
traîner *v.* drag after one, draw along, trail. [fr. **train**, train, fr. **traire.**]
traire *v.* (*irr.* 21) draw, milk. [L. *trahere.*]
trait *m.* trait, feature, lineament; arrow, shaft, dart. [L. *tractum*, drawn.]
traiter *v.* treat (as, **de**: § **162***g*). [L. *tractare.*]
traître *m.* traitor. [L. *traditor* (§ **4***c*).]
tranquille** (**68f*) *adj.* tranquil, calm. [L.]
tranquillement** (**68f*) *adv.* tranquilly, calmly. [fr. **tranquille.**]
trans-** (**74b*).
transit** (**74b*, **76***a*) *m.* transit. [L.]
travail (§ **21***a*) *m.* work, labor, toil, travail. [fr. L. *trabem*, beam (?).]
travailler *v.* work, toil, labor. [fr. **travail.**]
travers *m.* oddity, whim, caprice, eccentricity: **à travers**, across, athwart, through. [L. *transversum*, crosswise.]
traverser *v.* traverse, cross, pass over *or* through. [fr. **travers.**]
treize *num.* thirteen. [L. *tredecim.*]
treizième *num.* thirteenth. [fr. **treize.**]

trembler *v.* tremble. [fr. L. *tremulus.*]
tremper *v.* steep, soak, wet, dip. [L. *temperare.*]
trentaine *f.* (§ **67**) some thirty. [fr. **trente.**]
trente *num.* thirty. [L. *triginta.*]
très *adv.* very, very much. [L. *trans.*]
trésor *m.* treasure, treasury. [L. *thesaurum*, fr. Gr.]
tressaillir *v.* (*irr.* 45) start, be startled *or* agitated. [L. *transsalire.*]
tricot *m.* knitting, knitted work, network. [fr. **tricoter**, knit, fr. G. *stricken.*]
triomphe *m.* triumph. [L.]
triompher *v.* triumph, gain the victory (over, **de**). [fr. **triomphe.**]
triste *adj.* sad, dull, dreary. [L. *tristem.*]
tristement *adv.* sadly. [fr. **triste.**]
tristesse *f.* sadness, melancholy, gloom. [fr. **triste.**]
trois *num.* three. [L. *tres.*]
troisième *num.* third. [fr. **trois.**]
tromper *v.* deceive, mislead, cheat, baffle, disappoint: **se . . .**, deceive one's self, be mistaken, make a mistake. [?]
trompeur *m.* **trompeuse** *f.* (§ **16**) deceiver; *as adj.* deceitful, misleading, treacherous. [fr. **tromper.**]
trône *m.* throne. [L., fr. Gr.]
trop *adv.* too, too much, in excess, beyond what is called for: **de trop**, superfluous, not wanted, better away; **trop peu**, too little. [?]
troubler *v.* trouble, disturb, agitate, stir up: **se . . .**, become disturbed *or* agitated *or* confused, falter. [L. *turbulare.*]
troupe *f.* troop, band. [LL. *troppum*, fr. ?]
trouver *v.* find, discover, come *or* hit upon; find to be, regard as, consider, think: **se . . .**, find one's self, chance to be, be. [L. *turbare*, disturb (?).]
tu *pron.* thou. [L. *tu.*]
tuer *v.* kill, slay. [L *tutari*, make safe.]
tyran *m.* tyrant. [L., fr. Gr.]
tyrien *adj.* Tyrian, of Tyre. [L.]

un *num. art.* (§ **65, 50**) one; an, a [L. *unum.*]
unique *adj.* unique, sole, solitary, without a match *or* equal. [L. *unicum.*]
univers *m.* universe. [L.]
user *v.* (*with* **de**: § **162***f*) use, make use of, employ; use up, wear out: **en user avec**, deal with, treat, handle. [fr. L. *uti.*]
usurper *v.* usurp, take unjust possession of. [L.]
ut** (**76a*) *m.* do (name of first note of scale).
utile *adj.* useful, advantageous. [L. *utilem.*]

vache *f.* cow. [L. *vaccam.*]
vaciller** (**68f*) *v.* vacillate. [L.]
vague *adj.* vague. [L. *vagum.*]
vaguement *adv.* vaguely, uncertainly. [fr. **vague.**]
vain *adj.* vain, useless, idle; conceited. [L. *vanum.*]
vaincre *v.* (XX. **3***a*) vanquish, conquer. [L. *vincere.*]
vainqueur *m.* conqueror. [fr. **vaincre.**]
valet *m.* valet, flunky. [fr. LL. *vassalis*, vassal, fr. Celtic.]
valeur *f.* value; valor, bravery. [L.]
valise *f.* valise, portmanteau. [fr. It.]
valoir *v.* (*irr.* 73) be worth, have the value of; have as much value as, be equal to; be good for, win, procure: **valoir mieux**, be worth more, be better *or* preferable. [L. *valere.*]
vanité *f.* vanity. [L.]
vanter *v.* vaunt, extol: **se . . .**, boast, brag. [L. *vanitare.*]
vapeur *f.* steam, vapor; *m.* (§ **15***a*) steamer. [L.]
vase *m.* vase, vessel. [L. *vas.*]

vaste *adj.* vast. [L.]
vaudeville *m.* vaudeville, ballad. [fr. **val de Vire**, name of a place.]
veille *f.* watch, waking, sitting up; evening before, eve, verge. [L. *vigilias.*]
veiller *v.* wake, watch; wake up. [L. *vigilare.*]
veine *f.* vein. [L. *venam.*]
velours *m.* velvet. [fr. L. *villosus*, hairy.]
vendre *v.* sell. [L. *vendere.*]
vendredi *m.* Friday. [L. *veneris diem*, Venus's day.]
vénérable *adj.* venerable. [L.]
venger *v.* avenge. [L. *vindicare.*]
venir *v.* (*irr.* 60; p. 145–6) come, be coming: **venu**, one arrived, comer; **venir de** (*with inf.*, XXXI. 11*b*), have just (done anything); **en venir à**, come to the point of, have recourse to, resort to. [L. *venire.*]
vent *m.* wind. [L. *ventum.*]
véritable *adj.* veritable, true, actual, real. [fr. **vérité.**]
vérité *f.* verity, truth: **à la . . .**, *or* **en . . .**, in truth, indeed, verily. [L.]
verre *m.* glass, drinking-glass, tumbler. [L. *vitrum.*]
vers *prep.* toward; about. [L. *versus.*]
vers *m.* verse. [L. *versum.*]
verser *v.* pour out, shed. [L. *versare.*]
vertu *f.* virtue. [L. *virtutem.*]
vêtement *m.* garment, vestment, dress. [L. *vestimentum.*]
vêtir *v.* (*irr.* 51) clothe, dress (in, **de**). [L. *vestire.*]
veuve *f.* widow. [L. *viduam.*]
viande *f.* meat, flesh; viand. [L. *vivenda.*]
vice *m.* vice. [L. *vitium.*]
victime *f.* victim. [L.]
victoire *f.* victory. [L. *victoriam.*]
victorieux *adj.* victorious. [L.]
vie *f.* life; biography: **de sa vie**, in his life, ever. [L. *vitam.*]
vieil, *see* **vieux.**
vieillard *m.* old man. [fr. **vieux.**]
vieillesse *f.* old age. [fr. **vieux.**]
vieillir *v.* grow old, become aged, age. [fr. **vieux.**]
vieux, vieil (VII. 7; § 53*b*) *adj.* old, not young, aged; *as noun*, old fellow *or* friend. [LL. *vetulum.*]
vif *adj.* lively, vivacious, brisk, smart. [L. *vivum.*]
vigoureux *adj.* vigorous. [L.]
vigueur *f.* vigor, strength, force. [L.]
***vil** (68*d*) *adj.* vile, base, mean. [L.]
vilenie *f.* villany, baseness. [fr. **vilain**, base, fr. L. *villanus*, of the country.]
***village** (68*f*) *m.* village. [fr. **ville.**]
***ville** (68*f*) *f.* city: **à la ville**, in the city. [L. *villam.*]
vin *m.* wine. [L. *vinum.*]
vinaigre *m.* vinegar. [**vin aigre**, sour wine.]
vingt (76*a*) *num.* twenty. [L. *viginti.*]
vingtaine *f.* a score, some twenty. [fr. **vingt.**]
vingtième *num.* twentieth. [fr. **vingt.**]
***violemment** (26*a*) *adv.* violently, by force *or* violence. [fr. **violent.**]
violent *adj.* violent. [L.]
violette *f.* violet. [fr. L. *viola.*]
***viril** (68*d*) *adj.* virile, manly. [L.]
***vis** (74*d*) *f.* screw. [L. *vitem*, vine.]
vis *m.* face: **vis-à-vis de**, face to face with, opposite to, fronting. [L. *visum.*]
visage *m.* visage, countenance, face. [fr. **vis**, *m.*]
visible *adj.* visible. [L.]
visière *f.* visor. [fr. **vis**, *m.*]
visite *f.* visit: **rendre visite**, pay a visit *or* call. [fr. **visiter.**]
visiter *v.* visit. [L. *visitare.*]
vite *adj.* quick; *as adv.* (XXXI. 9) quickly, rapidly, fast. [?]
vivant *m.* life-time, life. [pple of *vivre.*]

vivement *adj.* livelily. [fr. **vif.**]
vivre *v.* (*irr.* 32) live. [L. *vivere.*]
vizir *m.* vizier. [fr. Arabic.]
vœu *m.* vow; wish, desire, prayer. [L. *votum.*]
voici *interj.* (§ 201) see here, here is *or* are *or* come, behold, lo. [**vois** and **ci**.]
voie *f.* way, road, track. [L. *viam.*]
voilà *interj.* (§ 201) see there, there is *or* are *or* come, behold, lo. [**vois** and **là.**]
voile *m.f.* (§ 15*a*) veil; sail: **bateau à voiles,** sailing vessel. [L. *velum.*]
voir *v.* (*irr.* 67) see, behold, view, look: **voyons,** let's see, see here, come now; **y voir,** see things, have eyes. [L. *videre.*]
voisin *adj.* neighboring, near (to, **de**); *as noun,* neighbor. [L. *vicinum.*]
voisinage *m.* neighborhood, vicinage. [fr. *voisin.*]
voiture *f.* carriage, vehicle. [L. *vecturam.*]
voix *f.* voice. [L. *vocem.*]
***volatil** (68*d*) *adj.* volatile, flying. [L.]
voler *v.* fly. [L. *volare.*]
volonté *f.* will, intention, desire. [L. *voluntatem.*]
volontiers *adv.* willingly, gladly. [fr. L. *voluntarie.*]
volume *m.* volume. [L.]
votre *pron.* (XIV.) your. [L. *vestrum.*]
vôtre *pron.* (XXVII. 1, 2) yours. [L. *vestrum.*]
vouloir *v.* (*irr.* 72; p. 114) wish, desire, want; be willing *or* inclined *or* pleased; mean, intend: **vouloir dire,** mean, signify; **en vouloir à,** have a grudge or spite against, lay something up against, have a design upon, aim at. [L. *velle.*]
vous *pron.* you, to you. [L. *vos.*]
voyage *m.* journey. [L. *viaticum.*]
vrai *adj.* true, veracious, real, actual, genuine. [fr. L. *verum.*]
vraiment *adv.* truly, really, indeed, in fact. [fr. **vrai.**]
vue *f.* view, sight: **de vue,** by sight. [pple of **voir.**]
***whist** (76*a*, 80) *m.* whist. [English word.]
y *adv. pron.* (XXIII. 5–8; § 85) there; to it *or* them, etc. [L. *ibi.*]
***yacht** (82) *m.* yacht. [English word.]
yeux (36*a*) *pl.* (II. 5; § 22*b*) eyes. [L. *oculos.*]

II.—VOCABULARY OF FRENCH PROPER NAMES;

INCLUDING NAMES MENTIONED IN THE ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Achab (59*a*, 57*b*) *m.* Ahab (wicked king of Israel: 1 Kings xxi. etc.).
Achille (68*f*) *m.* Achilles (chief Greek hero before Troy).
Achille Deveria, a French artist.
Afrique *f.* Africa.
***Aix (en Provence)** (81*b*) *f.* Aix (town in southeastern France).
Alexandre *m.* Alexander (king of Macedon).
Allemagne *f.* Germany.
Alpes *f.* Alps (mountains of Switzerland).
Amazone *f.* Amazon (female warrior).
Amérique *f.* America.
Andalousie *f.* Andalusia (province of southern Spain).
Angleterre *f.* England.
Anne *f.* Anne (queen of England).
Aragon *m.* Aragon (province of Spain).
Ardasire *f.* character in Montesquieu's "Arsace et Isménie."
Asie *f.* Asia.
Auguste *m.* Augustus (first emperor of Rome).
Autriche *f.* Austria.
d'Autun, name of a French gentleman.
Auvray, M. Auvray (character in About's story "l'Oncle et le Neveu").
de Balzac, *m.* Balzac (French novelist).
Belgique *f.* Belgium.
Berlin *m.* Berlin (capital of Prussia).
Bernard *m.* Bernard (character in Sandeau's "Mlle. de la Seiglière").
Bessonnière *f.* the Bessonnière (name of a farm in the story "**la petite Fadette**": place of the **bessons**, provincial [fr. L. *bis*, twice] for twins).
Bichonne *f.* name.
Blanche *f.* Blanche (girl's name).
Blouet, Blouet (name of character in Theuriet's story "la Saint-Nicolas").
Bohême *f.* Bohemia; Gypsy-land (applied to aggregate of artists, as homeless and free livers).
Bonaparte, Bonaparte (name of family of Napoleon).
Bourgogne *f.* Burgundy (eastern French province).
Bourguignon *m.* Burgundian (assumed name of Dorante).
***Bruxelles** (81*c*) *f.* Brussels.
Buffon, Buffon (French naturalist).
Byron, Byron (English poet).
Calvados *m.* Calvados (a department of France, in Normandy).
Calypso *f.* Calypso (nymph possessing an island where Ulysses was long detained).
Candie *f.* Candia (or Crete; island).
Carthage *f.* Carthage (city).
Castille *f.* Castile (province of central Spain).
César *m.* Cæsar (Julius Cæsar, general and historian, uncle of Augustus); name of other persons.
Césarine *f.* Cesarine (woman's name).
Charles *m.* Charles: **Charles-Quint**, Charles V., emperor of Germany; Charles I., Charles II., kings of England.
Chateaubriand, Chateaubriand (celebrated French author).
Chine *f.* China.
Circé *f.* Circe (nymph and sorceress).

Cîteaux, an abbey in eastern France.
Clain *m.* Clain (name of a river, branch of the Loire).
Claire *f.* Clara (character in About's story "la Fille du Chanoine").
Claye *f.* Claye (small town near Paris).
Condé, prince of Condé (celebrated French general).
Corday, Charlotte Corday (slayer of the French revolutionist Marat).
Croisilles, Croisilles (name of the principal character in a story of de Musset).
Danemark *m.* Denmark.
Danton, Danton (noted character in the French Revolution).
Danube *m.* Danube.
Dauphine *f.* Dauphiness (title of the wife of the Dauphin, or heir to the throne of France).
Davoust, Davoust (one of Napoleon's marshals).
Dorante *m.* Dorante (character in a play of Marivaux, "le Jeu de l'Amour et du Hasard").
Dupont, Dupont (French general).
Edouard *m.* Edward; Edward III., king of England.
Égypte *f.* Egypt.
Élisabeth *f.* Elizabeth (queen of England).
Élise *f.* Eliza (character in Racine's "Esther").
Ergaste *m.* Ergastes (fabricated name).
Espagne *f.* Spain.
d'Étampes, Duchess, favorite of Francis I. of France.
Etna *m.* Etna (volcano in Sicily).
Europe *f.* Europe.
Eylau *m.* Eylau (scene of one of Napoleon's battles).
Fadet, name of a family in George Sand's story "la petite Fadette."
Fadette *f.* name of a girl, the heroine of the story just mentioned.
Fanchette *f.* girl's name.
Flandre *f.* Flanders.
Fletcher, Dr. Fletcher (clergyman in attendance at the execution of Mary Stuart).
Fontainebleau *m.* Fontainebleau (French town and palace, south from Paris).
Fortunato, name of a boy in Mérimée's story "Matteo Falcone."
Fouché, Fouché (at one time minister of police under Napoleon).
Fouquet, Fouquet (a superintendent of finances under Louis XIV.).
France *f.* France.
François *m.* Francis, Frank.
Françoise *f.* Frances, Fanny.
Frédéric *m.* Frederick; Frederick II., or Frederick the Great, king of Prussia.
Genève *f.* Geneva.
George *m.* George (character in Ponsard's play "l'Honneur et l'Argent"); George, husband of Queen Anne.
Germain, character in George Sand's "la Mare-au-Diable."
Girardin, M. Saint-Marc, French writer and politician.
Grèce *f.* Greece.
de Grignan, count, son-in-law of Madame de Sévigné.
Guillaume *m.* William; William III. (William and Mary), king of England.
Gustave Vasa, Gustavus Vasa (heroic king of Sweden).
Guttemberg, Gutenberg (inventor of printing).
Hanovre *m.* Hanover.
le Havre (VI. 5*f*), Havre (city of France).
Hélène *f.* Helen (character in "Mlle. de la Seiglière"; Helen of Troy, cause of the war and destruction of the city).
Henri *m.* Henry; **Henri-le-Grand**, Henry the Great (or Henri IV., king of France).
Henriette *f.* Henrietta, Harriet.

'**Hollande** *f.* Holland.
Horace, Horatius (character in Corneille's play of that name).
Humblot, Mme., character in About's story "l'Album du Régiment."
Ilion *m.* Ilium (other name of Troy).
Indes *f. pl.* the Indies, India.
Italie *f.* Italy.
Jacob (57*a*) *m.* Jacob (ancestor of the Hebrews).
Jacques *m.* James; James II., king of England.
Japon *m.* Japan.
Jean *m.* John; **Jean Jacques**, J. J. Rousseau.
Jeanne *f.* Jane, Joan, Joanna.
***Jérusalem** (54*c*) *f.* Jerusalem.
Joindrette *m.* name.
Jézabel *f.* Jezabel (wife of Ahab: 1 Kings xxi., etc.).
Joseph, Joseph.
Jules *m.* Julius.
Julie *f.* Julia; heroine of a novel of Rousseau.
***Kremlin** (54*d*) *m.* Kremlin (palace at Moscow).
de Lafayette, Mme., authoress and leader of society in Paris (17th century).
de Lamartine, celebrated French author.
Landry *m.* a character in G. Sand's story "la petite Fadette."
Laurence, name.
Leblanc, name.
le Couvreur, Mlle., celebrated French actress.
Legrand, name of a certain army-corps, from its commander.
Lisette *f.* (*abbrev'n of* **Élise**) Lizzie (name of a character in a play of Marivaux).
Livie *f.* Livia.
Londres *m.* London.
Louis *m.* Lewis, Louis: **Louis XIV., Louis XVI.**, kings of France.
Louise *f.* Louisa.
Louvre *m.* Louvre (palace and gallery of art in Paris).
Lyon *m.* Lyons.
Lysidas *m.* Lysidas (character in Molière's "la Critique de l'École des Femmes").
Madelon *f.* Madeline (a character in G. Sand's story "la petite Fadette").
Madrid *m.* Madrid (capital of Spain).
Mahomet *m.* Mohammed (Arab prophet).
de Maintenon, Mme., celebrated French lady and authoress.
Malesherbes, French advocate, once minister of Louis XVI.
Marat, Marat (ferocious French revolutionist).
Marchal, a character in About's story "la Fille du Chanoine."
Marie *f.* Mary, Maria (Mary Stuart, 122[1]).
Marguerite *f.* Margaret.
***Mars** (74*d*) *m.* Mars (Roman god of war).
Marseille *f.* Marseilles (French city).
Mathan *m.* Mathan (character in Racine's "Athalie").
Mazarin, Mazarin (cardinal, and prime minister of France).
Médicis *m.* Medici (ruling family at Florence).
Méditerranée *f.* Mediterranean (sea).
Mexique *m.* Mexico.
Minerve *f.* Minerva (Roman goddess of wisdom).
Montaigne, Montaigne (celebrated French author).
Moscou *m.* Moscow (ancient capital of Russia).
Moscovite *m.* Muscovite, Russian.
Naples *m.* Naples.
Napoléon *m.* Napoleon (French emperor).
de Noailles, French gentleman, of high rank (cardinal or duke).
Norvège *f.* Norway.
Nouvelle-Hollande *f.* New Holland, Australia.
Nuremberg *m.* Nuremberg (German city).
Oluf *m.* character in Gautier's story "le Chevalier double."

Olympe *m.* Olympus (mountain in Greece, seat of the gods).
Orphée *m.* Orpheus (Greek hero, said to have made stones build themselves into walls, etc., by the power of his music).
Oswald *m.* Oswald (hero of Mme. de Staël's "Corinne").
Palestine *f.* Palestine.
Paris *m.* Paris.
Paul *m.* Paul (character in the story "Paul et Virginie").
Pauline *f.* Pauline (character in Corneille's "Polyeucte").
Pérou *m.* Peru.
Philippe *m.* Philip: **Philippe II.**, king of Spain.
Pignerol, fortress in which Fouquet was confined.
Pologne *f.* Poland.
Polyeucte, Polyeuctes (character in Corneille's play of that name).
Pompadour, favorite of Louis XV. of France.
de Pomponne, marquis, a minister of Louis XIV.
Prascovie *f.* Prascovie (Russian girl's name).
Prusse *f.* Prussia.
Pussort, French statesman, one of the judges of Fouquet.
Pyrénées *f.* Pyrenees (mountains).
Reboul, Reboul (French baker-poet).
Récamier, Mme., noted French beauty and leader in society.
Rhin *m.* Rhine (river).
Richelieu, Richelieu (cardinal and prime minister of France).
Rome *f.* Rome (as seat and representative of the Catholic religion).
Russie *f.* Russia.
Sainte-Geneviève, French abbey.
Saint Jean, St. John (name).
St. Louis, St. Louis (Louis IX., king of France).
Saint-Nicolas, St. Nicholas.
de Schurmann, Mlle., celebrated Netherlandish savante (17th century).
Seine *f.* Seine (French river running through Paris).
Sicile *f.* Sicily.
St. Cloud *m.* St. Cloud (French town and palace).
Saint-Cyr *m.* young ladies' school, founded by Mme. de Maintenon.
Suède *f.* Sweden.
Suisse *f.* Switzerland.
Sully, Sully (minister of Henry IV. of France).
Sylla, Sylla (Roman leader).
Tamise *f.* Thames.
Tanaro *m.* river in Italy, branch of the Po.
Taylor, Baron (a French literary man, of English descent).
Thèbes *f.* Thebes (Egyptian city).
Toinette *f.* Toinette (character in Molière's "le Malade imaginaire").
Toussaint *f.* All-Saints' day.
la Trappe, la Trappe (famous monastery, of especially rigid rules).
Troie *f.* Troy.
de Turenne, Turenne (famous French general).
Valère *m.* Valerius (character in Molière's "Tartuffe").
Valteline *f.* valley in Italy, near lake Como.
de Vaubert, Mme., a character in Sandeau's "Mlle. de la Seiglière."
Velalcazar, place in Spain.
de Vendôme, celebrated French general.
Venise *f.* Venice.
***Vénus** (74*d*) *f.* Venus (Roman goddess of beauty).
Vienne *f.* Vienna.
Virginie *f.* Virginia (character in St. Pierre's "Paul et Virginie").
Visigoth *m.* Visigoth (one of a German race, conquerors of Spain).
Wagram *m.* Wagram (Austrian village, scene of a victory of Napoleon).
Whitehall, Whitehall (palace in London, scene of the execution of Charles I.).
Zambo *m.* Sambo (name of a negro servant, in Laboulaye's "Paris en Amérique").

III.—ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

ADDITIONAL ABBREVIATIONS : *n.* noun. *intr.* intransitive. *trans.* transitive.

Reference is occasionally made to theme and sentence : thus, 10^{27}.

a, an, **un**.
abandon, **abandonner**.
abdicate, **abdiquer**.
able, **capable, bon, habile** : be able, **pouvoir** *v.* (*irr.* p. 119.)
about, (roundabout) **autour de**, (nearly) **environ, sur** (§ 70*b*), **quelque** (§ 107*e*) : run about, **courir**.
above, **dessus** *adv.*, **au-dessus de** *prep.*
absent, **absent** : be absent, **être absent** *or* **s'absenter** (19^{3}).
absolutely, **absolument**.
abuse *v.* **abuser de** (§ 162*f*).
accept, **accepter**.
accompany, **accompagner**.
according to, **d'après, selon**.
accordingly, **aussi**.
accustom one's self, **s'accoutumer**.
acquaint : be acquainted with, **connaître**.
acquire, **acquérir** (*irr.* 63).
across *prep.* **à travers**.
act, **agir**.
action, **action** *f.*
active, **actif**.
addict one's self, **s'adonner**.
address *v.* **adresser** : address one's self, **s'adresser**.
adieu, **adieu** *m.*
admirable, **admirable**.
admiration, **admiration** *f.*
admire, **admirer**.
advise, **conseiller**.
affair, **affaire** *f.*
afraid : be afraid, **avoir peur** *or* **crainte** (XIII. 6).
Africa, **Afrique** *f.*
after *prep.* **après** ; *conj.* **après que** : after that (*conj.*), **après que** (§ 122*a*).
afternoon, **après-midi** *f.* or *m.*
afterward, **après, ensuite**.
again, **encore, de nouveau** (10^{11}).
against, **contre**.
age (grow old), **vieillir**.
agitate (move), **émouvoir** (*irr.* 76).
ago, **il y a** (XXX. 4*c*).
agree, **convenir** (*irr.* 60).
aid *v.* **aider**.
air, **air** *m.*
all, **tout** (XIV. 6 ; § 116) : at all, *see* at ; after all, **après tout**.
allow, **permettre** (*irr.* 31).
almost, **presque, à peu près**.
aloft, **en haut**.
alone, **seul**.
along *prep.* **le long de**.
aloud, **haut**.
Alps, **Alpes** *f.*
already, **déjà**.
also, **aussi**.
although, **quoique** (XXXIV. 1*a*), **bien que, encore que** (§ 137*b*).
altogether, **tout à fait, tout** (§ 116*c*).
always, **toujours**.
ambitious, **ambitieux**.
America, **Amérique** *f.*
amiable, **aimable**.
among, **parmi** (XXVI. 4*a*), **entre** : from among, **d'entre**.
amount, an infinite, *see* infinite.
amuse, **amuser** : amuse one's self, **s'amuser**.
ancient, **ancien**.
anciently, **anciennement**.
and, **et**.
angry, **fâché** (at, **contre** ; on account of, **de**) : be *or* get angry, **se fâcher**.
animal, **animal** *m.*
annexed, **ci-joint** (§ 56*a*).

another, **un autre**: one another, **l'un l'autre, les uns les autres** (XXVII. 7), **se** (XXIX. 8).
answer *v.* **répondre.**
answer *n.* **réponse** *f.*
anxious, **inquiet.**
any, **de** *with art.* (IV.; § **35, 39**), **quelque**: not any, **ne . . . aucun** *or* **nul, ne . . . pas de** (§ **35***b*).
anything, **quelque chose**: not anything, **ne . . . rien**; anything whatever, **quoi que ce soit** (§ **104***a*).
appeal *v.* **en appeler** (XXI. 3*c*).
appear, **paraître** (*irr.* 18).
apple, **pomme** *f.*
application, **application** *f.*
appointed, **convenu, indiqué, dit.**
approach, (*trans.*) **s'approcher de, se rapprocher de** (§ **162***f*), (*intr.*) **s'approcher.**
approbation, **approbation** *f.*
approve, **approuver.**
April, **avril** *m.*
arise, **se lever.**
arm (limb), **bras** *m.*
army, **armée** *f.*
around *prep.*, **autour de.**
arrive, **arriver** (*with* **être**, XXVIII. 6*a*).
art, **art** *m.*
article, **article** *m.*
artist, **artiste** *m.*
as *adv.* (*before adj.*) **aussi**, (*after adj.*) **que**: as much *or* many, **autant**; as much *or* many as, **autant que**; as long as, **tant que**; as soon as, **aussitôt que, dès que**; as far as, **jusque, jusqu'à** (*prep.*); as for, as regards, **quant à.**
as *conj.* **comme, ainsi que, de** (§ **162***g*), **en** (§ **207***e*); (since) **puisque**; (when) **lorsque.**
ashamed: be ashamed, **avoir honte** (XIII. 6).
Asia, **Asie** *f.*
ask, ask for, **demander** (of, **à**: § **161***c*).
aspect: have the aspect, **avoir l'air** (§ **56***b*).
aspire, **aspirer.**
assure, **assurer.**
astonished, **étonné.**
astronomy, **astronomie** *f.*
at, **à**; **en, dans**; **de**; **par**: at all, **du tout**; not at all, **ne . . . point** (§ **165***d*); at once, **sur le champ, tout de suite**; at present, **à présent**; at the time of, **lors de**; at the house of, at some one's, **chez.**
attach, **attacher.**
attack *v.*, **attaquer.**
attain, **atteindre** (*irr.* 16).
attention, **attention** *f.*
attract, **attirer.**
attraction, **attrait** *m.*
auburn, **brun.**
August, ***août** (14) *m.*
aunt, **tante** *f.*
Austria, **Autriche** *f.*
author, **auteur** *m.*
avail one's self, **profiter.**
avoid, **éviter.**
await, **s'attendre à.**

back: bring back, *see* bring, etc.
bad, **mauvais**: bad weather, **mauvais temps.**
baggage, **bagages** *m. pl.*
baker, **boulanger** *m.*
ball (dance), **bal** *m.*
band (troop), **bande** *f.*
bare, **nu** (§ **56***a*).
barefoot, barefooted, **nu-pieds, pieds nus** (§ **56***a*).
bareheaded, with bare heads, **nu-tête, tête nue** (§ **56***a*).
basket, **panier** *m.*
battle, **bataille** *f.*
be, **être** (*irr.* p. 62); be (in respect to health), **se porter**; be (in respect to weather), **faire** (XXXII. 9*a*): be all over, **en être fait**; be off with one's self, **s'en aller**; be better, **se porter mieux, se remettre**; be to, **devoir** (XXVI. 12*f*).
bear *v.* **supporter**: bear ill-will, *see* ill-will.
beat *v.* **battre** (XX. 3*c*).
beautiful, **beau** (VII. 7).
beauty, **beauté** *f.*
because, **parce que, puisque.**

excuse *n.* **excuse** *f.*
execute, **exécuter.**
exercise *n.* **exercice** *m.*, **thème** *m.*
exhibition, **exposition** *f.*
expect, **attendre.**
experience, **expérience** *f.*
express, **exprimer**; express one's thoughts, **s'exprimer.**
extraordinary, **extraordinaire.**
extremely, **extrêmement.**
eye, **œil** *m.* (*pl.* **yeux** 36*a*).

fact: in fact, **en effet.**
factory, **fabrique** *f.*
fail, **faire défaut à** (6[6]).
faint, **s'évanouir.**
fall, **tomber** (*with* **être**: XXVIII. 6*a*), **déchoir** (*irr.* 70); fall short, **faillir.**
false, **faux** (VII. 8).
fame, **renommée** *f.*
family, **famille** *f.*
famine, **famine** *f.*
Fanny, **Françoise** *f.*
far *adv.* **loin**: far from, (*with inf.*) **loin de**, (*with v.*) **loin que** (§ 137*b*); as far as, *see* as; so far as, *see* so.
farewell, **adieu** *m.*
farm, **ferme** *f.*
farmer, **fermier** *m.*; farmer's wife, **fermière** *f.*
fashion: in that fashion, **de cette façon, de la sorte.**
fast *adv.* **vite.**
father, **père** *m.*
fault, **faute** *f.*, **défaut** *m.*, **erreur** *f.*
favor, **faveur** *f.*
favorite, **favori** (VII. 8).
fear *v.* **craindre** (*irr.* 15), **avoir peur** (11[18]).
fear *n.* **peur** *f.*, **crainte** *f.*: for fear of, **de peur** *or* **crainte de**; for fear that, **de peur** *or* **crainte que . . . ne** (§ 170*a*).
February, **février** *m.*
feeble, **faible.**
feel, **sentir** (*irr.* 40).
festival, **fête** *f.*
fetch, **aller** *or* **venir chercher** (§ 176*e*).
few, **peu** (**de**: V. 4); a few, **quelques** (XIV. 6*c*); but few, **peu**; too few, **trop peu**; the few, **le quelques** (24[8]).
field, **champ** *m.*
fifteen, **quinze.**
fifth, **cinquième, quint** (XVI. 4*c*; § 66).
fifty, **cinquante.**
fight *v.* **combattre** (XX. 3*c*).
fight *n.* **combat** *m.*
find, **trouver**: find one's self, **se trouver**; find again, **retrouver.**
fine *adj.* **beau** (VII. 7); fine weather, **beau, beau temps**; a fine thing, **beau.**
finish, **finir.**
fire, **feu** *m.*
firm, **ferme.**
first *adj.* **premier**: *adv.* **pour le première fois.**
fish, **poisson** *m.*
five, ***cinq** (72*c*).
flee, **fuir** (*irr.* 47).
flight, **fuite** *f.*
flourish, **fleurir** (XIX. 3*b*).
flower, **fleur** *f.*
fold *v.* **plier.**
folks, **gens** *pl.* (§ 15*d*).
follow, **suivre** (*irr.* 33).
foolish, **sot, insensé** (14[11]), **fou** (VII. 7).
foot, **pied** *m.*
for *prep.* **pour, de,** (during) **depuis** (§ 211): as for, **quant à.**
for *conj.* **car.**
forbid, **défendre** (**de**: § 179*b*); God forbid, **à Dieu ne plaise** (§ 166*c*).
force, **force** *f.*
forget, **oublier.**
fork, **fourchette** *f.*
former, **celui-là** (*subst.*), **ce . . . -là** (*adj.*) (§ 91).
formerly, **autrefois.**
fortitude, **courage** *m.*
fortune, **fortune** *f.*; good fortune, **bonheur** *m.*
forty, **quarante.**
four, **quatre.**
fourteen, **quatorze.**
fourth, **quatrième**: fourth part, **quart** *m.*
fowl, **poule** *f.*
franc, **franc** *m.*

capable, **capable**.
capital (chief city), **capitale** *f.*
captain, **capitaine** *m.*
card, **carte** *f.*; at cards, **aux cartes**.
cardinal *adj.* **cardinal**.
care *n.* **soin** *m.*: take care, **avoir soin**; take care not to, **n'avoir garde de** (§ 166*c*).
carriage, **voiture** *f.*
carry, **porter**; carry away, **emporter**.
case, **cas** *m.*: in case that, in case, **au** *or* **en cas que** (§ 137*b*).
cast *v.* **jeter** (XXI. 3*c*).
cat, **chat** *m.*
cause *n.* **raison** *f.*
cause *v.* (*with inf.*, XXXII. 9*b*: § 158*b*, 176*a*) **faire** (*irr.* p. 150).
cautious, **prudent**.
cease, **cesser**.
century, **siècle** *m.*
ceremony, **cérémonie** *f.*
certain, **certain**.
certainly, **certainement**.
chair, **chaise** *f.*
chamber, **chambre** *f.*
change *v.* **changer**, **changer de** (§ 162*f*).
chapter, **chapitre** *m.*
character, **caractère** *m.*
charm *n.* **charme** *m.*
charm *v.* **charmer** (with, **de**).
cheap, cheaply, **à bon marché**, **bon marché**.
cheat *n.* **fourbe** *m.*
cheese, **fromage** *m.*
child, **enfant** *m.f.* (§ 15*e*).
chimney, **cheminée** *f.*
China, **Chine** *f.*
choose, **choisir**.
church, **église** *f.*: to *or* at church, **à l'église**.
citizen, **citoyen** *m.*
city, ***ville** (68*f*) *f.*
clean *v.* **nettoyer**.
clear *v.*: clear out, **s'en aller** (XXIX. 7*c*).
cloak, **manteau** *m.*
cloister, **cloître** *m.*
close *v.* **fermer**.
cloth, **drap** *m.*
clothe, **vêtir** (*irr.* 51).

coat, **habit** *m.*
coffee, **café** *m.*
coffin, **cercueil** *m.*
cold, **froid**: be cold, feel cold, **avoir froid** (XIII. 6); be cold (weather), **faire froid**; grow cold, **se refroidir**.
collar, **col** *m.*
comb, **peigne** *m.*
combatant, **combattant** *m.*
come, **venir** (*irr.* p. 145; *with* **être**, XXVIII. 6*a*), (happen) **advenir**, (arrive, get so far as) **arriver**, **en venir**; come! **allons** (XXVII. 8*d*); come back *or* again, **revenir**; come down, **descendre**; come in, **entrer**.
comedy, **comédie** *f.*
comer, **venu** *m.*
coming *n.* **arrivée** *f.*
command, **commander à** (§ 161*b*).
commit, **commettre** (*irr.* 31), **faire** (*irr.* 23) (**une faute**).
companion, **compagnon** *m.*
company, **compagnie** *f.*
compassion, **compassion** *f.*
conceal, **cacher**.
conceive, **concevoir** (*irr.* 65).
concert, **concert** *m.*
conclude, **conclure** (*irr.* 29).
condemn, ***condamner** (69*a*).
condition, **condition** *f.*
conduct *n.* **conduite** *f.*
conduct *v.* **conduire** (*irr.* 1); conduct one's self, **se conduire**.
confess, **confesser**, **avouer**.
confusion, **confusion** *f.*
conquer, **vaincre** (XX. 3*a*).
conquest, **conquête** *f.*
conscience, **conscience** *f.*
consent *v.* **consentir** (*irr.* 40).
consequently, **donc**, ***conséquemment** (26*a*).
consolation, **consolation** *f.*
conspire, **conspirer**.
constancy, **constance** *f.*
constantly, **constamment**.
constitutional, **constitutionnel**.
constrain, **contraindre** (*irr.* 15).
contact: come *or* be in contact with, **toucher à** (§ 161*b*)
contented, **content**.

continually, **continuellement.**
continue, **continuer,** (remain) **demeurer, continuer.**
cook, **cuisinière** *f.*
correct *v.* **corriger.**
correctly (in tune), **juste.**
Corsica, **Corse** *f.*
cost *v* **coûter.**
count *v.* **compter** (upon, **sur**).
count *n.* **comte** *m.*
country, **pays** *m.*, (one's *or* native) **patrie** *f.*, (as distinguished from the city) **campagne** *f.*: in the country, **à la campagne.**
courage, **courage** *m.*
courageous, **courageux.**
courier, **courrier** *m.*
court, **cour** *f.*
cousin, **cousin** *m.*, **cousine** *f.*
cover *n.* (place at table) **couvert** *m.*
cover *v.* **couvrir** (*irr.* 56).
cow **vache** *f.*
cowardly, **poltron.**
crazy, **fou** (VII. 7).
create, **créer.**
credit *v.*: credit one with, **croire** (quelque chose) **à** (§ 161*e*).
crime, **crime** *m.*
crown *n.* **couronne** *f.*
cruel, **cruel.**
cruelly, **cruellement.**
cry *v.* cry out, **s'écrier.**
cuff *n* **manchette** *f.*
cunning, **fin.**
cup, **tasse** *f.*
curious, **curieux.**
curse *v.* **maudire** (*irr.* 10).

dancer, **danseur** *m.*, **danseuse** *f.*
dangerous, **dangereux.**
Danube, **Danube** *m.*
dare, **oser.**
dash *n.* **intrépidité** *f.*
daughter, **fille** *f.*
day, **jour** *m.*: day before yesterday **avant-hier** *m.* day after tomorrow **après-demain** *m.*
dead *adj.* **mort.**
deal: a great deal, **beaucoup.**
dear, **cher** (VIII. 5*c*).
dearly, **chèrement.**
decay *v.* **déchoir** (*irr.* 70).
decease *v.* **décéder.**
deceive, tromper, **décevoir** (*irr.* 65).
December, **décembre** *m.*
deceptive, **trompeur.**
declare, **déclarer.**
deed, **fait** *m.*
deep, **profond.**
defect, **défaut** *m.*
defend, **défendre.**
Demosthenes, **Démosthène** *m.*
Denmark, **Danemark** *m.*
deny, **nier, renier** (21[11]).
depart, **partir** (*irr.* 38).
departure, **départ** *m.*
depend, **se fier** (upon, **à**: 5[21]), **dépendre** (on *or* upon, **de**: § 162*b*)
depot, **gare** *f.*
describe, **décrire** (*irr.* 12).
deserve, **mériter.**
design *n.* **dessein** *m.*
desire *v.* **vouloir** (*irr.* 72), **désirer, avoir envie de.**
despair *n.* **désespoir** *m.*
despair *v.* **désespérer.**
destination, **destination** *f.*
die, **mourir** (*irr.* 62; *with* **être,** XXVIII. 6*a*).
difference, **différence** *f.*
difficult, **difficile.**
difficulty, **difficulté** *f.*
dine, **dîner.**
dining-room, **salle à manger** *f.* (§ 185*b*).
dinner, **dîner** *m.*
dint: by dint of, **à force de.**
directly, **sur le champ.**
disappear **disparaître** (*irr.* 18).
discomfit, **déconfire** (*irr.* 7).
discover, **découvrir** (*irr.* 56).
disgrace, **honte** *f.*
dish, **plat** *m.*
displease, **déplaire** (*irr.* 24).
dissatisfied, **mécontent** (with, **de**).
distrust, **se défier de.**
do, **faire** (*irr* p. 150): do without **se passer de.**
doctor, **docteur** *m.*
dog, **chien** *m.*
door, **porte** *f.*
doubt *v.* **douter** (if, **que . . . ne**: § 170*a*).
down-stairs, **en bas.**

dozen, **douzaine** *f.*
draw, **traire** (*irr.* 21) : draw near, **s'approcher** (to, **de** : § 162*f*).
dress *v.* **s'habiller.**
dress *n.* **robe** *f.*
dressmaker, **couturière** *f.*
drink, **boire** (*irr.* 27).
drive off *or* away, **chasser.**
dry *adj.* **sec** (VII. 6*b*).
dry *v.* **sécher.**
due, **dû** (XXVI. 12*e*).
dull, (tedious) **ennuyeux,** (stupid) **lourd d'esprit.**
during, **pendant, durant** : during the past, during . . . past, **depuis** (§ 211).
duty, **devoir** *m.*
dwell, **demeurer.**

each, (*adj.*) **chaque,** (*n.*) **chacun** : each one, **chacun** ; each other, **l'un l'autre** (XXVII. 7), **se** (XXIX. 8).
ear, **oreille** *f.*
earlier, **plus tôt, de meilleure heure.**
early, **de bonne heure** : so early, **de si bonne heure** ; quite early, **de bien** (*or* **très**) **bonne heure.**
earth, **terre** *f.*
easily, **facilement.**
east, ***est** (76*a*) *m.* ; the East, **l'Orient** *m.*
easy, **aisé, facile.**
eat, **manger.**
editor, **rédacteur** *m.*
Edward, **Édouard.**
effort, **effort** *m.*
egg, **œuf** (*pl.* ***œufs** : 61*a*) *m.*
eight, ***huit** (76*a*).
eighteen, ***dix-huit** (81*b*)
eighth, **huitième.**
eighty, **quatre-vingts** (XV. 2*b*).
either *conj.* **ou** (. . . **ou,** or), (nor . . . either) **non plus** (§ 169*c*).
either *pron.* **l'un ou l'autre** (XXVII. 7).
eleven, ***onze** (64*f*).
Elizabeth, **Élisabeth.**
eloquent, **éloquent.**
else : nothing else, **rien d'autre** ; nothing else than, **ne . . . rien que.**
elsewhere, **ailleurs, autre part** (§ 28*a*).
emperor, **empereur** *m.*
employ, **employer.**
empress, **impératrice** *f.*
enclosed, **ci-inclus** (§ 56*a*).
encourage, **encourager.**
encouragement, **encouragement.**
end *n.* **fin** *f.*, (object) **but** (76*a*) *m.* : make an end *or* finish, **en finir.**
end *v.* **finir.**
endure, **durer.**
enemy, **ennemi** *m.*
England, **Angleterre** *f.*
English, **anglais, d'Angleterre.**
enough, **assez** (V. 4*a*).
enrich, **enrichir.**
enter, **entrer** (*with* **être** : XXVIII. 6*a*)
entire, **entier.**
entirely, **tout à fait, entièrement, tout** (§ 116*c*).
enjoy, **jouir de** (§ 162*f*).
equally, **également** ; equally . . . and, **aussi . . . que.**
escape *v.* (*intr.*) **s'échapper,** (*tr.*) **échapper à** (§ 161*c*).
especially, **surtout.**
essay, **essai** *m.*
esteem, **estimer.**
eternally, **éternellement.**
Etna, **Etna** *m.*
Europe, **Europe** *f.*
eve, **veille** *f.*
even, **même** (§ 114*c*), (not excepting) **jusqu'à** (§ 155*a*), (*with gerund* ; § 190*a*) **tout.**
evening, **soir, soirée** : in the evening, **du soir.**
every, **chaque, tout** (XIV. 6*b* ; § 109) ; every one, **chacun** ; everybody, **tout le monde** ; everything, **tout, toute chose** ; every day, **tous les jours** ; everywhere, **partout.**
evil *adj.* **mauvais.**
evil *n.* **mal** *m.*
example, **exemple** *m.*
excel, **exceller.**
excellent, **excellent.**
except, **hors, excepté** (§ 56*a*).
exclaim, **s'écrier.**

excuse *n.* **excuse** *f.*
execute, **exécuter.**
exercise *n.* **exercice** *m.*, **thème** *m.*
exhibition, **exposition** *f.*
expect, **attendre.**
experience, **expérience** *f.*
express, **exprimer**; express one's thoughts, **s'exprimer.**
extraordinary, **extraordinaire.**
extremely, **extrêmement.**
eye, **œil** *m.* (*pl.* **yeux** 36*a*).

fact: in fact, **en effet.**
factory, **fabrique** *f.*
fail, **faire défaut à** (6[6]).
faint, **s'évanouir.**
fall, **tomber** (*with* **être**: XXVIII. 6*a*), **déchoir** (*irr.* 70); fall short, **faillir.**
false, **faux** (VII. 8).
fame, **renommée** *f.*
family, **famille** *f.*
famine, **famine** *f.*
Fanny, **Françoise** *f.*
far *adv.* loin: far from, (*with inf*) **loin de**, (*with v.*) **loin que** (§ 137*b*); as far as, *see* as; so far as, *see* so.
farewell, **adieu** *m.*
farm, **ferme** *f.*
farmer, **fermier** *m.*; farmer's wife, **fermière** *f.*
fashion: in that fashion, **de cette façon, de la sorte.**
fast *adv.* **vite.**
father, **père** *m.*
fault, **faute** *f.*, **défaut** *m.*, **erreur** *f.*
favor, **faveur** *f.*
favorite, **favori** (VII. 8).
fear *v.* **craindre** (*irr.* 15), **avoir peur** (11[18]).
fear *n.* **peur** *f.*, **crainte** *f.*: for fear of, **de peur** *or* **crainte de**; for fear that, **de peur** *or* **crainte que . . . ne** (§ 170*a*).
February, **février** *m.*
feeble, **faible.**
feel, **sentir** (*irr.* 40).
festival, **fête** *f.*
fetch, **aller** *or* **venir chercher** (§ 176*e*).
few, **peu** (**de**: V. 4); a few, **quelques** (XIV. 6*c*); but few, **peu**; too few, **trop peu**; the few, **le**[s] **quelques** (24[5]).
field, **champ** *m.*
fifteen, **quinze.**
fifth, **cinquième, quint** (XVI. 4*c*; § 66).
fifty, **cinquante.**
fight *v.* **combattre** (XX. 3*c*).
fight *n.* **combat** *m.*
find, **trouver**: find one's self, **se trouver**; find again, **retrouver.**
fine *adj.* **beau** (VII. 7); fine weather, **beau, beau temps**; a fine thing, **beau.**
finish, **finir.**
fire, **feu** *m.*
firm, **ferme.**
first *adj.* **premier**: *adv.* **pour le**[s] **première fois.**
fish, **poisson** *m.*
five, ***cinq** (72*c*).
flee, **fuir** (*irr.* 47).
flight, **fuite** *f.*
flourish, **fleurir** (XIX. 3*b*).
flower, **fleur** *f.*
fold *v.* **plier.**
folks, **gens** *pl.* (§ 15*d*).
follow, **suivre** (*irr.* 33).
foolish, **sot, insensé** (14[11]), **fou** (VII. 7).
foot, **pied** *m.*
for *prep.* **pour, de,** (during) **depuis** (§ 211): as for, **quant à.**
for *conj.* **car.**
forbid, **défendre** (**de**: § 179*b*); God forbid, **à Dieu ne plaise** (§ 166*c*).
force, **force** *f.*
forget, **oublier.**
fork, **fourchette** *f.*
former, **celui-là** (*subst.*), **ce . . . -là** (*adj.*) (§ 91).
formerly, **autrefois.**
fortitude, **courage** *m.*
fortune, **fortune** *f.*; good fortune, **bonheur** *m.*
forty, **quarante.**
four, **quatre.**
fourteen, **quatorze.**
fourth, **quatrième**: fourth part, **quart** *m.*
fowl, **poule** *f.*
franc, **franc** *m.*

France, **France** *f.*
Frances, **Françoise** *f.*
Francis, Frank, **François** *m.*
frank, **franc** (VII. 6*b*).
frankly, **franchement.**
freeze, **geler.**
French, **français, de France.**
Friday, **vendredi** *m.*; Fridays, **le vendredi** (§ 46).
friend, **ami** *m.*, **amie** *f.*
friendship, **amitié** *f.*
from, **de, dès, d'avec, depuis** (§ 211).
front: **in front of, en face de**; to the front of, **au-devant de.**
fruit, **fruit** *m.*
full, **plein.**
fully, **pleinement.**

gain *v.* **gagner.**
game, **jeu** *m.*
garden, **jardin** *m.*
gate, **porte** *f.*
gather, (*trans.*) **cueillir** (*irr.* 46), (*intr.*) **se réunir.**
general *n.* **général** *m.*
Geneva, **Genève** *f.*
gentleman, **monsieur** (XIV. 4), **gentilhomme** (*pl.* ***gentilshommes**: 68*c*).
German, **allemand.**
Germany, **Allemagne** *f.*
get, **obtenir** (*irr.* 61): get up, **se lever**; get ready, **s'apprêter.**
gift, **cadeau** *m.*, **présent** *m.*, **don** *m.*
girl, **fille** *f.*
give, **donner**: give a present, **faire** (*irr.* 23) **un cadeau.**
glad, **aise**; very glad, **bien aise.**
glass, **verre** *m.*
glory, **gloire** *f.*
go, **aller** (*irr.* p. 128), **être** (§ 176*e*), (go away) **partir** (*irr.* 38): go away, **s'en aller** (XXIX. 7*c*), **partir** (*irr.* 38); go out, **sortir** (*irr.* 39); be going to (*with inf.*), **aller** (XXVII. 9*c*).
God, **Dieu** *m.*; god, **dieu** *m.*
gold, **or** *m.*
good *adj.* **bon** (IX. 3): good fortune *or* luck, **bonheur** *m.*; good morning *or* day, **bonjour** *m.*
government, **gouvernement** *m.*
grace, **grâce** *f.*
grand, **grand.**
grandfather, **grand-père** *m.*
grandmother, **grand'mère** *f.* (§ 4*e*).
grandson, **petit-fils** *m.*
great, **grand**: a great deal, **beaucoup** (V. 4).
Great Britain, **Grande-Bretagne** *f.*
greatly, **beaucoup, grandement.**
Greece, **Grèce** *f.*
grief, **chagrin** *m.*
grow, **croître** (*irr.* 19): grow old, **vieillir**; grow pale, **pâlir**; grow cold, **se refroidir.**
grudge: have a grudge at, **en vouloir à** (XXIV. 6*f*).
guest, **hôte** *m.*
guide, **guider, conduire** (*irr.* 1).

habit, **habitude** *f.*
hail *v.* **grêler.**
hair, **cheveux** *m. pl.*
half *n.* **moitié.**
half *adj.* (XVI. 4*a*; § 56*a*) **demi, demi-**: half an hour, **une demi-heure.**
hand *n.* **main** *f.*
hand *v.* **remettre** (*irr.* 31).
handkerchief, **mouchoir** *m.*
handle *v.* **manier.**
handsome, **beau** (VII. 7).
Hanover, **Hanovre** *m.*
happen, **arriver** (*with* **être**: XXVIII. 6*a*), **venir à** (*with inf.*: § 176*e*).
happily, **heureusement.**
happiness, **bonheur** *m.*
happy, **heureux, content.**
hard, **dur**, (difficult) **difficile.**
hardly, **à peine, ne . . . guère** (§ 167*a*): I hardly know, **je ne sache pas** (§ 131*a*).
Harriet, **Henriette** *f.*
haste: make haste, **se hâter, se dépêcher.**
hasten, **se hâter, se dépêcher.**
hat, **chapeau** *m.*
hate *v.* **haïr** (XIX. 3*a*).
have, **avoir** (*irr.* p. 58); *as auxil.*, **avoir** *or* **être** (XXVIII. 5–8, XXIX. 3, XXX. 1*a*); have **to,**

avoir à (§182*c*), être obligé de, falloir (XXX. 7).
he, il (68*d*), lui.
head, tête *f.*
health, santé *f.*
hear, entendre, ouïr (*irr.* 49).
heart, cœur *m.*
heaven, ciel (II. 5) *m.*
heir, héritier *m.*
help *v.* aider; help! à moi (§ 205*d*).
hen, poule *f.*
hence *adv.* d'ici.
henceforth, désormais.
Henrietta, Henriette *f.*
Henry, Henri *m.*
her *pron.* (XXII.) la, lui, elle (XXIII. 2); *poss* (XIV. 1–3) son; hers, sien (XXVII. 1, 2).
here, ici; -ci (XIII. 3, XXIV.; § 91–2); here is *or* are, voici (§ 201).
herewith, ci-joint, ci-inclus (§ 56*a*).
hero, 'héros *m.*
hesitate, hésiter.
hide one's self, se cacher.
high, 'haut.
highly, 'hautement.
him (XXII.), le, lui.
his (XIV. 1–3, XXVII. 1, 2), son, sien.
history, histoire *f.*
hold, tenir (*irr.* 61).
Holland, 'Hollande *f.*
home: at home, chez moi (etc.), à la maison; go home, aller à la maison.
honest, honnête (VIII. 5*c*).
honor *n.* honneur *m.*
honor *v.* honorer.
hope *v.* espérer, (wish) souhaiter.
hope *n.* espoir *m.*, espérance *f.*
horrible, horrible.
horse, cheval *m.*
horseback: on horseback, à cheval (§ 161*d*).
hot, chaud.
hour, heure *f.*: half an hour, une demi-heure (XVI. 4*a*).
house, maison *f.*: at the house of, chez.
how, comment (*interrog., relat., exclam.*), que (XXV. 4*d*); how many *or* much, combien, (*exclam.*) que de (24[9]).
however *adv.* quelque . . . que (§ 107*d*), si . . . que, pour . . . que, tout . . . que (§ 116*d*, 137*c*).
however *conj.*, cependant, toutefois.
human, humain.
hundred, cent (XV. 2*b*, 6; § 67*a*).
hunger, faim *f.*; be hungry, avoir faim (XIII. 6).
hurry *v.* se hâter.
husband, mari *m.*

I, je, moi.
idle, paresseux.
if, si (29*b*; XXXIV. 1*b*; § 138*a*), quand, que (§ 138*c*, 221*b*).
ignorant, ignorant.
ill *adj.* malade; *adv.* mal (XXXI. 8).
ill *n.* mal *m.*
illustrious, illustre.
ill-will: bear ill-will to, en vouloir à.
imagine, imaginer, s'imaginer, se figurer.
immediately, tout de suite.
impatience, impatience *f.*
impious, impie.
important, impertant; be important, importer, être nécessaire.
impossible, impossible.
in, en, dans (VI. 1*a*; § 207), à (VI. 4, XIII. 6*a*), de (§ 204*b*).
inch, pouce *m.*
inclined, enclin.
inconsolable, inconsolable (for, de).
indeed, en effet, (= to be sure) il est vrai.
India, Indes *f. pl.*
indignation, indignation *f.*
infinite: an infinite amount, infiniment.
influence, influence *f.*
inhabitant, habitant *m.*
injure, nuire (*irr.* 4) à (§ 161*b*).
injustice, injustice *f.*
ink, encre *f.*
inside *adv.* dedans.
insist, exiger.
instead of, au lieu de.

instruct, **instruire** (*irr.* 2).
interest *v.* **intéresser**; interesting, **intéressant**.
interrupt, **interrompre** (XX. 3*b*).
intimate *adj.* **intime**.
into, **en, dans** (VI. 1*a*, 4; § 207).
introduce one's self, **s'introduire** (*irr.* 1).
invincible, **invincible**.
invite, **inviter**.
iron, **fer** *m.*; *adj.* (= of iron), **de fer, en fer**.
it, **il, elle**; **le, la**; *as indef. subj.* (XI. 2, XXIV. 2; § 147*b*), **ce, il**.
Italy, **Italie** *f.*
Italian, **italien, d'Italie**.
its, **son** (XIV.), **sien** (XXVII. 1, 2), **en** (§ 88*b*).

James, **Jacques** *m.*
Jane, **Jeanne** *f.*
January, **janvier** *m.*
Japan, **Japon** *m.*
jealousy, **jalousie** *f.*
Joan, Joanna, **Jeanne** *f.*
John, **Jean** *m.*
join, **joindre** (*irr.* 17).
journal, **journal** *m.*
journey, **voyage** *m.*
joy, **joie** *f.*
judge *n.* **juge** *m.*; be a judge of, **s'entendre à**.
judge *v.*: judge proper, **juger bon**.
Julia, **Julie** *f.*
Julius, **Jules** *m.*
July, **juillet** *m.*
June, **juin** *m.*
just *adj.* **juste**.
just *adv.*: have *or* had just (done anything), **viens** *or* **venais de** (XXXI. 11*b*).
justice, **justice** *f.*

keep, **tenir** (*irr.* 61), **garder**; (word *or* a secret) **tenir**; keep silent, **taire** (*irr.* 25); keep doing anything, *impf.* (III. 7*b*; § 119*a*).
kill, **tuer**.
kind *adj.* **bon** (to, **pour**).
kind *n.* **sorte** *f.*, **genre** *m.*
kindness, **bonté** *f.*
king, **roi** *m.*
kingdom, **royaume** *m.*
kitchen, **cuisine** *f.*
knife, **couteau** *m.*
know, **savoir** (*irr.* p. 159), (be acquainted with) **connaître** (*irr.* 18); know how (*with inf.*) **savoir** (XXXIV. 7*a*); know to be, **savoir** (XXXIV. 7*a*).

labor *v.* **travailler**.
laborious, **laborieux**.
lack *n.*: for lack of, **faute de**.
lady, **dame** *f.*; my lady, the lady, **madame** (XIV. 4); the young lady, **mademoiselle** (XIV. 4).
lament, **se plaindre** (*irr.* 15).
language, **langue** *f.*
large, **grand**.
last, **dernier** (VIII. 5*c*; § 60*b*); at last, **enfin**.
late, (tardy) **tard**, (deceased) **feu** (§ 56*a*); later, **plus tard**.
lately, **dernièrement**, ***récemment** (26*a*).
latter, **celui-ci** (§ 91).
laugh *v.* **rire** (*irr.* 13).
laugh *n.* **rire** *m.*
law, **loi** *f.*
lazy, **paresseux**.
lead *v.* **mener, conduire**, (induce) **amener**.
leaf, **feuille** *f.*
learn, **apprendre** (*irr.* 30).
learned *adj.* **savant**.
least, *adv.* **le moins** (XXXI. 8); at least, **au moins**.
leave, (*trans.*, abandon) **quitter**, (leave behind) **laisser**; (*intr.*, depart) **partir** (*irr.* 38).
leg, **jambe** *f.*
lend, **prêter**.
length, **longueur** *f.*
lengthily, **longuement**.
less *adv.* **moins** (XXXI. 8); the less, **moins** (XXXIV. 3).
lesson, **leçon** *f.*
lest, **que . . . ne** (§ 170*a*).
let, **laisser**; *impv.* (VIII. 7*c*; § 141).
letter, **lettre** *f.*
Lewis, **Louis** *m.*
liable, **sujet** (VII. 4*a*).
library, **bibliothèque** *f.*

lie *v.* (be false) **mentir** (*irr.* 41).
life, **vie** *f.*: in all my life, **de ma vie** (§ 167*c*).
light *n.* (daylight) **jour** *m.*
like *v.* **aimer, vouloir** (*irr.* p. 114); like better, **aimer mieux.**
like *adj.* **pareil.**
like *prep. conj.* **comme, en** (§ 207*c*).
lily, ***lis** (74*d*) *m.*
listen, **écouter**; listen to, **écouter**; listen to reason, **entendre raison.**
literature, **littérature** *f.*
little *adv.* **peu** (**de**, V. 4, XXXI. 8); a little, **un peu, un peu de**; little by little, **peu à peu, petit à petit**; too little, **trop peu de**; but little (*with v.*), **ne . . . guère** (XII. 5).
little *adj.* **petit.**
live, (dwell) **demeurer**, (be alive) **vivre** (*irr.* 32); long live! **vive** (§ 144*a*).
lively, **vif**; in a lively manner, **vivement.**
London, **Londres** *m.*
long *adj.* **long** (VII. 6*b*).
long *adv.* (a long time) **longtemps**; longer, **encore**; any longer, **plus longtemps** (19[5]); no longer, **ne . . . plus** (XII. 5); so *or* as long as, **tant que** (§ 137*a*).
look *n.* **regard** *m.*
look *v.* (appear to be) **avoir l'air** (§ 56*b*); look at, **regarder**; look for, **chercher.**
lose, **perdre, manquer.**
loss, **perte** *f.*
loud *adj. adv.* **'haut.**
Louis, **Louis** *m.*
Louisa, **Louise** *f.*
love *v.* **aimer**; be loved, **se faire aimer** (22[5]).
love *n.* **amour** *m.f.* (§ 15*c*); in love with, **amoureux de.**
low, **bas**; in a low tone, low (*adv.*), **bas.**
Lyons, **Lyon** *m.*

mad, **fou** (VII. 7).
madam, **madame** (XIV. 4).
maid, (servant) **domestique** *f.*
make, **faire** (*irr.* p. 150); (cause to be) **rendre,**
man, **homme** *m.*
manner, **manière** *f.*; in a manner to, **de façon à.**
manufacturer, **fabricant** *m.*
many, **beaucoup de** (V. 4), **bien de** (*with art.*: V. 4*b*), **maint** (§ 113); many a, **maint** (§ 113); as many, **autant de**; how many, **combien de, que de** (XXV. 4*c*); so many, **tant de**; too many, **trop de.**
map, **carte.**
march *v.* **marcher.**
March, ***mars** *m.* (74*d*).
Marcus Aurelius, **Marc-Aurèle** *m.*
Maria, **Marie** *f.*
marry, (*trans.*) **épeuser, se marier avec**; (*intr.*) **se marier**; be married, **se marier**; newly-married (person), **nouveau marié** (§ 56*d*).
Mary, **Marie**, *f.*
master, **maître** *m.*
matter *n.* **affaire** *f.*; what is the matter with him, **qu'a-t-il?** (XIII. 6*b*).
matter *v.* importer (§ 148*b*).
May, **mai** *m.*
may *v.*, *subj. pres.* (IX. 6*b*), **pouvoir** (*irr.* p. 119; XXV. 8*f*).
maybe, **peut-être.**
me, **me, moi.**
meadow, **pré** *m.*
mean *v.* **vouloir dire** (XXXIII. 7*d*).
means: the means (of anything), **de quoi** (§ 103*d*), **les moyens**; by means of, **moyennant, à force de**; by no means, **ne . . . nullement, ne . . . point.**
meanwhile, **en attendant, cependant.**
meat, **viande** *f.*
meddle with, **se mêler à** *or* **de.**
meet *v.* (*trans.*) **rencontrer**, (*intr.*) **se rencontrer**; go to meet, **aller à la rencontre** *or* **au-devant de.**
melon, **melon** *m.*
memory, **mémoire** *f.*
mendacious, **menteur** *m.*, **menteuse** *f.* (§ 16).
merchant, **négociant** *m.*, (retail) **marchand** *m.*
merely by, **rien qu'à** *or* **que de** (§ 168*a*),

meter, **mètre** *m.*
Mexico, **Mexique** *m.*
midday, **midi** *m.* (XVII. 4*b*).
midnight, **minuit** *m.* (XVII. 4*b*).
might *v., subj.* (IX. 6*b*), **pouvoir** (XXV. 8*f*).
milk *n.* **lait** *m.*
milk *v.* **traire** (*irr.* 21).
million, **million** *m.*
mind *n.* **esprit** *m.*, **intelligence** *f.*
mine, **mien** (XXVII. 1, 2).
minister, **ministre** *m.*
minute *n.* **minute** *f.*
misdeed, **forfait** *m.*, **méfait** *m.*
misfortune, **malheur** *m.*
Miss, **Mademoiselle** *f.* (XIV. 4), **Mlle.**
miss *v.* **faillir** (*irr.* 50).
mistake : be mistaken, **se tromper.**
mock, (*trans.*) **se moquer de.**
moderately, **modérément.**
modern, **moderne.**
modest, **modeste.**
monarch, **monarque** *m.*
Monday, **lundi** *m.*
money, **argent** *m.*
monk, **moine** *m.*
month, **mois** *m.*
more, **plus** (XXXI. 8), **plus de** (V. 4) ; the more, **plus** (XXXIV. 3).
moreover, **d'ailleurs, de plus.**
morning, **matin** *m.*, **matinée** *f.* ; good-morning, **bonjour** *m.*
morrow, **lendemain** *m.*
most, **le plus** (XXXI. 8), **le plus de, la plupart de** (*with art.* ; V. 4*b*).
mother, **mère** *f.*
mountain, **montagne** *f.*
move, **mouvoir** (*irr.* 76), (with emotion, the feelings) **émouvoir** (*irr.* 76), **toucher.**
Mr., **Monsieur** *m.*, **M.** (XIV. 4).
Mrs., **Madame** *f.*, **Mme.** (XIV. 4).
much, (*with v.*) **beaucoup, très, fort** ; (*with n.*) **beaucoup de** (V. 4) ; as much, **autant de** ; how much, **combien, combien de** ; so much, **tant, tant de** ; too much, **trop, trop de** ; very much, **beaucoup** ; not much, **ne . . . pas beaucoup, ne . . . guère.**
music, **musique** *f.*
musician, **musicien** *m.* **musicienne** *f.*
must, **il faut** *etc.* (XXX. 6, 7), **devoir** (*irr.* p. 124 ; XXVI. 12*f*).
my, **mon** (XIV.).

naked, **nu.**
name, **nom** *m.*
napkin, **serviette** *f.*
Napoleon, **Napoléon** *m.*
near *adv.* **près, auprès** ; too near, **trop près.**
near, near to, *prep.* **près, près de** ; go *or* draw near *or* near to, **s'approcher de** (§ 162*f*).
nearly, **à peu près, près de** (14[16]).
neat, ***net** (76*a*), (clean) **propre.**
necessary : be necessary, **falloir** (*irr.* p. 141).
need *n.* **besoin** *m.*
neighbor, **voisin** *m.*, **voisine** *f.*
neither *pron.* **ni l'un ni l'autre** (XXVII. 7).
neither *conj.* **ni** (XXXIV. 3).
nephew, **neveu** *m.*
never, **ne . . . jamais** (XII. 4 ; § 167).
nevertheless, **néanmoins.**
new, **nouveau** (VII. 7), **neuf.**
news *n.* **nouvelle** *f.* (*s. or pl.*).
newspaper, **journal** *m.*
next *adj.* **prochain** ; next day, **lendemain, jour suivant.**
next *prep.*, **près** ; *conj.* **puis.**
niece, **nièce** *f.*
night, **nuit** *f.*
nine, **neuf** (61*a*, 85*c*).
nineteen, ***dix-neuf** (81*b*).
ninety, ***quatre-vingt-dix** (81*b*).
ninth, **neuvième.**
no *resp.* **non** (§ 169, 200).
no, none, no one *adj. n.* **ne . . . aucun, ne . . . nul** (XIV. 6*a*, *d*, XXVII. 6 ; § 111), **ne . . . pas** *or* **point de** (§ 35*b*) ; no longer, **ne . . . plus** (XII. 5).
noble, **noble.**
nobody, no one, **ne . . . personne** (XII. 4 ; § 167).
noise, **bruit** *m.*
none, *see* no, *adj.*
nor, **ni** (XII. 5).

north, **nord** *m.*
Norway, **Norvège** *f.*
not, **ne**; **ne . . . pas, ne . . . point** (§ 164–6), **non, non pas** (§ 169); not any, **ne . . . aucun, ne . . . nul, ne . . . pas de** (§ 35*b*); not anything, **ne rien**; not ever, **ne . . . jamais**; not any one, **ne . . . personne.**
nothing, **ne . . . rien** (XII. 4; § 167).
notify, **avertir.**
novel *adj.* **nouveau** (VII. 7).
novel *n.* **roman** *m.*
November, **novembre** *m.*
now *adv.* **à présent, maintenant**; *conj.* **or**; now . . . now, **tantôt . . . tantôt.**
nowhere, **nulle part** (§ 28*a*).
null *adj.* **nul** (§ 167*f*).

obey, **obéir à** (§ 161*b*).
oblige: be obliged to, **falloir** (XXX. 7).
obtain, **obtenir** (*irr.* 61).
occasion, **occasion** *f.*
o'clock, **heure** *f.* (XVII. 4).
occupy one's self, **s'occuper** (with, **de**).
October, **octobre** *m.*
of, **de** (III. 1–3); **en, à.**
off: be off, **s'en aller** (XXIX. 7*c*).
offend, **offenser.**
offer, **offrir** (*irr.* 53).
officer, **officier** *m.*
often, **souvent** (XXXI. 7).
old, **vieux** (VII. 7), (so many years) **âgé de**; too old, **trop âgé**; be (so many years) old, **avoir . . . ans** (XVII. 5); grow old, **vieillir.**
on, **sur.**
once, **une fois**; at once, (immediately) **tout de suite, sur le champ,** (at the same time) **à la fois.**
one, **un** (XV. 2*a*), (*indef.*) **on** (XXVII. 4); no one, *see* no; some one, *see* some; one another, **l'un l'autre** (XXVII. 7), **se** XXIX. 8); one who, anyone who, **quiconque, qui** (§ 103*a*).
onion, ***oignon** (43*a*) *m.*
only *adj.* **seul.**
only *adv.* **ne . . . que** (XII. 5; § 167*a*, *d*), **seulement.**
open *v.* **ouvrir** (*irr.* 55), **éclore** (*irr.* 28).
opportunity, **occasion** *f.*
opposite to, **vis-à-vis de.**
or, **ou, soit** (XXXIV. 3).
orator, **orateur** *m.*
order: in order to, **afin de, pour**; in order that, **afin que, pour que** (§ 137*d*).
ordinarily, **ordinairement.**
other, **autre** (XXVII. 6, 7; § 115); others, other people than one's self, **autrui** (XXVII. 6*a*).
otherwise, **autrement.**
ought, **devoir** (*irr.* p. 124).
our, **notre** (XIV. 1).
ours, **nôtre** (XXVII. 1, 2).
out of, **hors de, hors.**
outside, **dehors.**
over, **sur,** (above) **au-dessus de,** (beyond) **par-dessus**; triumph over, **triompher de**; be all over, **c'en être fait.**
owe, **devoir** (*irr.* p. 124; § 179*d*).
own *adj.* **propre** (§ 89).
owner, **possesseur** *m.*
ox, **bœuf** *m.* (*pl.* ***bœufs**; 61*a*).

package, **paquet** *m.*
page, (of a book etc.) **page** *f.*
pain, **mal** (XIII. 6*a*; § 37*a*), (grief) **peine** *f.*
paint *v.* **peindre** (*irr.* 16).
painter, **peintre** *m.*
painting *n.* **peinture** *f.*
pale: grow pale, **pâlir.**
paper, **papier** *m.*
pardon *v.* **pardonner** (to [any one], **à**).
parent, **parent** *m.*
Paris, **Paris** *m.*
Parnassus, **Parnasse** *m.*
parrot, **perroquet** *m.*
part *v.* (*trans.*) **séparer,** (*intr.* **se séparer.**
part *n.* **part** *f.*, **partie** *f.*
pass *v.* **passer.**
passage, **passage** *m.*
passion, **passion** *f.*

past: half past, etc., *see* XVII. 4; during . . . past, **depuis** (§ 211).
peach, **pêche** *f.*
pear, **poire** *f.*
peas, **pois** *m.*
peasant, ***paysan** (37*a*) *m.*
pen, **plume** *f.*
pencil, **crayon** *m.*
pending *prep.* **pendant.**
people (nation) **peuple** *m.* (folks) **gens** (§ 15*d*), (*indef.*) **on** (XXVII. 4).
pepper, **poivre** *m.*
perceive, **apercevoir** (*irr.* 65), **s'apercevoir de.**
perfect *adj.* **parfait.**
perfect *v.* **perfectionner.**
perfectly, **parfaitement.**
perhaps, **peut-être, probablement.**
permit, **permettre** (*irr.* 31) **à.**
persuade, **persuader.**
philosopher, **philosophe** *m.*
piano, **piano** *m.*
picture, **tableau** *m.*
piece, **morceau** *m.*
pillage, **piller.**
pitiable, **pitoyable.**
pity *v.* **plaindre** (*irr.* 15).
pity *n.* **pitié**: it's a pity, **c'est dommage.**
place, **lieu** *m.*, **place** *f.*; take place, **avoir lieu.**
plan *n.* **projet** *m.*
plate *n.* **assiette** *f.*
play *v.* (*trans.*) **jouer de,** (*intr.*) **jouer.**
plaything, **jouet** *m.*
please, **plaire à** (*irr.* 24; § 161*b*); if you please, **s'il vous plaît**; please to (*impv.*), **veuillez** (XXIV. 6*c*); be pleased to, **se plaire à.**
pleasure, **plaisir** *m.*
pocket, **poche** *f.*
poet, **poète** *m.*
poetry, **poésie** *f.*
point, **point** *m.*; on the point of, **sur le point de.**
poor, **pauvre** (VIII. 5*c*).
portrait, **portrait** *m.*
possess, **posséder.**
possible, **possible.**
post, post-office, **poste** *f.*
pot, **pot** *m.*
potato, **pomme de terre** *f.*
poultry-yard, **basse-cour** *f.*
pound, **livre** *f.*
power, **pouvoir** *m.*
praise *v.* **louer.**
precede, **précéder.**
prefer, **préférer.**
prepaid, **franc de port** (§ 56*a*).
prepare, **préparer.**
presence, **présence** *f.*
present *n.* **cadeau** *m.*, **présent** *m.*, **don** *m.*
present *adj.*: at present, **à présent, maintenant**; be present at, **assister à** (§ 161*b*).
present *v.* **présenter.**
presently, **présentement.**
pretended, **soi-disant** (§ 56*c*, 189*c*).
prettily, **joliment.**
pretty, **joli.**
prevent, **empêcher** (§ 170*a*).
priest, **prêtre** *m.*
prince, **prince** *m.*
princess, **princesse** *f.*
prison, **prison** *f.*; in *or* into prison, **en prison.**
probably, **probablement.**
problem, **problème** *m.*
profession, **profession** *f.*
professor, **professeur** *m.*
profit, **profiter** (by, **de**).
profound, **profond.**
project, **projet** *m.*
promise, **promettre** (*irr.* 31: to, **à**).
promptly, ***promptement** (71*a*).
proper: judge proper, **juger bon.**
property, **propriété**; man of property, **propriétaire.**
protect, **protéger.**
proud, **orgueilleux.**
provide, **pourvoir** (*irr.* 69): provided that, **pourvu que** (§ 137*b*).
prudently, ***prudemment** (26*a*).
Prussia, **Prusse** *f.*
punish, **punir.**
punishment, **punition** *f.*
pupil, (scholar) **élève** *m.*
put, **mettre** (*irr.* 31); put off, **différer.**
Pyrenees, **Pyrénées** *f.*

soldier, **soldat** *m.*
solely, **seulement.**
solve, **résoudre** (*irr.* 36).
some, **de** *with art.* (IV.; § 35), **en** (XXIII. 7), **quelque** (XIV. 6*c*; § 107), **quelques uns** (XXVII. 5), **tel** (§ 110*a*); some time, **quelque temps**; some one, somebody, **quelqu'un** (XXVII. 5); some men are, **il y a des gens qui sont** (5[11]).
something, **quelque chose** (XXVII. 5; § 107*a*); something to . . . with, **de quoi.**
sometimes, **quelquefois.**
somewhere, **quelque part** (§ 28*a*).
son, ***fils** (68*c*, 74*d*) *m.*
soon, **tôt, bientôt**; as soon as, **aussitôt que, dès que.**
sooner, **plus tôt,** (rather) **plutôt.**
sorrow, **peine** *f.*, **douleur** *f.*
sorry, **fâché.**
soup, **soupe** *f.*
south, ***sud** (60*a*) *m.*
South America, **Amérique du Sud** *f.*
sovereign *adj.* **souverain.**
Spain, **Espagne** *f.*
Spanish, **Espagnol, d'Espagne.**
speak, **parler** (with, **à**).
spite: in spite of, **malgré.**
sponge, **éponge** *f.*
spoon, ***cuiller** (73*b*) *f.*
stand: stand still, **s'arrêter.**
start, **partir** (*irr.* 38).
station, **gare** *f.*
stay, **rester.**
steamboat, **bateau à vapeur** *m.*, **vapeur** *m.* (§ 15*a*).
stew *n.* **ragoût** *m.*
still *adv.* **encore**; still more, **davantage**; *conj.* **pourtant.**
stir *v.* **bouger** (§ 166*a*).
St. Martin's day, **la Saint-Martin** (§ 42*f*).
stocking, **bas** *m.*
stop, **s'arrêter.**
store, **magasin** *m.*
story, **récit** *m.*, **conte** *m.*, **histoire** *f.*
straight, **droit.**
street, **rue** *f.*
stretch, **étendre.**
strike, **frapper.**
strong, **fort.**
studio, **atelier** *m.*
study *v.* **étudier.**
stupid, **sot.**
style, **manière** *f.*, **mode** *f.*; in the style of, **à la** (§ 42*g*).
succeed, **réussir.**
successful, **heureux.**
successor, **successeur** *m.*
such, **tel** (§ 110); such a, **un tel**; such-and-such, **tel.**
suddenly, **soudain, soudainement, tout à coup.**
suffer, **souffrir** (*irr.* 54).
suffice, be sufficient, **suffire** (*irr.* 6).
sugar, **sucre** *m.*
Sunday, **dimanche** *m.*
suppose, **supposer, croire.**
sure, **sûr.**
surprise, **surprendre** (*irr.* 30); surprised, **surpris** (at, **de**).
surround, **entourer.**
suspect, **se douter de.**
Sweden, **Suède** *f.*
sweet, **doux** (VII. 8).
sweetly, **doucement.**
sweetmeat, **confiture** *f.*
swim, **nager.**
Switzerland, **Suisse** *f.*

table, **table** *f.*
table-cloth, **nappe** *f.*
tailor, **tailleur** *m.*
take, **prendre** (*irr.* 30), (conduct) **mener**; take back (along with one), **ramener**; take off *or* away, **ôter** (from, **à**: § 161*c*); take place, **avoir lieu**; take a walk, **se promener**; take care, **avoir soin.**
tale, **conte** *m.*, **récit** *m.*
talent, **talent** *m.*
talk, **parler.**
tall, **grand.**
task, **tâche** *f.*
taste, **goût** *m.*
tea, **thé** *m.*
teach, **enseigner.**
teacher, **maître** *m.*
tear *n.* **larme** *f.*
tedious, **ennuyeux, ennuyant.**

tell, **dire** (*irr.* p. 155), **raconter** (14^{19}); tell a lie, **mentir** (*irr.* 41).
ten, ***dix** (81*b*).
tenth, ***dixième** (81*c*).
Thames, **Tamise** *f.*
than, **que** (IX. 4), **de** (XV. 9; § 204*c*).
thank *v.* **remercier** (for, **de**).
that *pron.* **ce**, **ce** . . .**-là** (XIII. 2, 3), **celui**, **celui-là**, **cela** (XXIV.); (*relat.*) **qui**, **que**, **lequel** (XXVI.); all that, **tout ce que**; that which, **ce qui** *or* **que** (XXVI. 10*a*).
that *conj.* **que**, **pour que**, **afin que**.
thaw, **dégeler**.
theatre, **théâtre** *m.*
thee, **to**, **toi**.
their, **leur** (XIV.).
theirs, **leur** (XXVII. 1, 2).
them, **les**, **leur** (XXII. 5), **eux**, **elles** (XXIII.).
theme, **thème** *m.*
then *adv.* **alors**; *conj.* **donc**, **alors**, **puis**.
there, **là**, **-là** (XIII. 3, XXIV. 1*a*), **y** (XXIII. 3); there (*demonstr.*) is *or* are, **voilà** (§ 201); there is etc., **il y a** etc. (XXX. 4).
they, **ils** *m.*, **elles** *f.*, (*indef.*) **on** (XXVII. 4).
thief, **voleur** *m.*
thine, **tien** (XXVII. 1, 2).
thing, **chose** *f.*; other things, **autre chose**.
think, **penser**, **songer**; think of (turn one's thoughts to), **penser à**; think about (have an opinion of), **penser de**; (be of opinion) **croire** (*irr.* 26); (think to be, regard as) **croire**, **censer** (17^{11}).
thinker, **penseur** *m.*
third, **troisième**, (third part) **tiers** (§ 66).
thirst, **soif** *f.*; be thirsty, **avoir soif** (XIII. 6).
thirteen, **treize**.
thirty, **trente**.
this, **ce**, **ce** . . . **-ci** (XIII. 2, 3), **celui**, **celui-ci**, **ceci** (XXIV.); this *or* that is, **voilà** (§ 201).
thou, **tu**.
though, *same as* although.
thousand, ***mille** (68*f*), ***mil** (68*d*)
three, **trois**.
through, **par**, **à travers**.
throw, **jeter** (XXI. 3*c*).
thunder *v.* **tonner**.
Thursday, **jeudi** *m.*
thus, **ainsi**, **de la sorte**.
thy, **ton** (XIV. 1, 2).
till *conj.* **jusqu'à ce que**, **que**.
time, (period) **temps** *m.*, (successive) **fois** *f.* (XVII. 7; § 69*a*), (of day) **heure** *f.*; in good time, **de bonne heure**; at the time of, **lors de**; at the same time, **en même temps**; have time, **avoir le temps**.
tire, **fatiguer**; be tired, **se fatiguer**.
tiresome, **fatigant**, **ennuyeux**.
title, **titre** *m.*
to, **à** (III. 4–6), **en**, **dans**; **de** (§ 61*d*); *with inf.*, **à**, **de**, **pour**.
to-day, **aujourd'hui**.
together, **ensemble**.
to-morrow, **demain**; day after to-morrow, **après-demain**.
too, **trop**; too much *or* many, **trop de**; too little *or* few, **trop peu de**.
tooth, **dent** *f.*
touch, **toucher**.
toward, **vers**, **envers**; toward evening, **vers le soir**; (about, somewhere near) **vers** *or* **sur les** (§ 70*b*).
town, ***ville** (68*f*).
tragedy, **tragédie** *f.*
translate, **traduire** (*irr.* 1).
travel, **voyager**.
treat, **traiter** (as, **de**: § 162*g*).
tree, **arbre** *m.*
tremble, **trembler**.
trial, **épreuve** *f.*
triumph, **triompher** (over, **de**).
triumphant, **triomphant**.
trouble, (vexation) **ennui** *m.*, (effort) **peine** *f.*
true, **vrai**.
truly, **vraiment**, **véritablement**.
trunk, **malle** *f.*
trust *v.* **se fier à**.
truth, **vérité** *f.*
try, **essayer**; try in vain, **avoir beau** (§ 176*f*).

Tuesday, **mardi** *m.*; Tuesdays, **le mardi**.
tureen, **soupière** *f.*
twelve, **douze**; twelve o'clock, **midi** *or* **minuit** (XVII. 4*b*) *m.*
twentieth, **vingtième**.
twenty, **vingt** (76*a*).
twice, **deux fois**, ***bis** (74*d*) (§ 69*a*).
two, **deux**.
ugly, **laid**, **vilain**.
uncle, **oncle** *m.*
under, **sous**.
understand, **comprendre** (*irr.* 30).
undertake, **entreprendre** (*irr.* 30).
unformed, **informe**.
unfortunately, **malheureusement**.
unhappiness, **malheur** *m.*
unhappy, **malheureux**.
united, **uni**; United Provinces, **Provinces-Unies**; United States, **États-Unis**.
unless, **à moins que . . . ne** (§ 137*b*, 170*d*), **sans que**, **hors que** (§ 137*b*).
until *conj.* **jusqu'à ce que** (§ 137*a*), **en attendant que** (§ 137*a*).
unworthy, **indigne**.
upon, **sur**.
up-stairs, **en haut**.
us, **nous**.
use *v.* **user de** (§ 162*f*), **se servir** (*irr.* 44) **de**; used to, *impf.* (§ 119*a*).
use *n.*: make use of, **se servir** (*irr.* 44) **de**.
usually, **ordinairement**.

vacillate, ***vaciller** (68*f*).
vain, **vain**.
value: have the value of, **valoir** (*irr.* 73).
vase, **vase** *m.*
vegetable *n.* **légume** *m.*
velvet, **velours** *m.*
Venice, **Venise** *f.*
very *adv.* **très**, **bien**, **fort**; very much, **beaucoup**.
very *adj.* **même** (§ 114*a*).
Vesuvius, **Vésuve** *m.*
vie, **le disputer** (§ 82*b*).
Vienna, **Vienne** *f.*
village, ***village** (68*f*) *m.*
violet, **violette** *f.*
virtue, **vertu** *f.*
visit *v.* **visiter**, **aller voir** (§ 318*e*).
voice, **voix** *f.*; with louder voice, **d'un ton plus haut**.
volume, **volume** *m.*, **tome** *m.*

wait, **attendre**; wait for, **attendre**.
wake, (*trans.*) **éveiller**, (*intr.*) **s'éveiller**.
walk, **marcher**, **se promener**; take a walk, **se promener**; go to walk, **aller se promener**.
want, (desire) **vouloir** (*irr.* p. 114), (lack, be in need of) **falloir** (*irr.* p. 141; XXX. 8).
war, **guerre** *f.*
warm *adj.* **chaud**: feel *or* be warm, **avoir chaud** (XIII. 6); be warm weather, **faire chaud** (XXXII. 9*a*).
watch *n.* (timekeeper) **montre** *f.*
water, **eau** *f.*
we, **nous**.
weak, **faible**.
weakness, **faiblesse** *f.*
wealth, **fortune** *f.*
weary *v.* **fatiguer**.
weather, **temps** *m.*
Wednesday, **mercredi** *m.*
week, **semaine** *f.*
weep, weep for, **pleurer**.
well, **bien** (XXXI. 8); wish well, **vouloir du bien**; be as well, **valoir autant**.
well-behaved, **sage**.
well-satisfied, **content** (with, **de**).
west, ***ouest** (76*a*).
what *adj.* **quel** (XIII. 4); *subst.* **qui**, **que**, **quoi** (XXV.), **ce qui** *or* **que** (XXVI. 10*a*).
whatever, **quoi que**, **quel que** (§ 104), **quelque . . . que** (§ 107*c*), **quelconque** (§ 108).
when *adv.* **quand**, (in *or* at which) **où**; *conj.* **quand**, **lorsque**, **dès que**, **que**.
whence, **d'où**, **dont** (XXVI. 7*b*).
where, **où** (XXVI. 8).
whereas, **tandis que**.
wherever, **où que** (§ 127*c*), **en quelque endroit que**.
wherewith, **de quoi** (XXVI. 6*a*).

whether, **si** (XXXIV. 1*b*), **que** (15[19]); whether . . . or, **soit** . . . **soit, soit que** . . . **soit que** (§ 137*b*), **que** . . . **ou que** (13[23]).
which *adj.* **quel** (XIII. 4), *subst.* **lequel** (XXV. 5), (*relat.*) **qui, que, lequel** (XXVI.); of which, **dont** (XXVI. 7); to *or* at which, **où**.
while *conj.* **pendant que, tandis que**.
white, **blanc** (VII. 6*b*).
who, whom, qui (XXV.), (*relat.*) **qui, que, lequel** (XXVI.; § 103).
whoever, **qui que, quel que** (§ 104), **qui** (§ 103*a*), **quiconque** (XXVI. 9).
whomsoever, **qui que ce soit** (§ 104*a*, 167*c*).
whole, **tout entier, tout**.
whose, **de qui, duquel, dont**, (to whom belonging) **à qui**.
why, **pourquoi, que** (XXV. 4*d*).
wicked, **mauvais**.
wife, ***femme** (26*a*) *f.*
will, be willing *v.* **vouloir** (*irr.* p. 114; XXIV. 6*e*).
will *n.* **volonté** *f.*
William, **Guillaume** *m.*
window, **fenêtre** *f.*
win, **gagner**.
wind *n.* **vent** *m.*
wine, **vin** *m.*
winter, ***hiver** (73*b*) *m.*
wisdom, **sagesse** *f.*
wise, **sage**.
wish *v.* **vouloir** (*irr.* p. 114), **désirer**; (wish good-day etc.) **souhaiter**.
wit, **esprit** *m.*
with, **avec** (§ 208), (by) **par, à** (§ 36), **de** (§ 162*c*), (at the house of) **chez**.
withdraw, **se retirer**.
within *adv.* **dedans**; *prep.* **en** (§ 207*c*).
without *prep.* **sans** (§ 210), **à moins de** (*with inf.*); go *or* do without, **se passer de**; *conj.* (XXXIV. 5*b*; § 137*b*, 138*c*), **sans que, hors que, que** . . . **ne**.
without *adv.* **dehors**.
woman, ***femme** (26*a*) *f.*
wood, **bois** *m.*
wooden, **de bois** (V. 1*b*).
wool, **laine** *f.*
word, **parole** *f.*, **mot** (§ 167*c*) *m.*; keep one's word, **tenir parole**.
work *n.* (labor) **travail** *m.*, (production) **ouvrage** *m.*
work *v.* **travailler**.
workman, **ouvrier** *m.*
workwoman, **ouvrière** *f.*
world, **monde** *m.*
worse *adj.* **pire** (IX. 3); *adv.* **pis** (XXXI. 8).
worst, **le pire** (IX. 3); *adv.* **le pis** (XXXI. 8).
worth : be worth, **valoir** (*irr.* 73).
worthy, **digne**.
would to God, **plût à Dieu** (§ 131*b*), **Dieu veuille**.
wound *v.* **blesser**.
write, **écrire** (*irr.* 12).
wrong *n.* **tort**; be wrong *or* in the wrong, **avoir tort** (XIII. 6).

yard *n.* (measure) **mètre** *m.*
year, **an** *m.*, **année** *f.*
yes, **oui** (§ 200), **si** (§ 200*b*).
yesterday, ***hier** (73*a*); day before yesterday, **avant-hier**.
yet *adv.* **encore**; *conj.* **pourtant, toutefois**.
yonder *adv.* **là-bas**.
you, **vous** (I. 9*b*, VII. 1*b*).
young, **jeune**; young lady, **mademoiselle** (XIV. 4).
your, **votre** (XIV.).
yours, **vôtre** (XXVII. 1, 2).

GENERAL INDEX.

The references are to pages; but the numbers of subdivisions occurring on the page are added in parentheses where called for, in order to the ready finding of a reference.

All French and English words are to be looked for in the Vocabularies, and not in the Index.

a, pronun'n of, 4–5; when silent, 5 (**14**); when elided, 5 (**15**); its accent-marks, 5 (**16**).
absolute construction, 216, 337.
abstract nouns, inclusive article with, 37 (**5***b*), 224 (**40***a*).
accent of a word, 4; relation of Latin and French accent, 204 (**2***a*).
accent-marks or written accents, 2–3:—*and see* acute, circumflex, grave, *and the different vowels.*
accusative, Latin, represented usually by form of French word, 206 (**4***b*).
accusative, Latin constructions of, represented in French, 215–6; accus. with infinitive, constructions resembling, 317 (*d*).
acute accent, 3–4:—*and see the different vowels.*
address, **vous** chiefly used in, 28 (**9***b*); titles used, 73.
adjectives, gender, 46–9, 233; number, 50–1, 233–4; agreement, 46–7, 234–5, 292–3; place, when attributive, 51–2, 236–7; difference of meaning, depending on difference of place, 52 (**5***c*), 236; comparison, 54–5, 234; adverbs from, 143–5; adj. used as adverbs, 145 (**9**), 234–5, 260 (**116***c*); as nouns, 235–6; with **de** and **à** before modifying noun, 239–40; before dependent infinitive, 327–8; adj. from present participles, 332–3 (**189***e*).
adjective clauses, 346; subjunctive used in, 278–9.
adverbs, 340–1; made from adjectives, 143–5; adjectives used as, 145, 234–5, 260 (**116***c*); comparison of adv., 145; classes, 148–9; adv. of quantity, and their construction with following nouns, 40–1; negative adv. and their uses, 65–7, 305–11; position of adv., 150, 340–1; adv. in adjective or noun construction, 40, 149 (**2***b*), 340.
adverbial clauses, 346–7; subjunctive used in, 279–81.
adverbial object of a verb, 215–6, 296.
age, mode of expression of, 83 (**5**).
ai, diphthong, pronun'n of, 11; **oi** sometimes written for, 12 (**44***b*).
aim, ain, nasal vowels, pronun'n of, 14 (**50***c*).
alphabet, 1–2.
am, an, nasal vowels, pronun'n of, 13; exceptions, 15 (**54**).
antecedent, pronoun, of relative, 112 (**2**), 113 (**4***a*), 123–4.
apostrophe and its use, 3.
appositional noun, omission of article before, 229 (**50***a*); app. infinitive, 315.
arrangement of the sentence, 350–4.

articles, 27–8, 223–32 :—*and see* definite *and* indefinite.
aspirate **h**, 18–9.
au, diphthong, pronun'n of, 11 (**4o**).
auxiliaries making compound tenses of verb, 58, 132–3 ; of reflexive verb, 135 (**3**) ; making passive conjugation, 131 ; aux. of immediate future, 129 (**9***c*) ; of immediate past, 146 (**11***b*) ; causative aux., 151.

b, pronun'n of, 15.
bodily conditions, expressions of, 70 (**6**).

c, pronun'n of, 16 ; hard and soft values of, 16 ; **cc**, 16 (**58***c*) ; use of cedilla with, 3 (**7**), 16 ; when silent as final, 16.
capital letters, use of, 1–2, 73 (**4***c*).
cardinal numerals, *see* numerals.
carrying-on of a final consonant to following vowel, 25–6.
cases mostly wanting in French, 33, 215 ; loss of Latin cases, 205–6 ; case relations expressed by **de** and **à**, 215–23.
causative verb-phrases, with **faire**, 151 ; direct and indirect object with such, 296 (**158***b*).
cedilla, 3 (**7**).
ch, digraph, pronun'n of, 16 ; how treated in syllabication, 2 (**4***c*).
circumflex accent, 3 :—*and see the different vowels.*
clauses, subordinate or dependent, 345–7 ; use of subjunctive in, 274–83.
close and open sounds of **e**, 7.
cognate object of a verb, 295 (**157***b*).
collective subject, agreement of verb with, 287–8.
color, nouns of, used adjectively, 233 (**53***d*).
comparative of adjective, 54 ; of adverb, 145 ; original comp., 54, 145 ; **de** after comp., with measure of difference, 239 (**61***c*) ; after **plus**, **moins**, 342 (**204***c*) ; expletive **ne** after comp., 311 (**170***c*).
comparison of adjectives, 54–5 ; of adverbs, 145 ; relation of Latin and French comp., 206 (**4***f*).
compound forms of the verb, with auxiliaries, 58, 86 (**5**).
compound nouns, gender, 212–3 ; number, 214–5.
compound subject, agreement of verb with, 287–8.
concessive use of subjunctive, 278 (*c*), 280 (**137***b*).
conditional meaning, inversion to express, 351–2.
conditional tense (or mode), 45, 125 ; derived from infinitive, 85–6 ; imperfect used for, 265 (**119***b*) ; pluperfect subjunctive used for, 273 (*d*).
conditional perfect tense, 58 (**6**), 267 (**126**).
conditional use of subjunctive, 273 (*c*) ; of imperative, 204 (**142**).
conjugation of verbs, 57 etc.: of **avoir**, 57–60 ; of **être**, 62–3 ; negative conj., 65–7 ; of regular verbs, 85 etc. ; of irregular verbs, 113 etc. ; relation of French to Latin conj., 206–8.
conjugations, the three regular, 85 ; a fourth, 85 (**1***a*).
conjunctions, 157–9, 345–7 ; coördinating conj., 345 ; subordinating, 345–7 ; conjunction-phrases, 158–9, 280 (**136***a*).
conjunctive and disjunctive pronouns, 102–10, 244–8.
consonants, pronun'n of, 15–26 ; relation of French and Latin consonants, 205 :—*and see the different letters.*
coördinating conjunctions, 345.
countries and provinces, the article used with names of, 43–4, 225–6.
ct final, pronun'n of, 23 (**7***a*).

d, pronun'n of, 17 ; linking of, 26 (**85**).
date, expression of, 82–3, 241–2.
dative case, represented by noun with **à**, 34 (**4***a*) ; dative pronoun, 103 (**5**), 109, 247 ; ethical dative, so-called, 295 (**156***f*).

days of week, names of, 82.
declension, relation of Latin and French, 205–6.
definite article, 27; combinations with **de** and **à**, 33–4; use in partitive expression, 36–7, 223–4; inclusive use, 37–8, 224; with names of countries, 43–4, 225–6; of mountains, 45, 226 (**42***a*); with other proper names, 44–5, 226; with title, 227 (**43**); makes superlative from comparative, 54–5, 145; its repetition, 28 (**7**), 55 (**5***b*), 228 (**49**); used for possessive, 73 (**5***a*), 227 (**45**); distributively, 227–8; special cases, 228, 243 (**70***b*).
demonstratives, 253; dem. adjectives, 69; pronouns, 111–3.
dependent or subordinate clauses, 345–7; use of subjunctive in, 274–83.
diæresis, uses of, 3 (**3**).
dialects of French, 203 (*b*).
diphthongs, so-called, pronun'n of, 11–2; real diphthongs wanting in French, 11 (**38***a*):—*and see the different letters.*
disjunctive and conjunctive pronouns, 102–10, 244–8.
division of words into syllables, 2.
double consonants, pronun'n of, 15 (**56***c*).

e, pron'n of, 5–8; mute **e**, 5–6; **e** acute and grave, 6–7; **e** circumflex, 7 (**24**); **e** before consonant in same syllable, 7–8; exceptional cases, 8; elision of, when final, 8; written to denote the soft sound of **g**, 17 (**62***e*).
é, **e** acute, 6–7; **é** or **ê** before **ge**, 6 (**20***c*); **é** final of a verb-form before **je**, 89 (*c*).
è, **e** grave, 6–7.
ê, **e** circumflex, 7.
eau, pron'n of, 11 (**40**).
ei, diphthong, pron'n of, 11.
ein, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 14 (**50***c*).
elision of final vowels, 3 (**9**); of **e**, 8 (**26***c*); of **a**, 5 (**15**); of **i**, 9 (**29***b*).
em, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13, 14 (**50***e*, **53***a*), 15 (**54**).
-emment, pron'n of, 8 (**26***a*).
en, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13; exceptional cases, 14 (**50***e*, **52***a*, **53***a*), 15 (**54**).
ethical dative, so called, 295 (**156***f*).
eu, diphthong, pron'n of, 11; in forms of **avoir**, 11 (**41***b*).
eun, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 14 (**51**).
ex-, pron'n of, 24 (**81***a*).
exclamations, 347; use of **quel** in, 70; of **que** and **quoi**, 118 (**4***c*).
expletive **ne**, in dependent clauses, 310–1.

f, pron'n of, 17.
factitively used verbs, 295 (**157***b*).
feminine of adjectives, how formed, 47–9, 233; of nouns, 212:—*and see* gender.
feminine rhyme, 355–6.
final clauses, subjunctive in, 281.
final consonants, pron'n of, 15; linking of, 25–6.
first regular conjugation of verbs, 85, 87–9; its irregular verbs, 98–100.
fourth regular conjugation (as sometimes reckoned), 85 (**1***a*).
fractional numerals, 80.
French language, history, and relation to Latin, 203–9; dialects, 203; related languages, 204; earliest literature, 204; relation to Latin in regard to pronounced form, 204–5; to inflection, 205–8; to compounds, 208; borrowed words in French, 208.
future tense, 41; its uses, 266; made from infinitive, 85–6; fut. of immediate action, 129 (**9***c*); present in fut. sense, 264 (**118***c*), 266 (**123***a*).
future perfect tense, 58 (**6**); its use, 267; perfect used for, 266 (**121***d*).

g, pron'n of, 17–8; hard and soft values of, 17; double, 17; final, 17; when linked, 26 (**85***b*); or-

thographic use of **e** and **u** after, 17-8; **gn**, pron'n of, 18.
ge, **è** or **é** before, 6 (**20***c*).
gender, of nouns, 27, 209–13; relation of French gender to Latin, 206, 209–10; gender as shown by ending, 210; by meaning, 210–11; double, 211–2; double gender-form, 212; gender of compound nouns, 212–3 (**18***b*); gender of adjective words, 27 (**2**); of articles, 27; gender-forms of adjectives, 46–9; of pronouns, 69–70, 72–3, 107–128.
genitive case, represented by noun with **de**, 33 (1*a*), 217–20; gen. of appurtenance, 217; of equivalence, 217; of characteristic, 217–8; of material, 218; partitive, 218–20; genitive pronoun, 109–10, 247–8.
Germanic words in French, 203.
gerund, 57 (**3***c*, *d*), 333.
gn, digraph, pron'n of, 18; how treated in syllabication, 2 (**4***c*).
grammatical subject, **ce** or **il**, 288–9.
grave accent, 3 (**5**):—*and see the different vowels.*

h, pron'n of, 18–9; mute or silent and aspirate **h**, 18–9; **h** in digraphs, 19 (**6***g*); in syllabication, 2 (**4***f*).
hard **c**, 16; **ch**, 16 (**5***a*); **g**, 17.
hyphen, 4 (**10**); used in interrogative verb-forms, 29 (**10***b*, *c*); in compound numerals, 77; before object pronouns, 104, 105 (**9***c*).
hypothetical sentence, verb-forms used in, 267 (**125***c*), 273 (*d*), 280 (**137***b*).

i, pron'n of, 8–9; accent, 9 (**29***a*); elision of final, 9 (**29***b*); metrical treatment, with following vowel, 8 (**28***b*), 357–8.
im, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13 (**50**); exceptions, 15 (**54***c*).
imperative, 49; use of, 283–4; made from present indicative, 86 (**6**); impv. use of present subjunctive persons, 52 (**7***c*), 284; impv. sense of future, 266 (**123***c*); of infinitive, 318 (**176***g*).
imperfect indicative tense, 34–5; made from present participle, 86 (**4**); uses of, 264–5; for English pluperfect, 265 (**119***c*); for conditional, 265 (**119***b*).
impersonal or indefinite subject, 63–4, 112, 139–40, 288–9.
impersonal verbs, 139–42; form of participle in compound tenses, 336 (**194***a*).
in, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13 (**50**).
inclusive article, 37 (**5**), 227.
indefinite article, 28; uses, 229–30.
indefinite pronouns, 73–4, 127–8, 258–60.
indefinite or impersonal subject, **ce** or **il**, 63–4, 112, 288–9.
indicative mode, 272.
indirect object, pronoun forms for, 103 (**5**); with verb, 295–6.
indirect statement, 272 (**129***a*), 275 (**134***c*).
infinitive, 57 (**2**); sign of, 57 (**2***b*), 154 (**4***b*), 313 (**172***b*); other prepositions and preposition-phrases governing, 154 (**4**, **5**), 330–1; constructions: inf. as ordinary noun, 313 (**172***c*); as subject of verb, 313–4; as predicate, 314; as attribute, 329 (*b*); in apposition, 315; as object: without sign, 316–8; with **de**, 320–1; with **à**, 323–5; with **de** or **à**, 325–6; inf. dependent on an adjective, 327–8; on a noun, 328–9; future and conditional made from inf., 85–6; imperative use of inf., 318 (*g*); inf. with **de** in sense of 'began to,' 321 (*g*).
interjected phrases, inversion in, 351.
interjections, 347; interjectional imperatives, 283 (**140***c*).
interrogatives, 70, 117–9, 149 (**6***a*), 158 (**2**), 254–5; form of interr. sentence, 28–9, 118–9, 350–1; with negative, 67 (**8**); interr. paraphrases, 97 (**8***a*), 119 (**7**),

351 (224*c*) ; interr. used also as relatives, 121.
intransitive verbs, auxiliary taken by, 132–3.
inverted order of sentence, 350–4 ; in questions, 350–1 ; in interjected phrases, 351 ; in optative phrases, 351 ; in conditional phrases, 351–2 ; in phrases beginning with a part of the predicate, 352–3.
irregular verbs of first conjugation, 98–100 ; irr. verbs in general, 113–4 ; their conjugation in detail, 114–198 ; alphabetical list, with references, 199–201.

j, pron'n of, 19.
je, pron'n of, after verb, 6 (**18***e*).

k, occurrence and pron'n of, 19.

l, pron'n of, 19–20 ; liquid **l**, after **i**, 19–20 ; after **i** preceded by other vowels, 20 (**68***b*) ; exceptional cases, 19, 20.
Latin, relation of, to French, 203–9 :—*and see* French.
letters, French names of, 1.
linking or carrying-on of final consonants to following vowels, 25–6.
liquid **l**, *see* **l**.

m, pron'n of, 20–1 ; makes preceding vowel nasal, 12–5 :—*see* nasal vowels.
masculine and feminine, *see* gender.
masculine rhyme, 355–6.
material, expressed by noun with **de**, 40, 218 (**33**).
measure, **de** used in expression of, after noun or adverb, 40, 218 ; after adjective, 83 (**6**), 239 (**61***c*) ; expressed by noun used absolutely, 216 (*c*).
mn, pron'n after vowel, 14 (**53***b*), 21 (**69***a*).
modes of the verb, their uses, 272–86 ; indicative, 272 ; subjunctive, 272–83 ; imperative, 283–4.
month, day of, how expressed, 80 (**3***a*) ; names of months, 82.
mountain, article used with the name of a, 45 (**5***e*), 226 (**42***a*).
mute **e**, 5–6 ; after another vowel, 8 (**28***a*), 10 (**35**), 12 (**45**), 357–8.
mute **h**, 18–9.
mute syllables, restricted occurrence of, 6–7 ; their value in verse, 354–8.

n, pron'n of, 21 ; makes preceding vowel nasal, 12–5 :—*see* nasal vowels.
nasal vowels, pron'n of, 12–5 ; **an, am, en, en**, 13 ; **on, om**, 13 ; **im, in, ym, yn, aim, ain, ein**, 13–4 ; **oin**, 14 (**50***d*) ; **um, un, eun**, 14 ; exceptional cases, 14–5 ; carrying-on of their **n** when final, 26 (**86***c*).
negative conjugation, 65–7, 305–11 ; expletive negation in dependent clauses, 310–1.
nominative forms, Latin, retained in French, 206 (**4***c*).
nouns, gender, 27, 209–13 ; number, 30–1, 213–5 ; case, absence of, 33, 215 ; case-relations as expressed by **de** and **à**, 33, 34, 215–22 ; absolute and adverbial constructions, 215–6 ; partitive noun, 36–7, 220 ; inclusive sense of noun, 37, 224 ; infinitive depending on noun, 328–9.
noun-clauses, *see* substantive clauses.
number, relation of Latin and French, 206 (**4***d*) ; number-forms, *see* plural.
numerals, 76–84, 241–3 ; cardinals, 76–7, 241–2 ; ordinals, 79–80, 242 ; cardinals for English ordinals, 79–80 ; fractionals, 80, 242 ; collectives, 242 ; multiplicatives, 242 ; numeral adverbs, 242–3 ; **de** for 'than' after a numeral, 342 (**204***c*).

o, pron'n of, 9 ; accent, 9 (**31***b*).
object of verb, 294–8 ; direct and indirect, 295 ; both with same

verb, 295–6 ; two direct objects forbidden with verb or verb-phrase, 296 ; adverbial object, 296.
object-pronouns, 103–5 ; place, 104–5 ; other details of use, 244–8.
objective predicate, 293 (154).
œ, diphthong, before **il**, 11 (41*c*).
œu, pron'n of, 11 (41*a*).
oi, diphthong, pron'n of, 12 ; **oi** written for **ai**, 12 (44*b*).
oin, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 14 (50*d*).
Old French, character of, 204 ; declension in, 206.
om, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13 (49).
on, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13 (49) ; exception, 15 (54*b*).
open and close **e**, 7.
optative phrases, inversion in, 351.
optative use of subjunctive, 272 (131*b*).
ordinal numerals :—*see* numerals.
ou, diphthong, pron'n of, 12 ; with following vowel, 12 (42*a*), 358 (239).

p, pron'n of, 21.
participles, 57–8, 332–40 ; present participle, 332–4 ; past participle, 334–40 ; in absolute construction, 337.
partitive sense of a noun, 36, 220 ; expressed by **de**, with or without article, 36–7, 220 ; use or omission of article, 37 (3), 57, 67, 223–4 ; of **de**, 37 (4), 67 (7*a*), 220 (*c*) ; **en** as partitive pronoun, 110.
passive conjugation, 131–2 ; loss of Latin passive, 207 (*a*) ; English passive otherwise expressed in French, 127 (4*c*), 132 (4) ; expression of 'by' after passive, 132 (3), 304 (209).
past anterior tense, 58 (6) ; its use, 266.
past definite tense, so-called, 38 (7*c*) :—*see* preterit.
past indefinite tense, so-called, 58 (6*a*) :—*see* perfect.
past or passive participle, 57–8, 334–40 ; compound tenses and passive made with, 58, 86, 131 ; form of participle in such combinations, 58 (5*b*), 122 (2*b*), 131 (1*b*), 133 (8), 135 (4), 334–40 ; redundant auxiliary pple, 268.
past time, use of present for, 264 (118*b*) ; for past time continuing to present, 264 (118*d*).
perfect tense, 58 (6) ; its use, 58 (6*a*), 265–6 ; English perfect represented by French present, 264 (118*d*).
personal endings of verb, Latin and French, compared, 207 (*c*).
personal pronouns, 102–10, 244–51 ; conjunctive and disjunctive, 102 ; subject, 102–3 ; object, 103–5 ; reflexive, 108, 247 ; **en** and **y**, 109–10, 247–8 ; further details of use, 244–8.
ph, digraph, pron'n of, 19 (64*g*) ; how treated in syllabication, 2 (4*c*).
place where expressed by simple noun, 215 (28*a*).
pluperfect tense, indicative 58 (6) ; its use, 266 ; English plupf. represented by French imperfect, 265 (*e*).
pluperfect tense, subjunctive, use of, 34 (1*b*), 273 (*d*).
plural of nouns, how formed, 30–1, 213–5 ; of adjectives, 46, 50–1.
poetry, irregular arrangement in, 353 ; rules of metrical construction of, 254–8.
possessives, adjective, 72–3 ; substantive, 126–7 ; rules for use, 73 (3, 5), 251 ; replaced by article or personal pronoun, 73 (5*a*), 281.
possessive case, *see* genitive.
predicate noun or adjective, 292–3 ; prepositional phrase, 293 (153) ; infinitive, 314 ; objective predicate, 293 (154) ; form of personal pronoun in pred., 108 (3*d*, *e*) ; of interrogative, 118 (4*a*) ; of relative, 122 (2*a*) ; omission of article with pred. noun, 230 (*b*).

prepositions, 341–4; commonest, 33–4, 43; others, and preposition-phrases, 153–4; prep. followed by infinitive, 154, 330–1.
prepositional phrases with **à** and **de**, as adjuncts of noun, 217–8; of adjective, 239–40; of verb, 298–305.
present participle, 57; apparent use with **en**, or gerund, 57 (3*c*,*d*), 333; constructions, 332–3, 337; certain tenses made from, 86 (4); also plural persons of present, 86 (4*a*), 114 (5*c*).
present tense, indicative, uses, 264; in past sense, 264 (118*b*); in future, 264 (118*c*); for English perfect, 264 (118*d*); its plural forms found from present participle, 86 (4*a*), 114 (5*c*); imperative found from it, 86 (6).
present tense, subjunctive, 52; use of its persons as imperative, 52–3, 272–3 (131*b*), 284 (141).
preterit tense, 38; distinction from imperfect, 264–5; imperfect subjunctive found from it, 86(7).
principal parts of the verb, 85; formation of the other parts from them, 85–6.
pronouns and pronominal adjectives, 69–74, 102–128, 244–63; personal, 102–10, 244–51; reflexive, 108, 135, 247; possessive, 72–3, 126–7, 251–3; demonstrative, 69, 111–3, 253–4; interrogative, 70, 117–9, 254–5; relative, 70 (5*b*), 121–4, 255–7; indefinite, 74, 127–8, 258–63:—*and see the different classes.*
pronunciation, 4–26; of vowels, 4–10; of diphthongs, 11–2; of nasal vowels, 12–5; of consonants, 15–26:—*and see the different letters.*
proper names, use of article with, 43–5, 225–6; prepositions used with, 44, 342 (205*b*), 343 (207*b*); plural of, 213–4; adjective with, 236 (*c*); capitals for, 1.

q, pron'n of, 21.
quantity of French vowels, 4 (12).

r, pron'n of, 21–2; final, 22; double, 22 (73*d*).
reciprocal use of reflexive forms, 138.
reflexive pronoun, 108 (4), 135 (2), 247.
reflexive conjugation, 135–8; form of participle in compound tenses, 335.
regular conjugations of verbs, 85–97.
relative pronouns and pronominal adjective, 70 (5*b*), 121–4, 255–7; adverbs, 123, 149 (6*a*), 158 (2); compound relatives, 255 (103); relative not omitted, 124 (11).
repetition, of article, 28 (7); of prepositions **de** and **à**, 34 (5); of **en**, 344 (213*a*); of **de** with alternatives, 218 (134*c*); of subject or object of a verb by a pronoun, 246 (82*a*), 288–9; of compound subject by a pronoun, 288 (146*a*).
responsive particles, 149 (6*c*), 341.
rhyme, rules of, in French verse, 355–7; masculine and feminine rhyme, 355–6.

s, pron'n of, 22–3; when as *z*, 22; final **s**, 22–3; **ss**, **sc**, **sch**, 22; linked or carried on, 26 (85*b*).
s, lost, replaced by circumflex on vowel, 3 (6*c*).
s added to 2d sing. impv. before **en** and **y**, 88 (10*a*), 129 (9*a*); **s** final of 1st sing. omitted in verse, 356–7 (236*b*).
sc, pron'n of, 23 (75*b*).
sch, pron'n of, 23 (75*c*).
second regular conjugation of verbs, 85, 90–2.
sentence, arrangement of, 350–4.
silent **e**, **h**, syllables, *see* mute.
soft sound of **c**, 16; of **g**, 17.
ss, pron'n of, 23 (75*a*).
strong forms of irregular verbs, 115 (*d*).
subject, agreement of verb with, 286–92; after **ce**, 286–7; with collective and compound subj., 287–8; subj. repeated by a pronoun, 278–9; omitted, 289.

subject, infinitive as, 313–4.
subject-pronoun, its place, 102–3; repeated, 244 (73); for emphasis, 244–5; when of disjunctive form, 245 (74*a*, 76).
subjunctive tenses, 52, 55; rule of sequence for, 282; uses of, 272–83; in independent clauses, 272–3; in dependent clauses, 274–82; in substantive subject clauses, 274–5; object, 275–6; in adjective clauses, 278–9; in adverbial clauses, 280–1; temporal, 280; concessive and hypothetical, 280–1; final and consecutive, 281; special cases, 281 (138); imperative use of subj. forms, 52–3, 284; subj. present found from present participle, 86 (4); imperfect, from preterit, 86 (7).
subordinating conjunctions, 345–7.
subordinate clauses, *see* dependent.
substantive clauses, 345–6; subjunctive used in, 274–6; clauses properly subst. treated as adverbial, 280 (136*a*).
superlative, made from comparative, 54–5, 145.
syllables, division of words into, 2.

t, pron'n of, 23–4; final, 23–4; ti of endings before a vowel, 24; th, 76 (28).
t, added to a 3d sing. before following pronoun, 29 (10*c*), 89 (9*b*), 207 (*c*).
tenses, uses of the, 264–72; of subjunctive tenses, 282; Latin and French tenses compared, 207 (*b*):—*and see the various tenses.*
th, pron'n of, 24 (78); treatment in syllabication, 2 (4*c*).
third regular conjugation of verbs, 85; as sometimes reckoned, 85 (1*a*), 190.
time when, as expressed by simple noun, 215 (28*b*).
time of day, expression of, 64 (*a*), 83.
transitive and intransitive verbs, 295; verbs trans. in French and intr. in English, and the contrary, 295 (157*a*), 299, 302.

u, pron'n of, 9–10; after q and g, 9 (33); accent, 10 (34); written after g to denote its hard sound, 18 (62*f*); u and a following vowel, 10 (35), 358.
ue after c or g, before il, 11–2 (11*d*).
um final in Latin words, 10 (33*c*), 14 (51*b*).
um and un, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 14 (51).

v, pron'n of, 24.
verbs, conjugation of, *see* conjugation; auxiliarics, *see* auxiliaries; passive verbs, 131–2; reflexive, 135–8; impersonal, 139–42; uses of the tenses, 264–72; of the modes, 272–86; adjuncts of the verb: subject, 286–92; predicate noun and adjective, 292–4; object, 294–6; prepositional phrase, 298–305; adverbs, negation, 305–13; infinitive, 313–32; participles and gerund, 332–9: —*and see the various tenses, modes, etc.*
versification, rules of, in French, 354–8.
vowels, pron'n of, 4–15; simple vowels, 4–10; diphthongs, 11–2; nasal vowels, 12–5; relation of Latin and French vowels, 204–5: —*and see the different letters.*

w, pron'n of, 24 (80).
weather, phrases describing, 141 (5), 150 (9*a*); impersonal verbs of, 140.
week, names of its days, 82.

x, pron'n of, 24–5; when linked, 26 (85*b*).

y, pron'n of, as vowel, 10; between vowels, 10; as consonant, 25; interchange of i and y, 10 (37*b*), 100 (6).
ym and yn, nasal vowel, pron'n of, 13 (50*b*).

z, pron'n of, 25.

TEXTS (*Continued.*)

Fallet's Princes de l'Art. 334 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.
Feuillet's Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre. *Novel.* Ed. by Prof. OWEN of Univ. of Wisc. 12mo. 204 pp. Cloth.
—— **Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre.** *Play.* Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 100 pp. Boards.
—— **Le Village.** Play. 12mo. 34 pp. Paper.
Féval's 'Chouans et Bleus.' Ed. by C. SANKEY. 12mo. 188 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.
Fleury's L'Histoire de France. Racontée à la Jeunesse. 16mo. 372 pp. Cloth.
Foa's Contes Biographiques. With vocabulary. 189 pp. Cloth.
—— The same. Paper.
—— **Petit Robinson de Paris.** With vocabulary. 166 pp. Cloth.
—— The same. Paper.
De Gaulle's Le Bracelet, bound with Mme. De M.'s **La Petite Maman.** Plays for Children. 12mo. 38 pp. Paper.
Gautier. *See Choix de Contes.*
De Girardin's La Joie Fait Peur. Modern Play. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 46 pp. Paper.
History. *See Fleury, Lacombe, and Thiers.* The publishers also issue a French History in English by Miss YONGE.
Hugo's Hernani. Romantic Tragedy. Ed. by Prof. HARPER of Princeton. 16mo. pp. Cloth.
—— **Ruy Blas.** Romantic Tragedy. Ed. by RENA MICHAELS. 12mo. 117 pp. Cloth.
—— **Selections.** Ed. by Prof. WARREN of Adelbert. Gringoire in the Court of Miracles, Allegory of a Man lost Overboard, Waterloo, Pursuit of Jean Valjean and Cosette, The Struggle of the Man with the Cannon, and 14 poems. With portrait of Hugo. 16mo. 244 pp. Cloth.
De Janon's Recueil de Poésies A l'usage de la Jeunesse Américaine. 16mo. 186 pp. Cloth.
Labiche (et Delacour), La Cagnotte. Comedy. 83 pp. Paper.
—— **(et Martin), La Poudre aux Yeux.** Modern Comedy. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 59 pp. Paper.
—— **(et Delacour), Les Petits Oiseaux** Modern Comedy. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 70 pp. Paper.
Lacombe's Petite Histoire du Peuple Français. Ed. by JULES BUÉ. 12mo. 212 pp. Cloth.
La Fontaine's Fables Choisies. Ed. by L. DELBOS. 119 pp. Bds.
Leclerq's Trois Proverbes. 3 Little Comedies; *Le Bal, L'Esprit de Désordre, L'Humoriste.* 12mo. 62 pp. Paper.

Descriptive Educational Catalogue sent free.

TEXTS (*Continued*).

Literature, Compends and Histories of. *See separate heading.*
Macé's Bouchée de Pain. (L'Homme.) With vocabulary. 260 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.
De Maistre's Voyage Autour de ma Chambre. 117 pp. Paper.
—— **Les Prisonniers du Caucase.** Bound with **Achard's Clos Pommier.** 12mo. 206 + 138 pp. Cloth.
Mazeres' Le Collier de Perles. Comedy. With Vocab. 56 pp. Paper.
Mérimée's Colomba. Ed. by Prof. A. G. CAMERON of Yale. With portrait. 16mo. 230 pp. Cloth.—The same. Boards. *In preparation.*
Molière's L'Avare. Ed. by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. 132 pp. Paper.
—— **Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.** Ed. by L. DELBOS. 140 pp. Paper.
—— **Le Misanthrope.** *New Edition.* Ed. by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. 12mo. 130 pp. Paper.
Musiciens Célèbres. Biographies. 12mo. 271 pp. Cloth.
—— The same. Paper.
De Musset's Un Caprice. Modern Comedy. 12mo. 56 pp. Paper.
—— *See also Choix de Contes.*
De Neuville's Trois Comédies pour Jeunes Filles. I. Les Cuisinières. II. Le Petit Tour. III. La Malade Imaginaire. 12mo. 134 pp. Paper.
Poems, French and German, for Memorizing. (N. Y. Regents' Requirements). 15 in each language. 35 pp. Paper.
—— *See also Hugo Selections, De Janon and Pylodet.*
Porchat's Trois Mois sous la Neige. 12mo. 160 pp. Cloth.
—— The same. Paper.
Pressensé's Rosa. With vocabulary. By L. PYLODET. 12mo. 285 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.
Pylodet's Gouttes de Rosée. Petit Trésor poétique des Jeunes Personnes. 18mo. 188 pp. Cloth.
—— **La Mère l'Oie.** Poésies, énigmes, chansons, et rondes enfantines. *Ill'd.* 8vo. 80 pp. Boards.
Racine's Athalie. *New Edition.* Ed. by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. 12mo. 117 pp. Paper.
—— **Esther.** Ed. by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. 12mo. 66 pp. Paper.
—— **Les Plaideurs.** Ed. by LÉON DELBOS. 12mo. 80 pp. Paper.
Saint-Germain's Pour une Épingle. Legend. With vocabulary. 12mo. 174 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.
Sand's Petite Fadette. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 205 pp. Cloth.
—— The same. Paper.
—— **Marianne.** Ed. by THEO. HENCKELS of Harvard. 12mo. 90 pp. Paper.

Descriptive Educational Catalogue sent free.

TEXTS (*Continued*).

Sandeau's La Maison de Penarvan. Modern Comedy. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 72 pp. Paper.

—— **Mlle de la Seiglière.** Modern Drama. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 99 pp. Paper.

Scribe's Les Doigts de Fée. Modern Comedy. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 111 pp. Paper.

—— **(et Mélesville), Valérie.** Modern Drama. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 39 pp. With vocabulary. Paper.

—— **(et Legouvé), La Bataille de Dames.** Modern Comedy. Ed. by Prof. F. BÔCHER. 12mo. 81 pp. Paper.

Ségur's Les Petites Filles Modèles, bound with **Carraud's Les Goûters de la Grand'mère.** With list of difficult phrases. 12mo. 98 + 95 pp. Cloth. *See Carraud.*

Ségur's Les Petites Filles Modèles. 12mo. 98 pp. Paper.

Siraudin's (et Thiboust) Les Femmes qui Pleurent. Modern Comedy. 12mo. 28 pp. Paper.

Souvestre's La Loterie de Francfort, bound with **Curo's La Jeune Savante.** Comedies for Children. 12mo. 47 pp. Paper.

—— **Un Philosophe sous les Toits.** Journal d'un Homme Heureux. With table of difficulties. 137 pp. Cloth.—The same. Paper.

—— **Le Testament de Mme. Patural,** bound with **Drohojowska's La Demoiselle de St. Cyr.** Plays for Children. 54 pp. Paper.

—— **La Vieille Cousine,** bound with **Les Ricochets.** Plays for Children. 12mo. 52 pp. Paper.

Taine's Origines de la France Contemporaine. Selections edited by Prof. EDGREN of the University of Nebraska. With portrait. 16mo. x + 157 pp. Boards.

Theuriet. *See Choix de Contes.*

Thiers' Expédition de Bonaparte en Égypte. Ed. by Prof. EDGREN of the University of Nebraska. 16mo. viii + 130 pp. Boards.

Toepfer's Bibliothèque de Mon Oncle. Ed. by P. B. MARCOU of Harvard. 16mo. pp.

Vacquerie's Jean Baudry. Play. Ed. by Prof. BÔCHER. 72 pp. Paper.

Verconsin's En Wagon and **C'était Gertrude!** Two Comedies, each in one act. 16mo. 84 pp. Boards.

Verne's Michel Strogoff. With portrait. Abridged with summaries of omissions. Ed. by Dr. E. S. LEWIS of Princeton. 129 pp. Clo.

Walter's Classic French Letters. Voltaire, Mmes. de Sévigné, de Maintenon, and du Deffand. Ed. by Prof. WALTER of the University of Michigan. 16mo. xv + 214 pp. Cloth.

Descriptive Educational Catalogue sent free.

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

50M—9-40

445.1
e3 p

Whitney, W.D.
A practical French grammar

602571

NAME	DATE	NAME	DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STAN
602571

T
X
445.1
W623p